



unfoldingWord® Translation Notes

1 Chronicles

Version 27

Copyrights & Licensing

unfoldingWord® Translation Notes

Date: 2020-03-25

Version: 27

Published by: unfoldingWord

unfoldingWord® Literal Text

Date: 2020-03-25

Version: 10

Published by: unfoldingWord

unfoldingWord® Simplified Text

Date: 2020-03-25

Version: 10

Published by: unfoldingWord

unfoldingWord® Translation Academy

Date: 2020-03-25

Version: 12

Published by: unfoldingWord®

unfoldingWord® Translation Words

Date: 2020-03-25

Version: 14

Published by: unfoldingWord

unfoldingWord® Greek New Testament

Date: 2020-02-20

Version: 0.12

Published by: unfoldingWord

unfoldingWord® Hebrew Bible

Date: 2020-02-20

Version: 2.1.11

Published by: unfoldingWord

unfoldingWord® Translation Notes

Copyright © 2019 by unfoldingWord

This work is made available under the Creative Commons Attribution-ShareAlike 4.0 International License. To view a copy of this license, visit <http://creativecommons.org/licenses/by-sa/4.0/> or send a letter to Creative Commons, PO Box 1866, Mountain View, CA 94042, USA.

unfoldingWord® is a registered trademark of unfoldingWord. Use of the unfoldingWord name or logo requires the written permission of unfoldingWord. Under the terms of the CC BY-SA license, you may copy and redistribute this unmodified work as long as you keep the unfoldingWord® trademark intact. If you modify a copy or translate this work, thereby creating a derivative work, you must remove the unfoldingWord® trademark.

On the derivative work, you must indicate what changes you have made and attribute the work as follows: "The original work by unfoldingWord is available from unfoldingword.org/utn". You must also make your derivative work available under the same license (CC BY-SA).

If you would like to notify unfoldingWord regarding your translation of this work, please contact us at unfoldingword.org/contact/.

Table of Contents

unfoldingWord® Translation Notes	11
1 Chronicles	11
Introduction to 1 Chronicles	12
1 Chronicles 1	14
1 Chronicles 2	69
1 Chronicles 3	125
1 Chronicles 4	150
1 Chronicles 5	194
1 Chronicles 6	221
1 Chronicles 7	303
1 Chronicles 8	344
1 Chronicles 9	385
1 Chronicles 10	430
1 Chronicles 11	445
1 Chronicles 12	493
1 Chronicles 13	534
1 Chronicles 14	550
1 Chronicles 15	568
1 Chronicles 16	598
1 Chronicles 17	642
1 Chronicles 18	671
1 Chronicles 19	689
1 Chronicles 20	709
1 Chronicles 21	718
1 Chronicles 22	749
1 Chronicles 23	770
1 Chronicles 24	803
1 Chronicles 25	835
1 Chronicles 26	867
1 Chronicles 27	900
1 Chronicles 28	936
1 Chronicles 29	961
unfoldingWord® Translation Academy	992
Abstract Nouns	993
Active or Passive	995
Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information	998
Background Information	1001
Biblical Distance	1004
Biblical Money	1007
Direct and Indirect Quotations	1009
Doublet	1011
Ellipsis	1013
Euphemism	1015

Exclamations	1017
Exclusive and Inclusive 'We'	1019
First, Second or Third Person	1021
Forms of You	1023
Hebrew Months	1024
How to Translate Names	1027
Hyperbole	1031
Idiom	1035
Introduction of a New Event	1037
Merism	1040
Metaphor	1042
Metonymy	1048
Nominal Adjectives	1050
Numbers	1052
Ordinal Numbers	1055
Parallelism	1058
Personification	1061
Poetry	1063
Quotes within Quotes	1066
Reflexive Pronouns	1069
Rhetorical Question	1072
Simile	1075
Symbolic Action	1078
Symbolic Language	1080
Synecdoche	1082
Textual Variants	1084
Translate Unknowns	1086
Verse Bridges	1089
unfoldingWord® Translation Words	1091
Aaron	1092
Abraham, Abram	1093
adversary, enemy	1094
advice, advise, advisor, counsel, counselor, counsels	1095
afflict, affliction, distress	1096
altar	1097
amen, truly	1098
Ammon, Ammonite	1099
Amorite	1100
ancestor, father, fathered, forefather, grandfather	1101
appoint, appointed	1103
Asaph	1104
assembly, assemble, congregation, meeting	1105
Assyria, Assyrian, Assyrian Empire	1106
Babylon, Babylonia, Babylonian	1107
barley	1108
Bashan	1109

Benjamin, Benjamite	1110
bless, blessed, blessing	1111
blood	1113
Boaz	1114
bow, bow down, knelt, bend, bend the knee	1115
bread	1116
bronze	1117
brother	1118
burden, burdened, burdensome, heavy, hard work, hard labor, utterances	1119
burnt offering, offering by fire	1120
call, call out	1121
camel	1123
Canaan, Canaanite	1124
captive, captivate, captivity, catch, captured	1125
cedar, cedarwood	1126
chief	1127
clean, wash	1128
comfort, comforts, comforter, uncomforted	1130
command, commandment	1131
confirm, confirmation, legal	1132
consecrate, consecrated, consecration	1133
consume, devour	1134
court, courtyard	1135
covenant	1136
covenant faithfulness, covenant loyalty, covenant love	1138
cow, bull, calf, cattle, heifer, ox	1139
cut off	1140
David	1141
declare, proclaim, announce	1143
decree, decreed	1144
deliver, deliverer, deliverance, hand over, turn over, released, ...	1145
devour	1146
die, dead, deadly, death,	1147
dominion	1149
drink offering	1150
earth, earthen, earthly	1151
Edom, Edomite, Idumea	1152
Egypt, Egyptian	1153
Elam, Elamites	1154
elder, older, old	1155
Ephraim, Ephraimite	1156
Esau	1157
eternity, everlasting, eternal, forever	1158
Ethiopia, Ethiopian	1160
evil, wicked, unpleasant	1161
ewe, ram, sheep, sheepfold, sheepshearers, sheepskins	1163

exile, exiled	1164
face, facial	1165
faithful, faithfulness, unfaithful, unfaithfulness, trustworthy	1166
family, household	1168
famine	1169
fast, fasting	1170
fear, afraid, dread	1171
feast, feasting	1172
fire, firebrands, firepans, fireplace, firepot	1173
firstborn	1174
flock, herd	1175
forsake, forsaken, leave	1176
found, founder, foundation	1177
frankincense	1178
freewill offering	1179
fulfill, fulfilled, carried out	1180
gate, gate bars, gatekeeper, gateposts, gateway	1181
generation	1182
Gibeon, Gibeonite	1183
Gilead, Gileadite	1184
glory, glorious, glorify	1185
God	1187
gold, golden	1189
good, right, pleasant, pleasing, better, best	1190
grain offering	1192
hand	1193
harp, harpist	1195
head	1196
heart	1197
heaven, sky, heavens, heavenly	1198
Hittite	1199
holy, holiness, unholy, sacred	1200
hope, hoped	1202
horse, warhorse, horseback	1203
horseman	1204
house	1205
inherit, inheritance, heir	1206
iniquity	1207
Israel, Israelite, Jacob	1208
Israel, Israelites	1209
Jebus, Jebusite	1211
Jehoshaphat	1212
Jeremiah	1213
Jericho	1214
Jerusalem	1215
Jesse	1217

Joel	1218
Joseph (OT)	1219
joy, joyful, enjoy, rejoice, gladness, rejoicing	1220
Judah	1222
Judea	1223
judge, judgment	1224
king, kingdom, kingship	1226
kingdom	1227
know, knowledge, unknown, distinguish	1229
lamb, Lamb of God	1230
law of Moses, God's law, law of Yahweh, the law	1232
Levi, Levite, Levitical	1234
life, live, living, alive	1235
lord, Lord, master, sir	1237
lots, casting lots	1239
majesty	1240
Mede, Medes, Media	1241
messenger	1242
might, mighty, mighty works	1243
miracle, wonder, sign	1244
Moab, Moabite	1246
Moses	1247
mourn, mourner, weeping	1248
name	1249
nation	1250
Nebuchadnezzar	1251
new moon	1252
oil	1253
ordinance, regulations, requirements, strict law, customs	1254
oversee, overseer	1255
peace, peaceful, peacemakers	1256
people, people group,	1257
Philistines	1259
power, powerful, powerfully	1260
praise, praised, praiseworthy	1262
pray, prayer	1263
preach, preaching, preacher, proclaim, proclamation	1264
priest, priesthood	1266
prince, princess, governors, provincial governors, officials, ...	1268
promise, promised	1269
prophet, prophecy, prophesy, seer, prophetess	1270
prosper, prosperity, prosperous	1272
prostrate, worship	1273
raise, raised, risen, arise, arose, got up, stir up, stirred up	1274
redeem, redeemer, redemption	1276
reign, rule	1277

remnant	1278
rest, rested, restless	1279
restore, restoration	1280
return	1281
Sabbath	1282
sackcloth	1283
sacrifice, sacrifices, offering	1284
scribe	1286
seed, semen	1287
seek, search, look for	1288
servant, serve, slave, worker, young man, young women	1289
set apart	1291
shame, ashamed, disgrace, humiliate, reproach	1292
silver	1294
sin, sinful, sinner, sinning	1295
Solomon	1297
son	1298
spirit, spiritual	1300
statute	1302
storehouse	1303
strength, strengthen, strong	1304
stronghold, fortifications, fortress, citadel	1306
sword, swordsmen	1307
teach, teaching, untaught	1308
temple	1309
testimony, testify, witness, eyewitness	1311
thresh	1313
threshold, doorway	1314
throne, enthroned	1315
to minister, ministry	1316
transgress, transgression	1317
tremble, stagger	1318
trespass	1319
trumpet, trumpeters	1320
trust, trusted, trustworthy, trustworthiness	1321
Tyre, Tyrians	1322
understand, understanding, thinking	1323
walk, walked	1324
watch, watchman, watchful, guard, take heed, beware, watch out	1325
wheat	1326
wine, wineskin, new wine	1327
wise men, advisor	1328
work, works, deeds	1329
Yahweh	1330
Zerubbabel	1332
Zion, Mount Zion	1333

Contributors	1334
unfoldingWord® Translation Notes Contributors	1334
unfoldingWord® Literal Text Contributors	1340
unfoldingWord® Simplified Text Contributors	1341
unfoldingWord® Translation Academy Contributors	1341
unfoldingWord® Translation Words Contributors	1342



unfoldingWord® Translation Notes

1 Chronicles

Introduction to 1 Chronicles

Part 1: General Introduction

Outline of 1 Chronicles

1. Lists of descendants (1:1-9:44)
2. From Adam to Jacob (1:1-2:2)
3. Jacob's descendants (2:2-9:44)
4. Saul dies and David begins to reign (10:1-29:30)
5. Saul dies (10:1-14)
6. David captures Jerusalem (11:1-9)
7. David's mighty men (11:10-12:40)
8. David prospers (13:1-22:1)
9. David prepares for Solomon to build the temple (22:2-29:30)

What are the Books of 1 and 2 Chronicles about?

The Book of 1 Chronicles retells the line of descendants from Adam to Saul. It then gives the history of Israel during the time of David. The Book of 2 Chronicles gives the history of Israel beginning with Solomon. It ends when the Babylonian army attacks Judah and takes some of the people to Babylon. The writers of Chronicles probably wrote these books for the Jews who returned from exile in Babylon. The purpose was to teach the people to avoid disobeying God as their ancestors did.

How should the title of this book be translated?

Translators can use the traditional title "1 Chronicles" or "First Chronicles." You may also call this book "The Events of the Kings of Judah and Israel, Book 1" or "The First Book of the Events of the Kings of Judah and Israel."

Who wrote 1 and 2 Chronicles?

The writers of 1 and 2 Chronicles are unknown. They mention that they used other books when writing Chronicles. The names of these other books are "The Chronicles of Samuel the Seer," "The Chronicles of Nathan the Seer," "The Chronicles of Gad the Seer," "The History of Nathan the Prophet," "The Chronicles of Shemaiah the Prophet and Iddo," "The Story of the Prophet Iddo" and "The books of the kings of Judah and Israel."

Why are there multiple books that give the history of the kings of Israel?

The books of Chronicles and the books of Kings tell much of the same history, but they are not exactly the same. The writers of Chronicles wrote mostly about the kings of Judah who were faithful to Yahweh and his covenant. The writers wanted the Jews to think carefully about David and Solomon. They also wanted the Jews to think about how Jehoshaphat, Hezekiah, and Josiah caused their ancestors to repent and to worship Yahweh. The writers wanted to encourage the Jews and their leaders to obey the law and to honor God's covenant with them. (See: [covenant](#))

Part 2: Important Religious and Cultural Concepts

Why did God punish the people of Israel?

God punished the people of Israel because they disobeyed him and worshiped false gods. God punished them with disease, disasters, and defeat in battle. However, God forgave them and caused them to prosper again if they repented and obeyed him. The writers of 1 and 2 Chronicles continually reminded the readers that God punished his people because they disobeyed. They wanted the readers to understand that they must obey God.

Why are alliances with foreign countries seen as evil in these books?

Yahweh led and protected the nation of Israel. The people of Israel should have trusted him instead of relying on other nations to protect them.

Part 3: Important Translation Issues**What is the meaning of the term “Israel”?**

The name “Israel” is used in many different ways in the Bible. Jacob was the son of Isaac. God changed Jacob’s name to Israel. The descendants of Jacob became a nation also called Israel. Eventually, the nation of Israel split into two kingdoms. The northern kingdom was named Israel. The southern kingdom was named Judah.

What does it mean to “seek God”?

The writers of 1 and 2 Chronicles often wrote about “seeking God.” To “seek God” means to make an effort to please and honor God. It can also mean to ask God for help. It does not imply that God is hidden. (See: [Metaphor](#))

What does the phrase “to this day” mean?

The writers used the phrase “to this day” to refer to the time when they were writing. The translator should be aware that “to this day” refers to a time already passed. The translator might decide to say, “to this day, at the time when this is being written,” or, “to this day, at the time of writing.” This Hebrew phrase occurs in 1 Chronicles 4:41, 43; 5:26; 13:11; 20:26; 21:10; 35:25.

1 Chronicles 1

1 Chronicles 1 General Notes

Structure and formatting

This chapter gives the genealogies of Abraham, Esau and the early kings of Edom.

1 Chronicles 1:1

Adam...Seth...Enosh

These are all names of men. Each man was the father or ancestor of the next man in the list. If your language has a specific way to mark this kind of list, you can use it here. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

ULT

¹ Adam, Seth, Enosh,

UST

¹ The first person God created was Adam. Adam's son was Seth. Seth's son was Enosh. Enosh's son was Kenan.

1 Chronicles 1:2

Kenan...Mahalalel...Jared

These are all names of men. Each man was the father or ancestor of the next man in the list. If your language has a specific way to mark this kind of list, you can use it here. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

ULT

² Kenan, Mahalalel, Jared,

UST

² Kenan's son was Mahalalel. Mahalalel's son was Jared. Jared's son was Enoch.

1 Chronicles 1:3

Enoch...Methuselah...Lamech

These are all names of men. Each man was the father or ancestor of the next man in the list. If your language has a specific way to mark this kind of list, you can use it here. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

ULT

³ Enoch, Methuselah, Lamech.

UST

³ Enoch's son was Methuselah.
Methuselah's son was Lamech.
Lamech's son was Noah.

1 Chronicles 1:4

The sons of Noah were Shem, Ham, and Japheth

Some versions, including the ULT and UST, include “The sons of” in order to make it clear that Shem, Ham, and Japheth were brothers to each other and sons of Noah. Otherwise, the reader would assume that each person represented one generation farther away from Noah, their ancestor.

Noah

Noah was Lamech’s son. Alternate translation: “Lamech’s son Noah”

ULT

⁴ The sons of Noah were Shem, Ham, and Japheth. ^[1]

UST

⁴ Noah’s sons were Shem, Ham, and Japheth.

These are the sons of Japheth.

1 Chronicles 1:5

Gomer...Magog...Madai...Javan...Tubal...Meshek...Tiras

These are all names of men. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- son
- Mede, Medes, Media

Translation Words - UST

- son
- Mede, Medes, Media

ULT

⁵ The sons of Japheth were Gomer, Magog, Madai, Javan, Tubal, Meshek, and Tiras.

UST

⁵ The sons of Japheth were Gomer, Magog, Madai, Javan, Tubal, Meshech, and Tiras.

1 Chronicles 1:6

Ashkenaz...Riphath...Togarmah

These are all names of men. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [son](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [son](#)

ULT

⁶ The sons of Gomer were Ashkenaz, Riphath, and Togarmah. ^[2]

UST

⁶ The sons of Gomer were Ashkenaz, Riphath, and Togarmah.

1 Chronicles 1:7

Elishah...Tarshish

These are names of men. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

Kittites...Rodanites

These are names of people groups. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

Rodanites

This name is sometimes spelled "Dodanites." (See: [Textual Variants](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [son](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [son](#)

ULT

⁷ The sons of Javan were Elishah, Tarshish, the Kittites, and the Rodanites.

UST

⁷ The sons of Javan were Elishah, Tarshish, Kittim, and Rodanim.

These are the sons of Ham.

1 Chronicles 1:8

General Information:

All of the names here are names of men. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- son
- Ethiopia, Ethiopian

Translation Words - UST

- son
- Ethiopia, Ethiopian

ULT

⁸ The sons of Ham were Cush, Egypt, Put, and Canaan.

UST

⁸ The sons of Ham were Cush, Egypt, Put, and Canaan.

1 Chronicles 1:9

(There are no notes for this verse.)

Translation Words - ULT

- son
- son
- Ethiopia, Ethiopian

Translation Words - UST

- son
- son
- Ethiopia, Ethiopian

ULT

⁹ The sons of Cush were Seba, Havilah, Sabta, Raamah, and Sabteka. The sons of Raamah were Sheba and Dedan.

UST

⁹ The sons of Cush were Seba, Havilah, Sabta, Raamah, and Sabteka. The sons of Raamah were Sheba and Dedan.

1 Chronicles 1:10

(There are no notes for this verse.)

Translation Words - ULT

- might, mighty, mighty works

Translation Words - UST

- might, mighty, mighty works

ULT

¹⁰ Cush became the father of Nimrod, who was the first conqueror on the earth.

UST

¹⁰ Another son of Cush was Nimrod. When he grew up, he became a mighty warrior on the earth.

1 Chronicles 1:11

Ludites...Anamites...Lehabites...Naphtuhites

These are names of people groups. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

ULT

¹¹ Egypt became the ancestor of the Ludites, Anamites, Lehabites, Naphtuhites,

UST

¹¹ Egypt was the ancestor of the Lud, the Anam, the Lehab, the Naphtuh,

1 Chronicles 1:12

Pathrusites...Kasluhites...Philistines...Caphtorites

These are names of people groups. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

from whom the Philistines came

“the ancestors of the Philistines”

Translation Words - ULT

- [Philistines](#)
- [know, knowledge, unknown, distinguish](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [Philistines](#)
- [know, knowledge, unknown, distinguish](#)

ULT

¹² Pathrusites, Kasluhites (from whom the Philistines came), and the Caphtorites.

UST

¹² the Pathrus, the Kasluh, and the Caphtor people groups. The people of the region of Philistia were descended from the Kasluh people group.

1 Chronicles 1:13

Canaan...Sidon

These are names of men. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

Hittites

This is the name of a people group. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [firstborn](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [firstborn](#)

ULT

¹³ Canaan became the father of Sidon, his firstborn, and of the Hittites.

UST

¹³ Canaan's first son was Sidon. He was also the ancestor of the people groups of the Hethites,

1 Chronicles 1:14

Jebusites...Amorites...Girgashites

These are names of people groups. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- Amorite
- Jebus, Jebusite

Translation Words - UST

- Amorite
- Jebus, Jebusite

ULT

14 He also became the ancestor of the Jebusites, Amorites, Girgashites,

UST

14 the Jebusites, the Amorites, the Girgashites,

1 Chronicles 1:15

Hivites...Arkites...Sinites

These are names of people groups. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

ULT

¹⁵ Hivites, Arkites, Sinites,

UST

¹⁵ the Hivites, the Arkites, the Sinites,

1 Chronicles 1:16

Arvadites...Zemarites...Hamathites

These are names of people groups. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

ULT

16 Arvadites, Zemarites, and the Hamathites.

UST

16 the Arvadites, the Zemarites, and the Hamathites.

These are the descendants of Shem

1 Chronicles 1:17

General Information:

All of the names here are names of men. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [son](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [son](#)

ULT

17 The sons of Shem were Elam, Ashur, Arphaxad, Lud, Aram, Uz, Hul, Gether, and Meshek.

UST

17 The sons of Shem were Elam, Ashur, Arphaxad, Lud, and Aram. Aram's sons were Uz, Hul, Gether, and Meshech.

1 Chronicles 1:18

(There are no notes for this verse.)

ULT

¹⁸ Arphaxad became the father of Shelah, and Shelah became the father of Eber.

UST

¹⁸ Arphachshad was the father of Shelah, who was the father of Eber.

1 Chronicles 1:19

(There are no notes for this verse.)

Translation Words - ULT

- brother
- son
- name

Translation Words - UST

- brother
- son
- name

ULT

¹⁹ Eber had two sons. The name of the one was Peleg, for in his days the earth was divided. His brother's name was Joktan.

UST

¹⁹ Eber had two sons. One was named Peleg which sounds like the word that means 'divided' because during the time that he lived, the people on the earth were divided into various language groups. Peleg's younger brother was Joktan.

1 Chronicles 1:20

General Information:

All of the names here are names of men. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

ULT

²⁰ Joktan became the father of Almodad, Sheleph, Hazarmaveth, Jerah,

UST

²⁰ Joktan was the ancestor of Almodad, Sheleph, Hazarmaveth, Jerah,

1 Chronicles 1:21

(There are no notes for this verse.)

ULT

²¹ Hadoram, Uzal, Diklah,

UST

²¹ Hadoram, Uzal, Diklah,

1 Chronicles 1:22

(There are no notes for this verse.)

ULT

²² Obal, Abimael, Sheba,

UST

²² Obal, Abimael, Sheba,

1 Chronicles 1:23

(There are no notes for this verse.)

Translation Words - ULT

- son

Translation Words - UST

- son

ULT

²³ Ophir, Havilah, and Jobab; all these were descendants of Joktan.

UST

²³ Ophir, Havilah, and Jobab.

1 Chronicles 1:24

General Information:

All of the names here are names of men. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

ULT

²⁴ Shem, Arphaxad, Shelah,

UST

²⁴ These are the descendants of Shem,
in order from him to Abraham:
Arphaxad, Shelah,

1 Chronicles 1:25

(There are no notes for this verse.)

ULT

²⁵ Eber, Peleg, Reu,

UST

²⁵ Eber, Peleg, Reu,

1 Chronicles 1:26

(There are no notes for this verse.)

ULT

²⁶ Serug, Nahor, Terah,

UST

²⁶ Serug, Nahor, Terah,

1 Chronicles 1:27

(There are no notes for this verse.)

Translation Words - ULT

- [Abraham, Abram](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [Abraham, Abram](#)

ULT

²⁷ Abram, who was Abraham.

UST

²⁷ and Abram, whose name was later changed to Abraham.

These are the descendants of Abraham.

1 Chronicles 1:28

General Information:

All of the names here are names of men. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- son
- Abraham, Abram

Translation Words - UST

- son
- Abraham, Abram

ULT

²⁸ The sons of Abraham were Isaac and Ishmael.

UST

²⁸ Abraham's sons were Isaac and Ishmael.

1 Chronicles 1:29

(There are no notes for this verse.)

Translation Words - ULT

- generation
- firstborn

Translation Words - UST

- generation
- firstborn

ULT

²⁹ These are their sons: the firstborn of Ishmael was Nebaioth, then Kedar, Adbeel, Mibsam,

UST

²⁹ The son of Abraham's slave wife Hagar was Ishmael. Ishmael's twelve sons were Nebaioth, his firstborn, then Kedar, Adbeel, Mibsam,

1 Chronicles 1:30

(There are no notes for this verse.)

ULT

³⁰ Mishma, Dumah, Massa, Hadad,
Tema,

UST

³⁰ Mishma, Dumah, Massa, Hadad,
Tema,

1 Chronicles 1:31

(There are no notes for this verse.)

Translation Words - ULT

- [son](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [son](#)

ULT

³¹ Jetur, Naphish, and Kedemah. These were Ishmael's sons.

UST

³¹ Jetur, Naphish, and Kedemah.

1 Chronicles 1:32

General Information:

All of the names here except for Keturah are names of men. Keturah is the name of a woman. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- son
- son
- Abraham, Abram

Translation Words - UST

- son
- son
- Abraham, Abram

ULT

³² The sons of Keturah, Abraham's concubine, were Zimran, Jokshan, Medan, Midian, Ishbak, and Shuah. The sons of Jokshan were Sheba and Dedan.

UST

³² After Abraham's wife Sarah died, he took another wife named Keturah. Her sons were Zimran, Jokshan, Medan, Midian, Ishbak, and Shuah. Jokshan's sons were Sheba and Dedan.

1 Chronicles 1:33

General Information:

All of the names here except for Keturah are names of men. Keturah is the name of a woman. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- son
- son

Translation Words - UST

- son
- son

ULT

³³ Midian's sons were Ephah, Ephher, Hanok, Abida, and Eldaah. All these were Keturah's descendants.

UST

³³ Midian's sons were Ephah, Ephher, Hanok, Abida, and Eldaah.

These are the descendants of Esau.

1 Chronicles 1:34

General Information:

All of the names here are names of men. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- son
- Abraham, Abram
- Esau

Translation Words - UST

- son
- Abraham, Abram
- Esau

ULT

³⁴ Abraham became the father of Isaac.
The sons of Isaac were Esau and Israel.

UST

³⁴ The son of Abraham's wife Sarah was Isaac, and Isaac's sons were Esau and Jacob, whose name was later changed to Israel.

1 Chronicles 1:35

(There are no notes for this verse.)

Translation Words - ULT

- son
- Esau

Translation Words - UST

- son
- Esau

ULT

³⁵ The sons of Esau were Eliphaz, Reuel, Jeush, Jalam, and Korah.

UST

³⁵ The sons of Esau were Eliphaz, Reuel, Jeush, Jalam, and Korah.

1 Chronicles 1:36

(There are no notes for this verse.)

Translation Words - ULT

- son

Translation Words - UST

- son

ULT

³⁶ The sons of Eliphaz were Teman, Omar, Zepho, Gatam, Kenaz, Timna, and Amalek.

UST

³⁶ The sons of Eliphaz were Teman, Omar, Zepho, Gatam, Kenaz, Timna, and Amalek.

1 Chronicles 1:37

(There are no notes for this verse.)

Translation Words - ULT

- son

Translation Words - UST

- son

ULT

³⁷ The sons of Reuel were Nahath, Zerah, Shammah, and Mizzah.

UST

³⁷ Reuel's sons were Nahath, Zerah, Shammah, and Mizzah.

These are the descendants of Seir.

1 Chronicles 1:38

General Information:

All of the names in this verse are names of men. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [son](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [son](#)

ULT

³⁸ The sons of Seir were Lotan, Shobal, Zibeon, Anah, Dishon, Ezer, and Dishan.

UST

³⁸ Another descendant of Esau was Seir. His descendants lived in the region of Edom. Seir's sons were Lotan, Shobal, Zibeon, Anah, Dishon, Ezer, and Dishan.

1 Chronicles 1:39

General Information:

All of the names here are names of men, except for Timna. Timna is the name of a woman. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [son](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [son](#)

ULT

³⁹ The sons of Lotan were Hori and Homam, and Timna was Lotan's sister.

UST

³⁹ Lotan's sons were Hori and Homam, and Lotan's sister was Timna.

1 Chronicles 1:40

General Information:

All of the names here are names of men. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [son](#)
- [son](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [son](#)
- [son](#)

ULT

⁴⁰ The sons of Shobal were Alvan, Manahath, Ebal, Shepho, and Onam. The sons of Zibeon were Aiah and Anah.

UST

⁴⁰ Shobal's sons were Alvan, Manahath, Ebal, Shepho, and Onam. Zibeon's sons were Aiah and Anah.

1 Chronicles 1:41

General Information:

All of the names here are names of men. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- son
- son

Translation Words - UST

- son
- son

ULT

41 The son of Anah was Dishon. The sons of Dishon were Hemdan, Eshban, Ithran, and Keran.

UST

41 Anah's son was Dishon. 1 Dishon's sons were Hemdan, Eshban, Ithran, and Keran.

1 Chronicles 1:42

(There are no notes for this verse.)

Translation Words - ULT

- son
- son

Translation Words - UST

- son
- son

ULT

⁴² The sons of Ezer were Bilhan, Zaavan, and Akan. The sons of Dishan were Uz and Aran.

UST

⁴² Ezer's sons were Bilhan, Zaavan, and Akan. Dishan's sons were Uz and Aran.

These are the kings of Edom.

1 Chronicles 1:43

Edom...Dinhabah

These are the names of places. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

Bela...Beor

These are the names of men. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- son
- son
- Israel, Israelites
- king, kingdom, kingship
- king, kingdom, kingship

Translation Words - UST

- son
- son
- Israel, Israelites
- king, kingdom, kingship
- king, kingdom, kingship

ULT

⁴³ These were the kings who reigned in the land of Edom before any king reigned over the Israelites: Bela son of Beor, and the name of his city was Dinhabah.

UST

⁴³ These are the names of the kings who ruled the region of Edom before any kings ruled over Israel: Bela son of Beor, was king in Edom, and the name of the city in which he lived was Dinhabah.

1 Chronicles 1:44

Bela...Jobab...Zerah

These are the names of men. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

Bozrah

This is the name of a place. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- son
- die, dead, deadly, death,
- reign, rule

Translation Words - UST

- son
- die, dead, deadly, death,
- reign, rule

ULT

44 When Bela died, Jobab son of Zerah of Bozrah reigned in his place.

UST

44 When Bela died, Jobab son of Zerah, from the city of Bozrah, became the king.

1 Chronicles 1:45

Jobab...Husham

These are names of men. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

Husham of the land of the Temanites reigned in his place

"Husham, from the land where Teman's descendants lived, reigned after him"

Temanites

This is the name of a people group. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- die, dead, deadly, death,
- reign, rule

Translation Words - UST

- die, dead, deadly, death,
- reign, rule

ULT

⁴⁵ When Jobab died, Husham of the land of the Temanites reigned in his place.

UST

⁴⁵ When Jobab died, Husham became the king. He was from the region where the Teman people group lived.

1 Chronicles 1:46

Husham...Hadad...Bedad

These are names of men. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

Avith

This is the name of a place. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- son
- Moab, Moabite
- die, dead, deadly, death,
- reign, rule

Translation Words - UST

- son
- Moab, Moabite
- die, dead, deadly, death,
- reign, rule

ULT

⁴⁶ When Husham died, Hadad son of Bedad, who defeated Midian in the land of Moab, reigned in his place. The name of his city was Avith.

UST

⁴⁶ When Husham died, Hadad son of Bedad, became the king. He ruled in the city of Avith. Hadad's army defeated the army of the Midian people group in the region of Moab.

1 Chronicles 1:47

Hadad...Samlah

These are names of men. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

Masrekah

This is the name of a place. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- die, dead, deadly, death,
- reign, rule

Translation Words - UST

- die, dead, deadly, death,
- reign, rule

ULT

⁴⁷ When Hadad died, Samlah of Masrekah reigned in his place.

UST

⁴⁷ When Hadad died, Samlah became the king. He was from the city of Masrekah.

1 Chronicles 1:48

Samlah...Shaul

These are names of men. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

Rehoboth

This is the name of a place. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- die, dead, deadly, death,
- reign, rule

Translation Words - UST

- die, dead, deadly, death,
- reign, rule

ULT

⁴⁸ When Samlah died, Shaul of Rehoboth on the river reigned in his place.

UST

⁴⁸ When Samlah died, Shaul became the king. He was from the city of Rehoboth Hannahar.

1 Chronicles 1:49

Shaul...Baal-Hanan...Akbor

These are the names of men. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- son
- die, dead, deadly, death,
- reign, rule

Translation Words - UST

- son
- die, dead, deadly, death,
- reign, rule

ULT

⁴⁹ When Shaul died, Baal-Hanan son of Akbor reigned in his place.

UST

⁴⁹ When Shaul died, Baal-Hanan son of Akbor became the king.

1 Chronicles 1:50

Baal-Hanan...Akbors...Hadad...Me-Zahab

These are the names of men. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

Pau

This is the name of a place. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

Mehetabel...Matred

These are the names of women. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- die, dead, deadly, death,
- reign, rule

Translation Words - UST

- die, dead, deadly, death,
- reign, rule

ULT

⁵⁰ When Baal-Hanan son of Akbor died, Hadad reigned in his place. The name of his city was Pau. His wife's name was Mehetabel daughter of Matred daughter of Me-Zahab.

UST

⁵⁰ When Baal-Hanan died, Hadar became the king. He was from the city of Pau. His wife's name was Mehetabel; she was the daughter of Matred and the granddaughter of Me-Zahab.

1 Chronicles 1:51

Hadad...Timna...Alvah...Jetheth

These are names of men. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

Edom

This is the name of a place. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- die, dead, deadly, death,

Translation Words - UST

- die, dead, deadly, death,

ULT

⁵¹ Hadad died. The chiefs in Edom were Chief Timna, Chief Alvah, Chief Jetheth,

UST

⁵¹ Then Hadad died. The chiefs of the Edom people group were Chiefs Timna, Alvah, Jetheth,

1 Chronicles 1:52

Oholibamah...Elah...Pinon

These are names of men. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

ULT

⁵² Chief Oholibamah, Chief Elah, Chief
Pinon,

UST

⁵² Oholibamah, Elah, Pinon,

1 Chronicles 1:53

Kenaz...Teman...Mibzar

These are names of men. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

ULT

⁵³ Chief Kenaz, Chief Teman, Chief Mibzar,

UST

⁵³ Kenaz, Teman, Mibzar,

1 Chronicles 1:54

Magdiel...Iram

These are names of men. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

Edom

This is the name of a place. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

ULT

⁵⁴ Chief Magdiel, and Chief Iram. These were the chiefs of Edom.

UST

⁵⁴ and Magdiel. These were the chiefs of Edom.

1 Chronicles 2

1 Chronicles 2 General Notes

Structure and formatting

This chapter records the descendants of Judah, son of Jacob.

1 Chronicles 2:1

General Information:

All of the names here are names of men. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- son
- Israel, Israelites
- Judah
- Levi, Levite, Levitical

Translation Words - UST

- son
- Israel, Israelites
- Judah
- Levi, Levite, Levitical

ULT

¹ These were Israel's sons: Reuben, Simeon, Levi, Judah, Issachar, Zebulun,

UST

¹ The sons of Jacob were Reuben, Simeon, Levi, Judah, Issachar, Zebulun,

1 Chronicles 2:2

General Information:

All of the names here are names of men. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [Joseph \(OT\)](#)
- [Benjamin, Benjamite](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [Joseph \(OT\)](#)
- [Benjamin, Benjamite](#)

ULT

² Dan, Joseph, Benjamin, Naphtali, Gad, and Asher.

UST

² Dan, Joseph, Benjamin, Naphtali, Gad, and Asher.

These are the descendants of Judah.

1 Chronicles 2:3

Er...Onan...Shelah...Shua...Judah

These are the names of men. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

who were born to him by Shua's daughter, a Canaanite woman

This can be translated in active form. Alternate translation: "his sons whom Shua's daughter, a Canaanite woman, bore" (See: [Active or Passive](#))

Yahweh

This is the name of God that he revealed to his people in the Old Testament. See the translationWord page about Yahweh concerning how to translate this.

in the sight of Yahweh

The sight of Yahweh represents his judgment or evaluation. Alternate translation: "as Yahweh judged" (See: [Metaphor](#))

Yahweh killed him

The reader should understand that Yahweh may have had a person kill Er. (See: [Metonymy](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [son](#)
- [Yahweh](#)
- [evil, wicked, unpleasant](#)
- [Judea](#)
- [Judea \(2\)](#)
- [Canaan, Canaanite](#)
- [die, dead, deadly, death,](#)
- [firstborn](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [son](#)
- [Yahweh](#)
- [evil, wicked, unpleasant](#)
- [Judea](#)
- [Judea \(2\)](#)
- [Canaan, Canaanite](#)
- [die, dead, deadly, death,](#)
- [firstborn](#)

ULT

³ Judah's sons were Er, Onan, and Shelah, who were born to him by Shua's daughter, a Canaanite woman. Er, Judah's firstborn, was wicked in the sight of Yahweh, and Yahweh killed him.

UST

³ Judah's sons were Er, Onan, and Shelah. Their mother was the daughter of Shua from the Canaan people group. When Judah's oldest son Er grew up, he did something that Yahweh considered to be very wicked, so Yahweh caused him to die.

1 Chronicles 2:4

Tamar

This is the name of a woman. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

daughter-in-law

This refers to the wife of his son.

Perez...Zerah...Judah

These are the names of men. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

bore him Perez and Zerah

“gave birth to his sons Perez and Zerah”

five sons

“5 sons” (See: [Numbers](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [son](#)
- [Judea](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [son](#)
- [Judea](#)

ULT

⁴ Tamar, his daughter-in-law, bore him Perez and Zerah. Judah had five sons.

UST

⁴ Judah and his daughter-in-law Tamar had twin boys named Perez and Zerah. So altogether Judah had five sons.

1 Chronicles 2:5

Perez...Hezron...Hamul

These are names of men. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [son](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [son](#)

ULT

⁵ Perez's sons were Hezron and Hamul.

UST

⁵ The sons of Perez were Hezron and Hamul.

1 Chronicles 2:6

Zerah...Zimri...Ethan...Heman...Kalkol...Darda

These are all names of men. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [son](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [son](#)

ULT

⁶ Zerah's sons were Zimri, Ethan, Heman, Kalkol, and Darda, five in all.

UST

⁶ Zerah had five sons: Zimri, Ethan, Heman, Kalkol, and Darda.

1 Chronicles 2:7

Karmi...Achar

These are names of men. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

what was reserved for God

what God had said he wanted the people to destroy

Translation Words - ULT

- [son](#)
- [Israel, Israelites](#)
- [faithful, faithfulness, unfaithful, unfaithfulness, trustworthy](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [son](#)
- [Israel, Israelites](#)
- [faithful, faithfulness, unfaithful, unfaithfulness, trustworthy](#)

ULT

⁷ Karmi's son was Achar, who brought trouble on Israel when he stole what was reserved for God. ^[1]

UST

⁷ One of the sons of Zimri was Karmi. Karmi's son Achar caused the people of Israel to experience much trouble, because he stole some of the things that were to be destroyed because they were dedicated to God.

1 Chronicles 2:8

Ethan...Azariah

These are names of men. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [son](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [son](#)

ULT

⁸ Ethan's son was Azariah.

UST

⁸ Ethan's son was Azariah.

1 Chronicles 2:9

Hezron...Jerahmeel...Ram...Caleb

These are names of men. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [son](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [son](#)

ULT

⁹ Hezron's sons were Jerahmeel, Ram, and Caleb.

UST

⁹ Hezron's sons were Jerahmeel, Ram, and Caleb.

1 Chronicles 2:10

Ram...Amminadab...Nahshon...Judah

These are names of men. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- son
- Judea

Translation Words - UST

- son
- Judea

ULT

¹⁰ Ram became the father of Amminadab, and Amminadab became the father of Nahshon, a leader among Judah's descendants.

UST

¹⁰ Ram was the father of Amminadab, and Amminadab was the father of Nahshon. Nahshon was a leader of the tribe of Judah.

1 Chronicles 2:11

Nahshon...Salmon...Boaz

These are names of men. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [Boaz](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [Boaz](#)

ULT

11 Nahshon became the father of Salmon, and Salmon became the father of Boaz.

UST

11 Nahshon was the father of Salmon, who was the father of Boaz.

1 Chronicles 2:12

Boaz...Obed...Jesse

These are names of men. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [Boaz](#)
- [Jesse](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [Boaz](#)
- [Jesse](#)

ULT

¹² Boaz became the father of Obed, and Obed became the father of Jesse.

UST

¹² Boaz was the father of Obed, and Obed was the father of Jesse.

1 Chronicles 2:13

General Information:

All of the names here are names of men. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

the second...the third

The word “son” is understood. Also, the numbers are in ordinal form. Alternate translation: “the second son...the third son” (See: [Ellipsis](#) and [Ordinal Numbers](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [Jesse](#)
- [firstborn](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [Jesse](#)
- [firstborn](#)

ULT

¹³ Jesse became the father of his firstborn Eliab, Abinadab the second, Shimea the third,

UST

¹³ Jesse’s oldest son was Eliab. His other sons were Abinadab, Shimea,

1 Chronicles 2:14

Nethanel...Raddai

These are names of men. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

the fourth...the fifth

The word “son” is understood. Also, the numbers are in ordinal form. Alternate translation: “the fourth son...the fifth son” (See: [Ellipsis](#) and [Ordinal Numbers](#))

ULT

¹⁴ Nethanel the fourth, Raddai the fifth,

UST

¹⁴ Nethanel, Raddai,

1 Chronicles 2:15

Ozem...David

These are names of men. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

the sixth...the seventh

The word “son” is understood. Also, the numbers are in ordinal form. Alternate translation: “the sixth son...the seventh son” (See: [Ellipsis](#) and [Ordinal Numbers](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [David](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [David](#)

ULT

¹⁵ Ozem the sixth, and David the seventh.

UST

¹⁵ Ozem. The youngest was David.

1 Chronicles 2:16

General Information:

All names here except Zeruiah and Abigail are the names of men. Zeruiah and Abigail are the names of women. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [son](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [son](#)

ULT

16 Their sisters were Zeruiah and Abigail. The sons of Zeruiah were Abishai, Joab, and Asahel, three of them.

UST

16 Their sisters were Zeruiah and Abigail. Zeruiah's three sons were Abishai, Joab, and Asahel.

1 Chronicles 2:17

Amasa...Jether

These are names of men. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

Jether the Ishmaelite

"Jether, a descendant of Ishmael"

Translation Words - ULT

- ancestor, father, fathered, forefather, grandfather

Translation Words - UST

- ancestor, father, fathered, forefather, grandfather

ULT

¹⁷ Abigail bore Amasa, whose father was Jether the Ishmaelite.

UST

¹⁷ Abigail's husband was Jether, a descendant of Ishmael, and their son was Amasa,

Descendants of Hezron

1 Chronicles 2:18

Caleb...Hezron...Jesher...Shobab...Ardon

These are names of men. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

Azubah...Jerioth

These are names of women. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- son
- son

Translation Words - UST

- son
- son

ULT

18 Caleb son of Hezron became the father of children by Azubah, his wife, and by Jerioth. His sons were Jesher, Shobab, and Ardon.

UST

18 Hezron's younger son Caleb had two wives. One of them, Azubah, gave birth to three sons, Jesher, Shobab, and Ardon. (The other wife's name was Jerioth.)

1 Chronicles 2:19

Caleb...Hur

These are names of men. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

Azubah...Ephrath

These are names of women. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- die, dead, deadly, death,

Translation Words - UST

- die, dead, deadly, death,

ULT

¹⁹ Azubah died, and then Caleb married Ephrath, who bore him Hur.

UST

¹⁹ When Azubah died, Caleb married Ephrath. Their son was Hur.

1 Chronicles 2:20

Hur...Uri...Bezalel

These are names of men. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

ULT

²⁰ Hur became the father of Uri, and Uri became the father of Bezalel.

UST

²⁰ Hur was the father of Uri, and Uri was the father of Bezalel.

1 Chronicles 2:21

General Information:

All names in this list are the names of men. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

bore him

“gave birth to”

Translation Words - ULT

- [son](#)
- [ancestor, father, fathered, forefather, grandfather](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [son](#)
- [ancestor, father, fathered, forefather, grandfather](#)

ULT

²¹ Later Hezron (when he was sixty years old) married the daughter of Makir, the father of Gilead. She bore him Segub.

UST

²¹ When Hezron was sixty years old, he married a daughter of Makir, who was also the father of Gilead. The son of Hezron and Makir was Segub.

1 Chronicles 2:22

Segub...Jair

These are names of men. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

land of Gilead

People gave the land the name of the man.

Translation Words - ULT

- [Gilead](#), [Gileadite](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [Gilead](#), [Gileadite](#)

ULT

²² Segub became the father of Jair, who controlled twenty-three cities in the land of Gilead.

UST

²² Segub was the father of Jair. Jair's army controlled twenty-three cities in the region ruled by Gilead.

1 Chronicles 2:23

Geshur...Aram

These are names of people groups named after ancestors. Translate "Aram" as in [1 Chronicles 1:17](#).

Havvoth Jair and Kenath

These are the names of places. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

Makir...Gilead

These are names of men. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [son](#)
- [ancestor, father, fathered, forefather, grandfather](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [son](#)
- [ancestor, father, fathered, forefather, grandfather](#)

ULT

23 Geshur and Aram took Havvoth Jair and Kenath, as well as sixty surrounding towns. All these inhabitants were descendants of Makir, the father of Gilead.

UST

23 But the armies of Geshur and Aram captured those towns controlled by Jair. They also captured the city of Kenath and the nearby towns; altogether they captured sixty towns. The people who lived there were all descendants of Makir, the father of Gilead.

1 Chronicles 2:24

Hezron...Caleb...Ashhur...Tekoa

These are names of men. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

Caleb went in to Ephrathah

This is a euphemism. Alternate translation: "Caleb had sexual relations with Ephrathah" (See: [Euphemism](#))

Ephrathah

This is the name of a woman. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

bore him

"gave birth to his son"

Translation Words - ULT

- [ancestor](#), [father](#), [fathered](#), [forefather](#), [grandfather](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [ancestor](#), [father](#), [fathered](#), [forefather](#), [grandfather](#)

ULT

²⁴ After the death of Hezron, Caleb went in to Ephrathah, the wife of his father Hezron. She bore him Ashhur, the father of Tekoa. ^[2]

UST

²⁴ Shortly after Hezron died, Caleb slept with Ephrathah, his father's widow. She bore a son for Caleb, whose name was Ashhur. Ashhur became the father of Tekoa.

Jerahmeel's descendants

1 Chronicles 2:25

Jerahmeel...Hezron...Ram...Bunah, Oren, Ozem, and Ahijah

These are names of men. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [son](#)
- [firstborn](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [son](#)
- [firstborn](#)

ULT

²⁵ The sons of Jerahmeel, the firstborn of Hezron, were Ram the firstborn, Bunah, Oren, Ozem, and Ahijah.

UST

²⁵ Hezron's oldest son was Jerahmeel. His sons were Ram, Bunah, Oren, Ozem, and Ahijah. Jerahmeel's oldest son was Ram.

1 Chronicles 2:26

Jerahmeel...Onam

These are names of men. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

Atarah

This is the name of a woman. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

ULT

²⁶ Jerahmeel had another wife, whose name was Atarah. She was the mother of Onam.

UST

²⁶ Jerahmeel had another wife named Atarah. Their son was Onam.

1 Chronicles 2:27

Ram...Jerahmeel...Maaz, Jamin, and Eker

These are names of men. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- son
- firstborn

Translation Words - UST

- son
- firstborn

ULT

²⁷ The sons of Ram, the firstborn of Jerahmeel, were Maaz, Jamin, and Eker.

UST

²⁷ The sons of Ram, Jerahmeel's oldest son, were Maaz, Jamin, and Eker.

1 Chronicles 2:28

Onam...Shammai...Jada...Nadab...Abishur

These are names of men. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- son
- son

Translation Words - UST

- son
- son

ULT

²⁸ The sons of Onam were Shammai and Jada. The sons of Shammai were Nadab and Abishur.

UST

²⁸ Onam's sons were Shammai and Jada. Shammai's sons were Nadab and Abishur.

1 Chronicles 2:29

Abishur...Ahban...Molid

These are names of men. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

Abihail

This is the name of a woman. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

ULT

²⁹ The name of the wife of Abishur was Abihail, and she bore him Ahban and Molid.

UST

²⁹ Abishur's wife was Abihail. The sons of Abishur and Abihail were Ahban and Molid.

1 Chronicles 2:30

Nadab...Seled...Appaim

These are names of men. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- son
- son
- die, dead, deadly, death,

Translation Words - UST

- son
- son
- die, dead, deadly, death,

ULT

³⁰ The sons of Nadab were Seled and Appaim, but Seled died without children.

UST

³⁰ Nadab's sons were Seled and Appaim. Seled did not have any children.

1 Chronicles 2:31

Appaim...Ishi...Sheshan...Ahlai

These are names of men. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- son
- son
- son (2)

Translation Words - UST

- son
- son
- son (2)

ULT

³¹ The son of Appaim was Ishi. The son of Ishi was Sheshan. The son of Sheshan was Ahlai.

UST

³¹ Appaim's son was Ishi; Ishi's son was Sheshan. One of Sheshan's daughters was Ahlai.

1 Chronicles 2:32

Jada...Shammai...Jether...Jonathan

These are names of men. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- brother
- son
- son
- die, dead, deadly, death,

Translation Words - UST

- brother
- son
- son
- die, dead, deadly, death,

ULT

³² The sons of Jada, the brother of Shammai, were Jether and Jonathan. Jether died without children.

UST

³² Shammai's younger brother was Jada. Jada's sons were Jether and Jonathan. Jether did not have any children.

1 Chronicles 2:33

Jonathan...Peleth...Zaza...Jerahmeel

These are names of men. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- son
- son

Translation Words - UST

- son
- son

ULT

³³ The sons of Jonathan were Peleth and Zaza. These were the descendants of Jerahmeel.

UST

³³ Jonathan's sons were Peleth and Zaza. Those were the descendants of Jerahmeel.

1 Chronicles 2:34

Sheshan...Jarha

These are names of men. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- son
- servant, serve, slave, worker, young man, young women

Translation Words - UST

- son
- servant, serve, slave, worker, young man, young women

ULT

³⁴ Now Sheshan had no sons, only daughters. Sheshan had a servant, an Egyptian, whose name was Jarha.

UST

³⁴ Sheshan did not have any sons; he had only daughters. He had a servant from Egypt whose name was Jarha.

1 Chronicles 2:35

Sheshan...Jarha...Attai

These are names of men. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

bore him

“gave birth to his son”

Translation Words - ULT

- [servant](#), [serve](#), [slave](#), [worker](#), [young man](#), [young women](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [servant](#), [serve](#), [slave](#), [worker](#), [young man](#), [young women](#)

ULT

³⁵ Sheshan gave his daughter to Jarha his servant as his wife. She bore him Attai.

UST

³⁵ Sheshan allowed his daughter to marry Jarha, and their son was Attai.

1 Chronicles 2:36

Attai...Nathan...Zabad

These are names of men. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

ULT

³⁶ Attai became the father of Nathan,
and Nathan became the father of
Zabad.

UST

³⁶ Attai was the father of Nathan.
Nathan was the father of Zabad.

1 Chronicles 2:37

Zabad...Ephlal...Obed

These are names of men. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

ULT

³⁷ Zabad became the father of Ephlal, and Ephlal became the father of Obed.

UST

³⁷ Zabad was the father of Ephlal. Ephlal was the father of Obed.

1 Chronicles 2:38

Obed...Jehu...Azariah

These are names of men. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

ULT

³⁸ Obed became the father of Jehu, and Jehu became the father of Azariah.

UST

³⁸ Obed was the father of Jehu. Jehu was the father of Azariah.

1 Chronicles 2:39

Azariah...Helez...Eleasah

These are names of men. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

ULT

³⁹ Azariah became the father of Helez, and Helez became the father of Eleasah.

UST

³⁹ Azariah was the father of Helez. Helez was the father of Eleasah.

1 Chronicles 2:40

Eleasah...Sismai...Shallum

These are names of men. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

ULT

⁴⁰ Eleasah became the father of Sismai, and Sismai became the father of Shallum.

UST

⁴⁰ Eleasah was the father of Sismai. Sismai was the father of Shallum.

1 Chronicles 2:41

Shallum...Jekamiah...Elishama

These are names of men. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

ULT

⁴¹ Shallum became the father of Jekamiah, and Jekamiah became the father of Elishama.

UST

⁴¹ Shallum was the father of Jekamiah. And Jekamiah was the father of Elishama.

Caleb's descendants

1 Chronicles 2:42

Caleb...Jerahmeel...Mesha...Ziph...Mareshah...Hebron

These are names of men. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

the father of Hebron

Some versions read, "the founder of the clan of Hebron"

Translation Words - ULT

- brother
- son
- son
- ancestor, father, fathered, forefather, grandfather
- ancestor, father, fathered, forefather, grandfather
- firstborn

Translation Words - UST

- brother
- son
- son
- ancestor, father, fathered, forefather, grandfather
- ancestor, father, fathered, forefather, grandfather
- firstborn

ULT

⁴² The sons of Caleb, the brother of Jerahmeel, were Mesha his firstborn, who was the father of Ziph. His second son, Mareshah, was the father of Hebron.

UST

⁴² Jerahmeel's younger brother was Caleb. Caleb's oldest son was Mesha. Mesha was the father of Ziph. Ziph was the father of Mareshah. Mareshah was the father of Hebron.

1 Chronicles 2:43

Hebron...Korah, Tappuah, Rekem, and Shema

These are names of men. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [son](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [son](#)

ULT

⁴³ The sons of Hebron were Korah, Tappuah, Rekem, and Shema.

UST

⁴³ Hebron's sons were Korah, Tappuah, Rekem, and Shema.

1 Chronicles 2:44

Shema...Raham...Jorkeam...Rekem...Shammai

These are names of men. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

the father of Raham, the father of Jorkeam...the father of Shammai

Some versions read, "the founder of the clan of Hebron...the founder of the clan of Raham, the founder of the clan of Jorkeam...the founder of the clan of Shammai."

Translation Words - ULT

- [ancestor](#), [father](#), [fathered](#), [forefather](#), [grandfather](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [ancestor](#), [father](#), [fathered](#), [forefather](#), [grandfather](#)

ULT

⁴⁴ Shema became the father of Raham, the father of Jorkeam. Rekem became the father of Shammai.

UST

⁴⁴ Shema was the father of Raham. Raham was the father of Jorkeam. Rekem was the father of Shammai.

1 Chronicles 2:45

Shammai...Maon...Beth Zur

These are names of men. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- son
- ancestor, father, fathered, forefather, grandfather

Translation Words - UST

- son
- ancestor, father, fathered, forefather, grandfather

ULT

⁴⁵ The son of Shammai was Maon, and Maon was the father of Beth Zur.

UST

⁴⁵ Shammai was the father of Maon. Maon was the father of Beth Zur.

1 Chronicles 2:46

Caleb...Haran...Moza...Gazez

These are names of men. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

Ephah

This is the name of a woman. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

ULT

⁴⁶ Ephah, Caleb's concubine, bore Haran, Moza, and Gazez. Haran became the father of Gazez.

UST

⁴⁶ Caleb had a slave wife who was named Ephah. Caleb and Ephah's sons were Haran, Moza, and Gazez. Haran had a son whom he also named Gazez.

1 Chronicles 2:47

Jahdai...Regem, Jotham, Geshan, Pelet, Ephah, and Shaaph

These are names of men. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [son](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [son](#)

ULT

⁴⁷ The sons of Jahdai were Regem, Jotham, Geshan, Pelet, Ephah, and Shaaph.

UST

⁴⁷ Ephah's father was Jahdai. Jahdai was the father of six sons: Regem, Jotham, Geshan, Pelet, Ephah, and Shaaph.

1 Chronicles 2:48

Caleb...Sheber...Tirhanah

These are names of men. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

Maakah

This is the name of a woman. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

ULT

⁴⁸ Maakah, Caleb's concubine, bore Sheber and Tirhanah.

UST

⁴⁸ Caleb had another slave wife whose name was Maacah. Caleb and Maacah's sons were Sheber, Tirhanah,

1 Chronicles 2:49

She also bore

"She also gave birth to"

Shaaph...Madmannah...Sheva...Makbenah...Gibea...Caleb

These are names of men. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

Aksah

This is the name of a woman. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- ancestor, father, fathered, forefather, grandfather
- ancestor, father, fathered, forefather, grandfather
- ancestor, father, fathered, forefather, grandfather

Translation Words - UST

- ancestor, father, fathered, forefather, grandfather
- ancestor, father, fathered, forefather, grandfather
- ancestor, father, fathered, forefather, grandfather

ULT

⁴⁹ She also bore Shaaph the father of Madmannah, Sheva the father of Makbenah and the father of Gibea. The daughter of Caleb was Aksah. These were the descendants of Caleb.

UST

⁴⁹ Shaaph, and Sheva. Shaaph was the father of Madmannah. Sheva was the father of Makbenah and Gibea. Caleb's daughter was Aksah.

1 Chronicles 2:50

Hur...Shobal

These are names of men. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

Ephrathah

This is the name of a woman. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

father of Kiriath Jearim

Kiriath Jearim is the name of a town. The name of the town is a metonym for the people who live in the town. Alternate translation: "founder of Kiriath Jearim" (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- son
- son
- ancestor, father, fathered, forefather, grandfather
- firstborn

Translation Words - UST

- son
- son
- ancestor, father, fathered, forefather, grandfather
- firstborn

ULT

⁵⁰ These were the sons of Hur, his firstborn by Ephrathah: Shobal the father of Kiriath Jearim,

UST

⁵⁰⁻⁵¹ These people were also descendants of Caleb: Caleb had another wife whose name was Ephrathah. Their oldest son was Hur. Hur's sons were Shobal, Salma, and Hareph. Shobal started the city of Kiriath Jearim. Salma started the city of Bethlehem. Hareph started the city of Beth Gader.

1 Chronicles 2:51

Salma...Hareph

These are names of men. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

father of Bethlehem...father of Beth Gader

Bethlehem and Beth Gader are the names of towns. The names of the towns are metonyms for the people who live in the towns. Alternate translation: "founder of Bethlehem...founder of Beth Gader" (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- ancestor, father, fathered, forefather, grandfather
- ancestor, father, fathered, forefather, grandfather

Translation Words - UST

- ancestor, father, fathered, forefather, grandfather
- ancestor, father, fathered, forefather, grandfather

ULT

51 Salma the father of Bethlehem, and Hareph the father of Beth Gader.

UST

50-51 These people were also descendants of Caleb: Caleb had another wife whose name was Ephrathah. Their oldest son was Hur. Hur's sons were Shobal, Salma, and Hareph. Shobal started the city of Kiriath Jearim. Salma started the city of Bethlehem. Hareph started the city of Beth Gader.

1 Chronicles 2:52

General Information:

See: [How to Translate Names](#)

Shobal the father of Kiriath Jearim

Shobal is the name of a man, and Kiriath Jearim is the name of a town. See how you translated this in [1 Chronicles 2:50](#). (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

Manahathites

This is the name of a clan.

Translation Words - ULT

- [son](#)
- [ancestor, father, fathered, forefather, grandfather](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [son](#)
- [ancestor, father, fathered, forefather, grandfather](#)

ULT

⁵² Shobal the father of Kiriath Jearim had descendants: Haroeh, half of the Manahathites,

UST

⁵² Shobal's descendants were Haroeh, and half of the Manahath people group.

1 Chronicles 2:53

Ithrites, Puthites, Shumathites...Mishraites... Zorathites...Eshtaolites

These are the names of clans.

Translation Words - ULT

- family, household
- know, knowledge, unknown, distinguish

Translation Words - UST

- family, household
- know, knowledge, unknown, distinguish

ULT

⁵³ and the clans of Kiriath Jearim: the Ithrites, Puthites, Shumathites, and Mishraites. The Zorathites and Eshtaolites descended from these.

UST

⁵³ His descendants also included these clans that lived in Kiriath Jearim: Ithri, Put, Shumath, and Mishra. The clans of Zorath and Eshtaol were descendants of the clan of Mishra.

1 Chronicles 2:54

Salma

This is the name of a man. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

Bethlehem

This is the name of a town where Salma's descendants settled and represents the people living in that town. Alternate translation: "the people of Bethlehem" (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

Netophathites...Atroth Beth Joab...Manahathites... Zorites

These are names of clans. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [son](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [son](#)

ULT

⁵⁴ The descendants of Salma were Bethlehem, the Netophathites, Atroth Beth Joab, and half of the Manahathites —the Zorites,

UST

⁵⁴ Salma's descendants were the people of Bethlehem, the clan of Netophath, the clan of Atroth Beth Joab, and the half the clan of Manahath, who were also Zorites.

1 Chronicles 2:55

Jabez

This is the name of a town. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

Tirathites...Shimeathites...Sucathites...Kenites

These are names of clans. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

the Kenites who came from Hammath

“the Kenites who descended from Hamath”

Hammath...Rekab

These are names of men. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [scribe](#)
- [ancestor, father, fathered, forefather, grandfather](#)
- [family, household](#)
- [house](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [scribe](#)
- [ancestor, father, fathered, forefather, grandfather](#)
- [family, household](#)
- [house](#)

ULT

55 and the clans of the scribes who lived at Jabez: the Tirathites, Shimeathites, and Sucathites. These were the Kenites who came from Hammath, father of the house of Rekab.

2:7 ^[1] Some versions have *Achan* instead of *Achar* .

2:24 ^[2] Some versions read, *After Hezron's death in Caleb Ephrathah, his wife Abijah bore him a son, Ashhur the father of Tekoa* .

UST

55 Salma's descendants also included the families in the city of Jabez who wrote and copied important documents. These were the clan of Tirath, the clan of Shimeath, and the clan of Sucath. They were all from the Kenite people group who descended from Hammath, the ancestor of the family of Rekab.

1 Chronicles 3

1 Chronicles 3 General Notes

Structure and formatting

This chapter records the descendants of King David.

1 Chronicles 3:1

David

David was a son of Jesse, who was a descendant of Judah ([1 Chronicles 2:15](#)).

Ahinoam...Abigail

These are the names of women who were David's wives. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

Daniel

This man has the same name as an Israelite prophet but is a different person.

Translation Words - ULT

- [son](#)
- [David](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [son](#)
- [David](#)

ULT

¹ Now these are the sons of David who were born to him in Hebron: the firstborn was Amnon, by Ahinoam from Jezreel; the second was Daniel, by Abigail from Carmel;

UST

¹ Six sons of King David were born in the city of Hebron. His oldest son was Amnon, whose mother Ahinoam was from the city of Jezreel. His next son was Daniel, whose mother was Abigail from the city of Carmel.

1 Chronicles 3:2

Maakah...Haggith

These are the names of women who were David's wives. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

Talmai

This is the name of a man. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [son](#)
- [son](#)
- [king, kingdom, kingship](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [son](#)
- [son](#)
- [king, kingdom, kingship](#)

ULT

² the third was Absalom, whose mother was Maakah, daughter of Talmai king of Geshur. The fourth was Adonijah son of Haggith;

UST

² His next son was Absalom, whose mother was Maacah, the daughter of Talmai, the king who ruled in the city of Geshur. His next son was Adonijah, whose mother was Haggith.

1 Chronicles 3:3

Abital...Eglah

These are the names of women who were David's wives. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

Shephatiah...Ithream

These are the names of men. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

ULT

³ the fifth was Shephatiah by Abital; the sixth was Ithream by Eglah his wife.

UST

³ The next son was Shephatiah, whose mother was Abital. His youngest son was Ithream, whose mother was Eglah.

1 Chronicles 3:4

where he reigned seven years and six months

This can also be translated as a separate sentence. Alternate translation: "David reigned there seven years and six months"

thirty-three years

"33 years" (See: [Numbers](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [Jerusalem](#)
- [reign, rule](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [Jerusalem](#)
- [reign, rule](#)

ULT

⁴ These six were born to David in Hebron, where he reigned seven years and six months. He then ruled thirty-three years in Jerusalem.

UST

⁴ They were all born in Hebron, where David ruled for seven and one-half years. After that, David ruled in Jerusalem for thirty-three years.

1 Chronicles 3:5

Ammiel...Shammua...Shobab...Nathan

These are names of men. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [Jerusalem](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [Jerusalem](#)

ULT

⁵ These four sons, by Bathsheba daughter of Ammiel, were born to him in Jerusalem: Shammua, Shobab, Nathan, and Solomon. ^[1]

UST

⁵ Many of David's children were born in Jerusalem. Bathshua, daughter of Ammiel, gave birth to four of his sons: Shammua, Shobab, Nathan, and Solomon.

1 Chronicles 3:6

Ibhar, Elishua, Eliphelet

These are names of men. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

ULT

⁶ David's other nine sons were: Ibhar, Elishua, Eliphelet,

UST

⁶ Nine other sons of David were also born there. They were Ibhar, Elishua, Elphelet,

1 Chronicles 3:7

Nogah, Nepheg, Japhia

These are names of men. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

ULT

⁷ Nogah, Nepheg, Japhia,

UST

⁷ Nogah, Nepheg, Japhia,

1 Chronicles 3:8

Elishama...Eliada...Eliphelet

These are names of men. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

ULT

⁸ Elishama, Eliada, and Eliphelet.

UST

⁸ Elishama, Eliada, and Eliphelet.

1 Chronicles 3:9

Tamar

This is the name of a woman. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [son](#)
- [son](#)
- [David](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [son](#)
- [son](#)
- [David](#)

ULT

⁹ These were David's sons, not including the sons by his concubines. Tamar was their sister.

UST

⁹ In addition to all those sons, David's slave wives also gave birth to sons. David also had a daughter named Tamar.

The kings of Judah

1 Chronicles 3:10

General Information:

This is the beginning of the list of David's descendants who became king. All of the names in this list are the names of men. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

Solomon's son was Rehoboam. Rehoboam's son was Abijah

Solomon had more than one son. The same is true of other men in the list. Alternate translation: "Solomon was the father of Rehoboam. Rehoboam was the father of Abijah"

Translation Words - ULT

- [son](#)
- [son](#)
- [son](#)
- [son](#)
- [Solomon](#)
- [Jehoshaphat](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [son](#)
- [son](#)
- [son](#)
- [son](#)
- [Solomon](#)
- [Jehoshaphat](#)

ULT

¹⁰ Solomon's son was Rehoboam. Rehoboam's son was Abijah. Abijah's son was Asa. Asa's son was Jehoshaphat.

UST

¹⁰ Solomon's son was King Rehoboam. Rehoboam's son was King Abijah. Abijah's son was King Asa. Asa's son was King Jehoshaphat.

1 Chronicles 3:11

General Information:

This continues the list of David's descendants who became king. All of the names in this list are the names of men. Form these sentences as you did starting in [1 Chronicles 3:10](#).

Translation Words - ULT

- son
- son
- son

Translation Words - UST

- son
- son
- son

ULT

¹¹ Jehoshaphat's son was Jehoram.
Jehoram's son was Ahaziah. Ahaziah's son was Joash.

UST

¹¹ Jehoshaphat's son was King Jehoram.
Jehoram's son was King Ahaziah.
Ahaziah's son was King Joash.

1 Chronicles 3:12

General Information:

This continues the list of David's descendants who became king. All of the names in this list are the names of men. Form these sentences as you did starting in [1 Chronicles 3:10](#).

Azariah

This was another name for Uzziah, the better-known name for this king. Translators may decide to use "Uzziah" everywhere for this king.

Translation Words - ULT

- son
- son
- son

Translation Words - UST

- son
- son
- son

ULT

¹² Joash's son was Amaziah. Amaziah's son was Azariah. Azariah's son was Jotham.

UST

¹² Joash's son was King Amaziah. Amaziah's son was King Azariah. Azariah's son was King Jotham.

1 Chronicles 3:13

General Information:

This continues the list of David's descendants who became king. All of the names in this list are the names of men. Form these sentences as you did starting in [1 Chronicles 3:10](#).

Translation Words - ULT

- son
- son
- son

Translation Words - UST

- son
- son
- son

ULT

¹³ Jotham's son was Ahaz. Ahaz's son was Hezekiah. Hezekiah's son was Manasseh.

UST

¹³ Jotham's son was King Ahaz. Ahaz's son was King Hezekiah. Hezekiah's son was King Manasseh.

1 Chronicles 3:14

General Information:

This continues the list of David's descendants who became king. All of the names in this list are the names of men. Form these sentences as you did starting in [1 Chronicles 3:10](#).

Translation Words - ULT

- son
- son

Translation Words - UST

- son
- son

ULT

14 Manasseh's son was Amon. Amon's son was Josiah.

UST

14 Manasseh's son was King Amon.
Amon's son was King Josiah.

1 Chronicles 3:15

General Information:

This continues the list of David's descendants who became king. All of the names in this list are the names of men. Form these sentences as you did starting in [1 Chronicles 3:10](#).

Translation Words - ULT

- [son](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [son](#)

ULT

¹⁵ Josiah's sons were his firstborn Johanan, his second son Jehoiakim, his third son Zedekiah, and his fourth son Shallum.

UST

¹⁵ Josiah's oldest son was Johanan. His other sons were Jehoiakim, Zedekiah, and Shallum.

1 Chronicles 3:16

General Information:

This continues the list of David's descendants who became king. All of the names in this list are the names of men. Form these sentences as you did starting in [1 Chronicles 3:10](#).

Translation Words - ULT

- son
- son
- son

Translation Words - UST

- son
- son
- son

ULT

¹⁶ Jehoia¹⁶kim's sons were Jehoiachin and Zedekiah.

UST

¹⁶ Jehoia¹⁶kim's son was Jehoiachin. The last king was Zedekiah.

Other descendants of King David after the people of Judah were exiled

1 Chronicles 3:17

Jehoiachin...Shealtiel

These are names of men. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

Jehoiachin

Some versions have "Jeconiah," which is a variation of "Jehoiachin."

the captive

This may be a title that was given to Jehoiachin because he was taken into captivity. However, some versions regard the word as "Assir," the name of one of his sons.

Translation Words - ULT

- [son](#)
- [son](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [son](#)
- [son](#)

ULT

17 The sons of Jehoiachin, the captive, were Shealtiel,

UST

17 Jehoiachin was captured and taken to Babylon. His sons were Shealtiel,

1 Chronicles 3:18

General Information:

These are all names of men. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

ULT

¹⁸ Malkiram, Pedaiah, Shenazzar,
Jekamiah, Hoshama, and Nedabiah.

UST

¹⁸ Malkiram, Pedaiah, Shenazzar,
Jekamiah, Hoshama, and Nedabiah.

1 Chronicles 3:19

General Information:

All of the names in this list except Shelomith are the names of men. Shelomith is a woman's name. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- son
- son
- Zerubbabel
- Zerubbabel

Translation Words - UST

- son
- son
- Zerubbabel
- Zerubbabel

ULT

19 Pedaiah's sons were Zerubbabel and Shimei. Zerubbabel's sons were Meshullam and Hananiah; Shelomith was their sister.

UST

19 Pedaiah's sons were Zerubbabel and Shimei. Two of Zerubbabel's sons were Meshullam and Hananiah, and their sister was Shelomith.

1 Chronicles 3:20

General Information:

These are all names of men. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

ULT

²⁰ His other five sons were Hashubah, Ohel, Berekiah, Hasadiah, and Jushab-Hesed.

UST

²⁰ Zerubbabel's five other sons were Hashubah, Ohel, Berekiah, Hasadiah, and Jushab-Hesed.

1 Chronicles 3:21

General Information:

These are all names of men. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

Obadiah

This man has the same name as the prophet Obadiah but is a different person. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

further descendants were Arnan, Obadiah, and Shekaniah

Different versions put these people into different relationships with each other because the Hebrew is not very clear about them.

Translation Words - ULT

- son
- son
- son
- son
- son (2)

Translation Words - UST

- son
- son
- son
- son
- son (2)

ULT

²¹ Hananiah's sons were Pelatiah and Jeshaiah. His son was Rephaiah, and further descendants were Arnan, Obadiah, and Shekaniah.

UST

²¹ The sons of Hananiah were Pelatiah and Jeshaiah. Jeshaiah's son was Rephaiah. After him, other descendants of Hananiah were Arnan, Obadiah, and Shecaniah.

1 Chronicles 3:22

General Information:

All of the names in this list are the names of men. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [son](#)
- [son](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [son](#)
- [son](#)

ULT

²² Shekaniah's son was Shemaiah.
Shemaiah's sons were Hattush, Igal,
Bariah, Neariah, and Shaphat.

UST

²² Shecaniah's son was Shemaiah.
Shemaiah's five sons were Hattush, Igal,
Bariah, Neariah, and Shaphat.

1 Chronicles 3:23

General Information:

These are all names of men. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [son](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [son](#)

ULT

²³ Neariah's three sons were Elioenai, Hizkiah, and Azrikam.

UST

²³ Neariah's three sons were Elioenai, Hizkiah, and Azrikam.

1 Chronicles 3:24

General Information:

These are all names of men. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [son](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [son](#)

ULT

24 Elioenai's seven sons were Hodaviah, Eliashib, Pelaiah, Akkub, Johanan, Delaiah, and Anani.

3:5 ^[1] Some versions have *Bathseba* or *Bathshua* instead of *Bathsheba* .

UST

24 Elioenai's seven sons were Hodaviah, Eliashib, Pelaiah, Akkub, Johanan, Delaiah, and Anani.

1 Chronicles 4

1 Chronicles 4 General Notes

Structure and formatting

This chapter records the other descendants of Judah.

1 Chronicles 4:1

General Information:

All of the names in this list are the names of men. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [son](#)
- [Judea](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [son](#)
- [Judea](#)

ULT

¹ Judah's descendants were Perez, Hezron, Karmi, Hur, and Shobal.

UST

¹ The descendants of Judah were Perez, Hezron, Karmi, Hur, and Shobal.

1 Chronicles 4:2

General Information:

All of the names in this list except the Zorathites are the names of men. Zorathites is the name of a people group who took their name from the town of Zorah where they lived. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- son
- family, household

Translation Words - UST

- son
- family, household

ULT

² Shobal was the father of Reaiah. Reaiah was the father of Jahath. Jahath was the father of Ahumai and Lahad. These were of the clans of the Zorathites.

UST

² Shobal's son was Reaiah. Reaiah was the father of Jahath, and Jahath was the father of Ahumai and Lahad. They were the ancestors of the Zorath people group.

1 Chronicles 4:3

Jezreel...Ishma...Idbash

These are names of men. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

Hazzelelponi

This is the name of a woman. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- ancestor, father, fathered, forefather, grandfather

Translation Words - UST

- ancestor, father, fathered, forefather, grandfather

ULT

³ These were the ancestors of the clans in the city of Etam: Jezreel, Ishma, and Idbash. Their sister's name was Hazzelelponi.

UST

³ What follows are the names of the three men who started the clans that lived in the city of Etam: Jezreel, Ishma, and Idbash—and they had a sister named Hazzelelponi.

1 Chronicles 4:4

Gedor...Hushah

These are names of cities. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

Peniel...Ezer...Hur

These are the names of men. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

These were descendants of Hur

"Peniel and Ezer were descendants of Hur." This points forward to the list that will follow.

Ephrathah

This is the name of a woman. See how you translated this in [1 Chronicles 2:50](#).

Translation Words - ULT

- [son](#)
- [ancestor, father, fathered, forefather, grandfather](#)
- [ancestor, father, fathered, forefather, grandfather](#) (2)
- [ancestor, father, fathered, forefather, grandfather](#)
- [firstborn](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [son](#)
- [ancestor, father, fathered, forefather, grandfather](#)
- [ancestor, father, fathered, forefather, grandfather](#) (2)
- [ancestor, father, fathered, forefather, grandfather](#)
- [firstborn](#)

ULT

⁴ Peniel was the ancestor of the clans in the city of Gedor. Ezer was the originator of the clans in Hushah. These were descendants of Hur, the firstborn of Ephrathah and the originator of Bethlehem.

UST

⁴ Hur was the firstborn son of Ephrathah; he founded the city of Bethlehem. Hur had these descendants: Penuel and Ezer. Penuel started the clans that lived in the city of Gedor, and Ezer started the clans living in the city of Hushah.

1 Chronicles 4:5

Ashhur...Tekoa

See how you translated these men's names in [1 Chronicles 2:24](#).

Helah...Naarah

These are the names of women. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [ancestor](#), [father](#), [fathered](#), [forefather](#), [grandfather](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [ancestor](#), [father](#), [fathered](#), [forefather](#), [grandfather](#)

ULT

⁵ Ashhur the father of Tekoa had two wives, Helah and Naarah.

UST

⁵ Hezron's son Ashhur, the father of Tekoa, had two wives whose names were Helah and Naarah.

1 Chronicles 4:6

bore him

“gave birth to his sons”

Ahuzzam...Hepher

These are names of men. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

Temeni...Haahashtari

These are understood here as the names of men. However, some versions understand them as the names of clans that were begun by the sons of Ashhur.

Translation Words - ULT

- [son](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [son](#)

ULT

⁶ Naarah bore him Ahuzzam, Hepher, Temeni, and Haahashtari. These were Naarah's sons.

UST

⁶ The sons of Asshur and his wife Naarah were Ahuzzam, Hepher, Temeni, and Haahashtari.

1 Chronicles 4:7

Zereth...Zohar...Ethnan

These are names of men. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [son](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [son](#)

ULT

⁷ Helah's sons were Zereth, Zohar, Ethnan,

UST

⁷ The sons of Ashhur and his wife Helah were Zereth, Zohar, Ethnan,

1 Chronicles 4:8

Koz...Anub...Hazzobebah...Aharhel...Harum

These are the names of men. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

and of the clans descended from Aharhel son of Harum

A new sentence can start here. "Koz also became the ancestor of Harum and the clans that descended from Harum's son Aharhel"

Translation Words - ULT

- [son](#)
- [family, household](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [son](#)
- [family, household](#)

ULT

⁸ and Koz, who became the father of Anub and Hazzobebah, and of the clans descended from Aharhel son of Harum.

UST

⁸ and Koz. Koz was the father of Anub, Hazzobebah, and the ancestor of the clans descended from Aharhel. Aharhel was the son of Harum.

1 Chronicles 4:9

Jabez

This is the name of a man. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [call, call out](#)
- [brother](#)
- [name](#)
- [burden, burdened, burdensome, heavy, hard work, hard labor, utterances](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [call, call out](#)
- [brother](#)
- [name](#)
- [burden, burdened, burdensome, heavy, hard work, hard labor, utterances](#)

ULT

⁹ Jabez was more respected than his brothers. His mother called him Jabez. She said, "Because I bore him in pain."

UST

⁹ There was another descendant of Judah whose name was Jabez. He was more respected than his brothers were. His mother named him Jabez which means 'pain' because she said, "I was enduring much pain when I gave birth to him."

1 Chronicles 4:10

expand my territory

“give me more land”

your hand will be with me

Possible meanings are that God’s hand is 1) a metonym for his guidance, his power, or his protection. Alternate translation: “you will guide me” or “you will make me prosper” or “you will protect me” or 2) a synecdoche for himself. Alternate translation: “you will be with me” (See: [Metonymy](#) and [Synecdoche](#))

granted him his prayer

The words “his prayer” are a metonym for what Jabez asked in the prayer. Alternate translation: “did what Jabez had asked him to do” (See: [Metonymy](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- bless, blessed, blessing
- bless, blessed, blessing
- God
- God
- Israel, Israelites
- hand
- declare, proclaim, announce

Translation Words - UST

- bless, blessed, blessing
- bless, blessed, blessing
- God
- God
- Israel, Israelites
- hand
- declare, proclaim, announce

ULT

¹⁰ Jabez called out to the God of Israel and said, “If only you would truly bless me, expand my territory, and your hand will be with me. When you do this you will keep me from harm, so that I may be free from pain!” So God granted him his prayer.

UST

¹⁰ One day he prayed to God whom his fellow Israelites worshiped, saying, “Please greatly bless me and increase my land. Remain with me, and do not allow anyone to harm me. If you do that for me, I will not have any pain.” And God did what Jabez requested him to do.

1 Chronicles 4:11

Kelub...Shuhah...Mehir...Eshton

These are names of men. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- brother
- ancestor, father, fathered, forefather, grandfather

Translation Words - UST

- brother
- ancestor, father, fathered, forefather, grandfather

ULT

11 Kelub brother of Shuhah became the father of Mehir, who was the father of Eshton.

UST

11 Another descendant of Judah was Shuhah. His younger brother Kelub was the father of Mehir. Mehir was the father of Eshton.

1 Chronicles 4:12

Eshton...Beth Rapha...Paseah...Tehinnah

These are names of men. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

Tehinnah, the father of Ir Nahash

It appears that Ir Nahash may have been a city. Alternate translation: "Tehinnah, the founder of the city of Nahash" (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

Nahash...Rekah

These are the names of places. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- ancestor, father, fathered, forefather, grandfather

Translation Words - UST

- ancestor, father, fathered, forefather, grandfather

ULT

¹² Eshton became the father of Beth Rapha, Paseah, and Tehinnah, the father of Ir Nahash. ^[1] These were men who lived in Rekah.

UST

¹² Eshton was the father of Beth Rapha, Paseah, and Tehinnah. Tehinnah started the city of Nahash, but their families lived in a place called Rekah.

1 Chronicles 4:13

General Information:

It may be helpful to create a verse bridge and to put verse 15 together with verse 13 since Kenaz was a descendant of Jephunneh and Caleb. (See: [Verse Bridges](#))

Kenaz...Othniel...Seraiah...Hathath...Meonothai

These are names of men. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [son](#)
- [son](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [son](#)
- [son](#)

ULT

13 Kenaz's sons were Othniel and Seraiah. Othniel's sons were Hathath and Meonothai. ^[2]

UST

13-15 Another descendant of Judah was Jephunneh. His son was Caleb. Caleb's sons were Iru, Elah, and Naam. Elah's son was Kenaz. The sons of Kenaz were Othniel and Seraiah. Othniel's sons were Hathath and Meonothai. Meonothai was the father of Ophrah. Seraiah was the father of Joab. Joab was the ancestor of the people who lived in Craftsmen's Valley. The valley was named that because many of the people who lived there were craftsmen.

1 Chronicles 4:14

Meonothai...Ophrah...Joab

These are names of men. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

Ge-Harashim, whose people were craftsmen

Ge-Harashim means "Valley of Craftsmen." This can be made explicit with an explanation. Alternate translation: "Ge-Harashim, which means 'Craftsmen's Valley.' It was called this because its people were craftsmen" (See: [How to Translate Names](#) and [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

craftsmen

people skilled at making or building things

Translation Words - ULT

- [ancestor](#), [father](#), [fathered](#), [forefather](#), [grandfather](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [ancestor](#), [father](#), [fathered](#), [forefather](#), [grandfather](#)

ULT

¹⁴ Meonothai became the father of Ophrah, and Seraiah became the father of Joab, the originator of Ge-Harashim, whose people were craftsmen.

UST

1 Chronicles 4:15

Jephunneh...Iru...Elah...Naam...Kenaz

These are names of men. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- son
- son
- son

Translation Words - UST

- son
- son
- son

ULT

15 The sons of Caleb son of Jephunneh were Iru, Elah and Naam. Elah's son was Kenaz.

UST

13-15 Another descendant of Judah was Jephunneh. His son was Caleb. Caleb's sons were Iru, Elah, and Naam. Elah's son was Kenaz. The sons of Kenaz were Othniel and Seraiah. Othniel's sons were Hathath and Meonothai. Meonothai was the father of Ophrah. Seraiah was the father of Joab. Joab was the ancestor of the people who lived in Craftsmen's Valley. The valley was named that because many of the people who lived there were craftsmen.

1 Chronicles 4:16

Jehallelel...Ziph...Ziphah...Tiria...Asarel

These are names of men. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [son](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [son](#)

ULT

16 Jehallelel's sons were Ziph, Ziphah, Tiria, and Asarel.

UST

16 Another descendant of Judah was Jehallelel. His sons were Ziph, Ziphah, Tiria, and Asarel.

1 Chronicles 4:17

General Information:

You may want to combine the information in 1 Chronicles 4:17-18 into one verse so its meaning can be more easily understood. (See: [Verse Bridges](#))

Ezrah...Jether...Mered...Epher...Jalon...Miriam... Shammai...Ishbah...Eshtemoa

These are the names of men. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

These were the sons of Bithiah

The word “these” refers to Miriam, Shammai, and Ishbah. They were the sons Bithiah bore for her husband Mered.

Bithiah

This is the name of a woman.

Translation Words - ULT

- [son](#)
- [ancestor](#), [father](#), [fathered](#), [forefather](#), [grandfather](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [son](#)
- [ancestor](#), [father](#), [fathered](#), [forefather](#), [grandfather](#)

ULT

17 Ezrah's sons were Jether, Mered, Epher, and Jalon. Mered's Egyptian wife bore Miriam, Shammai, and Ishbah, who became the father of Eshtemoa. These were the sons of Bithiah, daughter of Pharaoh, whom Mered married.

UST

17-18 Another descendant of Judah was Ezrah. Ezrah's sons were Jether, Mered, Epher, and Jalon. Mered married Bithiah, who was the daughter of the king of Egypt. The children of Mered and Bithiah were Miriam, Shammai and Ishbah. Ishbah was the father of Eshtemoa. Mered had a wife from Judah. She gave birth to Jered, Heber, and Jekuthiel. Jered was the father of Gedor; Heber was the father of Soko, and Jekuthiel was the father of Zanoah.

1 Chronicles 4:18

Jered...Gedor...Heber...Soko...Jekuthiel...Zanoah

These are the names of men. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

Mered's Judahite wife

The Hebrew text says, "His Judahite wife," but most versions understand "his" to refer to Mered. This refers to a different wife of Mered, in addition to Bithiah.

Translation Words - ULT

- [son](#)
- [ancestor, father, fathered, forefather, grandfather](#)
- [ancestor, father, fathered, forefather, grandfather](#)
- [ancestor, father, fathered, forefather, grandfather](#) (2)

Translation Words - UST

- [son](#)
- [ancestor, father, fathered, forefather, grandfather](#)
- [ancestor, father, fathered, forefather, grandfather](#)
- [ancestor, father, fathered, forefather, grandfather](#) (2)

ULT

18 Mered's Judahite wife bore Jered, who became the father of Gedor; Heber, who became the father of Soko; and Jekuthiel, who became the father of Zanoah.

UST

17-18 Another descendant of Judah was Ezra. Ezra's sons were Jether, Mered, Ephraim, and Jalon. Mered married Bithiah, who was the daughter of the king of Egypt. The children of Mered and Bithiah were Miriam, Shammai and Ishbah. Ishbah was the father of Eshtemoa. Mered had a wife from Judah. She gave birth to Jered, Heber, and Jekuthiel. Jered was the father of Gedor; Heber was the father of Soko, and Jekuthiel was the father of Zanoah.

1 Chronicles 4:19

Hodiah...Naham...Keilah...Eshtemoa

These are names of men. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

Garmite

someone from the Gar people group (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

Maakathite

someone from the region of Maacah, which is also called Maacath (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- son
- ancestor, father, fathered, forefather, grandfather

Translation Words - UST

- son
- ancestor, father, fathered, forefather, grandfather

ULT

19 Of the two sons of Hodiah's wife, sister of Naham, one became the father of Keilah the Garmite. The other was Eshtemoa the Maakathite.

UST

19 Hodiah's wife was Naham's sister. Hodiah's wife was the mother of two sons. One of them was the father of Keilah, the ancestor of the Gar people group, and the other one was the father of Eshtemoa, the ancestor of the Maacath people group.

1 Chronicles 4:20

**Shimon...Amnon...Rinnah...Ben-Hanan...Tilon...Ishi...
Zoheth...Ben-Zoheth**

These are names of men. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- son
- son (2)

Translation Words - UST

- son
- son (2)

ULT

²⁰ The sons of Shimon were Amnon, Rinnah, Ben-Hanan, and Tilon. The sons of Ishi were Zoheth and Ben-Zoheth.

UST

²⁰ Another descendant of Judah was Shimon. Shimon's sons were Amnon, Rinnah, Ben-Hanan, and Tilon. Another descendant of Judah was Ishi. His descendants were Zoheth and Ben-Zoheth.

1 Chronicles 4:21

Shelah...Er...Laadah

These are names of men. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

Lekah...Mareshah...Beth Ashbea

These are names of towns. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

linen workers

people who made clothing out of a fabric made from crushed reeds
(See: [Translate Unknowns](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- son
- son
- Judea
- ancestor, father, fathered, forefather, grandfather
- ancestor, father, fathered, forefather, grandfather (2)
- family, household
- house
- house

Translation Words - UST

- son
- son
- Judea
- ancestor, father, fathered, forefather, grandfather
- ancestor, father, fathered, forefather, grandfather (2)
- family, household
- house
- house

ULT

21 The descendants of Shelah son of Judah, were Er father of Lekah, Laadah father of Mareshah and the clans of the linen workers at Beth Ashbea,

UST

21 One of Judah's sons was Shelah. Shelah's descendants were Er the father of Lekah, Laadah the father of Mareshah and the families of those who made things from linen at Beth Ashbea,

1 Chronicles 4:22

Jokim...Joash...Saraph

These are names of men. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

Kozeba...Jashubi Lehem

These are names of towns. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

ULT

²² Jokim, the men of Kozeba, and Joash and Saraph, who ruled in Moab and Jashubi Lehem. (This information is from ancient records.)

UST

²² Jokim, and the men of the city of Kozeba, and Joash and Saraph, two men who married women from the region of Moab and ruled in Jashubi Lehem. All their names and a record of what they did are written in scrolls.

1 Chronicles 4:23

the potters

the people who make containers out of clay

Netaim...Gederah

These are names of towns. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- king, kingdom, kingship

Translation Words - UST

- king, kingdom, kingship

ULT

²³ These were the potters who lived in Netaim and Gederah and worked for the king.

UST

²³ Some of these descendants of Shelah made pottery for the king. Some of them lived in the city of Netaim, and some lived in the city of Gederah.

1 Chronicles 4:24

Nemuel...Jamin...Jarib...Zerah...Shaul

These are names of men. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [son](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [son](#)

ULT

²⁴ Simeon's descendants were Nemuel, Jamin, Jarib, Zerah, and Shaul.

UST

²⁴ Simeon's sons were Nemuel, Jamin, Jarib, Zerah, and Shaul.

1 Chronicles 4:25

Shallum...Mibsam...Mishma

These are names of men. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- son
- son
- son

Translation Words - UST

- son
- son
- son

ULT

²⁵ Shallum was Shaul's son, Mibsam was Shallum's son, and Mishma was Mibsam's son.

UST

²⁵ Shaul's son was Shallum. Shallum's son was Mibsam. Mibsam's son was Mishma.

1 Chronicles 4:26

Mishma...Hammuel...Zakkur...Shimei

These are names of men. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

Zakkur his grandson

the son of Mishma's son

great-grandson

the son of Mishma's grandson

Translation Words - ULT

- son
- son
- son
- son

Translation Words - UST

- son
- son
- son
- son

ULT

²⁶ Mishma's descendants were Hammuel his son, Zakkur his grandson, and Shimei his great-grandson.

UST

²⁶ Mishma's son was Hammuel. Hammuel's son was Zaccur. Zaccur's son was Shimei.

1 Chronicles 4:27

sixteen sons and six daughters

"16 sons and 6 daughters" (See: [Numbers](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- brother
- son
- son
- son
- Judea
- family, household

Translation Words - UST

- brother
- son
- son
- son
- Judea
- family, household

ULT

²⁷ Shimei had sixteen sons and six daughters. His brothers did not have many children, so their clans did not increase greatly in numbers as the people of Judah did.

UST

²⁷ Shimei had sixteen sons and six daughters, but none of his brothers had many children. So the descendants of Simeon never were as many as the descendants of his younger brother Judah.

1 Chronicles 4:28

Moladah...Hazar Shual

These are the names of towns. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

ULT

²⁸ They lived at Beersheba, Moladah, and at Hazar Shual.

UST

²⁸ The descendants of Simeon lived in these cities and towns: Beersheba, Moladah, Hazar Shual,

1 Chronicles 4:29

General Information:

The list of the cities where Simeon's descendants lived continues.

Bilhah...Ezem...Tolad

These are the names of towns. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

ULT

²⁹ They also live at Bilhah, Ezem, Tolad,

UST

²⁹ Bilhah, Ezem, Tolad,

1 Chronicles 4:30

Bethuel...Hormah...Ziklag

These are names of towns. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

ULT

³⁰ Bethuel, Hormah, Ziklag,

UST

³⁰ Bethuel, Hormah, Ziklag,

1 Chronicles 4:31

Beth Markaboth...Hazar Susim...Beth Biri...Shaaraim

These are names of towns. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [David](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [David](#)

ULT

³¹ Beth Markaboth, Hazar Susim, Beth Biri, and Shaaraim. These were their cities until the reign of David.

UST

³¹ Beth Markaboth, Hazar Susim, Beth Biri, and Shaaraim. They lived in those places until David became king.

1 Chronicles 4:32

General Information:

The list of places where Simeon's descendants lived continues.

Etam...Ain...Rimmon...Token...Ashan

These are the names of villages. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

ULT

³² Their five villages were Etam, Ain, Rimmon, Token, and Ashan,

UST

³² They also lived in villages near those towns: Etam, Ain, Rimmon, Token, and Ashan.

1 Chronicles 4:33

outlying villages

the villages that were near but outside the main town

Baalath

This is the name of a town. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [elder](#), [older](#), [old](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [elder](#), [older](#), [old](#)

ULT

³³ together with the outlying villages as far as Baalath. These were their settlements, and they kept the genealogical records.

UST

³³ There were other villages where they lived, as far southwest as the city of Baalath. Those were the places where they lived, and they wrote down the names of their family members.

1 Chronicles 4:34

Meshobab...Jamlech...Joshah...Amaziah

These are names of men. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [son](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [son](#)

ULT

34 Clan leaders were Meshobab, Jamlech, Joshah son of Amaziah,

UST

34-38 The men in the following list were the leaders of their clans: Meshobab, Jamlech, Joshah son of Amaziah, Joel, and Jehu son of Joshibiah. Joshibiah was son of Seraiah and grandson of Asiel. Other clan leaders were Elioenai, Jaakobah, Jeshohaiah, Asaiah, Adiel, Jesimiel, Benaiah, and Ziza. Ziza was son of Shiphi and grandson of Allon son of Jedaiah, who was the son of Shimri, who was son of Shemaiah. The members of those families became very numerous.

1 Chronicles 4:35

Joel...Jehu...Joshibiah...Seraiah...Asiel

These are names of men. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- son
- son (2)
- son (3)

Translation Words - UST

- son
- son (2)
- son (3)

ULT

³⁵ Joel, Jehu son of Joshibiah son of
Seraiah son of Asiel,

UST

1 Chronicles 4:36

**Elioenai...Jaakobah...Jeshohaiah...Asaiah...Adiel...
Jesimiel...Benaiah**

These are names of men. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

ULT

³⁶ Elioenai, Jaakobah, Jeshohaiah,
Asaiah, Adiel, Jesimiel, Benaiah,

UST

1 Chronicles 4:37

Ziza...Shiphi...Allon...Jedaiah...Shimri...Shemaiah

These are names of men. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- son
- son (2)
- son
- son (3)
- son (2)

Translation Words - UST

- son
- son (2)
- son
- son (3)
- son (2)

ULT

³⁷ and Ziza son of Shiphi son of Allon
son of Jedaiah son of Shimri son of
Shemaiah.

UST

1 Chronicles 4:38

These mentioned by name were leaders

"These men were leaders"

their clans increased greatly

The clan is a metonym for the people in the clan. Alternate translation: "the number of people in their clans increased greatly" (See: [Metonymy](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [name](#)
- [ancestor, father, fathered, forefather, grandfather](#)
- [house](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [name](#)
- [ancestor, father, fathered, forefather, grandfather](#)
- [house](#)

ULT

38 These mentioned by name were leaders in their clans, and their clans increased greatly.

UST

34-38 The men in the following list were the leaders of their clans: Meshobab, Jamlech, Joshah son of Amaziah, Joel, and Jehu son of Joshibiah. Joshibiah was son of Seraiah and grandson of Asiel. Other clan leaders were Elioenai, Jaakobah, Jeshohaiah, Asaiah, Adiel, Jesimiel, Benaiah, and Ziza. Ziza was son of Shiphi and grandson of Allon son of Jedaiah, who was the son of Shimri, who was son of Shemaiah. The members of those families became very numerous.

1 Chronicles 4:39

Gedor

This is the name of a town. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

pasture for their flocks

an area of land where their flocks could feed on the grass

Translation Words - ULT

- [seek](#), [search](#), [look for](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [seek](#), [search](#), [look for](#)

ULT

³⁹ They went near Gedor, on the east side of the valley, to seek pasture for their flocks.

UST

³⁹ They went near the city of Gedor on the east side of the valley to look for pastureland for their flocks of sheep.

1 Chronicles 4:40

abundant and good pasture

“pastures with much good food for their animals”

Hamites

a people group, descendants of Ham

Translation Words - ULT

- [hand](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [hand](#)

ULT

⁴⁰ They found abundant and good pasture. The land was broad, quiet, and peaceable. The Hamites had formerly lived there.

UST

⁴⁰ They found good pastureland with plenty of grass. The place was peaceful and quiet. Previously the descendants of Noah's son Ham had lived there.

1 Chronicles 4:41

Meunites

a people group. Alternate translation: “descendants of Meun” (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [name](#)
- [Judea](#)
- [king, kingdom, kingship](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [name](#)
- [Judea](#)
- [king, kingdom, kingship](#)

ULT

41 These just listed by name came in the days of Hezekiah king of Judah, and attacked the Hamite settlements and the Meunites, who were there also. They destroyed them completely and lived there because they found pasture for their flocks.

UST

41 But while Hezekiah was the king of Judah, those leaders of the tribe of Simeon came to Gedor and fought against the descendants of Ham and destroyed their tents. They also fought against the descendants of Meun who were living there and they killed all of them. So now there are no descendants of Meun living there. The descendants of Simeon started to live there, because there was good pastureland there for their sheep.

1 Chronicles 4:42

five hundred men

“500 men” (See: [Numbers](#))

Pelatiah...Neariah...Rephaiah...Uzziel...Ishi

These are names of men. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [son](#)
- [son](#)
- [head](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [son](#)
- [son](#)
- [head](#)

ULT

⁴² From them, from the sons of Simeon, five hundred men went to Mount Seir with Pelatiah, Neariah, Rephaiah, and Uzziel, the sons of Ishi, as their leader.

UST

⁴² Ishi's four sons Pelatiah, Neariah, Rephaiah and Uzziel led five hundred other descendants of Simeon and attacked the people who were living in the hill country of Edom.

1 Chronicles 4:43

the rest of the Amalekite refugees

“the remaining Amalekite refugees”

refugees

people who are forced to leave their home country

to this day

“from then until now.” This refers to the day when the author was writing this account.

Translation Words - ULT

- remnant

Translation Words - UST

- remnant

ULT

43 They defeated the rest of the Amalekite refugees, and have lived there to this day.

4:12 ^[1] Some translations have *who settled in the town of Nahash* .

4:13 ^[2] Most versions insert *Meonothai* into this verse, believing that it dropped out by a copyist's mistake.

UST

43 They killed the few descendants of Amalek who were still alive. From that time until now, the descendants of Simeon have lived in the region of Edom.

1 Chronicles 5

1 Chronicles 5 General Notes

Structure and formatting

This chapter records the descendants of Jacob's sons who lived east of the Jordan River: Reuben, Gad and Manasseh.

1 Chronicles 5:1

now Reuben

The word “now” is used here to mark the change from the lists of descendants to background information about Reuben. (See: [Background Information](#))

but his birthright was given to the sons of Joseph son of Israel

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: “but Israel gave Reuben’s birthright to the sons of Joseph, another of Israel’s sons” (See: [Active or Passive](#))

Reuben had defiled his father’s couch

This is a polite way to speak about Reuben sleeping with his father’s secondary wife. The couch is the place where a man and his wife would have slept together. (See: [Euphemism](#) and [Metonymy](#))

So he is not recorded as being the oldest son

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: “So the family history does not list Reuben as the oldest son” (See: [Active or Passive](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [son](#)
- [son](#)
- [son](#)
- [Israel, Israelites](#)
- [Israel, Israelites](#)
- [Joseph \(OT\)](#)
- [ancestor, father, fathered, forefather, grandfather](#)
- [firstborn](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [son](#)
- [son](#)
- [son](#)
- [Israel, Israelites](#)
- [Israel, Israelites](#)
- [Joseph \(OT\)](#)
- [ancestor, father, fathered, forefather, grandfather](#)
- [firstborn](#)

ULT

¹ The sons of Reuben the firstborn of Israel—now Reuben was Israel’s firstborn, but his birthright was given to the sons of Joseph son of Israel because Reuben had defiled his father’s couch. So he is not recorded as being the oldest son.

UST

¹ Reuben was the oldest son of Jacob. Therefore, he should have received the special rights that belonged to firstborn sons. But he slept with his father’s slave wife, so his father gave those rights to the sons of his younger brother Joseph. And in the family records, Reuben is not mentioned first, as the firstborn sons always are.

1 Chronicles 5:2

General Information:

This verse finishes the background information about Reuben. (See: [Background Information](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- brother
- Judea

Translation Words - UST

- brother
- Judea

ULT

² Judah was the strongest of his brothers, and the leader would come from him. But the birthright was Joseph's—

UST

² Although Judah became more influential than his brothers, and a ruler of Judah descended from him, Joseph's family received the rights that belonged to firstborn sons.

1 Chronicles 5:3

Hanok...Pallu...Hezron...Karmi

These are the names of men. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- son
- Israel, Israelites
- firstborn

Translation Words - UST

- son
- Israel, Israelites
- firstborn

ULT

³ the sons of Reuben, the firstborn of Israel were Hanok, Pallu, Hezron, and Karmi.

UST

³ But Reuben was Jacob's oldest son. Reuben's sons were Hanok, Pallu, Hezron, and Karmi.

1 Chronicles 5:4

Joel...Shemaiah...Gog...Shimei

These are names of men. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- son
- son
- son
- son
- Joel

Translation Words - UST

- son
- son
- son
- son
- Joel

ULT

⁴ The descendants of Joel were these:
Joel's son was Shemaiah. Shemaiah's
son was Gog. Gog's son was Shimei.

UST

⁴ Another descendant of Reuben was
Joel. Joel's son was Shemaiah.
Shemaiah's son was Gog. Gog's son was
Shimei.

1 Chronicles 5:5

Shimei...Micah...Reaiah...Baal

These are names of men. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- son
- son
- son

Translation Words - UST

- son
- son
- son

ULT

⁵ Shimei's son was Micah. Micah's son was Reaiah. Reaiah's son was Baal.

UST

⁵ Shimei's son was Micah. Micah's son was Reaiah. Reaiah's son was Baal.

1 Chronicles 5:6

Baal...Beerah...Tiglath-Pileser

These are names of men. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- son
- Assyria, Assyrian, Assyrian Empire
- king, kingdom, kingship
- exile, exiled

Translation Words - UST

- son
- Assyria, Assyrian, Assyrian Empire
- king, kingdom, kingship
- exile, exiled

ULT

⁶ Baal's son was Beerah, whom Tiglath-Pileser king of Assyria took into exile. Beerah was a leader in the tribe of Reuben.

UST

⁶ Baal's son was Beerah. Beerah was a leader of the tribe of Reuben. But Tiglath-Pileser king of Assyria captured him and took him to Assyria.

1 Chronicles 5:7

listed according to their genealogical records

This can start a new sentence: "Their genealogical records list them as" (See: [Active or Passive](#))

genealogical records

records that show how people in a family are related to each other

Jeiel...Zechariah

These are names of men. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [brother](#)
- [chief](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [brother](#)
- [chief](#)

ULT

⁷ Beerah's relatives according to their clans, listed according to their genealogical records: Jeiel the leader, Zechariah, and

UST

⁷ The names of these clans are listed here according to what is written in their family records. The names written were: Jeiel (the leader), then Zechariah,

1 Chronicles 5:8

Bela...Azaz...Shema

These are names of men. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

Aroer...Nebo...Baal Meon

These are the names of cities. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [son](#)
- [son](#) (2)
- [son](#) (3)
- [Joel](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [son](#)
- [son](#) (2)
- [son](#) (3)
- [Joel](#)

ULT

⁸ Bela son of Azaz son of Shema son of Joel. They lived in Aroer, as far as Nebo and Baal Meon,

UST

⁸ and then Bela son of Azaz, son of Shema, son of Joel. Reuben's clan was very large. Some of them lived near the city of Aroer as far north as the city of Nebo and the city of Baal Meon.

1 Chronicles 5:9

(There are no notes for this verse.)

ULT

⁹ and eastward to the start of the wilderness that extends to the Euphrates River. This was because they had many cattle in the land of Gilead.

UST

⁹ Some of them lived further east, as far as the edge of the desert south of the Euphrates River. They went there because they had a huge amount of cattle, with the result that there was not enough pastureland for them in the region of Gilead.

1 Chronicles 5:10

the Hagrites

This is a name of a people group. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

lived in the Hagrites' tents

The tents are a synecdoche for the land and the buildings on the land. Alternate translation: “took over all the Hagrites’ land and buildings” or “lived in all the Hagrite territory” (See: [Synecdoche](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [hand](#)
- [face, facial](#)
- [bow, bow down, knelt, bend, bend the knee](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [hand](#)
- [face, facial](#)
- [bow, bow down, knelt, bend, bend the knee](#)

ULT

10 In the days of Saul, the tribe of Reuben attacked the Hagrites and defeated them. They lived in the Hagrites’ tents throughout all the land east of Gilead.

UST

10 When Saul was king of Israel, the men in the tribe of Reuben fought against the descendants of Hagar and defeated them. After that, they lived in the tents that the descendants of Hagar had lived in previously, in all the area east of the region of Gilead.

1 Chronicles 5:11

Salekah

This is the name of a city. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [son](#)
- [Bashan](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [son](#)
- [Bashan](#)

ULT

11 The members of the tribe of Gad lived near them, in the land of Bashan as far as Salekah.

UST

11 The tribe of Gad lived near the tribe of Reuben; they lived in the region of Bashan, all the way east to the city of Salekah.

1 Chronicles 5:12

Joel...Shapham...Janai...Shaphat

These are names of men.

Translation Words - ULT

- Joel
- chief

Translation Words - UST

- Joel
- chief

ULT

¹² Joel was their leader; Shapham was second; and Janai and Shaphat in Bashan.

UST

¹² Joel was their leader; Shapham was his assistant; other leaders were Janai and Shaphat in Bashan.

1 Chronicles 5:13

Michael...Meshullam...Sheba...Jorai...Jakan...Zia...Eber

These are names of men.

Translation Words - ULT

- brother
- ancestor, father, fathered, forefather, grandfather
- house

Translation Words - UST

- brother
- ancestor, father, fathered, forefather, grandfather
- house

ULT

¹³ Their relatives, by their fathers' families, were Michael, Meshullam, Sheba, Jorai, Jakan, Zia, and Eber—seven in all.

UST

¹³ Other members of the tribe belonged to seven clans, whose leaders were Michael, Meshullam, Sheba, Jorai, Jakan, Zia, and Eber.

1 Chronicles 5:14

**Abihail...Huri...Jaroah...Gilead...Michael...Jeshishai...
Jahdo...Buz**

These are names of men. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [son](#)
- [son](#)
- [son](#) (2)
- [son](#) (3)
- [son](#) (4)
- [son](#) (5)
- [son](#) (6)
- [son](#) (7)

Translation Words - UST

- [son](#)
- [son](#)
- [son](#) (2)
- [son](#) (3)
- [son](#) (4)
- [son](#) (5)
- [son](#) (6)
- [son](#) (7)

ULT

¹⁴ These persons named above were the descendants of Abihail, and Abihail was the son of Huri. Huri was the son of Jaroah. Jaroah was the son of Gilead. Gilead was the son of Michael. Michael was the son of Jeshishai. Jeshishai was the son of Jahdo. Jahdo was the son of Buz.

UST

¹⁴ They were descendants of Abihail. Abihail was son of Huri, Huri was the son of Jaroah, Jaroah was the son of Gilead, Gilead was son of Michael, Michael was the son of Jeshishai, Jeshishai was the son of Jahdo, and Jahdo was the son of Buz.

1 Chronicles 5:15

Ahi...Abdiel...Guni

These are names of men. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [son](#)
- [son](#) (2)
- [ancestor](#), [father](#), [fathered](#), [forefather](#), [grandfather](#)
- [head](#)
- [house](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [son](#)
- [son](#) (2)
- [ancestor](#), [father](#), [fathered](#), [forefather](#), [grandfather](#)
- [head](#)
- [house](#)

ULT

15 Ahi son of Abdiel son of Guni, was head of their fathers' family.

UST

15 Ahi was Abdiel's son. Abdiel was Guni's son. Ahi was the leader of their clan.

1 Chronicles 5:16

They lived

“The tribe of Gad lived”

the pasturelands

the areas of land where animals feed on grass

ULT

16 They lived in Gilead, in Bashan, in its towns, and in all the pasturelands of Sharon as far as its borders.

UST

16 The descendants of Gad lived in the towns in the regions of Gilead and Bashan, and on all the pastureland on the Plain of Sharon.

1 Chronicles 5:17

All these were listed by genealogical records

This can be translated in active form. Alternate translation: "Genealogical records listed them all" or "The records of their family's ancestry listed them all" (See: [Active or Passive](#))

All these

It is not clear how many of the preceding people this refers to.

Translation Words - ULT

- [Israel, Israelites](#)
- [Judea](#)
- [king, kingdom, kingship](#)
- [king, kingdom, kingship](#) (2)

Translation Words - UST

- [Israel, Israelites](#)
- [Judea](#)
- [king, kingdom, kingship](#)
- [king, kingdom, kingship](#) (2)

ULT

17 All these were listed by genealogical records in the days of Jotham king of Judah and of Jeroboam king of Israel.

UST

17 All of those names were written in the records of the clans of Gad during the time that Jotham was the king of Judah and Jeroboam was the king of Israel.

These are the armies of the tribes that lived east of the Jordan River.

1 Chronicles 5:18

Reubenites

This refers to the people from the tribe of Rueben. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

Gadites

This refers to the people from the tribe of Gad.

44,760 soldiers

“forty-four thousand seven hundred and sixty soldiers” (See: [Numbers](#))

who carried shield and sword, and who drew the bow

The soldiers are described as skilled in warfare by the weapons they carried. Alternate translation: “who were all trained to fight well in battles” (See: [Metonymy Ellipsis](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [son](#)
- [son](#)
- [prosper](#), [prosperity](#), [prosperous](#)
- [know](#), [knowledge](#), [unknown](#), [distinguish](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [son](#)
- [son](#)
- [prosper](#), [prosperity](#), [prosperous](#)
- [know](#), [knowledge](#), [unknown](#), [distinguish](#)

ULT

18 The Reubenites, the Gadites, and the half tribe of Manasseh had 44,760 soldiers trained for war, who carried shield and sword, and who drew the bow.

UST

18 There were 44,760 soldiers in the tribes of Reuben and Gad and the eastern half of the tribe of Manasseh. They all carried shields and swords and bows and arrows. They were all trained to fight well in battles.

1 Chronicles 5:19

Hagrites...Jetur...Naphish...Nodab

These are the names of people groups.

ULT

¹⁹ They attacked the Hagrites, Jetur, Naphish, and Nodab.

UST

¹⁹ They attacked the descendants of Hagar and the people in the cities of Jetur, Naphish, and Nodab.

1 Chronicles 5:20

the Israelites cried out to God

“the Israelites prayed to God for help”

Translation Words - ULT

- God
- hand

Translation Words - UST

- God
- hand

ULT

20 They received divine help against them. In this way, the Hagrites and all who were with them were defeated. This was because the Israelites cried out to God in the battle, and he responded to them, because they put their trust in him.

UST

20 The men from those three tribes prayed to God during the battles, requesting him to help them. So he helped them, because they trusted in him. He enabled them to defeat the descendants of Hagar and all those who were helping them.

1 Chronicles 5:21

They captured their animals

"The Israelites captured the Hagrites' animals"

fifty thousand camels

"50,000 camels" (See: [Numbers](#))

250,000 sheep

"two hundred and fifty thousand sheep" (See: [Numbers](#))

two thousand donkeys

"2,000 donkeys" (See: [Numbers](#))

100,000 men

"one hundred thousand men" (See: [Numbers](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [flock, herd](#)
- [camel](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [flock, herd](#)
- [camel](#)

ULT

21 They captured their animals, including fifty thousand camels, 250,000 sheep, two thousand donkeys, and 100,000 men.

UST

21 They took the animals that belonged to the descendants of Hagar: They took fifty thousand camels, 250,000 sheep, and two thousand donkeys. They also captured 100,000 people.

1 Chronicles 5:22

the battle was from God

God's help in battle is described as if he were the one who caused the battle. Alternate translation: "God helped them"

Translation Words - ULT

- captive, captivate, captivity, catch, captured

Translation Words - UST

- captive, captivate, captivity, catch, captured

ULT

²² Many fell because the battle was from God. They lived in their land until the captivity.

UST

²² But many descendants of Hagar were killed because God helped the people of the tribes of Reuben, Gad, and Manasseh. After that, those three tribes lived in that area until the army of Babylonia captured them and took them away to Babylon.

These are those who lived with eastern half of the tribe of Manasseh

1 Chronicles 5:23

Baal Hermon...Senir

These are the names of mountains. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [son](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [son](#)

ULT

²³ The half tribe of Manasseh lived in the land of Bashan as far as Baal Hermon and Senir (that is, Mount Hermon).

UST

²³ There were many people who belonged to the eastern half of the tribe of Manasseh. They lived in the region of Bashan east of the Jordan River, as far north as Baal Hermon, Senir, and Mount Hermon.

1 Chronicles 5:24

Epher...Ishi...Eliel...Azriel...Jeremiah...Hodaviah...Jahdiel

These are the names of men. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

fathers' houses

extended families, people related to each other who usually lived in different houses, what the UST calls "clans"

Translation Words - ULT

- [name](#)
- [ancestor, father, fathered, forefather, grandfather](#)
- [ancestor, father, fathered, forefather, grandfather](#)
- [might, mighty, mighty works](#)
- [head](#)
- [head](#)
- [prosper, prosperity, prosperous](#)
- [house](#)
- [house](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [name](#)
- [ancestor, father, fathered, forefather, grandfather](#)
- [ancestor, father, fathered, forefather, grandfather](#)
- [might, mighty, mighty works](#)
- [head](#)
- [head](#)
- [prosper, prosperity, prosperous](#)
- [house](#)
- [house](#)

ULT

²⁴ These were the heads of their fathers' houses: Epher, Ishi, Eliel, Azriel, Jeremiah, Hodaviah, and Jahdiel. They were mighty men, famous men, heads of their fathers' houses.

UST

²⁴ Their clan leaders were Epher, Ishi, Eliel, Azriel, Jeremiah, Hodaviah, and Jahdiel. They were all strong, brave, and famous soldiers, and leaders of their clans.

1 Chronicles 5:25

(There are no notes for this verse.)

Translation Words - ULT

- God
- God
- God
- ancestor, father, fathered, forefather, grandfather
- people, people group,

Translation Words - UST

- God
- God
- God
- ancestor, father, fathered, forefather, grandfather
- people, people group,

ULT

²⁵ But they were unfaithful to their ancestors' God. Instead, they worshiped the gods of the peoples of the land, whom God had destroyed before them.

UST

²⁵ But they sinned against God, the one whom their ancestors had worshiped. They began to worship the gods that the people of that region had worshiped, the people whom God had enabled them to destroy.

1 Chronicles 5:26

Pul...Tiglath-Pileser

These are the names of men. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

Reubenites...Gadites

These are the names of people groups. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

Halah...Habor...Hara

These are names of towns. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

Gozan

This is the name of a river. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

to this day

See how you translated this phrase in [1 Chronicles 4:43](#)

Translation Words - ULT

- God
- spirit, spiritual
- spirit, spiritual
- Israel, Israelites
- Assyria, Assyrian, Assyrian Empire
- Assyria, Assyrian, Assyrian Empire
- king, kingdom, kingship
- king, kingdom, kingship

Translation Words - UST

- God
- spirit, spiritual
- spirit, spiritual
- Israel, Israelites
- Assyria, Assyrian, Assyrian Empire
- Assyria, Assyrian, Assyrian Empire
- king, kingdom, kingship
- king, kingdom, kingship

ULT

²⁶ The God of Israel stirred up Pul king of Assyria (also called Tiglath-Pileser, king of Assyria). He took into exile the Reubenites, Gadites, and the half tribe of Manasseh. He brought them to Halah, Habor, Hara, and to the river of Gozan, where they remain to this day.

UST

²⁶ So the God whom the Israelites worshiped incited Pul, the king of Assyria, to want to conquer those tribes. Pul's other name was Tiglath-Pileser. His army captured the people of the tribes of Reuben, Gad, and the eastern half of the tribe of Manasseh, and took them to various places in Assyria: Halah, Habor, Hara and near the Gozan River. They have lived in those places from that time to the present time.

1 Chronicles 6

1 Chronicles 6 General Notes

Structure and formatting

This chapter records the descendants of Levi.

1 Chronicles 6:1

Gershon...Kohath...Merari

These are names of men. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- son
- Levi, Levite, Levitical

Translation Words - UST

- son
- Levi, Levite, Levitical

ULT

¹ The sons of Levi were Gershon, Kohath, and Merari.

UST

¹ Levi's sons were Gershon, Kohath, and Merari.

1 Chronicles 6:2

Kothath...Amram...Izhar...Hebron...Uzziel

These are names of men. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [son](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [son](#)

ULT

² The sons of Kothath were Amram, Izhar, Hebron, and Uzziel.

UST

² Kothath's sons were Amram, Izhar, Hebron, and Uzziel.

1 Chronicles 6:3

Amram...Nadab...Abihu...Eleazar...Ithamar

These are names of men. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [son](#)
- [son](#) (2)
- [Aaron](#)
- [Aaron](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [son](#)
- [son](#) (2)
- [Aaron](#)
- [Aaron](#)

ULT

³ The children of Amram were Aaron, Moses, and Miriam. The sons of Aaron were Nadab, Abihu, Eleazar, and Ithamar.

UST

³ Amram's children were Miriam and her younger brothers Aaron and Moses. Aaron's sons were Nadab, Abihu, Eleazar, and Ithamar.

1 Chronicles 6:4

Eleazar...Abishua

These are names of men. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

ULT

⁴ Eleazar became the father of Phinehas, and Phinehas became the father of Abishua.

UST

⁴ Eleazar was the father of Phinehas. Phinehas was the father of Abishua.

1 Chronicles 6:5

Abishua...Bukki...Uzzi

These are names of men. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

ULT

⁵ Abishua became the father of Bukki, and Bukki became the father of Uzzi.

UST

⁵ Abishua was the father of Bukki. Bukki was the father of Uzzi.

1 Chronicles 6:6

Uzzi...Zerahiah...Meraioth

These are names of men. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

ULT

⁶ Uzzi became the father of Zerahiah,
and Zerahiah became the father of
Meraioth.

UST

⁶ Uzzi was the father of Zerahiah.
Zerahiah was the father of Meraioth.

1 Chronicles 6:7

Meraioth...Amariah...Ahitub

These are names of men. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

ULT

⁷ Meraioth became the father of Amariah, and Amariah became the father of Ahitub.

UST

⁷ Meraioth was the father of Amariah.
Amariah was the father of Ahitub.

1 Chronicles 6:8

Ahitub...Zadok...Ahimaaz

These are names of men. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

ULT

⁸ Ahitub became the father of Zadok, and Zadok became the father of Ahimaaz.

UST

⁸ Ahitub was the father of Zadok. Zadok was the father of Ahimaaz.

1 Chronicles 6:9

Ahimaaz...Johanan

These are names of men. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

ULT

⁹ Ahimaaz became the father of Azariah,
and Azariah became the father of
Johanan.

UST

⁹ Ahimaaz was the father of Azariah.
Azariah was the father of Johanan.

1 Chronicles 6:10

Solomon built

The reader should understand that Solomon probably hired workers to do the work. (See: [Metonymy](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [temple](#)
- [Solomon](#)
- [Jerusalem](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [temple](#)
- [Solomon](#)
- [Jerusalem](#)

ULT

¹⁰ Johanan became the father of Azariah, who served in the temple that Solomon built in Jerusalem.

UST

¹⁰ Johanan was the father of Azariah. Azariah was a priest in the temple that Solomon commanded to be built in Jerusalem.

1 Chronicles 6:11

Amariah...Ahitub

These are names of men. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

ULT

¹¹ Azariah became the father of Amariah, and Amariah became the father of Ahitub.

UST

¹¹ Azariah was the father of Amariah.
Amariah was the father of Ahitub.

1 Chronicles 6:12

Ahitub...Zadok...Shallum

These are names of men. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

ULT

¹² Ahitub became the father of Zadok, and Zadok became the father of Shallum.

UST

¹² Ahitub was the father of Zadok. Zadok was the father of Shallum.

1 Chronicles 6:13

Hilkiah

This is the name of a man. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

ULT

¹³ Shallum became the father of Hilkiah, and Hilkiah became the father of Azariah.

UST

¹³ Shallum was the father of Hilkiah. Hilkiah was the father of Azariah.

1 Chronicles 6:14

Seraiah...Jozadak

These are names of men. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

ULT

¹⁴ Azariah became the father of Seraiah, and Seraiah became the father of Jozadak.

UST

¹⁴ Azariah was the father of Seraiah. Seraiah was the father of Jozadak.

1 Chronicles 6:15

exiled Judah and Jerusalem by the hand of Nebuchadnezzar

The power Nebuchadnezzar has through his army is described as the part of his body ("hand") he uses to direct his army. Alternate translation: "allowed Nebuchadnezzar's army to defeat the armies of Judah and Jerusalem and take the people into captivity" (See: [Synecdoche](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [Yahweh](#)
- [Judea](#)
- [Jerusalem](#)
- [Nebuchadnezzar](#)
- [hand](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [Yahweh](#)
- [Judea](#)
- [Jerusalem](#)
- [Nebuchadnezzar](#)
- [hand](#)

ULT

¹⁵ Jozadak went into captivity when Yahweh exiled Judah and Jerusalem by the hand of Nebuchadnezzar.

UST

¹⁵ Jozadak was forced to leave his home when Yahweh sent King Nebuchadnezzar's army to capture many people in Jerusalem and other places in Judah and compel them to go to Babylonia.

1 Chronicles 6:16

Gershon...Kohath...Merari

Translate the names of these men as in [1 Chronicles 6:1](#).

Translation Words - ULT

- son
- Levi, Levite, Levitical

Translation Words - UST

- son
- Levi, Levite, Levitical

ULT

16 The sons of Levi were Gershon, Kohath, and Merari.

UST

16 Levi's sons were Gershon, Kohath, and Merari.

1 Chronicles 6:17

Libni...Shimei

These are names of men. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [son](#)
- [name](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [son](#)
- [name](#)

ULT

17 The sons of Gershon were Libni and Shimei.

UST

17 Gershon's sons were Libni and Shimei.

1 Chronicles 6:18

Amram...Izhar...Hebron...Uzziel

Translate the names of these men as in [1 Chronicles 6:2](#).

Translation Words - ULT

- [son](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [son](#)

ULT

¹⁸ The sons of Kohath were Amram, Izhar, Hebron, and Uzziel.

UST

¹⁸ Kohath's sons were Amram, Izhar, Hebron, and Uzziel.

1 Chronicles 6:19

Merari...Mahli...Mushi

These are names of men. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- son
- Levi, Levite, Levitical
- ancestor, father, fathered, forefather, grandfather
- family, household

Translation Words - UST

- son
- Levi, Levite, Levitical
- ancestor, father, fathered, forefather, grandfather
- family, household

ULT

¹⁹ The sons of Merari were Mahli and Mushi. These are the clans of the Levites listed according to their fathers.

UST

¹⁹ Merari's sons were Mahli and Mushi. Here is a list of the descendants of Levi, who became leaders of their clans.

1 Chronicles 6:20

Libni...Jahath...Zimmah

These are names of men. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- son
- son
- son

Translation Words - UST

- son
- son
- son

ULT

²⁰ The descendants of Gershon: His son was Libni. Libni's son was Jahath. His son was Zimmah.

UST

²⁰ Gershon's oldest son was Libni. Libni's son was Jahath. Jahath's son was Zimmah.

1 Chronicles 6:21

Joah...Iddo...Zerah...Jeatherai

These are names of men. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- son
- son
- son
- son

Translation Words - UST

- son
- son
- son
- son

ULT

²¹ His son was Joah. His son was Iddo.
His son was Zerah. His son was
Jeatherai.

UST

²¹ Zimmah's son was Joah. Joah's son
was Iddo. Iddo's son was Zerah. Zerah's
son was Jeatherai.

1 Chronicles 6:22

Amminadab...Korah...Assir

These are names of men. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- son
- son
- son
- son

Translation Words - UST

- son
- son
- son
- son

ULT

²² The descendants of Kohath: His son was Amminadab. His son was Korah. His son was Assir.

UST

²² Kohath's other son was Amminadab. Amminadab's son was Korah. Korah's son was Assir.

1 Chronicles 6:23

Elkanah...Ebiasaph...Assir

These are names of men. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- son
- son
- son

Translation Words - UST

- son
- son
- son

ULT

²³ His son was Elkanah. His son was Ebiasaph. His son was Assir.

UST

²³ Assir's son was Elkanah. Elkanah's son was Ebiasaph. Ebiasaph's son was Assir.

1 Chronicles 6:24

Tahath...Uriel...Uzziah...Shaul

These are names of men. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- son
- son
- son
- son

Translation Words - UST

- son
- son
- son
- son

ULT

²⁴ His son was Tahath. His son was Uriel. His son was Uzziah. His son was Shaul.

UST

²⁴ Assir's son was Tahath. Tahath's son was Uriel. Uriel's son was Uzziah. Uzziah's son was Shaul.

1 Chronicles 6:25

Elkanah...Amasai...Ahimoth

These are names of men. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [son](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [son](#)

ULT

²⁵ The sons of Elkanah were Amasai,
Ahimoth,

UST

²⁵ Elkanah's sons were Amasai,
Ahimoth,

1 Chronicles 6:26

Elkanah...Zophai...Nahath

These are names of men. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- son
- son
- son

Translation Words - UST

- son
- son
- son

ULT

²⁶ And a son named Elkanah; Zophai his son, Nahath his son,

UST

²⁶ and a son also named Elkana.
Elkanah's son was Zophai. Zophai's son was Nahath.

1 Chronicles 6:27

Eliab...Jeroham...Elkanah

These are names of men. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- son
- son
- son

Translation Words - UST

- son
- son
- son

ULT

²⁷ Eliab his son, Jeroham his son, and Elkanah his son. ^[1]

UST

²⁷ Nahath's son was Eliab. Eliab's son was Jeroham. Jeroham's son was Elkanah.

1 Chronicles 6:28

Joel

This is the name of a man. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

second-born

the second son

Translation Words - ULT

- [son](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [son](#)

ULT

²⁸ The sons of Samuel were the firstborn, Joel, and Abijah, the second-born.

UST

²⁸ Samuel's oldest son was Joel; his other son was Abijah.

1 Chronicles 6:29

Merari...Mahli...Libni...Shimei...Uzzah

These are names of men. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- son
- son
- son
- son

Translation Words - UST

- son
- son
- son
- son

ULT

²⁹ The son of Merari was Mahli. His son was Libni. His son was Shimei. His son was Uzzah.

UST

²⁹ Merari's oldest son was Mahli. Mahli's son was Libni. Libni's son was Shimei. Shimei's son was Uzzah.

1 Chronicles 6:30

Shimea...Haggiah...Asaiah

These are names of men. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- son
- son
- son

Translation Words - UST

- son
- son
- son

ULT

³⁰ His son was Shimea. His son was Haggiah. His son was Asaiah.

UST

³⁰ Uzzah's son was Shimea. Shimea's son was Haggiah. Haggiah's son was Asaiah.

These are the temple musicians.

1 Chronicles 6:31

the house of Yahweh

“where people met with Yahweh” This was a tent in David’s time.

the ark came to rest there

“the people of Israel placed the ark there”

Translation Words - ULT

- appoint, appointed
- Yahweh
- David
- hand
- house

Translation Words - UST

- appoint, appointed
- Yahweh
- David
- hand
- house

ULT

³¹ These are the names of the men whom David put in charge of music in the house of Yahweh, after the ark came to rest there.

UST

³¹ After the sacred chest was brought to Jerusalem, King David appointed some of the men who were descendants of Levi to be in charge of the music in the place where the people worshiped Yahweh.

1 Chronicles 6:32

the tabernacle, the tent of meeting

Possible meanings are 1) that “the tent of meeting” and “the tabernacle” are two names for the same thing or 2) the tabernacle is part of the tent of meeting, “the sanctuary of the tent of meeting”

They fulfilled their duties

“They did their work” or “They did their various kinds of work”

according to the instructions given to them

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: “according to the instructions that David gave them” or “according to the instructions they received” (See: [Active or Passive](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- Yahweh
- Solomon
- Jerusalem
- feast, feasting
- ordinance, regulations, requirements, strict law, customs
- servant, serve, slave, worker, young man, young women
- house

Translation Words - UST

- Yahweh
- Solomon
- Jerusalem
- feast, feasting
- ordinance, regulations, requirements, strict law, customs
- servant, serve, slave, worker, young man, young women
- house

ULT

³² They served by singing before the tabernacle, the tent of meeting, until Solomon had built the house of Yahweh in Jerusalem. They fulfilled their duties according to the instructions given to them.

UST

³² Those musicians first sang and played their instruments in the sacred tent, which was also called the tent of meeting, and they continued to do that until Solomon's workers built the temple of Yahweh in Jerusalem. In all their work, they obeyed the instructions that David had given them.

1 Chronicles 6:33

These were those

"These were the musicians"

Kohathites

This is the name of a people group, the descendants of Kohath ([1 Chronicles 6:1](#)). (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

going back in time

This means the list is going in order from the most recent to the oldest.

Heman

This is the name of a man. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [son](#)
- [son](#)
- [son](#)
- [son](#) (2)
- [to minister, ministry](#)
- [Joel](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [son](#)
- [son](#)
- [son](#)
- [son](#) (2)
- [to minister, ministry](#)
- [Joel](#)

ULT

³³ These were those who served with their sons. From the clans of the Kohathites came Heman the musician. Here were his ancestors, going back in time: Heman was the son of Joel. Joel was the son of Samuel.

UST

³³ Here is a list of the musicians and their sons: From Kohath's descendants there was Heman, the leader of the singers. Heman was the son of Joel. Joel was the son of Samuel.

1 Chronicles 6:34

Jeroham...Eliel...Toah

These are names of men. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

Elkanah

See how you translated this man's name in [1 Chronicles 6:25](#).

Translation Words - ULT

- [son](#)
- [son](#) (2)
- [son](#) (3)
- [son](#) (4)

Translation Words - UST

- [son](#)
- [son](#) (2)
- [son](#) (3)
- [son](#) (4)

ULT

³⁴ Samuel was the son of Elkanah.
Elkanah was the son of Jeroham.
Jeroham was the son of Eliel. Eliel was
the son of Toah.

UST

³⁴ Samuel was the son of Elkanah.
Elkanah was the son of Jeroham.
Jeroham was the son of Eliel. Eliel was
the son of Toah.

1 Chronicles 6:35

Toah...Zuph...Mahath

These are names of men. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

Elkanah...Amasai

See how you translated these men's names in [1 Chronicles 6:25](#).

Translation Words - ULT

- [son](#)
- [son](#) (2)
- [son](#) (3)
- [son](#) (4)

Translation Words - UST

- [son](#)
- [son](#) (2)
- [son](#) (3)
- [son](#) (4)

ULT

³⁵ Toah was the son of Zuph. Zuph was the son of Elkanah. Elkanah was the son of Mahath. Mahath was the son of Amasai. Amasai was son of Elkanah.

UST

³⁵ Toah was the son of Zuph. Zuph was the son of Elkanah. Elkanah was the son of Mahath. Mahath was the son of Amasai.

1 Chronicles 6:36

Amasai...Elkanah

See how you translated these men's names in [1 Chronicles 6:25](#).

Joel

This is the name of a man. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [son](#)
- [son](#) (2)
- [son](#) (3)
- [son](#) (4)
- [Joel](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [son](#)
- [son](#) (2)
- [son](#) (3)
- [son](#) (4)
- [Joel](#)

ULT

³⁶ Amasai was the son of Elkanah. Elkanah was the son of Joel. Joel was the son of Azariah. Azariah was the son of Zephaniah.

UST

³⁶ Amasai was the son of another man whose name was Elkanah. Elkanah was the son of Joel. Joel was the son of Azariah. Azariah was the son of Zephaniah.

1 Chronicles 6:37

Tahath...Assir...Ebiasaph

These are names of men. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- son
- son (2)
- son (3)
- son (4)

Translation Words - UST

- son
- son (2)
- son (3)
- son (4)

ULT

³⁷ Zephaniah was the son of Tahath. Tahath was the son of Assir. Assir was the son of Ebiasaph. Ebiasaph was the son of Korah.

UST

³⁷ Zephaniah was the son of Tahath. Tahath was the son of Assir. Assir was the son of Ebiasaph. Ebiasaph was the son of Korah.

1 Chronicles 6:38

Izhar...Kohath

These are names of men. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [son](#)
- [son](#) (2)
- [son](#) (3)
- [son](#) (4)
- [Israel, Israelites](#)
- [Levi, Levite, Levitical](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [son](#)
- [son](#) (2)
- [son](#) (3)
- [son](#) (4)
- [Israel, Israelites](#)
- [Levi, Levite, Levitical](#)

ULT

³⁸ Korah was the son of Izhar. Izhar was the son of Kohath. Kohath was the son of Levi. Levi was the son of Israel.

UST

³⁸ Korah was the son of Izhar. Izhar was the son of Kohath. Kohath was the son of Levi. Levi was the son of Jacob.

1 Chronicles 6:39

Heman's colleague

"Heman's fellow worker"

who stood at his right hand

The authority of a person is described by where they stand. The right side of a person is the place where the person with the most authority stands. (See: [Metonymy](#))

Berekiah...Shimea

These are names of men. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [brother](#)
- [son](#)
- [son \(2\)](#)
- [to minister, ministry](#)
- [Asaph](#)
- [Asaph](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [brother](#)
- [son](#)
- [son \(2\)](#)
- [to minister, ministry](#)
- [Asaph](#)
- [Asaph](#)

ULT

³⁹ Heman's colleague was Asaph, who stood at his right hand. Asaph was the son of Berekiah. Berekiah was the son of Shimea.

UST

³⁹ Heman's helper was Asaph. His group stood at the right side of Heman. Asaph was the son of Berekiah. Berekiah was the son of Shimea.

1 Chronicles 6:40

Shimea...Michael...Baaseiah...Malkijah

These are names of men. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [son](#)
- [son](#) (2)
- [son](#) (3)

Translation Words - UST

- [son](#)
- [son](#) (2)
- [son](#) (3)

ULT

⁴⁰ Shimea was the son of Michael.
Michael was the son of Baaseiah.
Baaseiah was the son of Malkijah.

UST

⁴⁰ Shimea was the son of Michael.
Michael was the son of Baaseiah.
Baaseiah was the son of Malkijah.

1 Chronicles 6:41

Malkijah...Ethni...Zerah...Adaiah

These are names of men. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- son
- son
- son (2)

Translation Words - UST

- son
- son
- son (2)

ULT

41 Malkijah was the son of Ethni. Ethni was the son of Zerah. Zerah was the son of Adaiah.

UST

41 Malkijah was the son of Ethni. Ethni was the son of Zerah. Zerah was the son of Adaiah.

1 Chronicles 6:42

Adaiah...Ethan...Zimmah...Shimei

These are names of men. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [son](#)
- [son](#) (2)
- [son](#) (3)

Translation Words - UST

- [son](#)
- [son](#) (2)
- [son](#) (3)

ULT

⁴² Adaiah was the son of Ethan. Ethan was the son of Zimmah. Zimmah was the son of Shimei.

UST

⁴² Adaiah was the son of Ethan. Ethan was the son of Zimmah. Zimmah was the son of Shimei.

1 Chronicles 6:43

Shimei...Jahath...Gershon

These are names of men. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- son
- son (2)
- son (3)
- Levi, Levite, Levitical

Translation Words - UST

- son
- son (2)
- son (3)
- Levi, Levite, Levitical

ULT

⁴³ Shimei was the son of Jahath. Jahath was the son of Gershon. Gershon was the son of Levi.

UST

⁴³ Shimei was the son of Jahath. Jahath was the son of Gershon, and Gershon was the son of Levi.

1 Chronicles 6:44

General Information:

See: [How to Translate Names](#)

At Heman's left hand

"Standing on Heman's left side"

his colleagues

"his fellow workers"

Heman...Ethan

See how you translated these men's names in [1 Chronicles 2:6](#).

Merari

See how you translated the name of this man in [1 Chronicles 6:1](#).

Kishi...Abdi...Malluk

These are names of men. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [brother](#)
- [son](#)
- [son](#)
- [son](#) (2)
- [son](#) (3)

Translation Words - UST

- [brother](#)
- [son](#)
- [son](#)
- [son](#) (2)
- [son](#) (3)

ULT

⁴⁴ At Heman's left hand were his colleagues the sons of Merari. They included Ethan son of Kishi. Kishi was the son of Abdi. Abdi was the son of Malluk.

UST

⁴⁴ A group of singers from Merari's family helped Heman and Asaph. They stood at the left of Heman. The leader of this group was Ethan son of Kishi. Kishi was the son of Abdi. Abdi was the son of Malluk.

1 Chronicles 6:45

Malluk...Hashabiah...Amaziah...Hilkiah

These are names of men. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- son
- son
- son (2)

Translation Words - UST

- son
- son
- son (2)

ULT

⁴⁵ Malluk was the son of Hashabiah.
Hashabiah was the son of Amaziah.
Amaziah was the son of Hilkiah.

UST

⁴⁵ Malluk was the son of Hashabiah.
Hashabiah was the son of Uziah.
Uzziah was the son of Hilkiah.

1 Chronicles 6:46

Hilkiah...Amzi...Bani...Shemer

These are names of men. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- son
- son
- son (2)

Translation Words - UST

- son
- son
- son (2)

ULT

⁴⁶ Hilkiah was the son of Amzi. Amzi was the son of Bani. Bani was the son of Shemer.

UST

⁴⁶ Hilkiah was the son of Amzi. Amzi was the son of Bani. Bani was the son of Shemer.

1 Chronicles 6:47

Mahli...Mushi

See how you translated these men's names in [1 Chronicles 6:19](#).

Translation Words - ULT

- [son](#)
- [son](#) (2)
- [son](#) (3)
- [son](#) (4)
- [Levi](#), [Levite](#), [Levitical](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [son](#)
- [son](#) (2)
- [son](#) (3)
- [son](#) (4)
- [Levi](#), [Levite](#), [Levitical](#)

ULT

⁴⁷ Shemer was the son of Mahli. Mahli was the son of Mushi. Mushi was the son of Merari. Merari was the son of Levi.

UST

⁴⁷ Shemer was the son of Mahli. Mahli was the son of Mushi. Mushi was the son of Merari, and Merari was the son of Levi.

1 Chronicles 6:48

Their associates, the Levites, were assigned to do

This can be translated in active form. Alternate translation: “God had assigned their associates, the Levites, to do” or “It was the duty of their fellow workers, the Levites, to do” (See: [Active or Passive](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- brother
- God
- Levi, Levite, Levitical
- house

Translation Words - UST

- brother
- God
- Levi, Levite, Levitical
- house

ULT

⁴⁸ Their associates, the Levites, were assigned to do all the work for the tabernacle, the house of God.

UST

⁴⁸ The other descendants of Levi were appointed to do other work in the sacred tent, the place where the people worshiped God.

1 Chronicles 6:49

These offerings made atonement for Israel

"They offered these things to make atonement for the sins of the people of Israel"

Translation Words - ULT

- altar
- altar
- command, commandment
- son
- holy, holiness, unholy, sacred
- holy, holiness, unholy, sacred
- God
- Israel, Israelites
- Moses
- servant, serve, slave, worker, young man, young women

Translation Words - UST

- altar
- altar
- command, commandment
- son
- holy, holiness, unholy, sacred
- holy, holiness, unholy, sacred
- God
- Israel, Israelites
- Moses
- servant, serve, slave, worker, young man, young women

ULT

⁴⁹ Aaron and his sons made the offerings on the altar for burnt offerings; and the offering on the incense altar for all the work on the most holy place. These offerings made atonement for Israel, according to all that Moses the servant of God had commanded.

UST

⁴⁹ Aaron and his descendants were the ones who placed on the altar the sacrifices that were to be burned completely, and they burned incense on another altar. Those sacrifices were in order that Yahweh would no longer be angry with the people of Israel for having sinned. Those men also did other work in the very holy place in the sacred tent, obeying the instructions that Moses, who served God well, had given to them.

1 Chronicles 6:50

Aaron's descendants are reckoned as follows

"These were the descendants of Aaron"

Eleazar...Abishua

These are names of men. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [son](#)
- [son](#)
- [son](#)
- [son](#)
- [Aaron](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [son](#)
- [son](#)
- [son](#)
- [son](#)
- [Aaron](#)

ULT

⁵⁰ Aaron's descendants are reckoned as follows: Aaron's son was Eleazar. Eleazar's son was Phinehas. Phinehas's son was Abishua.

UST

⁵⁰ These were the descendants of Aaron: Aaron's son was Eleazar. Eleazar's son was Phinehas. Phinehas's son was Abishua.

1 Chronicles 6:51

Bukki...Uzzi...Zerahiah

These are names of men. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- son
- son
- son

Translation Words - UST

- son
- son
- son

ULT

⁵¹ Abishua's son was Bukki. Bukki's son was Uzzi. Uzzi's son was Zerahiah.

UST

⁵¹ Abishua's son was Bukki. Bukki's son was Uzzi. Uzzi's son was Zerahiah.

1 Chronicles 6:52

Meraioth...Amariah...Ahitub

These are names of men. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- son
- son
- son

Translation Words - UST

- son
- son
- son

ULT

⁵² Zerahiah's son was Meraioth.

Meraioth's son was Amariah. Amariah's son was Ahitub.

UST

⁵² Zerahiah's son was Meraioth.

Meraioth's son was Amariah. Amariah's son was Ahitub.

1 Chronicles 6:53

Ahimaaz

This is the name of a man. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- son
- son

Translation Words - UST

- son
- son

ULT

⁵³ Ahitub's son was Zadok. Zadok's son was Ahimaaz.

UST

⁵³ Ahitub's son was Zadok, and Zadok's son was Ahimaaz.

This is the land for the descendants of Levi.

1 Chronicles 6:54

These are the locations where Aaron's descendants were assigned to live

This can be translated in active form. Alternate translation: "These are the places where God assigned Aaron's descendants to live" (See: [Active or Passive](#))

for the descendants of Aaron...Kohathites

"where the descendants of Aaron...Kohathites were to live"

Kohathites (the first lot was theirs)

The Israelites drew lots to decide where people would live. Alternate translation: "Kohathites. The first lot that they drew was theirs" (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

Kohathites

This is the name of a people group, the descendants of Kohath ([1 Chronicles 6:1](#)). See how you translated this in [1 Chronicles 6:33](#).

Translation Words - ULT

- son
- Aaron
- lots, casting lots

Translation Words - UST

- son
- Aaron
- lots, casting lots

ULT

⁵⁴ These are the locations where Aaron's descendants were assigned to live, that is, for the descendants of Aaron who were from the clans of the Kohathites (the first lot was theirs).

UST

⁵⁴ Here is a list of the places where Aaron's descendants lived. Those who were descendants of Kohath were the first group to be allotted cities to live in.

1 Chronicles 6:55

To them they gave Hebron

“They gave Hebron to the Kohathites”

its pasturelands

the land with grass for animals to eat. See how you translated this in [1 Chronicles 5:16](#).

Translation Words - ULT

- [Judea](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [Judea](#)

ULT

55 To them they gave Hebron in the land of Judah and its pasturelands,

UST

55 They were allotted the city of Hebron in Judah and the pastureland around the city,

1 Chronicles 6:56

(There are no notes for this verse.)

Translation Words - ULT

- son
- elder, older, old

Translation Words - UST

- son
- elder, older, old

ULT

⁵⁶ but the fields of the city and its villages they gave to Caleb son of Jephunneh.

UST

⁵⁶ but the fields farther from the city and the villages near the city were given to Caleb's son of Jephunneh.

1 Chronicles 6:57

Hebron...Libnah...Jattir...Eshtemoa

These are names of places. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

its pasturelands

the land with grass for animals to eat. See how you translated this in [1 Chronicles 5:16](#).

Translation Words - ULT

- [son](#)
- [Aaron](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [son](#)
- [Aaron](#)

ULT

⁵⁷ To the descendants of Aaron they gave: Hebron (a city of refuge), and Libnah with its pasturelands, Jattir, Eshtemoa with its pasturelands,

UST

⁵⁷ The descendants of Aaron who were descendants of Kohath were allotted Hebron, one of the cities to which people could flee and be protected if they accidentally killed someone. They also were allotted the towns and pastureland near Libnah, Jattir, Eshtemoa,

1 Chronicles 6:58

Hilen...Debir

These are names of places. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

ULT

⁵⁸ Hilen with its pasturelands, and Debir with its pasturelands.

UST

⁵⁸ Hilen, Debir,

1 Chronicles 6:59

Ashan...Juttah...Beth Shemesh

These are names of towns. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

its pasturelands

the land with grass for animals to eat. See how you translated this in [1 Chronicles 5:16](#).

ULT

⁵⁹ They also gave to the descendants of Aaron: Ashan with its pasturelands, Juttah, ^[2] and Beth Shemesh with its pasturelands;

UST

⁵⁹ Ashan, Juttah, and Beth Shemesh.

1 Chronicles 6:60

Geba...Alemeth...Anathoth

These are names of towns. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [Benjamin](#), [Benjamite](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [Benjamin](#), [Benjamite](#)

ULT

⁶⁰ and from the tribe of Benjamin, Geba with its pasturelands, Alemeth with its pasturelands, and Anathoth with its pasturelands. All their cities throughout their clans were thirteen cities.

UST

⁶⁰ They were also allotted the cities of Gibeon, Geba, Alemeth, and Anathoth from the tribe of Benjamin. Altogether, these clans descended from Kohath were allotted thirteen cities.

1 Chronicles 6:61

(There are no notes for this verse.)

Translation Words - ULT

- son
- family, household

Translation Words - UST

- son
- family, household

ULT

⁶¹ To the rest of clans of the Kohathites were allotted ten cities from the half tribe of Manasseh.

UST

⁶¹ The other clans descended from Kohath were allotted ten cities from the clans of the tribe of Manasseh that lived west of the Jordan River.

1 Chronicles 6:62

To Gershon's descendants in their various clans were given thirteen cities

"The clans of Gershon's descendants gained 13 cities" (See: [Numbers](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [son](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [son](#)

ULT

⁶² To Gershon's descendants in their various clans were given thirteen cities from the tribes of Issachar, Asher, Naphtali, and the half tribe of Manasseh in Bashan.

UST

⁶² The descendants of Gershon were allotted thirteen cities and towns from the tribes of Issachar, Asher, Naphtali, and the part of the tribe of Manasseh that lived in the region of Bashan on the east side of the Jordan River.

1 Chronicles 6:63

Merari

See how you translated this man's name in [1 Chronicles 6:1](#).

Translation Words - ULT

- [son](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [son](#)

ULT

⁶³ To Merari's descendants they gave twelve cities, clan by clan, from the tribes of Reuben, Gad, and Zebulun.

UST

⁶³ The descendants of Merari were allotted twelve cities and towns from the tribes of Reuben, Gad, and Zebulun.

1 Chronicles 6:64

their pasturelands

the land with grass for animals to eat. See how you translated this in [1 Chronicles 5:16](#).

Translation Words - ULT

- son
- Israel, Israelites
- Levi, Levite, Levitical
- elder, older, old

Translation Words - UST

- son
- Israel, Israelites
- Levi, Levite, Levitical
- elder, older, old

ULT

64 So the people of Israel gave these cities with their pasturelands to the Levites.

UST

64 The leaders of Israel allotted those towns and the nearby pasturelands to the descendants of Levi.

1 Chronicles 6:65

the towns mentioned earlier

The towns mentioned in [1 Chronicles 6:55](#) and [1 Chronicles 6:60](#).

Translation Words - ULT

- [call, call out](#)
- [son](#)
- [son \(2\)](#)
- [son](#)
- [name](#)
- [Judea](#)
- [Benjamin, Benjamite](#)
- [elder, older, old](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [call, call out](#)
- [son](#)
- [son \(2\)](#)
- [son](#)
- [name](#)
- [Judea](#)
- [Benjamin, Benjamite](#)
- [elder, older, old](#)

ULT

⁶⁵ They assigned by lot the towns mentioned earlier from the tribes of Judah, Simeon, and Benjamin.

UST

⁶⁵ They also allotted to them the cities and towns from the tribes of Judah, Simeon, and Benjamin that were listed previously.

1 Chronicles 6:66

Kohathites

This is the name of a people group, the descendants of Kohath ([1 Chronicles 6:1](#)). See how you translated this family name in [1 Chronicles 6:33](#).

Translation Words - ULT

- son
- Ephraim, Ephraimite

Translation Words - UST

- son
- Ephraim, Ephraimite

ULT

⁶⁶ Some of the clans of the Kohathites were given cities from the territory of the tribe of Ephraim.

UST

⁶⁶ Some of the descendants of Kohath were allotted towns from the tribe of Ephraim.

1 Chronicles 6:67

Shechem...Gezer

These are names of towns. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

its pasturelands

the land with grass for animals to eat. See how you translated this in [1 Chronicles 5:16](#).

Translation Words - ULT

- [Ephraim](#), [Ephraimite](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [Ephraim](#), [Ephraimite](#)

ULT

⁶⁷ They gave them: Shechem (a city of refuge) with its pasturelands in the hill country of Ephraim, Gezer with its pasturelands,

UST

⁶⁷ They were allotted Shechem, which was one of the cities to which people could flee and be protected if they accidentally killed someone, along with the nearby pastureland in the hills of Ephraim. They were also allotted these towns and pastureland near them: Gezer,

1 Chronicles 6:68

Jokmeam...Beth Horon

These are names of towns. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

ULT

⁶⁸ Jokmeam with its pasturelands, Beth Horon with its pasturelands,

UST

⁶⁸ Jokmeam, Beth Horon,

1 Chronicles 6:69

Aijalon...Gath Rimmon

These are names of towns. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

ULT

⁶⁹ Aijalon with its pasturelands, and
Gath Rimmon with its pasturelands.

UST

⁶⁹ Aijalon, and Gath Rimmon.

1 Chronicles 6:70

Aner...Bileam

These are names of towns. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

its pasturelands

the land with grass for animals to eat. See how you translated this in [1 Chronicles 5:16](#).

Translation Words - ULT

- [son](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [son](#)

ULT

70 The half tribe of Manasseh gave the Kohathites Aner with its pasturelands and Bileam with its pasturelands. These became the possessions of the rest of the Kohathite clans.

UST

70 The other descendants of Kohath were allotted the cities of Aner and Bileam and the nearby pastureland from the part of the tribe of Manasseh that lives west of the Jordan River.

1 Chronicles 6:71

Gershon

See how you translated this man's name in [1 Chronicles 6:1](#).

Golan...Ashtaroth

These are names of towns. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

its pasturelands

the land with grass for animals to eat. See how you translated this in [1 Chronicles 5:16](#).

Translation Words - ULT

- [son](#)
- [family](#), [household](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [son](#)
- [family](#), [household](#)

ULT

71 To Gershon's descendants out of the clans of the half tribe of Manasseh, they gave Golan in Bashan with its pasturelands and Ashtaroth with its pasturelands.

UST

71 The descendants of Gershon, who were part of the tribe of Manasseh, lived east of the Jordan River. They were allotted the cities and towns and pastureland near them: Golan in the regions of Bashan and Ashtaroth.

1 Chronicles 6:72

Kedesh...Daberath

These are names of towns. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

ULT

⁷² The tribe of Issachar gave to Gershon's descendants Kedesh with its pasturelands, Daberath with its pasturelands,

UST

⁷² From the tribe of Issachar they were allotted cities and towns and pastureland near Kedesh, Daberath,

1 Chronicles 6:73

Ramoth...Anem

These are names of towns. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

ULT

⁷³ Ramoth with its pasturelands, and
Anem with its pasturelands.

UST

⁷³ Ramoth, and Anem.

1 Chronicles 6:74

Issachar received from the tribe of Asher

This can be translated in active form. Alternate translation: "The tribe of Asher gave Issachar" (See: [Active or Passive](#))

Mashal...Abdon

These are names of towns. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

its pasturelands

the land with grass for animals to eat. See how you translated this in [1 Chronicles 5:16](#).

ULT

⁷⁴ Issachar received from the tribe of Asher: Mashal with its pasturelands, Abdon with its pasturelands,

UST

⁷⁴ From the tribe of Asher they were allotted cities and towns and pastureland near Mashal, Abdon,

1 Chronicles 6:75

Hukok...Rehob

These are names of towns. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

ULT

⁷⁵ Hukok with its pasturelands, and Rehob with its pasturelands.

UST

⁷⁵ Hukok, and Rehob.

1 Chronicles 6:76

They received from the tribe of Naphtali

This can be translated in active form. Alternate translation: "The tribe of Naphtali gave them" (See: [Active or Passive](#))

Kedesh...Hammon...Kiriathaim

These are names of towns. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

ULT

76 They received from the tribe of Naphtali: Kedesh in Galilee with its pasturelands, Hammon with its pasturelands, and Kiriathaim with its pasturelands.

UST

76 From the tribe of Naphtali they were allotted cities and towns and pastureland near Kedesh in the region of Galilee, and the cities of Hammon and Kiriathaim.

1 Chronicles 6:77

The rest...descendants received from the tribe of Zebulun

This can be translated in active form. Alternate translation: “The tribe of Zebulun gave the rest...descendants” (See: [Active or Passive](#))

Merari’s

Translate “Merari” as in [1 Chronicles 6:1](#).

Jokneam...Kartah...Rimmono...Tabor

These are names of towns. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

its pasturelands

the land with grass for animals to eat. See how you translated this in [1 Chronicles 5:16](#).

Translation Words - ULT

- [son](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [son](#)

ULT

⁷⁷ The rest of Merari’s descendants received from the tribe of Zebulun: Jokneam, Kartah, ^[3] and Rimmono with its pasturelands and Tabor with its pasturelands;

UST

⁷⁷ The other descendants of Levi, those descended from Merari, were allotted towns and pasturelands from the tribe of Zebulun near Jokneam, Kartah, Rimmono, and Tabor.

1 Chronicles 6:78

General Information:

The information in 1 Chronicles 6:78-79 can be rearranged as in the UST so its meaning can be more easily understood. (See: [Verse Bridges](#))

from the tribe of Reuben, across...Jericho, they received

This can be translated in active form. Alternate translation: "the tribe of Reuben, across...Jericho, gave them" (See: [Active or Passive](#))

Bezer...Jahzah

These are names of towns. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [Jericho](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [Jericho](#)

ULT

78 and from the tribe of Reuben, across the Jordan on the east side of Jericho, they received Bezer in the desert, Jahzah,

UST

78-79 From the tribe of Reuben they were allotted cities and towns and pastureland near Bezer in the wilderness, Jahzah, Kedemoth, and Mephaath. The tribe of Reuben lived east of the Jordan River, across from Jericho.

1 Chronicles 6:79

General Information:

The information in 1 Chronicles 6:78-79 can be rearranged as in the UST so its meaning can be more easily understood. (See: [Verse Bridges](#))

Kedemoth...Mephaath

These are names of towns. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

ULT

79 Kedemoth and its pasturelands, and Mephaath and its pasturelands.

UST

78-79 From the tribe of Reuben they were allotted cities and towns and pastureland near Bezer in the wilderness, Jahzah, Kedemoth, and Mephaath. The tribe of Reuben lived east of the Jordan River, across from Jericho.

1 Chronicles 6:80

The Levites received from the tribe of Gad

This can be translated in active form. Alternate translation: "The tribe of Gad gave the Levites" (See: [Active or Passive](#))

Ramoth...Mahanaim

These are names of towns. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

its pasturelands

the land with grass for animals to eat. See how you translated this in [1 Chronicles 5:16](#).

ULT

⁸⁰ The Levites received from the tribe of Gad: Ramoth in Gilead with its pasturelands, Mahanaim with its pasturelands,

UST

⁸⁰ From the tribe of Gad, they were allotted cities and towns and pastureland near Ramoth in the region of Gilead, Mahanaim,

1 Chronicles 6:81

Heshbon...Jazer

These are names of towns. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

ULT

⁸¹ Heshbon with its pasturelands, and Jazer with its pasturelands.

UST

⁸¹ Heshbon, and Jazer. Bev

1 Chronicles 7

1 Chronicles 7 General Notes

Structure and formatting

This chapter records the descendants of Issachar, Benjamin, Ephraim, Asher, and Manasseh living west of the Jordan River.

1 Chronicles 7:1

Issachar...Tola, Puah, Jashub...Shimron

These are names of men. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [son](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [son](#)

ULT

¹ Issachar's four sons were Tola, Puah, Jashub, and Shimron.

UST

¹ Issachar's four sons were Tola, Puah, Jashub, and Shimron.

1 Chronicles 7:2

General Information:

All of the names here are the names of men. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

heads of their fathers' houses

The words "father's houses" refers to extended families, people related to each other who usually lived in different houses, what the UST calls "clans."

They numbered 22,600

"They numbered twenty-two thousand six hundred" or "There were 22,600 men" (See: [Numbers](#))

in the days of David

"during David's life" or "while David was alive"

Translation Words - ULT

- son
- David
- ancestor, father, fathered, forefather, grandfather
- might, mighty, mighty works
- head
- prosper, prosperity, prosperous
- house

Translation Words - UST

- son
- David
- ancestor, father, fathered, forefather, grandfather
- might, mighty, mighty works
- head
- prosper, prosperity, prosperous
- house

ULT

² The sons of Tola were Uzzi, Rephaiah, Jeriel, Jahmai, Ibsam, and Samuel. They were the heads of their fathers' houses, from the descendants of Tola and they were listed as mighty warriors among their generation. They numbered 22,600 in the days of David.

UST

² Tola's sons were Uzzi, Rephaiah, Jeriel, Jahmai, Ibsam, and Samuel. They were all leaders of the clans descended from them. In the record of Tola's descendants were the names of 22,600 men who were able to be in the army during the time that David was the king of Israel.

1 Chronicles 7:3

General Information:

All of the names here are the names of men. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [son](#)
- [son](#)
- [head](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [son](#)
- [son](#)
- [head](#)

ULT

³ Uzzi's son was Izrahiah. His sons were Michael, Obadiah, Joel, and Ishijah, all five of them were clan leaders.

UST

³ Uzzi's son was Izrahiah. Izrahiah's five sons were Michael, Obadiah, Joel, and Ishiah. Izrahiah and his sons were all leaders of their clans.

1 Chronicles 7:4

Along with them they had

Another possible meaning is "Among them were."

thirty-six thousand troops for battle

"36,000 soldiers who were ready for battle" (See: [Numbers](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [son](#)
- [ancestor, father, fathered, forefather, grandfather](#)
- [house](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [son](#)
- [ancestor, father, fathered, forefather, grandfather](#)
- [house](#)

ULT

⁴ Along with them they had thirty-six thousand troops for battle, according to the lists belonging to their ancestors' clans, for they had many wives and sons.

UST

⁴ In the record of Izrahiah's descendants were the names of thirty-six thousand men who were able to be in the army because they had many wives and children.

1 Chronicles 7:5

eighty-seven thousand fighting men

"87,000 fighting men" (See: [Numbers](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- brother
- might, mighty, mighty works
- family, household
- prosper, prosperity, prosperous

Translation Words - UST

- brother
- might, mighty, mighty works
- family, household
- prosper, prosperity, prosperous

ULT

⁵ Their relatives were fighting men from all the clans of Issachar, and they numbered in all, eighty-seven thousand fighting men, as listed in their genealogy.

UST

⁵ In the records of the clans descended from Issachar were the names of eighty-seven thousand men able to be in the army.

The descendants of Benjamin are listed next.

1 Chronicles 7:6

Bela...Beker...Jediael

These are names of men. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [Benjamin](#), [Benjamite](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [Benjamin](#), [Benjamite](#)

ULT

⁶ Benjamin's three sons were Bela, Beker, and Jediael.

UST

⁶ These are the descendants of Benjamin. The three sons of Benjamin were Bela, Beker, and Jediael.

1 Chronicles 7:7

General Information:

All of the names here are the names of men. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

22,034 fighting men

“twenty-two thousand and thirty-four” (See: [Numbers](#))

fathers’ houses

extended families, people related to each other who usually lived in different houses, what the UST calls “clans”

Translation Words - ULT

- son
- ancestor, father, fathered, forefather, grandfather
- might, mighty, mighty works
- head
- prosper, prosperity, prosperous
- house

Translation Words - UST

- son
- ancestor, father, fathered, forefather, grandfather
- might, mighty, mighty works
- head
- prosper, prosperity, prosperous
- house

ULT

⁷ Bela’s five sons were Ezbon, Uzzi, Uzziel, Jerimoth, and Iri. They were soldiers and heads of fathers’ houses. Their people numbered 22,034 fighting men, according to the lists belonging to their ancestors’ clans.

UST

⁷ Bela’s five sons were Ezbon, Uzzi, Uzziel, Jerimoth, and Iri. They were all leaders of clans. In the records of the clans descended from Bela there were names of 22,034 men who were able to be in the army.

1 Chronicles 7:8

General Information:

All of the names here are names of men. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- son
- son

Translation Words - UST

- son
- son

ULT

⁸ Beker's sons were Zemirah, Joash, Eliezer, Elioenai, Omri, Jeremoth, Abijah, Anathoth, and Alemeth. All these were his sons.

UST

⁸ Beker's sons were Zemirah, Joash, Eliezer, Elioenai, Omri, Jeremoth, Abijah, Anathoth, and Alemeth.

1 Chronicles 7:9

20,200 heads of their fathers' houses

"twenty thousand two hundred family leaders" (See: [Numbers](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- ancestor, father, fathered, forefather, grandfather
- might, mighty, mighty works
- head
- prosper, prosperity, prosperous
- house

Translation Words - UST

- ancestor, father, fathered, forefather, grandfather
- might, mighty, mighty works
- head
- prosper, prosperity, prosperous
- house

ULT

⁹ The lists of their clans numbered 20,200 heads of their fathers' houses and fighting men.

UST

⁹ In the records of the clans descended from Beker were the names of 20,200 men and leaders of the clans who were able to be in the army.

1 Chronicles 7:10

General Information:

All of the names here are names of men. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- son
- son
- Benjamin, Benjamite

Translation Words - UST

- son
- son
- Benjamin, Benjamite

ULT

10 The son of Jediahel was Bilhan. Bilhan's sons were Jeush, Benjamin, Ehud, Kenaanah, Zethan, Tarshish, and Ahishahar.

UST

10 Jediahel's son was Bilhan. Bilhan's sons were Jeush, Benjamin, Ehud, Kenaanah, Zethan, Tarshish, and Ahishahar.

1 Chronicles 7:11

Jediael

This is the name of a man. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

Listed in their clan lists were 17,200

“The clan lists contained 17,200”

17,200 heads of houses

“seventeen thousand two hundred heads of houses” (See: [Numbers](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [son](#)
- [ancestor, father, fathered, forefather, grandfather](#)
- [might, mighty, mighty works](#)
- [prosper, prosperity, prosperous](#)
- [know, knowledge, unknown, distinguish](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [son](#)
- [ancestor, father, fathered, forefather, grandfather](#)
- [might, mighty, mighty works](#)
- [prosper, prosperity, prosperous](#)
- [know, knowledge, unknown, distinguish](#)

ULT

11 All these were sons of Jediael. Listed in their clan lists were 17,200 heads of houses and fighting men fit for military service.

UST

11 They were all leaders of clans descended from them. There were 17,200 of them who were able to be in the army.

1 Chronicles 7:12

Ir...Aher

These are names of men. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

Shuppites...Huppites...Hushites

These are names of clans of people. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- son
- son

Translation Words - UST

- son
- son

ULT

¹² (The Shuppites and the Huppites were sons of Ir, and the Hushites were sons of Aher.)

UST

¹² Shuppim and Huppim were also members of this clan. One of the descendants of Dan was Hushim.

The descendants of Naphtali are listed next.

1 Chronicles 7:13

Jahziel, Guni, Jezer, and Shillem

These are names of men. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

Bilhah's grandsons

"the sons of Bilhah's son." Bilhah is the name of a woman. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- son
- son

Translation Words - UST

- son
- son

ULT

¹³ Naphtali's sons were Jahziel, Guni, Jezer, and Shillem. These were Bilhah's grandsons.

UST

¹³ These are the descendants of Naphtali. Naphtali's sons were Jahziel, Guni, Jezer, and Shillem. They were all descendants of Jacob's slave wife Bilhah.

The descendants of Manasseh are listed next.

1 Chronicles 7:14

Asriel

This is the name of a man. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

Aramean concubine bore

"Aramean concubine gave birth to"

Makir, Gilead's father

These are names of men. See how you translated "Makir, father of Gilead" in [1 Chronicles 2:21](#). (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- son
- ancestor, father, fathered, forefather, grandfather

Translation Words - UST

- son
- ancestor, father, fathered, forefather, grandfather

ULT

14 Manasseh had a male child named Asriel, whom his Aramean concubine bore. She also gave birth to Makir, Gilead's father.

UST

14 These are the descendants of Manasseh. Manasseh had a slave wife who was from Aram. She was the mother of Asriel and Makir. Makir was the father of Gilead.

1 Chronicles 7:15

Makir...Zelophehad

These are names of men. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

Huppites...Shuppites

See how you translated these names in [1 Chronicles 7:12](#).

Maakah

This is the name of a woman. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

ULT

15 Makir took a wife from the Huppites and Shuppites. A sister's name was Maakah. Another of Manasseh's descendants was Zelophehad, who had only daughters.

UST

15 Makir had two wives. They were from the clans of Huppim and Shuppim. One of Makir's wives was named Maacah. Makir had another son whose name was Zelophehad. Zelophehad had no sons; he had only daughters.

1 Chronicles 7:16

Makir...Peresh...Sheresh...Ulam...Rakem

These are names of men. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- brother
- son
- son
- name
- declare, proclaim, announce

Translation Words - UST

- brother
- son
- son
- name
- declare, proclaim, announce

ULT

16 Maakah wife of Makir, bore a son and she called him Peresh. His brother's name was Sheresh, and his sons were Ulam and Rakem.

UST

16 Makir's wife Maacah gave birth to two sons whom she named Peresh and Sheresh. Sheresh's sons were Ulam and Rakem.

1 Chronicles 7:17

General Information:

All of the names here are names of men. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- son
- son
- son
- son (2)

Translation Words - UST

- son
- son
- son
- son (2)

ULT

17 Ulam's son was Bedan. These were the descendants of Gilead son of Makir son of Manasseh.

UST

17 Ulam's son was Bedan. Those were descendants of Gilead son of Makir and grandson of Manasseh.

1 Chronicles 7:18

General Information:

All of the names here except Hammoleketh are names of men. Hammoleketh is the name of a woman. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

ULT

18 Gilead's sister Hammoleketh bore Ishhod, Abiezer, and Mahlah.

UST

18 Makir's sister was Hammoleketh, who was the mother of Ishhod, Abiezer, and Mahlah.

1 Chronicles 7:19

General Information:

All of the names here are names of men. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [son](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [son](#)

ULT

19 The sons of Shemida were Ahian, Shechem, Likhi, and Aniam.

UST

19 Another son of Gilead was Shemida, whose sons were Ahian, Shechem, Likhi, and Aniam.

The descendants of Ephraim are listed next.

1 Chronicles 7:20

General Information:

All of the names here are names of men. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- son
- son
- son
- son
- son
- Ephraim, Ephraimite

Translation Words - UST

- son
- son
- son
- son
- son
- Ephraim, Ephraimite

ULT

20 The descendants of Ephraim were as follows: Ephraim's son was Shuthelah. Shuthelah's son was Bered. Bered's son was Tahath. Tahath's son was Eleadah. Eleadah's son was Tahath.

UST

20 These are the descendants of Ephraim. One son of Ephraim was Shuthelah. Shuthelah's son was Bered. Bered's son was Tahath. Tahath's son was Eleadah. Eleadah's son was also named Tahath.

1 Chronicles 7:21

General Information:

All of the names here except Gath are names of men. Gath is the name of a place. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

Ezer and Elead were killed by men of Gath, natives in the land

This can be translated in active form. Alternate translation: “Men of Gath, the natives in the land, killed Ezer and Elead” (See: [Active or Passive](#))

they went to steal their cattle

“the brothers went to steal the cattle from the people of Gath”

Translation Words - ULT

- son
- son

Translation Words - UST

- son
- son

ULT

21 Tahath's son was Zabad. Zabad's son was Shuthelah. (Ezer and Elead were killed by men of Gath, natives in the land, when they went to steal their cattle.

UST

21 Tahath's son was Zabad. Zabad's son was Shuthelah. Ephraim's other sons, Ezer and Elead, went to the city of Gath to steal some cows and sheep. But they were both killed by some of the men from that city.

1 Chronicles 7:22

(There are no notes for this verse.)

Translation Words - ULT

- brother
- Ephraim, Ephraimite
- ancestor, father, fathered, forefather, grandfather
- mourn, mourner, weeping

Translation Words - UST

- brother
- Ephraim, Ephraimite
- ancestor, father, fathered, forefather, grandfather
- mourn, mourner, weeping

ULT

²² Ephraim their father mourned for them many days, and his brothers came to comfort him.

UST

²² Their father Ephraim cried for them for many days, and his family came to comfort him.

1 Chronicles 7:23

He went in to his wife

This is a euphemism. Alternate translation: “he had sexual relations with his wife” (See: [Euphemism](#))

She conceived and bore a son

“She became pregnant and gave birth to a son”

Ephraim...Beriah

These are names of men. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

called him

“named him”

Translation Words - ULT

- [son](#)
- [name](#)
- [evil, wicked, unpleasant](#)
- [temple](#)
- [declare, proclaim, announce](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [son](#)
- [name](#)
- [evil, wicked, unpleasant](#)
- [temple](#)
- [declare, proclaim, announce](#)

ULT

23 He went in to his wife. She conceived and bore a son. Ephraim called him Beriah, because tragedy had come to his family.)

UST

23 Then he and his wife slept together again; she became pregnant and gave birth to a son. Ephraim named him Beriah which resembles the word ‘trouble’ because of the trouble that his family had experienced.

1 Chronicles 7:24

Sheerah

This is the name of a woman. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

Upper Beth Horon...Uzzén Sheerah

These are names of towns. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

ULT

²⁴ His daughter was Sheerah, who built Lower and Upper Beth Horon and Uzzén Sheerah.

UST

²⁴ Ephraim's daughter was Sheerah. Her workers built three towns: Lower Beth Horon, Upper Beth Horon, and Uzzén Sheerah.

1 Chronicles 7:25

General Information:

All of the names here are names of men. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- son
- son
- son

Translation Words - UST

- son
- son
- son

ULT

²⁵ His son was Rephah. Rephah's son was Resheph. Resheph's son was Telah. Telah's son was Tahan.

UST

²⁵ Another son of Ephraim was Rephah. Rephah's son was Resheph. Resheph's son was Telah. Telah's son was Tahan.

1 Chronicles 7:26

General Information:

All of the names here are names of men. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- son
- son
- son

Translation Words - UST

- son
- son
- son

ULT

²⁶ Tahan's son was Ladan. Ladan's son was Ammihud. Ammihud's son was Elishama.

UST

²⁶ Tahan's son was Ladan. Ladan's son was Ammihud. Ammihud's son was Elishama.

1 Chronicles 7:27

Elishama...Nun

These are names of men. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- son
- son

Translation Words - UST

- son
- son

ULT

²⁷ Elishama's son was Nun. Nun's son was Joshua.

UST

²⁷ Elishama's son was Nun. Nun's son was Joshua, the man who led the Israelites after Moses died.

1 Chronicles 7:28

General Information:

All of the names listed here are names of towns. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

Their possessions and residences were Bethel...villages

The abstract nouns “possessions” and “residences” can be translated with verbal phrases. Alternate translation: “They possessed and resided in Bethel...villages” or “They owned and lived in Bethel...villages” (See: [Abstract Nouns](#))

ULT

28 Their possessions and residences were Bethel and its surrounding villages. They extended eastward to Naaran and westward to Gezer and its villages, and to Shechem and its villages to Ayyah and its villages.

UST

28 This is a list of the cities and areas where the descendants of Ephraim lived: Bethel and the nearby villages; Naaran to the east; Gezer to the west and the nearby villages; and Shechem and the nearby villages. Those villages extended north as far as Ayyah and the nearby villages.

1 Chronicles 7:29

Beth Shan...Taanach...Megiddo...Dor

These are names of towns. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

In these towns the descendants of Joseph son of Israel lived

“The descendants of Joseph, son of Israel, lived in these towns”

Translation Words - ULT

- son
- son
- son
- Israel, Israelites
- Joseph (OT)
- hand

Translation Words - UST

- son
- son
- son
- Israel, Israelites
- Joseph (OT)
- hand

ULT

29 On the border with Manasseh were Beth Shan and its villages, Taanach and its villages, Megiddo and its villages, and Dor and its villages. In these towns the descendants of Joseph son of Israel lived.

UST

29 Along the border of the area where the descendants of Manasseh lived were these towns: Beth Shan, Taanach, Megiddo, and Dor, and the nearby villages. The people who lived in all those places were descendants of Jacob's son Joseph.

These are the descendants of Asher.

1 Chronicles 7:30

General Information:

All of the names here except Serah are names of men. Serah is the name of a woman. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [son](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [son](#)

ULT

³⁰ Asher's sons were Imnah, Ishvah, Ishvi, and Beriah. Serah was their sister.

UST

³⁰ Asher's sons were Imnah, Ishvah, Ishvi, and Beriah. Their sister was Serah.

1 Chronicles 7:31

General Information:

All of the names here are names of men. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- son
- ancestor, father, fathered, forefather, grandfather

Translation Words - UST

- son
- ancestor, father, fathered, forefather, grandfather

ULT

31 Beriah's sons were Heber and Malkiel, who was the father of Birzaith.

UST

31 Beriah's sons were Heber and Malkiel. Malkiel was the father of Birzaith

1 Chronicles 7:32

General Information:

All of the names here except Shua are names of men. Shua is the name of a woman. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

ULT

³² Heber's sons were Japhlet, Shomer, and Hotham. Shua was their sister.

UST

³² Heber was the father of Japhlet, Shomer, and Hotham. Their sister was Shua.

1 Chronicles 7:33

General Information:

All of the names here are names of men. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- son
- son

Translation Words - UST

- son
- son

ULT

³³ Japhlet's sons were Pasak, Bimhal, and Ashvath. These were Japhlet's children.

UST

³³ Japhlet's sons were Pasak, Bimhal, and Ashvath.

1 Chronicles 7:34

General Information:

All of the names here are names of men. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [son](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [son](#)

ULT

³⁴ Shomer, Japhlet's brother, had these sons: Rohgah, Hubbah, and Aram.

UST

³⁴ Japhlet's younger brother was Shomer. Shomer's sons were Rohgah, Hubbah, and Aram.

1 Chronicles 7:35

General Information:

All of the names here are names of men. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [brother](#)
- [son](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [brother](#)
- [son](#)

ULT

³⁵ Shemer's brother, Helem, had these sons: Zophah, Imna, Shelesh, and Amal.

UST

³⁵ Shomer's younger brother was Helem. Helem's sons were Zophah, Imna, Shelesh, and Amal.

1 Chronicles 7:36

General Information:

All of the names here are names of men. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- son

Translation Words - UST

- son

ULT

³⁶ Zophah's sons were Suah,
Harnepher, Shual, Beri, Imrah,

UST

³⁶ Zophah's sons were Suah,
Harnepher, Shual, Beri, Imrah,

1 Chronicles 7:37

General Information:

All of the names here are names of men. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

ULT

³⁷ Bezer, Hod, Shamma, Shilshah, Ithran, and Beera.

UST

³⁷ Bezer, Hod, Shamma, Shilshah, Ithran whose other name was Jether, and Beera.

1 Chronicles 7:38

General Information:

All of the names here are names of men. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [son](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [son](#)

ULT

³⁸ Jether's sons were Jephunneh, Pispah, and Ara.

UST

³⁸ Jether's sons were Jephunneh, Pispah, and Ara.

1 Chronicles 7:39

General Information:

All of the names here are names of men. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [son](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [son](#)

ULT

³⁹ Ulla's sons were Arah, Hanniel, and Rizia.

UST

³⁹ Another descendant of Asher was Ulla, whose sons were Arah, Hanniel, and Rizia.

1 Chronicles 7:40

Asher

This is the name of a man. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

fathers' houses

extended families, people related to each other who usually lived in different houses, what the UST calls "clans"

distinguished men

"important men"

There were twenty-six thousand men listed who were fit for military service, according to their numbered lists

"According to the clan records, there were 26,000 men who were able to serve in the military" (See: [Numbers](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- son
- ancestor, father, fathered, forefather, grandfather
- might, mighty, mighty works
- head
- head
- prosper, prosperity, prosperous
- prince, princess, governors, provincial governors, officials, noblemen, nobility
- house

Translation Words - UST

- son
- ancestor, father, fathered, forefather, grandfather
- might, mighty, mighty works
- head
- head
- prosper, prosperity, prosperous
- prince, princess, governors, provincial governors, officials, noblemen, nobility
- house

ULT

⁴⁰ All these were descendants of Asher. They were ancestors of the clans, heads of fathers' houses, distinguished men, fighting men, and chief among the leaders. There were twenty-six thousand men listed who were fit for military service, according to their numbered lists.

UST

⁴⁰ All those men were descendants of Asher, and they were all leaders of their clans. They were brave warriors and excellent leaders. In the record of the clans that are descended from Asher are the names of twenty-six thousand men who were able to be in the army.

1 Chronicles 8

1 Chronicles 8 General Notes

Structure and formatting

This chapter records the genealogy of Saul's family.

1 Chronicles 8:1

General Information:

All of the names here are names of men. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- Benjamin, Benjamite
- firstborn

Translation Words - UST

- Benjamin, Benjamite
- firstborn

ULT

¹ Benjamin's five sons were Bela his firstborn, Ashbel, Aharah,

UST

¹ Benjamin had five sons: Bela, Ashbel, Aharah,

1 Chronicles 8:2

Nohah...Rapha

These are names of men. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

ULT

² Nohah, and Rapha.

UST

² Nohah, and Rapha.

1 Chronicles 8:3

Bela...Addar, Gera, Abihud

These are names of men. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [son](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [son](#)

ULT

³ Bela's sons were Addar, Gera, Abihud,

UST

³ Bela's sons were Addar, Gera, Abihud,

1 Chronicles 8:4

Abishua, Naaman, Ahoah

These are names of men. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

ULT

⁴ Abishua, Naaman, Ahoah,

UST

⁴ Abishua, Naaman, Ahoah,

1 Chronicles 8:5

Gera, Shephuphan...Hiram

These are names of men. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

ULT

⁵ Gera, Shephuphan, and Hiram.

UST

⁵ Gera, Shephuphan, and Hiram.

1 Chronicles 8:6

Ehud

This is the name of a man. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

fathers' houses

extended families, people related to each other who usually lived in different houses, what the UST calls "clans"

Geba...Manahath

These are names of towns. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

were compelled to move

"needed to move" or "had to move"

Translation Words - ULT

- son
- ancestor, father, fathered, forefather, grandfather
- head

Translation Words - UST

- son
- ancestor, father, fathered, forefather, grandfather
- head

ULT

⁶ These were the descendants of Ehud who were heads of fathers' houses for the inhabitants of Geba, who were compelled to move to Manahath:

UST

⁶ One of Gera's sons was Ehud. The descendants of Ehud were leaders of their clans who lived in the city of Geba, but they were forced to move to the city of Manahath.

1 Chronicles 8:7

General Information:

All of the names here are names of men. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [exile](#), [exiled](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [exile](#), [exiled](#)

ULT

⁷ Naaman, Ahijah, and Gera. The last, Gera, led them in their move. He was the father of Uzza and Ahihud.

UST

⁷ Ehud's sons were Naaman, Ahijah, and Gera. Gera was the one who led them when they moved to Manahath. Gera was the father of Uzza and Ahihud.

1 Chronicles 8:8

Shaharaim

This is the name of a man. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

Hushim...Baara

These are names of women. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [Moab](#), [Moabite](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [Moab](#), [Moabite](#)

ULT

⁸ Shaharaim became the father of children in the land of Moab, after he had divorced his wives Hushim and Baara.

UST

⁸⁻¹¹ Another descendant of Benjamin was Shaharaim. He and his wife Hushim had two sons, Abitub and Elpaal. In the region of Moab, Shaharaim divorced Hushim and his other wife Baara. Then he married a woman whose name was Hodesh, and they had seven sons: Jobab, Zibia, Mesha, Malkam, Jeuz, Sakia, and Mirmah. They were all leaders of their clans.

1 Chronicles 8:9

Shaharaim...Jobab...Zibia...Mesha...Malkam

These are names of men. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

By his wife Hodesh, Shaharaim became the father of

“Shaharaim and his wife Hodesh had the following sons:”

Hodesh

This is the name of a woman. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

ULT

⁹ By his wife Hodesh, Shaharaim became the father of Jobab, Zibia, Mesha, Malkam,

UST

1 Chronicles 8:10

Jeuz...Sakia...Mirmah

These are names of men. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

fathers' houses

extended families, people related to each other who usually lived in different houses, what the UST calls "clans"

Translation Words - ULT

- [son](#)
- [ancestor, father, fathered, forefather, grandfather](#)
- [head](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [son](#)
- [ancestor, father, fathered, forefather, grandfather](#)
- [head](#)

ULT

¹⁰ Jeuz, Sakia, and Mirmah. These were his sons, heads of fathers' houses.

UST

1 Chronicles 8:11

Abitub...Elpaal

These are names of men. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

Hushim

This is the name of a woman. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

ULT

11 He had already become the father of Abitub and Elpaal by Hushim.

UST

8-11 Another descendant of Benjamin was Shaharaim. He and his wife Hushim had two sons, Abitub and Elpaal. In the region of Moab, Shaharaim divorced Hushim and his other wife Baara. Then he married a woman whose name was Hodesh, and they had seven sons: Jobab, Zibia, Mesha, Malkam, Jeuz, Sakia, and Mirmah. They were all leaders of their clans.

1 Chronicles 8:12

Elpaal...Eber...Misham...Shemed

These are names of men. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

Ono...Lod

These are names of places. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [son](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [son](#)

ULT

¹² Elpaal's sons were Eber, Misham, and Shemed (who built Ono and Lod with its surrounding villages).

UST

¹²⁻¹³ Elpaal's sons were Eber, Misham, Shemed, Beriah, and Shema. Shemed built the cities of Ono and Lod and their nearby villages. Beriah and Shema were leaders of their clans, who lived in the city of Aijalon. They forced the people who lived in the city of Gath to leave their city.

1 Chronicles 8:13

Beriah...Shema

These are names of men. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

fathers' houses

extended families, people related to each other who usually lived in different houses, what the UST calls "clans"

Aijalon...Gath

These are names of places. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- ancestor, father, fathered, forefather, grandfather
- head

Translation Words - UST

- ancestor, father, fathered, forefather, grandfather
- head

ULT

13 There were also Beriah and Shema. They were heads of the fathers' houses of those living in Aijalon, who drove out the inhabitants of Gath.

UST

12-13 Elpaal's sons were Eber, Misham, Shemed, Beriah, and Shema. Shemed built the cities of Ono and Lod and their nearby villages. Beriah and Shema were leaders of their clans, who lived in the city of Aijalon. They forced the people who lived in the city of Gath to leave their city.

1 Chronicles 8:14

General Information:

All of the names here are names of men. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

ULT

14 Beriah had these sons: Ahio,
Shashak, Jeremoth,

UST

14-16 Beriah's sons were Ahio, Shashak,
Jeremoth, Zebadiah, Arad, Eder,
Michael, Ishpah, and Joha.

1 Chronicles 8:15

General Information:

All of the names here are names of men. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

ULT

15 Zebadiah, Arad, Eder,

UST

1 Chronicles 8:16

General Information:

All of the names here are names of men. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- son

Translation Words - UST

- son

ULT

16 Michael, Ishpah, and Joha were the sons of Beriah.

UST

14-16 Beriah's sons were Ahio, Shashak, Jeremoth, Zebadiah, Arad, Eder, Michael, Ishpah, and Joha.

1 Chronicles 8:17

General Information:

All of the names here are names of men. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

General Information:

You can combine the information in 1 Chronicles 8:17-18 into one verse so its meaning can be more easily understood. (See: [Verse Bridges](#))

ULT

17 Zebadiah, Meshullam, Hizki, Heber,

UST

17-18 Other descendants of Elpaal were also named Zebadiah, Meshullam, Hizki, Heber, Ishmerai, Izliah, and Jobab.

1 Chronicles 8:18

General Information:

All of the names here are names of men. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [son](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [son](#)

ULT

18 Ishmerai, Izliah, and Jobab were the sons of Elpaal.

UST

17-18 Other descendants of Elpaal were also named Zebadiah, Meshullam, Hizki, Heber, Ishmerai, Izliah, and Jobab.

1 Chronicles 8:19

General Information:

All of the names here are names of men. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

General Information:

You can combine the information in 1 Chronicles 8:19-21 into one verse so its meaning can be more easily understood. (See: [Verse Bridges](#))

ULT

¹⁹ Jakim, Zikri, Zabdi,

UST

¹⁹⁻²¹ Another descendant of Benjamin was Shimei. Shimei's descendants included Jakim, Zicri, Zabdi, Elienai, Zillethai, Eiel, Adaiah, Beraiah, and Shimrath.

1 Chronicles 8:20

General Information:

All of the names here are names of men. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

General Information:

The information in 1 Chronicles 8:19-21 has been rearranged so its meaning can be more easily understood. All of the names here are names of men. (See: [Verse Bridges](#) and [How to Translate Names](#))

ULT

²⁰ Elienai, Zillethai, Eiel,

UST

1 Chronicles 8:21

General Information:

All of the names here are names of men. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- son

Translation Words - UST

- son

ULT

²¹ Adaiah, Beraiah, and Shimrath were the sons of Shimei.

UST

¹⁹⁻²¹ Another descendant of Benjamin was Shimei. Shimei's descendants included Jakim, Zicri, Zabdi, Elienai, Zillethai, Eliel, Adaiah, Beraiah, and Shimrath.

1 Chronicles 8:22

General Information:

All of the names here are names of men. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

General Information:

You can combine the information in 1 Chronicles 8:22-25 into one verse so its meaning can be more easily understood. (See: [Verse Bridges](#))

ULT

²² Ishpan, Eber, Eliel,

UST

²²⁻²⁵ Shashak's sons were Ishpan, Eber, Eliel, Abdon, Zicri, Hanan, Hananiah, Elam, Anthothijah, Iphdeiah, and Penuel.

1 Chronicles 8:23

General Information:

All of the names here are names of men. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

ULT

²³ Abdon, Zikri, Hanan,

UST

1 Chronicles 8:24

General Information:

All of the names here are names of men. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

ULT

²⁴ Hananiah, Elam, Anthothijah,

UST

1 Chronicles 8:25

General Information:

All of the names here are names of men. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [son](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [son](#)

ULT

²⁵ Iphdeiah, and Penuel were the sons of Shashak

UST

²²⁻²⁵ Shashak's sons were Ishpan, Eber, Eliel, Abdon, Zicri, Hanan, Hananiah, Elam, Anthothijah, Iphdeiah, and Penuel.

1 Chronicles 8:26

General Information:

All of the names here are names of men. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

General Information:

You can combine the information in 1 Chronicles 8:26-27 into one verse so its meaning can be more easily understood. (See: [Verse Bridges](#))

ULT

²⁶ Shamsherai, Shehariah, Athaliah,

UST

²⁶⁻²⁷ Another descendant of Benjamin was Jeroham, whose sons were Shamsherai, Shehariah, Athaliah, Jareshiah, Elijah, and Zicri.

1 Chronicles 8:27

General Information:

All of the names here are names of men. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- son

Translation Words - UST

- son

ULT

²⁷ Jaareshiah, Elijah, and Zikri were the sons of Jeroham.

UST

²⁶⁻²⁷ Another descendant of Benjamin was Jeroham, whose sons were Shamsherai, Shehariah, Athaliah, Jaareshiah, Elijah, and Zicri.

1 Chronicles 8:28

fathers' houses

extended families, people related to each other who usually lived in different houses, what the UST calls "clans"

Translation Words - ULT

- [Jerusalem](#)
- [ancestor, father, fathered, forefather, grandfather](#)
- [head](#)
- [head](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [Jerusalem](#)
- [ancestor, father, fathered, forefather, grandfather](#)
- [head](#)
- [head](#)

ULT

28 These were heads of fathers' houses and chief men who lived in Jerusalem.

UST

28 In the records of these clans it is written that all those men were leaders of their clans, and they lived in Jerusalem.

1 Chronicles 8:29

The father of Gibeon, Jeiel, whose wife's name was Maakah, lived in Gibeon

Here “father of” refers to Jeiel’s status as the leading person in the city of Gibeon. Alternate translation: “Jeiel, the leader of Gibeon, lived in Gibeon. His wife’s name was Maakah” (See: [Idiom](#))

Gibeon

This is the name of a town. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

Jeiel

This is the name of a man. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

Maakah

This is the name of a woman. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- Gibeon, Gibeonite
- ancestor, father, fathered, forefather, grandfather

Translation Words - UST

- Gibeon, Gibeonite
- ancestor, father, fathered, forefather, grandfather

ULT

²⁹ The father of Gibeon, Jeiel, whose wife’s name was Maakah, lived in Gibeon.

UST

²⁹ Another descendant of Benjamin was Jeiel. He lived in the city of Gibeon, and he was the leader of those who lived there. His wife was Maakah.

1 Chronicles 8:30

His firstborn

"Jeiel's first son"

Abdon...Zur...Kish...Baal...Nadab

These are names of men. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [son](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [son](#)

ULT

³⁰ His firstborn was Abdon, followed by Zur, Kish, Baal, Nadab,

UST

³⁰ His oldest son was Abdon. His other sons were Zur, Kish, Baal, Ner, Nadab,

1 Chronicles 8:31

Gedor...Ahio...Zeker

These are names of men. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

ULT

³¹ Gedor, Ahio, and Zeker.

UST

³¹ Gedor, Ahio, Zeker, and Mikloth.

1 Chronicles 8:32

Jeiel...Mikloth...Shimeah

These are names of men. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- brother
- brother
- Jerusalem

Translation Words - UST

- brother
- brother
- Jerusalem

ULT

³² Another of Jeiel's sons was Mikloth, who became the father of Shimeah. They also lived near their relatives in Jerusalem.

UST

³² Mikloth was the father of Shimeah. All these sons of Jeiel also lived near their relatives in Jerusalem.

1 Chronicles 8:33

General Information:

All of the names here are names of men. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

ULT

³³ Ner was the father of Kish. Kish was the father of Saul. Saul was the father of Jonathan, Malki-Shua, Abinadab, and Esh-Baal.

UST

³³ Ner was the father of Kish, and Kish was the father of King Saul. Saul was the father of Jonathan, Malki-Shua, Abinadab, and Esh-Baal.

1 Chronicles 8:34

Jonathan...Merib-Baal...Micah

These are names of men. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [son](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [son](#)

ULT

³⁴ The son of Jonathan was Merib-Baal.
Merib-Baal was the father of Micah.

UST

³⁴ Jonathan's son was Merib-Baal.
Merib-Baal was the father of Micah.

1 Chronicles 8:35

General Information:

All of the names here are names of men. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [son](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [son](#)

ULT

³⁵ The sons of Micah were Pithon, Melek, Tarea, and Ahaz.

UST

³⁵ Micah's sons were Pithon, Melek, Tarea, and Ahaz.

1 Chronicles 8:36

General Information:

All of the names here are names of men. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

ULT

³⁶ Ahaz became the father of Jehoaddah. Jehoaddah was the father of Alemeth, Azmaveth, and Zimri. Zimri was the father of Moza.

UST

³⁶ Ahaz was the father of Jehoaddah. Jehoaddah was the father of Alemeth, Azmaveth, and Zimri. Zimri was the father of Moza.

1 Chronicles 8:37

General Information:

All of the names here are names of men. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- son
- son
- son

Translation Words - UST

- son
- son
- son

ULT

³⁷ Moza was the father of Binea. Binea was the father of Raphah. Raphah was the father of Eleasah. Eleasah was the father of Azel.

UST

³⁷ Moza was the father of Binea. The son of Binea was Raphah. The son of Raphah was Eleasah. The son of Eleasah was Azel.

1 Chronicles 8:38

General Information:

All of the names here are names of men. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [son](#)
- [son](#)
- [name](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [son](#)
- [son](#)
- [name](#)

ULT

³⁸ Azel had six sons: Azrikam, Bokeru, Ishmael, Sheariah, Obadiah, and Hanan. All these were sons of Azel.

UST

³⁸ Azel had six sons: Azrikam, Bokeru, Ishmael, Sheariah, Obadiah, and Hanan.

1 Chronicles 8:39

General Information:

All of the names here are names of men. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

Jeush the second, and Eliphelet the third

“Jeush, who was born after Ulam, and Eliphelet, who was born after Jeush” (See: [Ordinal Numbers](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [brother](#)
- [son](#)
- [firstborn](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [brother](#)
- [son](#)
- [firstborn](#)

ULT

³⁹ The sons of Eshek, his brother, were Ulam his firstborn, Jeush the second, and Eliphelet the third.

UST

³⁹ Azel's younger brother was Eshek. Eshek's oldest son was Ulam. His other sons were Jeush and Eliphelet.

1 Chronicles 8:40

Ulam

This is the name of a man. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

many sons and grandsons, a total of 150

“a total of one hundred fifty sons and grandsons” (See: [Numbers](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [son](#)
- [son](#)
- [son](#)
- [son](#)
- [son](#)
- [Benjamin, Benjamite](#)
- [might, mighty, mighty works](#)
- [prosper, prosperity, prosperous](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [son](#)
- [son](#)
- [son](#)
- [son](#)
- [son](#)
- [Benjamin, Benjamite](#)
- [might, mighty, mighty works](#)
- [prosper, prosperity, prosperous](#)

ULT

⁴⁰ Ulam's sons were fighting men and archers. They had many sons and grandsons, a total of 150. All these belonged to the descendants of Benjamin.

UST

⁴⁰ Ulam's sons were brave warriors and good archers. Altogether they had 150 sons and grandsons. All these were the descendants of Benjamin.

1 Chronicles 9

1 Chronicles 9 General Notes

Structure and formatting

This chapter records the genealogy of the people who returned to Jerusalem after the exile and the family of Saul.

1 Chronicles 9:1

all Israel was recorded in genealogies

This can be translated in active form. The reader should understand that the people who wrote the genealogies included the names of the people who had already died. Alternate translation: "The Israelites recorded all of themselves in genealogies" (See: [Active or Passive](#))

genealogies

family records that name ancestors and descendants

They were recorded in the book...Israel

This can be translated in active form. Alternate translation: "They wrote the names in the book...Israel" (See: [Active or Passive](#))

the book of the kings of Israel

This refers to a book that no longer exists.

they were carried away in exile

This can be translated in active form. Alternate translation: "The Babylonians carried them away in exile" (See: [Active or Passive](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- trespass
- Israel, Israelites
- Israel, Israelites
- Babylon, Babylonia, Babylonian
- Judah
- king, kingdom, kingship
- exile, exiled

Translation Words - UST

- trespass
- Israel, Israelites
- Israel, Israelites
- Babylon, Babylonia, Babylonian
- Judah
- king, kingdom, kingship
- exile, exiled

ULT

¹ So all Israel was recorded in genealogies. They were recorded in the book of the kings of Israel. As for Judah, they were carried away in exile to Babylon because of their sin.

UST

¹ The names of all the people of Israel were listed in the scroll named "The Record of the Kings of Israel." Many of the people of Judah were captured and forced to go to Babylon. That happened because of the sins they had committed.

1 Chronicles 9:2

(There are no notes for this verse.)

Translation Words - ULT

- Israel, Israelites
- priest, priesthood
- Levi, Levite, Levitical

Translation Words - UST

- Israel, Israelites
- priest, priesthood
- Levi, Levite, Levitical

ULT

² The first to resettle in their cities were some Israelites, priests, Levites, and temple servants.

UST

² The first people who returned to Judah many years later and lived in their own land and in their own cities and towns were some Israelite priests, other descendants of Levi, and men who worked in the temple.

1 Chronicles 9:3

(There are no notes for this verse.)

Translation Words - ULT

- son
- son
- son (2)
- Judea
- Ephraim, Ephraimite
- Benjamin, Benjamite
- Jerusalem

Translation Words - UST

- son
- son
- son (2)
- Judea
- Ephraim, Ephraimite
- Benjamin, Benjamite
- Jerusalem

ULT

³ Some descendants of Judah, Benjamin, Ephraim, and Manasseh lived in Jerusalem.

UST

³ Other people from the tribes of Judah, Benjamin, Ephraim, and Manasseh also returned to Judah and lived in Jerusalem. What follows is a list of those people of the tribe of Judah.

1 Chronicles 9:4

General Information:

All of the names here are names of men. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- son
- son (2)
- son (3)
- son
- son
- son (4)
- Judea
- Benjamin, Benjamite

Translation Words - UST

- son
- son (2)
- son (3)
- son
- son
- son (4)
- Judea
- Benjamin, Benjamite

ULT

⁴ The settlers included Uthai son of Ammihud son of Omri son of Imri son of Bani, one of the descendants of Perez son of Judah.

UST

⁴ The tribe of Judah: Uthai son of Ammihud; Ammihud son of Omri; Omri son of Imri; Imri son of Bani; Bani was a descendant of Perez; Perez son of Judah.

1 Chronicles 9:5

Shelanites

This is the name of a people group descended from Shelah. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

Asaiah

This is the name of a man. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [son](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [son](#)

ULT

⁵ Among the Shelanites were Asaiah the firstborn and his sons.

UST

⁵ Asaiah and his sons were descendants of Shelan. Asaiah was the oldest son in his family.

1 Chronicles 9:6

Zerah...Jeuel

These are names of men. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

numbered 690

“numbered six hundred ninety people” (See: [Numbers](#) and [Ellipsis](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [brother](#)
- [son](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [brother](#)
- [son](#)

ULT

⁶ Among the descendants of Zerah was Jeuel. Their descendants numbered 690.

UST

⁶ Jeuel and others of his relatives in Zerah's clan. There were 690 people in this clan.

1 Chronicles 9:7

General Information:

All of the names here are names of men. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [son](#)
- [son](#)
- [son](#) (2)
- [son](#) (3)
- [Benjamin, Benjamite](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [son](#)
- [son](#)
- [son](#) (2)
- [son](#) (3)
- [Benjamin, Benjamite](#)

ULT

⁷ Among the descendants of Benjamin were Sallu son of Meshullam son of Hodaviah son of Hassenuah.

UST

⁷ From the tribe of Benjamin: Sallu son of Meshullam; Meshullam son of Hodaviah; Hodaviah son of Hassenuah;

1 Chronicles 9:8

General Information:

All of the names here are names of men. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- son
- son
- son (2)
- son (3)
- son (4)
- son (5)

Translation Words - UST

- son
- son
- son (2)
- son (3)
- son (4)
- son (5)

ULT

⁸ There were also Ibneiah son of Jeroham; Elah son of Uzzi son of Mikri; and Meshullam son of Shephatiah son of Reuel son of Ibrijah.

UST

⁸ Ibneiah son of Jeroham; Elah son of Uzzi; Uzzi son of Mikri; Meshullam son of Shephatiah; Shephatiah son of Reuel; Reuel son of Ibrijah.

1 Chronicles 9:9

numbered 956

“numbered nine hundred and fifty-six people” (See: [Numbers](#) and [Ellipsis](#))

heads of fathers' houses for their fathers' houses

“leaders of their extended families.” Extended families are people related to each other who usually live in different houses, what the UST calls “clans.”

Translation Words - ULT

- brother
- ancestor, father, fathered, forefather, grandfather
- ancestor, father, fathered, forefather, grandfather
- head
- house

Translation Words - UST

- brother
- ancestor, father, fathered, forefather, grandfather
- ancestor, father, fathered, forefather, grandfather
- head
- house

ULT

⁹ Their relatives written in the genealogical lists numbered 956. All these men were heads of fathers' houses for their fathers' houses.

UST

⁹ In other records of the people descended from Benjamin, there are the names of 956 people who were living in Jerusalem. All these were leaders of their clans.

1 Chronicles 9:10

General Information:

All of the names here are names of men. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- priest, priesthood

Translation Words - UST

- priest, priesthood

ULT

¹⁰ The priests were Jedaiah, Jehoiarib, and Jakin.

UST

¹⁰ Some of the priests who returned to Judah were: Jedaiah, Jehoiarib, Jakin,

1 Chronicles 9:11

General Information:

All of the names here are names of men. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

the house of God

the second temple, which the people built after they returned from Babylon

Translation Words - ULT

- [son](#)
- [son](#)
- [son](#) (2)
- [son](#) (3)
- [son](#) (4)
- [God](#)
- [house](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [son](#)
- [son](#)
- [son](#) (2)
- [son](#) (3)
- [son](#) (4)
- [God](#)
- [house](#)

ULT

11 There was also Azariah son of Hilkiah son of Meshullam son of Zadok son of Meraioth son of Ahitub, the one in charge of the house of God.

UST

11 and Azariah son of Hilkiah. Hilkiah son of Meshullam; Meshullam son of Zadok, Zadok son of Meraioth; Meraioth son of Ahitub; Ahitub, who was in charge of all the men who took care of the temple.

1 Chronicles 9:12

General Information:

All of the names here are names of men. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- son
- son (2)
- son (3)
- son (4)
- son (5)
- son (6)
- son (7)
- son (8)

Translation Words - UST

- son
- son (2)
- son (3)
- son (4)
- son (5)
- son (6)
- son (7)
- son (8)

ULT

12 There was Adaiah son of Jeroham son of Pashhur son of Malkijah. There was also Maasai son of Adiel son of Jahzerah son of Meshullam son of Meshillemith son of Immer.

UST

12 Adaiah son of Jeroham; Jerohamson of Pashhur; Pashhur son of Malkijah; Maasai son of Adiel; Adiel son of Jahzerah; Jahzerah son of Meshullam; Meshullam son of Meshillemith; Meshillemith son of Immer.

1 Chronicles 9:13

They were very capable men in the work

“These capable men worked”

the house of God

the second temple, which the people built after they returned from Babylon

fathers’ houses

extended families, people related to each other who usually lived in different houses, clans

numbered 1,760

“numbered one thousand and sixty priests” or “numbered seventeen hundred and sixty priests” (See: [Numbers](#) and [Ellipsis](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- brother
- God
- ancestor, father, fathered, forefather, grandfather
- might, mighty, mighty works
- head
- prosper, prosperity, prosperous
- house
- house

Translation Words - UST

- brother
- God
- ancestor, father, fathered, forefather, grandfather
- might, mighty, mighty works
- head
- prosper, prosperity, prosperous
- house
- house

ULT

¹³ Their relatives, who were leaders for their fathers’ houses, numbered 1,760. They were very capable men in the work in the house of God.

UST

¹³ Altogether there were 1760 priests who returned to Judah. They were leaders of their clans, and they all were responsible for doing work in the temple of God.

1 Chronicles 9:14

General Information:

All of the names here are names of men. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

among the descendants

“one of the descendants”

Translation Words - ULT

- son
- son
- son (2)
- son
- Levi, Levite, Levitical

Translation Words - UST

- son
- son
- son (2)
- son
- Levi, Levite, Levitical

ULT

14 Among the Levites, there was Shemaiah son of Hasshub son of Azrikam son of Hashabiah, among the descendants of Merari.

UST

14 From the descendants of Levi who returned to Judah there was: Shemaiah son of Hasshub; Hasshub son of Azrikam; Azrikam son of Hashabiah; Hashabiah was a descendant of Levi's youngest son Merari.

1 Chronicles 9:15

General Information:

All of the names here are names of men. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [son](#)
- [son](#) (2)
- [son](#) (3)
- [Asaph](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [son](#)
- [son](#) (2)
- [son](#) (3)
- [Asaph](#)

ULT

¹⁵ There were also Bakbakkar, Heresh, Galal, and Mattaniah son of Mika son of Zikri son of Asaph.

UST

¹⁵ Other descendants of Levi who returned to Judah were: Bakbakkar, Heresh, Galal, and Mattaniah son of Mika; Mika son of Zicri; Zicri son of Asaph;

1 Chronicles 9:16

General Information:

All of the names here except “Netophathites” are the names of men. The Netophathites were a people group. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [son](#)
- [son](#)
- [son](#) (2)
- [son](#)
- [son](#) (3)

Translation Words - UST

- [son](#)
- [son](#)
- [son](#) (2)
- [son](#)
- [son](#) (3)

ULT

16 There were also Obadiah son of Shemaiah son of Galal son of Jeduthun; and Berekiah son of Asa son of Elkanah, who lived in the villages of the Netophathites.

UST

16 There was also Obadiah son of Shemaiah; Shemaiah son of Galal; Galal son of Jeduthun; There was also Berekiah son of Asa; Asa son of Elkanah, who lived in one of the villages where the Netophath people lived.

1 Chronicles 9:17

The doorkeepers were

“The guards were” or “The gatekeepers were”

Shallum...Akkub...Talmon...Ahiman

These are names of men. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [brother](#)
- [gate, gate bars, gatekeeper, gateposts, gateway](#)
- [chief](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [brother](#)
- [gate, gate bars, gatekeeper, gateposts, gateway](#)
- [chief](#)

ULT

17 The doorkeepers were Shallum, Akkub, Talmon, Ahiman, and their descendants. Shallum was their leader.

UST

17 From the descendants of Levi who returned to Judah who guarded the temple gates there were Shallum, Akkub, Talmon, Ahiman, and some of their relatives. Shallum was their leader.

1 Chronicles 9:18

they stood guard at the king's gate on the east side for the camp of Levi's descendants

"Levi's descendants guarded the king's gate on the east side of their camp"

Translation Words - ULT

- son
- Levi, Levite, Levitical
- gate, gate bars, gatekeeper, gateposts, gateway
- gate, gate bars, gatekeeper, gateposts, gateway
- king, kingdom, kingship

Translation Words - UST

- son
- Levi, Levite, Levitical
- gate, gate bars, gatekeeper, gateposts, gateway
- gate, gate bars, gatekeeper, gateposts, gateway
- king, kingdom, kingship

ULT

18 Previously they stood guard at the king's gate on the east side for the camp of Levi's descendants.

UST

18 Those gatekeepers from the tribe of Levi stood at the King's Gate on the east side of the city:

1 Chronicles 9:19

Shallum...Kore...Ebiasaph

These are all the names of men. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

Korahites

descendants of Korah (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

the door to the tent...the entrance

These phrases both refer to the entrance of the tent of meeting, or the tabernacle.

the tent

This is a metonym for the second temple, which the people built after they returned from Babylon. (See: [Metonymy](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [brother](#)
- [son](#)
- [son](#) (2)
- [son](#) (3)
- [Yahweh](#)
- [ancestor, father, fathered, forefather, grandfather](#)
- [ancestor, father, fathered, forefather, grandfather](#)
- [threshold, doorway](#)
- [watch, watchman, watchful, guard, take heed, beware, watch out](#)
- [watch, watchman, watchful, guard, take heed, beware, watch out](#)
- [house](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [brother](#)
- [son](#)
- [son](#) (2)
- [son](#) (3)
- [Yahweh](#)
- [ancestor, father, fathered, forefather, grandfather](#)
- [ancestor, father, fathered, forefather, grandfather](#)
- [threshold, doorway](#)
- [watch, watchman, watchful, guard, take heed, beware, watch out](#)
- [watch, watchman, watchful, guard, take heed, beware, watch out](#)
- [house](#)

ULT

19 Shallum son of Kore son of Ebiasaph, ^[1] son of Korah, and his relatives from the house of his father, the Korahites, were in charge of the work of the guard service. They guarded the door to the tent, as their ancestors had guarded the camp of Yahweh, and they also had guarded the entrance.

UST

19 Shallum son of Kore: Kore son of Ebiasaph; Ebiasaph son of Korah. Shallum and his relatives were gatekeepers, and they were responsible to guard the gates of the temple of Yahweh, as their ancestors had done.

1 Chronicles 9:20

Eleazar

This is the name of a man. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

in charge of them

“in charge of the Korahites” (1 [Chronicles 9:19](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [son](#)
- [Yahweh](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [son](#)
- [Yahweh](#)

ULT

²⁰ Phinehas son of Eleazar had been in charge of them in the past, and Yahweh had been with him.

UST

²⁰ Previously Phinehas son of Eleazar, had supervised the gatekeepers, and Yahweh was with Phinehas.

1 Chronicles 9:21

Meshelemiah

This is the name of a man. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

the tent of meeting

The building where the Israelites prayed and offered sacrifices to God was sometimes called “the tent of meeting” in memory of the tent where Moses met with God when he and the Israelites were in the wilderness many years before this. Alternate translation: “the tent of meeting, that is, the temple”

Translation Words - ULT

- son
- feast, feasting

Translation Words - UST

- son
- feast, feasting

ULT

²¹ Zechariah son of Meshelemiah was guard of the entrance to the tent of meeting.

UST

²¹ Zechariah son of Meshelemiah was the gatekeeper at the entrance of the temple.

1 Chronicles 9:22

General Information:

(See: [Numbers](#))

who were chosen as gatekeepers

It is not clear who chose these men, so if you have to translate in active form, use your language's most general way of doing so. Alternate translation: "whom they had chosen to be gatekeepers" (See: [Active or Passive](#))

numbered 212

"numbered two hundred and twelve" (See: [Numbers](#))

Their names were recorded in the people's records in their villages

This can be translated in active form. Alternate translation: "The records in peoples' villages included the names of these men" (See: [Active or Passive](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [David](#)
- [found](#), [founder](#), [foundation](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [David](#)
- [found](#), [founder](#), [foundation](#)

ULT

²² All those who were chosen as gatekeepers at the entrances numbered 212. Their names were recorded in the people's records in their villages. David and Samuel the seer had placed them into their positions of trust.

UST

²² Altogether, there were 212 men who were chosen to guard the gates. Their names were written in the records of the clans in their villages. King David and the prophet Samuel appointed those men because those men were dependable.

1 Chronicles 9:23

their children

“their descendants”

Translation Words - ULT

- son
- Yahweh
- gate, gate bars, gatekeeper, gateposts, gateway
- house
- house

Translation Words - UST

- son
- Yahweh
- gate, gate bars, gatekeeper, gateposts, gateway
- house
- house

ULT

²³ So they and their children guarded the gates of the house of Yahweh, the tabernacle.

UST

²³ The work of those gatekeepers and their descendants was to guard the gates of the temple of Yahweh. The temple was built to replace the sacred tent.

1 Chronicles 9:24

gatekeepers were posted

This can be translated in active form. Alternate translation: “men guarded the entrances” (See: [Active or Passive](#))

on all four sides, toward the east, west, north, and south

The words “east, west, north, and south” explain the words “all four sides.”

Translation Words - ULT

- [spirit, spiritual](#)
- [gate, gate bars, gatekeeper, gateposts, gateway](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [spirit, spiritual](#)
- [gate, gate bars, gatekeeper, gateposts, gateway](#)

ULT

24 The gatekeepers were posted on all four sides, toward the east, west, north, and south.

UST

24 There were gatekeepers on each of the four sides of the temple, toward the east, west, north, and south.

1 Chronicles 9:25

Their brothers

“The guards’ brothers”

came in for seven-day rotations, in turn

“would come to help for 7-day periods, taking turns” (See: [Numbers](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [brother](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [brother](#)

ULT

²⁵ Their brothers, who lived in their villages, came in for seven-day rotations, in turn.

UST

²⁵ Sometimes it was necessary for the relatives of the gatekeepers who lived in those villages to come and help them. Each time some of them came, they helped the gatekeepers for seven days.

1 Chronicles 9:26

the four leaders...were assigned to guard the rooms

It is not clear who assigned these men, so if you have to translate in active form, use your language's most general way of doing so.
Alternate translation: "they assigned the four leaders...to guard the rooms" (See: [Active or Passive](#))

the house of God

the second temple, which the people built after they returned from Babylon

Translation Words - ULT

- God
- Levi, Levite, Levitical
- might, mighty, mighty works
- gate, gate bars, gatekeeper, gateposts, gateway
- house

Translation Words - UST

- God
- Levi, Levite, Levitical
- might, mighty, mighty works
- gate, gate bars, gatekeeper, gateposts, gateway
- house

ULT

26 But the four leaders of the gatekeepers, who were Levites, were assigned to guard the rooms and storerooms in the house of God.

UST

26 There were four descendants of Levi who worked every day, and they supervised the gatekeepers. They also took care of the storerooms and other rooms in the temple of God.

1 Chronicles 9:27

(There are no notes for this verse.)

Translation Words - ULT

- God
- house

Translation Words - UST

- God
- house

ULT

²⁷ They would spend the night in their posts all around the house of God, for they were responsible for guarding it. They would open it each morning.

UST

²⁷ They remained awake all during the night to guard the temple, and each morning they opened the gates.

1 Chronicles 9:28

Some of them

"Some of the guards"

they counted the articles when they were brought in and when they were taken out

This can be translated in active form. Alternate translation: "they counted the articles that people took out to use, and they counted the articles when people brought them back" (See: [Active or Passive](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [know](#), [knowledge](#), [unknown](#), [distinguish](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [know](#), [knowledge](#), [unknown](#), [distinguish](#)

ULT

²⁸ Some of them were in charge of the temple's equipment; they counted the articles when they were brought in and when they were taken out.

UST

²⁸ Some of the gatekeepers took care of the articles that were in the temple. They also took care of the flour, wine, olive oil, incense, and spices that were used in the sacrifices.

1 Chronicles 9:29

Some of them also were assigned to take care of

It is not clear who assigned these men, so if you have to translate in active form, use your language's most general way of doing so. Alternate translation: "The leaders also assigned some of them to take care of" or "Some of them also took care of" (See: [Active or Passive](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [holy, holiness, unholy, sacred](#)
- [frankincense](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [holy, holiness, unholy, sacred](#)
- [frankincense](#)

ULT

²⁹ Some of them also were assigned to take care of the holy things, the equipment, and the supplies, including the fine flour, the wine, the oil, the frankincense, and the spices.

UST

²⁹ Other gatekeepers were appointed to take care of the other things in the temple.

1 Chronicles 9:30

(There are no notes for this verse.)

Translation Words - ULT

- son
- priest, priesthood

Translation Words - UST

- son
- priest, priesthood

ULT

³⁰ Some of the priests' sons mixed the spices.

UST

³⁰ But some of the priests had the work of mixing the spices.

1 Chronicles 9:31

Mattithiah...Shallum

These are names of men. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

Korahite

This is the name of a people group. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [Levi](#), [Levite](#), [Levitical](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [Levi](#), [Levite](#), [Levitical](#)

ULT

³¹ Mattithiah, one of the Levites, who was the firstborn of Shallum the Korahite, was in charge of preparing bread for the offerings.

UST

³¹ There was a descendant of Levi named Mattithiah, the oldest son of Shallum, who was a descendant of Korah. He was very dependable so they gave him the work of baking the bread that was used in the offerings on the altar.

1 Chronicles 9:32

Kohathites

This is the name of a people group. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

bread of the presence

See the translationWord page about “bread” for the specific definition of “bread of the presence.”

Translation Words - ULT

- [brother](#)
- [son](#)
- [Sabbath](#)
- [Sabbath](#)
- [bread](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [brother](#)
- [son](#)
- [Sabbath](#)
- [Sabbath](#)
- [bread](#)

ULT

³² Some of their brothers, descendants of the Kohathites, were in charge of the bread of the presence, to prepare it every Sabbath.

UST

³² Some of the gatekeepers who were descended from Kohath prepared the new loaves of bread to display before God, the loaves that were placed on the table inside the temple every Sabbath day.

1 Chronicles 9:33

fathers' houses

extended families, people related to each other who usually lived in different houses, what the UST calls "clans"

they were free from work

"they did not have to do other work"

carry out their assigned tasks

"complete the tasks they needed to do"

day and night

This means "at all times" and can be translated using a phrase or word from your language or culture that gives the same meaning. (See: [Merism](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [Levi, Levite, Levitical](#)
- [ancestor, father, fathered, forefather, grandfather](#)
- [head](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [Levi, Levite, Levitical](#)
- [ancestor, father, fathered, forefather, grandfather](#)
- [head](#)

ULT

33 The singers and heads of the Levites' fathers' houses lived in rooms at the sanctuary when they were free from work, because they had to carry out their assigned tasks day and night.

UST

33 Some of the descendants of Levi were musicians who worked in the temple. The leaders of those families stayed in the rooms of the temple. They did not do any other work in the temple because they they were responsible to serve as musicians day and night.

1 Chronicles 9:34

These were leaders of fathers' houses among the Levites, as listed in their genealogical records

"The family history lists included the names of these Levite family leaders"

Translation Words - ULT

- Levi, Levite, Levitical
- Jerusalem
- ancestor, father, fathered, forefather, grandfather
- head
- head

Translation Words - UST

- Levi, Levite, Levitical
- Jerusalem
- ancestor, father, fathered, forefather, grandfather
- head
- head

ULT

³⁴ These were leaders of fathers' houses among the Levites, as listed in their genealogical records, chief men. They lived in Jerusalem.

UST

³⁴ Those are the names of the leaders of the clans descended from Levi. Their names were written in the records of the clans. They all lived in Jerusalem.

1 Chronicles 9:35

Gibeon...Gibeon

"the man Gibeon...the town of Gibeon"

Jeiel

This is the name of a man. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

Maakah

This is the name of a woman. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- Gibeon, Gibeonite
- ancestor, father, fathered, forefather, grandfather

Translation Words - UST

- Gibeon, Gibeonite
- ancestor, father, fathered, forefather, grandfather

ULT

³⁵ The father of Gibeon, Jeiel, whose wife's name was Maakah, lived in Gibeon.

UST

³⁵ One of the descendants of Benjamin, Jeiel, lived in the city of Gibeon. He was the city leader. His wife's name was Maacah.

1 Chronicles 9:36

General Information:

All of the names here are names of men. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [son](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [son](#)

ULT

³⁶ His firstborn son was Abdon, then his sons Zur, Kish, Baal, Ner, Nadab,

UST

³⁶ His oldest son was Abdon. His other sons were Zur, Kish, Baal, Ner, Nadab,

1 Chronicles 9:37

General Information:

All of the names here are names of men. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

ULT

³⁷ Gedor, Ahio, Zechariah, and Mikloth.

UST

³⁷ Gedor, Ahio, Zechariah, and Mikloth.

1 Chronicles 9:38

Mikloth...Shimeam

These are names of men. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- brother
- brother
- Jerusalem

Translation Words - UST

- brother
- brother
- Jerusalem

ULT

³⁸ Mikloth was the father of Shimeam.
They also lived near their brothers in
Jerusalem.

UST

³⁸ Mikloth was the father of Shimeam.
Jeiel's family lived near their relatives in
Jerusalem.

1 Chronicles 9:39

General Information:

All of the names here are names of men. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

ULT

³⁹ Ner was the father of Kish. Kish was the father of Saul. Saul was the father of Jonathan, Malki-Shua, Abinadab, and Esh-Baal.

UST

³⁹ Ner was the father of Kish. Kish was the father of King Saul. Saul was the father of Jonathan, Malki-Shua, Abinadab, and Esh-Baal.

1 Chronicles 9:40

General Information:

All of the names here are names of men. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [son](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [son](#)

ULT

⁴⁰ The son of Jonathan was Merib-Baal.
Merib-Baal was the father of Micah.

UST

⁴⁰ Jonathan's son was Merib-Baal.
Merib-Baal was the father of Mikah.

1 Chronicles 9:41

General Information:

All of the names here are names of men. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [son](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [son](#)

ULT

41 The sons of Micah were Pithon, Melek, Tahrea, and Ahaz.

UST

41 Mikah's sons were Pithon, Melek, Tahrea, and Ahaz.

1 Chronicles 9:42

General Information:

All of the names here are names of men. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

ULT

⁴² Ahaz was the father of Jadah. Jadah was the father of Alemeth, Azmaveth, and Zimri. Zimri was the father of Moza.

UST

⁴² Ahaz was the father of Jadah. Jadah was the father of Alemeth, Azmaveth, and Zimri. Zimri was the father of Moza.

1 Chronicles 9:43

General Information:

All of the names here are names of men. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- son
- son
- son

Translation Words - UST

- son
- son
- son

ULT

⁴³ Moza was the father of Binea. Binea was the father of Rephaiah. Rephaiah was the father of Eleasah. Eleasah was the father of Azel.

UST

⁴³ Moza was the father of Binea. The son of Binea was Rephaiah. The son of Rephaiah was Eleasah. The son of Eleasah was Azel.

1 Chronicles 9:44

General Information:

All of the names here are names of men. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [son](#)
- [son](#)
- [name](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [son](#)
- [son](#)
- [name](#)

ULT

44 Azel's six sons were Azrikam, Bokeru, Ishmael, Sheariah, Obadiah, and Hanan. These were Azel's sons.

9:19 ^[1] Ebiasaph is the same person referred to as *Asaph* in 1 Chronicles 26:1.

UST

44 Azel had six sons: Azrikam, Bokeru, Ishmael, Sheariah, Obadiah, and Hanan.

1 Chronicles 10

1 Chronicles 10 General Notes

Special concepts in this chapter

The death of Saul

Saul died because he disobeyed God.

1 Chronicles 10:1

Every man of Israel fled from before the Philistines and fell down dead on Mount Gilboa

It is implied that these men were Israelite soldiers. Alternate translation: "The whole army of Israel ran away from the Philistines" (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

Every man of Israel...fell down dead

This is probably a generalization. It seems that while all the soldiers did run away, not all of them died. Alternate translation: "Every man of Israel...most of them died" (See: [Hyperbole](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [Israel, Israelites](#)
- [Israel, Israelites](#)
- [Philistines](#)
- [bow, bow down, knelt, bend, bend the knee](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [Israel, Israelites](#)
- [Israel, Israelites](#)
- [Philistines](#)
- [bow, bow down, knelt, bend, bend the knee](#)

ULT

¹ Now the Philistines fought against Israel. Every man of Israel fled from before the Philistines and fell down dead on Mount Gilboa.

UST

¹ The army of Philistia again fought against the Israelites. The Israelite soldiers ran away from them, and many Israelites were killed on Mount Gilboa.

1 Chronicles 10:2

Abinadab...Malki-Shua

See how you translated these men's names in [1 Chronicles 8:33](#). (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [son](#)
- [son](#)
- [Philistines](#)
- [Philistines](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [son](#)
- [son](#)
- [Philistines](#)
- [Philistines](#)

ULT

² The Philistines closely pursued Saul and his son. The Philistines killed Jonathan, Abinadab, and Malki-Shua, his sons.

UST

² The soldiers of Philistia caught up with Saul and his sons, and they killed his sons Jonathan, Abinadab, and Malki-Shua.

1 Chronicles 10:3

(There are no notes for this verse.)

ULT

³ The battle went heavily against Saul, and the archers overtook him, and they wounded him.

UST

³ The fighting was very fierce around Saul, and the archers shot Saul and wounded him severely.

1 Chronicles 10:4

thrust me through with it

The action of stabbing is a metonym for the result, death. Alternate translation: "kill me with it" (See: [Metonymy](#))

these uncircumcised will come

The nominal adjective "uncircumcised" can be stated as an adjective. Alternate translation: "these people who are uncircumcised will come" or "these uncircumcised people will come" (See: [Nominal Adjectives](#))

these uncircumcised

Here "uncircumcised" represents people who do not belong to Yahweh. Alternate translation: "these people who do not belong to Yahweh" or "these heathen Philistines" (See: [Metonymy](#))

fell on it

Saul probably stuck the handle into the ground and leaned on the point so the sword would go through his body as he fell down. The action is a metonym for the result, death. Alternate translation: "killed himself with it" (See: [Metonymy](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [fear](#), [afraid](#), [dread](#)
- [sword](#), [swordsmen](#)
- [bow](#), [bow down](#), [knelt](#), [bend](#), [bend the knee](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [fear](#), [afraid](#), [dread](#)
- [sword](#), [swordsmen](#)
- [bow](#), [bow down](#), [knelt](#), [bend](#), [bend the knee](#)

ULT

⁴ Then said Saul to his armor bearer, "Draw your sword and thrust me through with it. Otherwise, these uncircumcised will come and abuse me." But his armor bearer would not, for he was very afraid. So Saul took his own sword and fell on it.

UST

⁴ Saul said to the man who was carrying his weapons, "Take out your sword and kill me with it, in order that these heathen Philistines will not be able to injure me further and make fun of me while I am dying." But the man who was carrying Saul's weapons was terrified and refused to do that. So Saul took his own sword and fell on it and died.

1 Chronicles 10:5

fell on his sword

He probably stuck the handle into the ground and leaned on the point so the sword would go through his body as he fell down. The action is a metonym for the result, death. See how you translated this in [1 Chronicles 10:4](#). Alternate translation: “killed himself with his sword” (See: [Metonymy](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- die, dead, deadly, death,
- bow, bow down, knelt, bend, bend the knee

Translation Words - UST

- die, dead, deadly, death,
- bow, bow down, knelt, bend, bend the knee

ULT

⁵ When his armor bearer saw that Saul was dead, he likewise fell on his sword and died.

UST

⁵ When the man carrying his weapons saw that Saul was dead, he also threw himself on his own sword and died.

1 Chronicles 10:6

and his three sons

The word “died” is understood from the previous phrase. It can be repeated. Alternate translation: “and his 3 sons died” (See: [Ellipsis](#) and [Numbers](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- son
- die, dead, deadly, death,
- house

Translation Words - UST

- son
- die, dead, deadly, death,
- house

ULT

⁶ So Saul died, and his three sons, so all his household members died together.

UST

⁶ So Saul and three of his sons all died, and none of his descendants ever became king.

1 Chronicles 10:7

When every man of Israel

This is probably a generalization. Alternate translation: “When the men of Israel” (See: [Hyperbole](#))

they had fled

“the Israelite soldiers had fled”

the Philistines came and lived in them

“the Philistines came and lived in the cities from which the Israelites had fled.” This probably happened after the events in verses 8-12.

Translation Words - ULT

- [son](#)
- [Israel, Israelites](#)
- [Philistines](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [son](#)
- [Israel, Israelites](#)
- [Philistines](#)

ULT

⁷ When every man of Israel in the valley saw that they had fled, and that Saul and his sons were dead, they abandoned their cities and fled. Then the Philistines came and lived in them.

UST

⁷ When the Israelites who were living in the valley saw that their army had run away and that Saul and his three sons were dead, they left their towns and ran away. Then the soldiers from Philistia came and occupied those towns.

1 Chronicles 10:8

It came about

This phrase is used here to mark an important event in the story. If your language has a way for doing this, you could consider using it here.

to strip the dead

“to take everything of value off of the dead bodies”

Saul and his sons fallen

Here “fallen” is a polite way to refer to someone who died in battle. Alternate translation: “Saul and his sons dead” (See: [Euphemism](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [son](#)
- [Philistines](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [son](#)
- [Philistines](#)

ULT

⁸ It came about on the next day, when the Philistines came to strip the dead, that they found Saul and his sons fallen on Mount Gilboa.

UST

⁸ The next day, when the Philistines came to take away the weapons of the dead Israelite soldiers, they found the corpses of Saul and his three sons on Mount Gilboa.

1 Chronicles 10:9

They stripped him

“The Philistines removed everything from Saul’s body”

to carry the news to their idols and to the people

They told the people what had happened and praised their idols in prayer.

to carry the news

A person telling others about something that has happened is spoken of as if the person were carrying a solid object and giving it to those other people. Alternate translation: “to tell what had happened” (See: [Metaphor](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [Philistines](#)
- [people, people group,](#)
- [head](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [Philistines](#)
- [people, people group,](#)
- [head](#)

ULT

⁹ They stripped him and took his head and his armor. They sent messengers throughout Philistia to carry the news to their idols and to the people.

UST

⁹ They took the clothes off Saul’s corpse and cut off his head and took it and Saul’s armor.

1 Chronicles 10:10

They put his armor

"The Philistines put Saul's armor"

Dagon

This is the name of a false god. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [God](#)
- [appoint, appointed](#)
- [house](#)
- [house](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [God](#)
- [appoint, appointed](#)
- [house](#)
- [house](#)

ULT

10 They put his armor in the temple of their gods, and fastened his head to the temple of Dagon.

UST

10 Then they sent messengers throughout their land, to proclaim the news throughout their own area, to their idols and to the other people. They put Saul's armor in the temple where their idols were, and they hung Saul's head in the temple of their god Dagon.

1 Chronicles 10:11

When all Jabesh Gilead heard of all that the Philistines

Both instances of the word “all” are generalizations. The name of the town is a metonym for the people who live in the town, and the people group name is a metonym for that people group’s soldiers. Alternate translation: “When the people of Jabesh Gilead heard what the soldiers of the Philistine army” (See: [Hyperbole](#) and [Metonymy](#))

Jabesh Gilead

This is the name of a town in the region of Gilead. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [Philistines](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [Philistines](#)

ULT

11 When all Jabesh Gilead heard of all that the Philistines had done to Saul,

UST

11 All the people who lived in Jabesh in the region of Gilead heard what the Philistines had done to Saul’s corpse.

1 Chronicles 10:12

their bones

The bones are a synecdoche for the dead bodies. Alternate translation: "their bodies" (See: [Synecdoche](#))

seven days

"7 days" (See: [Numbers](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [son](#)
- [prosper](#), [prosperity](#), [prosperous](#)
- [fast](#), [fasting](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [son](#)
- [prosper](#), [prosperity](#), [prosperous](#)
- [fast](#), [fasting](#)

ULT

12 all the fighting men went and took away the body of Saul and those of his sons, and brought them to Jabesh. They buried their bones under the oak in Jabesh and fasted seven days.

UST

12 So the bravest men of Jabesh went and got the corpses of Saul and his sons and brought them back to Jabesh. They buried their bones under a large tree in Jabesh. Then the people of Jabesh fasted for seven days.

1 Chronicles 10:13

Connecting Statement:

Verses 13 and 14 give a summary of why Saul died. If your language has a way of showing that this is not part of the story line, you could use it here.

Translation Words - ULT

- trespass
- Yahweh
- Yahweh
- faithful, faithfulness, unfaithful, unfaithfulness, trustworthy
- die, dead, deadly, death,
- seek, search, look for
- watch, watchman, watchful, guard, take heed, beware, watch out

Translation Words - UST

- trespass
- Yahweh
- Yahweh
- faithful, faithfulness, unfaithful, unfaithfulness, trustworthy
- die, dead, deadly, death,
- seek, search, look for
- watch, watchman, watchful, guard, take heed, beware, watch out

ULT

13 So Saul died because he was unfaithful to Yahweh. He did not obey Yahweh's instructions, but asked for advice from someone who talked with the dead.

UST

13 Saul died because he did not faithfully obey what Yahweh told him to do. He even went to a woman who talks to the spirits of dead people and asked her what he should do,

1 Chronicles 10:14

Connecting Statement:

Verses 13 and 14 give a summary of why Saul died. If your language has a way of showing that this is not part of the story line, you could use it here.

did not seek guidance from Yahweh

“did not ask Yahweh to guide him”

turned over the kingdom to David son of Jesse

Here “turned over the kingdom” is an idiom that means to give someone authority over a kingdom. Alternate translation: “made David, son of Jesse, king” (See: [Idiom](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [son](#)
- [Yahweh](#)
- [Jesse](#)
- [die, dead, deadly, death,](#)
- [seek, search, look for](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [son](#)
- [Yahweh](#)
- [Jesse](#)
- [die, dead, deadly, death,](#)
- [seek, search, look for](#)

ULT

14 He did not seek guidance from Yahweh, so Yahweh killed him and turned over the kingdom to David son of Jesse.

UST

14 instead of asking Yahweh what he should do. So Yahweh caused him to die, and he appointed David son of Jesse, to be the king of Israel.

1 Chronicles 11

1 Chronicles 11 General Notes

Structure and formatting

The story of David begins here and continues throughout the remainder of this book.

Special concepts in this chapter

King David the military leader

David was made the king of all Israel and was the leader of their army. He conquered Jerusalem and strengthened its defenses. He had many brave men in his army that did great deeds. (See: [work](#), [works](#), [deeds](#))

1 Chronicles 11:1

all Israel came to David

This is a generalization that means people from every tribe in Israel came to David, but not every individual. Alternate translation: “people from throughout Israel came to David” or “people from every tribe in Israel came to David” (See: [Hyperbole](#))

we are your flesh and bone

This idiom means that they are relatives. Alternate translation: “we are your relatives” or “we have the same ancestors as you” (See: [Idiom](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [Israel, Israelites](#)
- [David](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [Israel, Israelites](#)
- [David](#)

ULT

¹ Then all Israel came to David at Hebron and said, “Look, we are your flesh and bone.

UST

¹ Then the people of Israel came to David at the city of Hebron and said to him, “Listen, we have the same ancestors that you have.

1 Chronicles 11:2

In the recent past

This is historical information. Saul had been their king before David.
(See: [Background Information](#))

You will shepherd my people Israel, and you will become a ruler over my people Israel

These two clauses mean basically the same thing and emphasize that Yahweh had chosen David to be king. (See: [Parallelism](#))

You will shepherd my people Israel

Here ruling over the people is spoken of as shepherding them.
Alternate translation: "You will care for my people Israel" or "You will lead my people Israel" (See: [Metaphor](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- God
- Yahweh
- Israel, Israelites
- Israel, Israelites
- Israel, Israelites
- people, people group,
- people, people group,
- king, kingdom, kingship

Translation Words - UST

- God
- Yahweh
- Israel, Israelites
- Israel, Israelites
- Israel, Israelites
- people, people group,
- people, people group,
- king, kingdom, kingship

ULT

² In the recent past, when Saul was king over us, it was you who led the Israelite army. Yahweh your God said to you, 'You will shepherd my people Israel, and you will become a ruler over my people Israel.'

UST

² In the past, when Saul was our king, it was you who led our Israelite soldiers in our battles. You are the one to whom Yahweh our God promised, 'You will be the leader of my people; you will be their king.'

1 Chronicles 11:3

They anointed David king over Israel

To “anoint” is a symbolic act to show that they recognized that God had chosen David as king. (See: [Symbolic Action](#))

the word of Yahweh that had been declared by Samuel

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: “the word of Yahweh that Samuel had declared” (See: [Active or Passive](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [covenant](#)
- [Yahweh](#)
- [Yahweh](#)
- [Israel, Israelites](#)
- [Israel, Israelites](#)
- [David](#)
- [David](#)
- [hand](#)
- [cut off](#)
- [elder, older, old](#)
- [king, kingdom, kingship](#)
- [king, kingdom, kingship](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [covenant](#)
- [Yahweh](#)
- [Yahweh](#)
- [Israel, Israelites](#)
- [Israel, Israelites](#)
- [David](#)
- [David](#)
- [hand](#)
- [cut off](#)
- [elder, older, old](#)
- [king, kingdom, kingship](#)
- [king, kingdom, kingship](#)

ULT

³ So all the elders of Israel came to the king at Hebron, and David made a covenant with them before Yahweh. They anointed David king over Israel. In this way, the word of Yahweh that had been declared by Samuel came true.

UST

³ So all the Israelite elders came to David at Hebron. There David made a sacred agreement with them while Yahweh was listening. They anointed him with olive oil to set him apart to be the king of the Israelite people. That is what Yahweh had previously told the prophet Samuel would happen.

1 Chronicles 11:4

David and all Israel

Here the phrase “all Israel” represents the entire Israelite army. Alternate translation: “David and all the Israelite army” (See: [Metonymy](#))

Now the Jebusites...were there

The word “now” is used to mark a break in the main story line. Here the narrator tells background information about Jerusalem. (See: [Background Information](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [Israel, Israelites](#)
- [David](#)
- [Jerusalem](#)
- [Jebus, Jebusite](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [Israel, Israelites](#)
- [David](#)
- [Jerusalem](#)
- [Jebus, Jebusite](#)

ULT

⁴ David and all Israel went to Jerusalem (that is, Jebus). Now the Jebusites, the inhabitants of the land, were there.

UST

⁴ David and all the Israelite soldiers went to Jerusalem. At that time, Jerusalem was called Jebus, and the people who lived there were the Jebus people group.

1 Chronicles 11:5

David took the stronghold of Zion

Here the word “took” is an idiom that means “captured” or “conquered.” Since David led the army, his name here is a synecdoche for the whole army who attacked the city. Alternate translation: “David captured the stronghold of Zion” or “David and the Israelite army captured the stronghold of Zion” (See: [Idiom](#) and [Synecdoche](#))

the stronghold of Zion...the city of David

Both of these names refer to Jerusalem.

Translation Words - ULT

- [Zion, Mount Zion](#)
- [David](#)
- [David](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [Zion, Mount Zion](#)
- [David](#)
- [David](#)

ULT

⁵ The inhabitants of Jebus said to David, “You will not come in here.” But David took the stronghold of Zion, that is, the city of David.

UST

⁵ They said to David, “Your soldiers will not be able to get inside our city!” But David’s soldiers captured the city, even though it had strong walls around it, and since then it has been called the city of David.

1 Chronicles 11:6

Zeruiah

This is the name of a man. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

so he was made the chief

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: "so David made Joab the chief" (See: [Active or Passive](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [son](#)
- [David](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [son](#)
- [David](#)

ULT

⁶ David had said, "Whoever attacks the Jebusites first will become chief and commander." So Joab son of Zeruiah attacked first, so he was made the chief.

UST

⁶ What happened was this: David said to his soldiers, "The one who leads our soldiers to attack the Jebus people group will become the commander of all my army." Joab son of Zeruiah, led the soldiers, so he became the commander of all the army.

1 Chronicles 11:7

(There are no notes for this verse.)

Translation Words - ULT

- call, call out
- David
- David

Translation Words - UST

- call, call out
- David
- David

ULT

⁷ Then David began to live in the stronghold. So they called it the city of David.

UST

⁷ After they captured the city with its strong walls around it, David moved there. That is why they named it the city of David.

1 Chronicles 11:8

He built the city all around...Joab restored the rest of the city

The word “he” refers to David. The reader should understand that David and Joab were probably in charge of other men who made the fortifications. (See: [Metonymy](#))

the Millo

This likely refers to a terraced structure that consisted of retaining walls with dirt filled in behind them. (See: [Translate Unknowns](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- life, live, living, alive
- elder, older, old
- elder, older, old

Translation Words - UST

- life, live, living, alive
- elder, older, old
- elder, older, old

ULT

⁸ He built the city all around from the Millo and back to the surrounding wall. Joab restored the rest of the city.

UST

⁸ David's workers rebuilt the city, starting where the land was filled in and extending to the wall that was around the city. Joab's men repaired the other parts of the city.

1 Chronicles 11:9

(There are no notes for this verse.)

Translation Words - ULT

- [Yahweh](#)
- [David](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [Yahweh](#)
- [David](#)

ULT

⁹ David became greater and greater because Yahweh of hosts was with him.

UST

⁹ David became more and more powerful because Yahweh, commander of the angel armies, was with him.

1 Chronicles 11:10

These were the leaders David had

“These were the leaders of David’s warriors”

who showed themselves strong with him in his kingdom...to make him king

This phrase means that both the leaders of David’s army, and the full army, helped David to establish himself as king over Israel. Alternate translation: “who strongly supported David’s kingdom...to make him king” (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- Yahweh
- Israel, Israelites
- Israel, Israelites
- might, mighty, mighty works
- head
- reign, rule
- reign, rule

Translation Words - UST

- Yahweh
- Israel, Israelites
- Israel, Israelites
- might, mighty, mighty works
- head
- reign, rule
- reign, rule

ULT

¹⁰ These were the leaders David had, who showed themselves strong with him in his kingdom, together with all Israel, to make him king, obeying the word of Yahweh concerning Israel.

UST

¹⁰ Yahweh had promised that David would become the king. And all the Israelite people were happy that David was their king. There were many soldiers who helped David’s kingdom to remain strong.

1 Chronicles 11:11

Jashobeam

This is the name of a man. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

a Hachmonite

This refers to a person from the Hachmon clan. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

on one occasion

“in one battle”

Translation Words - ULT

- son
- might, mighty, mighty works
- head
- raise, raised, risen, arise, arose, got up, stir up, stirred up

Translation Words - UST

- son
- might, mighty, mighty works
- head
- raise, raised, risen, arise, arose, got up, stir up, stirred up

ULT

11 This is a list of David's mighty men: Jashobeam, the son of a Hachmonite, was commander of the officers ^[1]. He killed three hundred men with his spear on one occasion.

UST

11 This is a list of David's most outstanding warriors: Jashobeam was from the Hachmon clan. He was the leader of the officers. One time he fought against three hundred enemies and killed them all with his spear.

1 Chronicles 11:12

After him

"After Jashobeam"

Eleazar...Dodo

These are the names of men. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

the Ahohite

The "Ahohites" is the name of a people group. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [son](#)
- [might, mighty, mighty works](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [son](#)
- [might, mighty, mighty works](#)

ULT

¹² After him was Eleazar son of Dodo, the Ahohite, who was one of the three mighty men.

UST

¹² Next was Eleazar son of Dodo, from the clan of Ahoh. He was one of David's three mighty men.

1 Chronicles 11:13

Pas Dammim

This is the name of a place. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [Philistines](#)
- [David](#)
- [assembly, assemble, congregation, meeting](#)
- [assembly, assemble, congregation, meeting](#)
- [barley](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [Philistines](#)
- [David](#)
- [assembly, assemble, congregation, meeting](#)
- [assembly, assemble, congregation, meeting](#)
- [barley](#)

ULT

13 He was with David at Pas Dammim, and there the Philistines assembled together for battle, where there was a barley field and the army fled from the Philistines.

UST

13 One day he was with David at Pas Dammim when the soldiers of Philistia gathered there for the battle. There was a field of barley there. At first the Israelite soldiers ran away from the soldiers of Philistia,

1 Chronicles 11:14

They stood in the middle of the field

“David and Eleazar stood in the middle of the field”

cut down the Philistines

This means that they killed the Philistine soldiers with their swords.
Alternate translation: “killed the Philistines” (See: [Euphemism](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [Yahweh](#)
- [Philistines](#)
- [deliver](#), [deliverer](#), [deliverance](#), [hand over](#), [turn over](#), [released](#), [rescue](#)
- [deliver](#), [deliverer](#), [deliverance](#), [hand over](#), [turn over](#), [released](#), [rescue](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [Yahweh](#)
- [Philistines](#)
- [deliver](#), [deliverer](#), [deliverance](#), [hand over](#), [turn over](#), [released](#), [rescue](#)
- [deliver](#), [deliverer](#), [deliverance](#), [hand over](#), [turn over](#), [released](#), [rescue](#)

ULT

14 They stood in the middle of the field. They defended it and cut down the Philistines and Yahweh rescued them with a great victory.

UST

14 but then David and Eleazar stopped in the middle of the field and fought to defend it and killed many of the soldiers of Philistia. Yahweh enabled them to win a great victory on that day.

1 Chronicles 11:15

three of the thirty

“3 of the 30” (See: [Numbers](#))

the cave of Adullam

“the cave near the town of Adullam.” Adullam is near Bethlehem.
(See: [How to Translate Names](#))

the Valley of Rephaim

This is the name of a place. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [Philistines](#)
- [David](#)
- [head](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [Philistines](#)
- [David](#)
- [head](#)

ULT

15 Then three of the thirty leaders went down to the rock to David, to the cave of Adullam. The army of the Philistines was camped in the Valley of Rephaim.

UST

15 One time three of David's thirty greatest warriors came to David when he was camping next to the huge rock outside the cave near Adullam. At that same time, the army of Philistia had camped in the Valley of Rephaim.

1 Chronicles 11:16

in his stronghold, a cave

“in his safe place in a cave”

the Philistines had established their camp at Bethlehem

“the Philistines had stationed soldiers in Bethlehem”

Translation Words - ULT

- [Philistines](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [Philistines](#)

ULT

16 At that time David was in his stronghold, a cave, while the Philistines had established their camp at Bethlehem.

UST

16 David was in a fortress, and some of the soldiers of Philistia were occupying Bethlehem.

1 Chronicles 11:17

the well at Bethlehem, the well that is by the gate

These two phrases refer to the same well. The second specifies which well in Bethlehem. (See: [Doublet](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [David](#)
- [gate](#), [gate bars](#), [gatekeeper](#), [gateposts](#), [gateway](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [David](#)
- [gate](#), [gate bars](#), [gatekeeper](#), [gateposts](#), [gateway](#)

ULT

17 David was longing for water and said, "If only someone would give me water to drink from the well at Bethlehem, the well that is by the gate!"

UST

17 One day David very much wanted some water to drink and said, "I wish that someone would bring me some water from the well near the gate at Bethlehem!"

1 Chronicles 11:18

three mighty men

“3 mighty men” (See: [Numbers](#))

broke through the army of the Philistines

“fought their way through the army of the Philistines”

the well of Bethlehem, the well at the gate

These two phrases refer to the same well. The second specifies which well in Bethlehem. See how you translated a similar phrase in [1 Chronicles 11:17](#). (See: [Doublet](#))

he poured it out to Yahweh

This means that he poured out the water as an offering to Yahweh. (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [Yahweh](#)
- [Philistines](#)
- [David](#)
- [David](#)
- [gate, gate bars, gatekeeper, gateposts, gateway](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [Yahweh](#)
- [Philistines](#)
- [David](#)
- [David](#)
- [gate, gate bars, gatekeeper, gateposts, gateway](#)

ULT

18 So these three mighty men broke through the army of the Philistines and drew water out of the well of Bethlehem, the well at the gate. They took the water and brought it to David, but he refused to drink it. Instead, he poured it out to Yahweh.

UST

18 So the three greatest warriors forced through the camp of Philistia soldiers and drew some water from the well, and brought it to David. But he would not drink it. Instead, he poured it out on the ground to be an offering to Yahweh.

1 Chronicles 11:19

May it be that I should never do this!

"May I never do something like this!" or "This is something I should never do!"

Should I drink the blood of these men who have risked their lives?

David speaks of the water as if it were blood because the men risked their lives to bring the water to him. He uses a question to emphasize this. This rhetorical question can be translated as a statement. Alternate translation: "I should not drink this water, which would be like drinking the blood of these men who have risked their lives to bring it to me." (See: [Metaphor](#) and [Rhetorical Question](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [God](#)
- [heart](#)
- [heart](#)
- [might, mighty, mighty works](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [God](#)
- [heart](#)
- [heart](#)
- [might, mighty, mighty works](#)

ULT

19 Then he said, "May it be that I should never do this! Should I drink the blood of these men who have risked their lives?" Because they had put their lives at risk, David refused to drink it. These were the deeds of the three mighty men.

UST

19 He said, "Yahweh, it would certainly not be right for me to drink this water! That would be like drinking the blood of these men who were willing to die for me!" So he refused to drink it. That was one of the things that David's three greatest warriors did.

1 Chronicles 11:20

Abishai

See how you translated this man's name in [1 Chronicles 2:16](#).

captain over the Three

This means Abishai was the leader of the three men who went and got water for David.

three hundred

"300 men" or "300 warriors" (See: [Numbers](#))

He is mentioned along with the Three

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: "People often mentioned him when they spoke of the Three" (See: [Active or Passive](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [brother](#)
- [name](#)
- [head](#)
- [raise, raised, risen, arise, arose, got up, stir up, stirred up](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [brother](#)
- [name](#)
- [head](#)
- [raise, raised, risen, arise, arose, got up, stir up, stirred up](#)

ULT

²⁰ Abishai brother of Joab was captain over the Three. He once used his spear against three hundred and killed them. He is mentioned along with the Three.

UST

²⁰ Joab's younger brother Abishai was the leader of the greatest warriors (called "The Three") and they gave him the great honor. One time Abishai fought three hundred enemy soldiers with his spear, and he killed them all.

1 Chronicles 11:21

Of the Three, he was given double honor and became

This can be stated in active form. Possible meanings are 1) that he received double the honor that the Three received. Alternate translation: "People gave him twice as much honor as they gave the Three and he became" or 2) the Three honored him more than they honored others. Alternate translation: "The Three honored him more than they honored others and he became" (See: [Active or Passive](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [burden](#), [burdened](#), [burdensome](#), [heavy](#), [hard work](#), [hard labor](#), [utterances](#)
- [chief](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [burden](#), [burdened](#), [burdensome](#), [heavy](#), [hard work](#), [hard labor](#), [utterances](#)
- [chief](#)

ULT

21 Of the Three, he was given double honor and became their captain, even though he was not one of them.

UST

21 So he became as famous as the three greatest warriors (called "The Three"). He became their commander, even though "The Three" did not count him in their number.

1 Chronicles 11:22

Benaiah...Jehoiada...Ariel

These are the names of men. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

Kabzeel

This is the name of a city. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [son](#)
- [son](#)
- [work, works, deeds](#)
- [Moab, Moabite](#)
- [prosper, prosperity, prosperous](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [son](#)
- [son](#)
- [work, works, deeds](#)
- [Moab, Moabite](#)
- [prosper, prosperity, prosperous](#)

ULT

²² Benaiah son of Jehoiada was a brave warrior from Kabzeel, who did great deeds. He killed the two sons of Ariel of Moab. He also went down into a pit and killed a lion on a day when the snow was falling.

UST

²² Jehoiada's son Benaiah was a brave soldier from the city of Kabzeel who did great deeds. He killed two of the best warriors from the Moab people group. One day he went down into a pit when snow was falling on the ground and killed a lion there.

1 Chronicles 11:23

five cubits

A “cubit” is a unit of measurement equal to 46 centimeters. Alternate translation: “2.3 meters” (See: [Biblical Distance](#))

a spear like a weaver’s beam

This compares the size of the spear with the size of a weaver’s beam. Alternate translation: “a spear the size of a weaver’s beam” (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

he went down to him

“Benaiah went down to the Egyptian.” This idiom means that he met him in battle. Alternate translation: “he attacked him” (See: [Idiom](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [Egypt, Egyptian](#)
- [Egypt, Egyptian](#)
- [Egypt, Egyptian](#)
- [hand](#)
- [hand](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [Egypt, Egyptian](#)
- [Egypt, Egyptian](#)
- [Egypt, Egyptian](#)
- [hand](#)
- [hand](#)

ULT

²³ He even killed an Egyptian, a man five cubits tall. The Egyptian had a spear like a weaver’s beam, but he went down to him with only a staff. He seized the spear out of the Egyptian’s hand and killed him with his own spear.

UST

²³ He also killed a soldier from Egypt who was two and one-third meters tall. The soldier from Egypt carried a spear that was as long as a weaver’s rod. Benaiah had only a club, but he grabbed the other man’s spear and killed him with it.

1 Chronicles 11:24

did these feats

"did these mighty deeds"

he was named alongside the three mighty men

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: "people praised him like they praised the three mighty men" (See: [Active or Passive](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [son](#)
- [name](#)
- [might, mighty, mighty works](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [son](#)
- [name](#)
- [might, mighty, mighty works](#)

ULT

²⁴ Benaiah son of Jehoiada did these feats, and he was named alongside the three mighty men.

UST

²⁴ Those are some of the things that Benaiah did. So he became as famous as the three greatest warriors.

1 Chronicles 11:25

He was more highly regarded than the thirty soldiers in general, but he was not regarded quite as highly as the three mighty men

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: "The people respected him more than the 30 soldiers, but not as much as the 3 most elite soldiers" (See: [Active or Passive](#))

his bodyguard

the group of people responsible for protecting David

Translation Words - ULT

- [appoint, appointed](#)
- [David](#)
- [burden, burdened, burdensome, heavy, hard work, hard labor, utterances](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [appoint, appointed](#)
- [David](#)
- [burden, burdened, burdensome, heavy, hard work, hard labor, utterances](#)

ULT

²⁵ He was more highly regarded than the thirty soldiers in general, but he was not regarded quite as highly as the three mighty men. Yet David put him in charge of his bodyguard.

UST

²⁵ He was more honored than the other members of the group of thirty great warriors, but he did not become a member of the group of three most outstanding warriors. David appointed him to be the leader of his bodyguards.

1 Chronicles 11:26

General Information:

This begins a list of David's thirty most important warriors. The list contains the names of the men and the clans to which they belonged. The list continues through [1 Chronicles 11:47](#). (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [brother](#)
- [son](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [brother](#)
- [son](#)

ULT

²⁶ The mighty men were Asahel brother of Joab, Elhanan son of Dodo of Bethlehem,

UST

²⁶ These are the names of the great warriors: Asahel, younger brother of Joab; Elhanan son of Dodo, from Bethlehem;

1 Chronicles 11:27

This continues the list of David's thirty most important warriors. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

ULT

²⁷ Shammoth the Harorite, Helez the Pelonite,

UST

²⁷ Shammoth, from the Harod; Helez, from the Pelon;

1 Chronicles 11:28

This continues the list of David's thirty most important warriors. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- son

Translation Words - UST

- son

ULT

²⁸ Ira son of Ikkesh the Tekoite, Abiezer the Anathothite,

UST

²⁸ Ira son of Ikkesh, from Tekoa; Abiezer, from Anathoth;

1 Chronicles 11:29

This continues the list of David's thirty most important warriors. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

ULT

²⁹ Sibbekai the Hushathite, Ilai the Ahohite,

UST

²⁹ Sibbekai, from Hushah; Ilai from Ahoh;

1 Chronicles 11:30

This continues the list of David's thirty most important warriors. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [son](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [son](#)

ULT

³⁰ Maharai the Netophathite, Heled son of Baanah the Netophathite,

UST

³⁰ Maharai, from Netophah; Heled, the son of Baanah, also from Netophah;

1 Chronicles 11:31

This continues the list of David's thirty most important warriors. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- son
- son
- Benjamin, Benjamite

Translation Words - UST

- son
- son
- Benjamin, Benjamite

ULT

³¹ Ithai son of Ribai of Gibeah of Benjamin's descendants, Benaiah the Pirathonite,

UST

³¹ Ithai, son of Ribai, from Gibeah in the land that belonged to the tribe of Benjamin; Benaiah, from Pirathon town;

1 Chronicles 11:32

This continues the list of David's thirty most important warriors. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

ULT

³² Hurai of the valleys of Gaash, Abiel the Arbathite,

UST

³² Hurai, from the valleys near Mount Gaash; Abiel from the clan of Arabah;

1 Chronicles 11:33

This continues the list of David's thirty most important warriors. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

ULT

³³ Azmaveth the Baharumite, Eliahba the Shaalbonite,

UST

³³ Azmaveth, from Baharum; Eliahba, from Shaalbon;

1 Chronicles 11:34

This continues the list of David's thirty most important warriors. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- son
- son

Translation Words - UST

- son
- son

ULT

³⁴ the sons of Hashem the Gizonite,
Jonathan son of Shagee the Hararite,

UST

³⁴ The sons of Hashem from Gizon;
Jonathan son of Shagee from the Harar;

1 Chronicles 11:35

This continues the list of David's thirty most important warriors. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- son
- son (2)

Translation Words - UST

- son
- son (2)

ULT

³⁵ Ahiam son of Sakar the Hararite,
Eliphal son of Ur,

UST

³⁵ Ahiam son of Sharar from Harar;
Eliphal son of Ur;

1 Chronicles 11:36

This continues the list of David's thirty most important warriors. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

ULT

³⁶ Hephher the Mekerathite, Ahijah the Pelonite,

UST

³⁶ Hephher from the Mekerath clan;
Ahijah from the Pelon;

1 Chronicles 11:37

This continues the list of David's thirty most important warriors. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [son](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [son](#)

ULT

³⁷ Hezro the Carmelite, Naarai son of Ezbai,

UST

³⁷ Hezro from Carmel; Naarai son of Ezbai;

1 Chronicles 11:38

This continues the list of David's thirty most important warriors. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- brother
- son
- Joel

Translation Words - UST

- brother
- son
- Joel

ULT

³⁸ Joel brother of Nathan, Mibhar son of Hagri,

UST

³⁸ Joel the younger brother of Nathan; Mibhar son of Hagri;

1 Chronicles 11:39

This continues the list of David's thirty most important warriors. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- son
- Ammon, Ammonite

Translation Words - UST

- son
- Ammon, Ammonite

ULT

³⁹ Zelek the Ammonite, Naharai the Berothite (the armor bearer of Joab son of Zeruiah),

UST

³⁹ Zelek from the Ammon people group; Naharai, the man who carried Joab's weapons, from Beeroth;

1 Chronicles 11:40

This continues the list of David's thirty most important warriors. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

ULT

⁴⁰ Ira the Ithrite, Gareb the Ithrite,

UST

⁴⁰ Ira and Gareb from Jattir;

1 Chronicles 11:41

This continues the list of David's thirty most important warriors. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [son](#)
- [Hittite](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [son](#)
- [Hittite](#)

ULT

⁴¹ Uriah the Hittite, Zabad son of Ahlai,

UST

⁴¹ Uriah, Bathsheba's husband, from the Heth people group; Zabad son of Ahlai;

1 Chronicles 11:42

This continues the list of David's thirty most important warriors. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

thirty with him

"30 men with him" (See: [Numbers](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [son](#)
- [head](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [son](#)
- [head](#)

ULT

⁴² Adina son of Shiza the Reubenite (a chief of the Reubenites) and thirty with him,

UST

⁴² Adina son of Shiza, a leader from the tribe of Reuben, who had thirty soldiers with him;

1 Chronicles 11:43

This continues the list of David's thirty most important warriors. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [son](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [son](#)

ULT

⁴³ Hanan son of Maacah, and Joshaphat the Mithnite,

UST

⁴³ Hanan son of Maacah; Joshaphat from Mithna;

1 Chronicles 11:44

This continues the list of David's thirty most important warriors. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [son](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [son](#)

ULT

⁴⁴ Uzzia the Ashterathite, Shama and Jeiel sons of Hotham the Aroerite,

UST

⁴⁴ Uzzia from Ashterath; Shama and Jeiel, sons of Hotham, from Aroer.

1 Chronicles 11:45

This concludes the list of David's thirty most important warriors. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- brother
- son

Translation Words - UST

- brother
- son

ULT

⁴⁵ Jediael son of Shimri, Joha (his brother the Tizite),

UST

⁴⁵ Jediael son of Shimri and his younger brother Joha, from Tiz town;

1 Chronicles 11:46

This continues the list of David's thirty most important warriors. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- son
- Moab, Moabite

Translation Words - UST

- son
- Moab, Moabite

ULT

⁴⁶ Eliel the Mahavite, Jeribai and Joshaviah sons of Elnaam, Ithmah the Moabite,

UST

⁴⁶ Eliel from Mahavah; Jeribai and Joshaviah, sons of Elnaam; Ithmah from the Moab;

1 Chronicles 11:47

This ends the list of David's thirty most important warriors. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

ULT

⁴⁷ Eliel, Obed, and Jaasiel the
Mezobaite.

UST

⁴⁷ Eliel and Obed, and Jaasiel from
Zobah.

1 Chronicles 12

1 Chronicles 12 General Notes

Special concepts in this chapter

“[They] could use both the right hand and the left”

These soldiers were very skilled. They were able to fight with either hand. (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

King David

This chapter records all those who supported David as king over Saul. The extent of this record shows that there was nearly universal support for David.

1 Chronicles 12:1

while he was still banished from the presence of

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: “during the time when he could not be in the presence of” (See: [Active or Passive](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [son](#)
- [David](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [son](#)
- [David](#)

ULT

¹ These were the men who came to David to Ziklag, while he was still banished from the presence of Saul son of Kish. They were among the soldiers, his helpers in battle.

UST

¹ David went to the city of Ziklag to escape from King Saul. While he was there, many warriors came and joined him, and they helped him when he fought battles.

1 Chronicles 12:2

could use both the right hand and the left in slinging stones and in shooting arrows

“could use either their right hands or their left hands to sling stones and shoot arrows”

slinging stones

The sling was a strip of leather that a person would use to throw a stone long distances.

Translation Words - ULT

- brother

Translation Words - UST

- brother

ULT

² They were armed with bows and could use both the right hand and the left in slinging stones and in shooting arrows from the bow. They were Benjamites, Saul's fellow tribesmen.

UST

² They carried bows and arrows. They were able to shoot arrows and to sling stones. They could use either their right arms or their left arms to do that. They were relatives of Saul from the tribe of Benjamin.

1 Chronicles 12:3

General Information:

This begins a list of the men from the tribe of Benjamin who joined David at Ziklag. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- son
- son
- chief

Translation Words - UST

- son
- son
- chief

ULT

³ The chief was Ahiezer, then Joash, both sons of Shemaah the Gibeathite. There were Jeziel and Pelet, sons of Azmaveth. There were also Berakah, Jehu the Anathothite,

UST

³ Their leader was Ahiezer. Next in command was Joash. They were both sons of Shemaah from the city of Gibeah. These are the names of some of those warriors: Jeziel and Pelet, sons of Azmaveth; Berakah; Jehu from the city of Anathoth;

1 Chronicles 12:4

This continues the list of the men from the tribe of Benjamin who joined David at Ziklag. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

the thirty

“the 30 soldiers” (See: [Numbers](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [Gibeon, Gibeonite](#)
- [might, mighty, mighty works](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [Gibeon, Gibeonite](#)
- [might, mighty, mighty works](#)

ULT

⁴ Ishmaiah the Gibeonite, a soldier among the thirty (and in command of the thirty); Jeremiah, Jahaziel, Johanan, Jozabad the Gederathite,

UST

⁴ Ishmaiah from the city of Gibeon, who was the leader of the thirty greatest warriors; Jeremiah, Jahaziel, Johanan, and Jozabad from the city of Gederah;

1 Chronicles 12:5

This continues the list of the men from the tribe of Benjamin who joined David at Ziklag. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

ULT

⁵ Eluzai, Jerimoth, Bealiah, Shemariah,
Shephatiah the Haruphite,

UST

⁵ Eluzai, Jerimoth, Bealiah, Shemariah,
and Shephatiah from the city of Haruph;

1 Chronicles 12:6

This continues the list of the men from the tribe of Benjamin who joined David at Ziklag. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

ULT

⁶ the Korahites Elkanah, Isshiah, Azarel, Joezer, Jashobeam, and

UST

⁶ Elkanah, Isshiah, Azarel, Joezer and Jashobeam, who were descendants of Korah;

1 Chronicles 12:7

This ends the list of the men from the tribe of Benjamin who joined David at Ziklag. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [son](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [son](#)

ULT

⁷ Joelah and Zebadiah, sons of Jeroham of Gedor.

UST

⁷ Joelah and Zebadiah, sons of Jeroham, from the city of Gedor.

1 Chronicles 12:8

General Information:

This begins a list of the men from the tribe of Gad who joined David. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

whose faces were as fierce as the faces of lions

Here the word “faces” represents the men and the lions. Their faces express the fierceness with which they fight battles. Alternate translation: “who were as fierce in battle as lions hunting prey” (See: [Synecdoche](#) and [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

They were as swift as gazelles on the mountains

This hyperbole compares how swiftly these men were able to run with how swiftly gazelles are able to run over rugged mountain terrain. (See: [Hyperbole](#))

gazelles

animals similar to deer that can run quickly over hills and rough ground

Translation Words - ULT

- [David](#)
- [might, mighty, mighty works](#)
- [face, facial](#)
- [face, facial](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [David](#)
- [might, mighty, mighty works](#)
- [face, facial](#)
- [face, facial](#)

ULT

⁸ Some Gadites joined David at the stronghold in the wilderness. They were fighting men, men trained for battle, who could handle shield and spear; whose faces were as fierce as the faces of lions. They were as swift as gazelles on the mountains.

UST

⁸ Some men from the tribe of Gad east of the Jordan River joined David when he was at his fortress in the caves in the desert. They were brave warriors who were trained for fighting battles and able to use shields and spears well. They were as fierce as lions, and they could run as fast as deer on the hills.

1 Chronicles 12:9

Ezer the leader, Obadiah the second, Eliab the third

This begins a list of the men from the tribe of Gad who joined David, in order of their importance. (See: [How to Translate Names](#) and [Ordinal Numbers](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [chief](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [chief](#)

ULT

⁹ There were Ezer the leader, Obadiah the second, Eliab the third,

UST

⁹ Ezer was their leader. Next in command was Obadiah. Next was Eliab.

1 Chronicles 12:10

Mishmannah the fourth, Jeremiah the fifth

This continues a list of the men from the tribe of Gad who joined David, in order of their importance. (See: [How to Translate Names](#) and [Ordinal Numbers](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [Jeremiah](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [Jeremiah](#)

ULT

¹⁰ Mishmannah the fourth, Jeremiah the fifth,

UST

¹⁰ Next was Mishmannah. Next was Jeremiah.

1 Chronicles 12:11

Attai the sixth, Eliel the seventh

This continues the list of the men from the tribe of Gad who joined David, in order of their importance. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

ULT

11 Attai the sixth, Eliel the seventh,

UST

11 Next was Attai. Next was Eliel.

1 Chronicles 12:12

Johanan the eighth, Elzabad the ninth

This continues the list of the men from the tribe of Gad who joined David, in order of their importance. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

ULT

¹² Johanan the eighth, Elzabad the ninth,

UST

¹² Next was Johanan. Next was Elzabad.

1 Chronicles 12:13

Jeremiah the tenth, Makbannai the eleventh

This ends the list of the men from the tribe of Gad who joined David, in order of their importance. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [Jeremiah](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [Jeremiah](#)

ULT

¹³ Jeremiah the tenth, Makbannai the eleventh.

UST

¹³ Next was another man whose name was Jeremiah. The last was Macbannai.

1 Chronicles 12:14

The least led a hundred

This means that the smallest group of the army that a leader led was 100 men. (See: [Numbers](#))

the greatest led a thousand

This means that the largest group of the army that a leader led was 1,000 men. (See: [Numbers](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [son](#)
- [head](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [son](#)
- [head](#)

ULT

14 These sons of Gad were leaders of the army. The least led a hundred, and the greatest led a thousand.

UST

14 Those men from the tribe of Gad were all army officers. Some of them commanded one thousand soldiers, and some of them commanded one hundred soldiers.

1 Chronicles 12:15

first month

This is the first month of the Hebrew calendar. It is during the last part of March and the first part of April on Western calendars. It is at the beginning of the spring season when the late rains come. (See: [Hebrew Months](#) and [Ordinal Numbers](#))

when it overflowed its banks

“when the Jordan overflowed its banks”

chased away all those living in the valleys

“they chased away all those living in the valleys”

Translation Words - ULT

- [transgress, transgression](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [transgress, transgression](#)

ULT

15 They crossed the Jordan in the first month, when it overflowed its banks, and chased away all those living in the valleys, both toward the east and toward the west.

UST

15 They crossed to the west side of the Jordan River during March, at the time of the year when the river was flooded. They chased from there all the people who lived in the valleys on both sides of the river.

1 Chronicles 12:16

men of Benjamin and Judah

“men from the tribes of Benjamin and Judah”

Translation Words - ULT

- son
- Judah
- Benjamin, Benjamite

Translation Words - UST

- son
- Judah
- Benjamin, Benjamite

ULT

16 Some of the men of Benjamin and Judah came to the stronghold to David.

UST

16 Some other men from the tribe of Benjamin and from Judah also came to David in his fortress.

1 Chronicles 12:17

may the God of our ancestors see

What God will see may be supplied in translation. Alternate translation: “may the God of our ancestors see what you intend to do” (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [command, commandment](#)
- [God](#)
- [heart](#)
- [David](#)
- [ancestor, father, fathered, forefather, grandfather](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [command, commandment](#)
- [God](#)
- [heart](#)
- [David](#)
- [ancestor, father, fathered, forefather, grandfather](#)

ULT

17 David went out to meet them and addressed them: “If you have come in peace to me to help me, you may join me. But if you have come to betray me to my adversaries, may the God of our ancestors see and rebuke you, since I have done no wrong.”

UST

17 David went out of the cave to meet them and said to them, “If you have come peacefully to help me, I am eager to have to join with me. But if you have come to enable my enemies to capture me, even though I have not done anything to harm you, I hope that the God whom our ancestors worshiped will see it and condemn you.”

1 Chronicles 12:18

the Spirit came on Amasai

The Spirit empowering Amasai is spoken of as if the Spirit came on him. Alternate translation: “the Spirit empowered Amasai” (See: [Metaphor](#))

Amasai

This is the name of a man. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

the thirty

“the 30 soldiers” (See: [Numbers](#))

We are yours, David. We are on your side, son of Jesse

These phrases share similar meanings. The idioms “we are yours” and “we are on your side” both mean that the men support David. Alternate translation: “We are devoted to you, David. We support you, son of Jesse” (See: [Parallelism](#) and [Idiom](#))

Peace, may peace be to whoever helps you

Here the word “peace” refers to prosperity and well-being. The word is repeated to emphasize great prosperity. Alternate translation: “May whoever helps you greatly prosper” (See: [Doublet](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- son
- God
- spirit, spiritual
- David
- David
- Jesse
- head
- head
- peace, peaceful, peacemakers
- peace, peaceful, peacemakers

Translation Words - UST

- son
- God
- spirit, spiritual
- David
- David
- Jesse
- head
- head
- peace, peaceful, peacemakers
- peace, peaceful, peacemakers

ULT

18 Then the Spirit came on Amasai, who was chief of the thirty. Amasai said, “We are yours, David. We are on your side, son of Jesse. Peace, may peace be to whoever helps you. May peace be to your helpers, for your God is helping you.” Then David received them and made them commanders over his men.

UST

18 Then God’s Spirit came on Amasai, who was the leader of the thirty greatest warriors, and he said, “David, we want to be with you; you who are the son of Jesse, we will join you. We know that things will go very well for you and for those who are with you, because your God is helping you.” So David welcomed those men, and he appointed them to be leaders of his soldiers.

1 Chronicles 12:19

deserted to

"left their leaders to join"

He will desert to his master Saul

"He will stop fighting with us and fight for his master Saul"

Translation Words - ULT

- lord, Lord, master, sir
- Philistines
- Philistines
- David
- head

Translation Words - UST

- lord, Lord, master, sir
- Philistines
- Philistines
- David
- head

ULT

19 Some from Manasseh also deserted to David when he came with the Philistines against Saul to battle. Yet they did not help the Philistines, because the Philistine lords consulted with each other and sent David away. They said, "He will desert to his master Saul at the risk of our lives."

UST

19 Some men from the tribe of Manasseh also joined David when he went with the soldiers of Philistia to fight against Saul's army. But David and his men did not really help the army of Philistia. After the leaders of Philistia talked about David and his soldiers, they sent David away. They said, "If David joins his master Saul again, we will all be killed."

1 Chronicles 12:20

Ziklag

This is the name of a city. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

Adnah, Jozabad, Jediahel, Michael, Jozabad, Elihu, and Zillethai

These are the names of men. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

captains over thousands of Manasseh

This means that each of these men led groups of a thousand soldiers in the tribe of Manasseh. Alternate translation: “each a captain over 1,000 men in the tribe of Manasseh” (See: [Numbers](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [head](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [head](#)

ULT

²⁰ When he went to Ziklag, the men of Manasseh who joined him were Adnah, Jozabad, Jediahel, Michael, Jozabad, Elihu, and Zillethai, captains over thousands of Manasseh.

UST

²⁰ When David went to Ziklag, these were the men from the tribe of Manasseh who went with him: Adnah, Jozabad, Jediahel, Michael, another man whose name was Jozabad, Elihu, and Zillethai. Each of them had been a commander of one thousand men in Saul's army.

1 Chronicles 12:21

the roving bands

“the groups of robbers.” This refers to groups of people who robbed people traveling through the countryside.

Translation Words - ULT

- David
- might, mighty, mighty works
- prosper, prosperity, prosperous
- prince, princess, governors, provincial governors, officials, noblemen, nobility

Translation Words - UST

- David
- might, mighty, mighty works
- prosper, prosperity, prosperous
- prince, princess, governors, provincial governors, officials, noblemen, nobility

ULT

21 They helped David fight against the roving bands, for they were fighting men. Later they became commanders in the army.

UST

21 They were all brave soldiers, and they helped David to fight against the groups of men who roamed throughout the country, robbing people. So those men became commanders in David's army.

1 Chronicles 12:22

Day after day

"Each day"

a great army, like the army of God

Possible meanings are 1) the phrase "like the army of God" means "like an army that God assembled" or 2) the word "God" is used as an idiom that refers to the great size of the army. Alternate translation: "a very large army" (See: [Idiom](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [God](#)
- [David](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [God](#)
- [David](#)

ULT

²² Day after day, men came to David to help him, until there was a great army, like the army of God.

UST

²² Every day more men joined David's men, and his army became large, like the army of God.

1 Chronicles 12:23

General Information:

This begins the list of the number of men who joined David from each tribe. (See: [Numbers](#))

to turn the kingdom of Saul over to him

The men making David king in place of Saul is spoken of as if they gave possession of Saul's kingdom to David. Alternate translation: "to make David king in place of Saul" (See: [Metaphor](#))

carried out Yahweh's word

"made Yahweh's word true" or "fulfilled Yahweh's word"

Translation Words - ULT

- [Yahweh](#)
- [David](#)
- [head](#)
- [kingdom](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [Yahweh](#)
- [David](#)
- [head](#)
- [kingdom](#)

ULT

23 This is the record of the armed soldiers for war, who came to David to Hebron, to turn the kingdom of Saul over to him, which carried out Yahweh's word.

UST

23 These are the numbers of soldiers who were ready for battle who joined David at the city of Hebron. They came to help him to become the king of Israel instead of Saul, as Yahweh had promised would happen.

1 Chronicles 12:24

This continues the list of the number of men who joined David from each tribe. (See: [Numbers](#))

6,800, armed for war

“six thousand eight hundred, armed for war” (See: [Numbers](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [son](#)
- [Judea](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [son](#)
- [Judea](#)

ULT

²⁴ From Judah those who carried shield and spear were 6,800, armed for war.

UST

²⁴ There were 6,800 men from Judah, who carried shields and spears.

1 Chronicles 12:25

This continues the list of the number of men who joined David from each tribe. (See: [Numbers](#))

From the Simeonites

"From Simeon" or "From the tribe of Simeon"

7,100 fighting men

"seven thousand one hundred fighting men" (See: [Numbers](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [son](#)
- [might, mighty, mighty works](#)
- [prosper, prosperity, prosperous](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [son](#)
- [might, mighty, mighty works](#)
- [prosper, prosperity, prosperous](#)

ULT

²⁵ From the Simeonites there were 7,100 fighting men.

UST

²⁵ There were 7,100 men from the tribe of Simeon. They were all strong warriors trained to fight battles.

1 Chronicles 12:26

This continues the list of the number of men who joined David from each tribe. (See: [Numbers](#))

4,600 fighting men

“four thousand six hundred fighting men” (See: [Numbers](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [son](#)
- [Levi, Levite, Levitical](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [son](#)
- [Levi, Levite, Levitical](#)

ULT

²⁶ From the Levites there were 4,600 fighting men.

UST

²⁶ There were 4,600 men from the tribe of Levi.

1 Chronicles 12:27

This continues the list of the number of men who joined David from each tribe. (See: [Numbers](#))

Jehoiada

This is the name of a man. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

with him were 3,700

“with him were three thousand seven hundred” (See: [Numbers](#))

ULT

²⁷ Jehoiada was the leader of Aaron's descendants, and with him were 3,700.

UST

²⁷ Jehoiada, who was a leader descended from Aaron, was in that group of descendants of Levi, and there were 3,700 men with him.

1 Chronicles 12:28

This continues the list of the number of men who joined David from each tribe. (See: [Numbers](#))

twenty-two leaders

“22 leaders” (See: [Numbers](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- ancestor, father, fathered, forefather, grandfather
- might, mighty, mighty works
- prosper, prosperity, prosperous
- prince, princess, governors, provincial governors, officials, noblemen, nobility
- servant, serve, slave, worker, young man, young women
- house

Translation Words - UST

- ancestor, father, fathered, forefather, grandfather
- might, mighty, mighty works
- prosper, prosperity, prosperous
- prince, princess, governors, provincial governors, officials, noblemen, nobility
- servant, serve, slave, worker, young man, young women
- house

ULT

²⁸ With Zadok, a young, strong, and courageous man, were twenty-two leaders from his father's family.

UST

²⁸ Zadok, a strong young soldier, was also in that group, and there were 22 other leaders from his clan who came with him.

1 Chronicles 12:29

This continues the list of the number of men who joined David from each tribe. (See: [Numbers](#))

From Benjamin, Saul's tribe

"From Benjamin, the tribe to which Saul belonged"

three thousand

"3,000" (See: [Numbers](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [brother](#)
- [son](#)
- [Benjamin, Benjamite](#)
- [watch, watchman, watchful, guard, take heed, beware, watch out](#)
- [house](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [brother](#)
- [son](#)
- [Benjamin, Benjamite](#)
- [watch, watchman, watchful, guard, take heed, beware, watch out](#)
- [house](#)

ULT

²⁹ From Benjamin, Saul's tribe, were three thousand. Most of them had remained loyal to Saul until this time.

UST

²⁹ There were three thousand men from the tribe of Benjamin who were Saul's relatives. Most of them had previously wanted one of Saul's descendants to be the king.

1 Chronicles 12:30

This continues the list of the number of men who joined David from each tribe. (See: [Numbers](#))

20,800 fighting men

“twenty thousand eight hundred fighting men” (See: [Numbers](#))

From the Ephraimites

“From Ephraim” or “From the tribe of Ephraim”

Translation Words - ULT

- [son](#)
- [name](#)
- [Ephraim, Ephraimite](#)
- [ancestor, father, fathered, forefather, grandfather](#)
- [might, mighty, mighty works](#)
- [prosper, prosperity, prosperous](#)
- [house](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [son](#)
- [name](#)
- [Ephraim, Ephraimite](#)
- [ancestor, father, fathered, forefather, grandfather](#)
- [might, mighty, mighty works](#)
- [prosper, prosperity, prosperous](#)
- [house](#)

ULT

³⁰ From the Ephraimites there were 20,800 fighting men, men who were famous in their fathers' houses.

UST

³⁰ There were 20,800 men from the tribe of Ephraim who were all brave warriors and trained for fighting battles and famous in their own clans.

1 Chronicles 12:31

This continues the list of the number of men who joined David from each tribe. (See: [Numbers](#))

eighteen thousand

“18,000” (See: [Numbers](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [name](#)
- [David](#)
- [reign, rule](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [name](#)
- [David](#)
- [reign, rule](#)

ULT

³¹ From the half tribe of Manasseh there were eighteen thousand famous men who came to make David king.

UST

³¹ There were eighteen thousand men from the half of the tribe of Manasseh that lived west of the Jordan River. They were all chosen to go and help David become the king.

1 Chronicles 12:32

This continues the list of the number of men who joined David from each tribe. (See: [Numbers](#))

two hundred

“200” (See: [Numbers](#))

who had understanding of the times

Possible meanings are 1) these men knew the right time to act or 2) these men had a good understanding of current political events within Israel.

Translation Words - ULT

- [brother](#)
- [son](#)
- [Israel, Israelites](#)
- [head](#)
- [know, knowledge, unknown, distinguish](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [brother](#)
- [son](#)
- [Israel, Israelites](#)
- [head](#)
- [know, knowledge, unknown, distinguish](#)

ULT

³² From Issachar, there were two hundred leaders who had understanding of the times and knew what Israel ought to do. All their relatives were under their command.

UST

³² There were two hundred men who were leaders from the tribe of Issachar along with their relatives. They always knew what the Israelites should do, and they knew the right time to do it. Their relatives were with them, commanded by their leaders.

1 Chronicles 12:33

This continues the list of the number of men who joined David from each tribe. (See: [Numbers](#))

fifty thousand

“50,000” (See: [Numbers](#))

ready to give undivided loyalty

It is implicit that they would give loyalty to David. Alternate translation: “ready to give undivided loyalty to David” (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [heart](#)
- [know, knowledge, unknown, distinguish](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [heart](#)
- [know, knowledge, unknown, distinguish](#)

ULT

³³ From Zebulun there were fifty thousand fighting men, prepared for battle, with all the weapons of war, and ready to give undivided loyalty.

UST

³³ There were fifty-five thousand men from the tribe of Zebulun. They were all experienced warriors and knew how to use all kinds of weapons well. They were completely loyal to David.

1 Chronicles 12:34

This continues the list of the number of men who joined David from each tribe. (See: [Numbers](#))

one thousand...thirty-seven thousand

"1,000...37,000" (See: [Numbers](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [prince](#), [princess](#), [governors](#), [provincial governors](#), [officials](#), [noblemen](#), [nobility](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [prince](#), [princess](#), [governors](#), [provincial governors](#), [officials](#), [noblemen](#), [nobility](#)

ULT

³⁴ From Naphtali there were one thousand officers, and with them thirty-seven thousand men with shields and spears.

UST

³⁴ There were one thousand officers from the tribe of Naphtali. With them were thirty-seven thousand soldiers, each carrying shields and spears.

1 Chronicles 12:35

This continues the list of the number of men who joined David from each tribe. (See: [Numbers](#))

From the Danites

“From Dan” or “From the tribe of Dan”

28,600 men

“twenty-eight thousand six hundred men” (See: [Numbers](#))

ULT

³⁵ From the Danites there were 28,600 men prepared for battle.

UST

³⁵ There were 28,600 soldiers from the tribe of Dan, all trained to fight battles.

1 Chronicles 12:36

This continues the list of the number of men who joined David from each tribe. (See: [Numbers](#))

forty thousand

“40,000” (See: [Numbers](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [know](#), [knowledge](#), [unknown](#), [distinguish](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [know](#), [knowledge](#), [unknown](#), [distinguish](#)

ULT

³⁶ From Asher there were forty thousand men prepared for battle.

UST

³⁶ There were forty-seven thousand experienced soldiers from the tribe of Asher, all trained to fight battles.

1 Chronicles 12:37

This ends the list of the number of men who joined David from each tribe. (See: [Numbers](#))

the Reubenites, Gadites

“Reuben, Gad” or “the tribe of Reuben, the tribe of Gad”

120,000 men

“one hundred twenty thousand men” (See: [Numbers](#))

ULT

³⁷ From the other side of the Jordan, from the Reubenites, Gadites, and the half tribe of Manasseh, there were 120,000 men armed with all kinds of weapons for battle.

UST

³⁷ There were also 120,000 soldiers from the area east of the Jordan River who joined David. They were from the tribes of Reuben, Gad, and the eastern half of the tribe of Manasseh. They had all kinds of weapons.

1 Chronicles 12:38

with firm intentions to make David king

“determined to make David king”

Translation Words - ULT

- heart
- heart
- Israel, Israelites
- Israel, Israelites
- remnant
- David
- David
- reign, rule
- reign, rule (2)

Translation Words - UST

- heart
- heart
- Israel, Israelites
- Israel, Israelites
- remnant
- David
- David
- reign, rule
- reign, rule (2)

ULT

38 All these soldiers, equipped for battle, came to Hebron with firm intentions to make David king over all Israel. All the rest of Israel were in agreement to make David king also.

UST

38 All those men were soldiers who volunteered to be in David's army. They came to Hebron wanting very much to enable David to be the king of all of the Israelite people.

1 Chronicles 12:39

They were there with David

"These soldiers were there with David"

three days

"3 days" (See: [Numbers](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [brother](#)
- [David](#)
- [devour](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [brother](#)
- [David](#)
- [devour](#)

ULT

³⁹ They were there with David three days, eating and drinking, for their relatives had sent them with provisions.

UST

³⁹ The men spent three days there with David, eating and drinking, because their families had given them food to take with them.

1 Chronicles 12:40

Israel was celebrating

The word “Israel” represents the people who make up the nation.
Alternate translation: “the people of Israel were celebrating” (See: [Synecdoche](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [Israel, Israelites](#)
- [bread](#)
- [flock, herd](#)
- [joy, joyful, enjoy, rejoice, gladness, rejoicing](#)
- [oil](#)
- [wine, wineskin, new wine](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [Israel, Israelites](#)
- [bread](#)
- [flock, herd](#)
- [joy, joyful, enjoy, rejoice, gladness, rejoicing](#)
- [oil](#)
- [wine, wineskin, new wine](#)

ULT

⁴⁰ In addition, those who were near to them, as far as Issachar and Zebulun and Naphtali, brought bread on donkeys, camels, mules, and oxen, and cakes of figs, clusters of raisins, wine, oil, oxen, and sheep, for Israel was celebrating.

UST

⁴⁰ Also, their fellow Israelites came from as far away as the area where the tribes of Issachar, Zebulun, and Naphtali lived, bringing food on donkeys, camels, mules, and oxen. They brought a lot of flour, fig cakes, raisins, wine, olive oil, cattle and sheep. And throughout Israel, the people were very joyful.

1 Chronicles 13

1 Chronicles 13 General Notes

Special concepts in this chapter

Ark of the covenant

David tried to bring the ark to Jerusalem on an ox cart instead of being carried by priests as the law said to do. The ox stumbled and Uzzah touched the ark to keep it from falling and he immediately died because of this. (See: [priest](#), [priesthood](#) and [law of Moses](#), [God's law](#), [law of Yahweh](#), [the law](#) and [covenant](#))

1 Chronicles 13:1

the commanders of thousands and of hundreds

Possible meanings are 1) these numbers represent the exact amount of soldiers that these commanders led. Alternate translation: “the commanders of 1,000 soldiers and the commanders of 100 soldiers” or 2) the words translated as “thousands” and “hundreds” do not represent exact numbers, but are the names of larger and smaller military divisions. Alternate translation: “the commanders of large military divisions and the commanders of smaller military divisions” (See: [Numbers](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [David](#)
- [advice](#), [advise](#), [advisor](#), [counsel](#), [counselor](#), [counsels](#)
- [prince](#), [princess](#), [governors](#), [provincial governors](#), [officials](#), [noblemen](#), [nobility](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [David](#)
- [advice](#), [advise](#), [advisor](#), [counsel](#), [counselor](#), [counsels](#)
- [prince](#), [princess](#), [governors](#), [provincial governors](#), [officials](#), [noblemen](#), [nobility](#)

ULT

¹ David consulted with the commanders of thousands and of hundreds, with every leader.

UST

¹ One day David talked with all his army officers. Some of them were commanders of one hundred soldiers and some were commanders of one thousand soldiers.

1 Chronicles 13:2

all the assembly of Israel

This refers to all of the Israelites who were assembled in this place.
Alternate translation: "all of the Israelites who were assembled there"
(See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

if this comes from Yahweh our God

This idiom means that this action is something that Yahweh approves.
Alternate translation: "if this is something that Yahweh our God approves" (See: [Idiom](#))

Let them be told to join us

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: "Let messengers tell them to join us" or "Let them join us" (See: [Active or Passive](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- brother
- God
- Yahweh
- Israel, Israelites
- Israel, Israelites
- priest, priesthood
- David
- Levi, Levite, Levitical
- assembly, assemble, congregation, meeting
- earth, earthen, earthly

Translation Words - UST

- brother
- God
- Yahweh
- Israel, Israelites
- Israel, Israelites
- priest, priesthood
- David
- Levi, Levite, Levitical
- assembly, assemble, congregation, meeting
- earth, earthen, earthly

ULT

² David said to all the assembly of Israel, "If it seems good to you, and if this comes from Yahweh our God, let us send messengers everywhere to our brothers who remain in all the regions of Israel, and to the priests and Levites who are in their cities. Let them be told to join us.

UST

² Then he summoned the other Israelite leaders and said to all of them, "If it seems to you to be a good thing for us to do, and if it is what Yahweh our God wants, let us send a message to our fellow Israelites in all the areas of our country, including the priests and descendants of Levi who are living among them in their towns and in the nearby pasturelands, to come and join us,

1 Chronicles 13:3

(There are no notes for this verse.)

Translation Words - ULT

- God
- seek, search, look for

Translation Words - UST

- God
- seek, search, look for

ULT

³ Let us bring the ark of our God back to ourselves, for we did not seek his will in the days of Saul's reign."

UST

³ because we want to bring the sacred chest of our God back to us. While Saul was the king, we did not ask God what we should do."

1 Chronicles 13:4

they seemed right in the eyes of all the people

Here the word “eyes” represents seeing, and seeing represents thoughts or judgment. Alternate translation: “all the people considered these things to be right” (See: [Metaphor](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [people](#), [people group](#),
- [assembly](#), [assemble](#), [congregation](#), [meeting](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [people](#), [people group](#),
- [assembly](#), [assemble](#), [congregation](#), [meeting](#)

ULT

⁴ The whole assembly agreed to do these things, because they seemed right in the eyes of all the people.

UST

⁴ All the people agreed with David, because they all thought that it was the right thing to do.

1 Chronicles 13:5

David assembled all Israel together

Here the word “all” is a generalization. The phrase means that David assembled people from all over Israel, not that he assembled every person in Israel. Alternate translation: “David assembled people together from all Israel” (See: [Hyperbole](#))

Lebo Hamath...Kiriath Jearim

These are the names of places. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [God](#)
- [Israel, Israelites](#)
- [David](#)
- [Egypt, Egyptian](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [God](#)
- [Israel, Israelites](#)
- [David](#)
- [Egypt, Egyptian](#)

ULT

⁵ So David assembled all Israel together, from the Shihor River in Egypt to Lebo Hamath, to bring the ark of God from Kiriath Jearim.

UST

⁵ So David gathered all the Israelite people, from the Shihor River in Egypt to the city of Lebo Hamath in the north, and told them that he wanted them to help bring the sacred chest of God back to Jerusalem from the city of Kiriath Jearim.

1 Chronicles 13:6

Baalah...Kiriath Jearim

These are the names of places. "Baalah" is another name for Kiriath Jearim. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

which belongs to Judah

"which is in Judah"

to bring up from there the ark of God

It is implied that they are taking the ark to Jerusalem. Alternate translation: "to take to Jerusalem the ark of God" (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

to bring up from there

Jerusalem is higher than almost any other place in Israel, so it was normal for Israelites to speak of going up to Jerusalem and going down from it.

which is called by Yahweh's name

This can be stated in active form. Possible meanings are 1) the idiom "called by...name" refers to a person owning the thing. Alternate translation: "which belongs to Yahweh" or 2) the ark has Yahweh's name written on it. Alternate translation: "which bears Yahweh's name" (See: [Idiom](#))

who sits enthroned over the cherubim

You may need to make explicit that the cherubim are those on the lid of the ark of the covenant. The biblical writers often spoke of the ark of the covenant as if it were Yahweh's footstool upon which he rested his feet as he sat on his throne in heaven above. Alternate translation: "who sits on his throne above the cherubim on the ark of the covenant" (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- call, call out
- God
- Yahweh
- name
- Israel, Israelites
- Judah
- David

Translation Words - UST

- call, call out
- God
- Yahweh
- name
- Israel, Israelites
- Judah

ULT

⁶ David and all Israel went up to Baalah, that is, Kiriath Jearim, which belongs to Judah, to bring up from there the ark of God, which is called by Yahweh's name, Yahweh, who sits enthroned over the cherubim.

UST

⁶ David went with all the Israelite people to the city of Baalah, which is another name for Kiriath Jearim, to get the sacred chest. The people believed that God ruled from between the statues of winged creatures that was above the lid of the sacred chest, and the sacred chest belongs to Yahweh.

- [David](#)

1 Chronicles 13:7

Abinadab...Uzzah...Ahio

These are names of men. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- God
- horse, warhorse, horseback
- house

Translation Words - UST

- God
- horse, warhorse, horseback
- house

ULT

⁷ So they set the ark of God on a new cart. They brought it out of Abinadab's house. Uzzah and Ahio were guiding the cart.

UST

⁷ The people put the sacred chest on a new cart and carried it from Abinadab's house. Uzzah and Ahio were guiding the oxen that were pulling the cart.

1 Chronicles 13:8

David and all Israel

Here the word “all” is a generalization. Alternate translation: “David and all of the Israelites who were present” (See: [Hyperbole](#))

singing with stringed instruments

“singing while playing stringed instruments”

tambourines

hand drums with pieces of metal around the side that sound when the instruments are shaken (See: [Translate Unknowns](#))

cymbals

two thin, round metal plates that are hit together to make a loud sound (See: [Translate Unknowns](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [God](#)
- [Israel, Israelites](#)
- [harp, harpist](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [God](#)
- [Israel, Israelites](#)
- [harp, harpist](#)

ULT

⁸ David and all Israel were celebrating before God with all their might. They were singing with stringed instruments, tambourines, cymbals, and trumpets.

UST

⁸ David and all the Israelite people were celebrating in God's presence. They were singing with all their strength, and playing lyres, harps, tambourines, and cymbals, and blowing trumpets.

1 Chronicles 13:9

Kidon...Uzzah

These are names of men. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [hand](#)
- [thresh](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [hand](#)
- [thresh](#)

ULT

⁹ When they came to the threshing floor of Kidon, Uzzah reached out with his hand to grab the ark, because the oxen stumbled.

UST

⁹ But when David's men came to the place where Kidon threshed grain, the oxen stumbled. So Uzzah reached out with his hand to prevent the sacred chest from falling off the cart.

1 Chronicles 13:10

the anger of Yahweh burned against Uzzah

Yahweh's anger is spoken of as if it were a fire that burned the one with whom Yahweh is angry. Alternate translation: "Yahweh was very angry with Uzzah" (See: [Metaphor](#))

before God

"in the presence of God"

Translation Words - ULT

- [God](#)
- [Yahweh](#)
- [hand](#)
- [die, dead, deadly, death,](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [God](#)
- [Yahweh](#)
- [hand](#)
- [die, dead, deadly, death,](#)

ULT

10 Then the anger of Yahweh burned against Uzzah, and Yahweh killed him because Uzzah had reached out with his hand to the ark. He died there before God.

UST

10 Yahweh immediately became very angry with Uzzah, and as he was watching, he suddenly killed Uzzah. This was because Uzziah had put his hand on the sacred chest, although Yahweh had commanded that only the descendants of Levi who help the priests should touch the sacred chest.

1 Chronicles 13:11

That place is called

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: "People call that place" (See: [Active or Passive](#))

Perez Uzzah

This is the name of a place. Translator may add a footnote that says, "The name 'Perez Uzzah' means 'the punishment of Uzzah.'" (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

to this day

See how you translated this phrase in [1 Chronicles 4:43](#)

Translation Words - ULT

- [Yahweh](#)
- [declare, proclaim, announce](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [Yahweh](#)
- [declare, proclaim, announce](#)

ULT

11 David was angry because Yahweh had attacked Uzzah. That place is called Perez Uzzah to this day.

UST

11 David was angry because Yahweh had punished Uzzah. And now that place where Uzzah died is called "The Punishment of Uzzah."

1 Chronicles 13:12

How can I bring the ark of God home to me?

David uses this question to emphasize that he is afraid to take the ark to Jerusalem. This can be translated as a statement. Alternate translation: "I am too afraid to bring the ark of Yahweh with me to Jerusalem." (See: [Rhetorical Question](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [fear, afraid, dread](#)
- [God](#)
- [God](#)
- [David](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [fear, afraid, dread](#)
- [God](#)
- [God](#)
- [David](#)

ULT

¹² David was afraid of God that day. He said, "How can I bring the ark of God home to me?"

UST

¹² That day, David was afraid of God. He asked himself, "How can I bring God's sacred chest to my city?"

1 Chronicles 13:13

Obed Edom the Gittite

This is the name of a man. A “Gittite” is a person from the city of Gath. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [David](#)
- [David](#)
- [house](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [David](#)
- [David](#)
- [house](#)

ULT

13 So David did not move the ark to the city of David, but put it aside in the house of Obed Edom the Gittite.

UST

13 So the men with David did not take the sacred chest to Jerusalem. Instead, they took it to the house of Obed Edom, who was from the city of Gath.

1 Chronicles 13:14

in Obed Edom's household in his house

"with Obed Edom's family in his house"

three months

"3 months" (See: [Numbers](#))

Yahweh blessed his house

Here the word "house" is a metonym for his family. Alternate translation: "Yahweh blessed his family" (See: [Metonymy](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [bless, blessed, blessing](#)
- [God](#)
- [Yahweh](#)
- [temple](#)
- [house](#)
- [house](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [bless, blessed, blessing](#)
- [God](#)
- [Yahweh](#)
- [temple](#)
- [house](#)
- [house](#)

ULT

14 The ark of God remained in Obed Edom's household in his house for three months. So Yahweh blessed his house and all that he possessed.

UST

14 The sacred chest stayed with Obed Edom's family in his house for three months. During that time Yahweh blessed Obed Edom's family and everything that he owned.

1 Chronicles 14

1 Chronicles 14 General Notes

Special concepts in this chapter

David asked for help from God and because of this, God enabled him to defeat the Philistines when they tried to capture him.

1 Chronicles 14:1

Hiram

This is the name of a man. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

carpenters

people who make things with wood

masons

people make things with stone or brick

They built a house for him

"The carpenters and masons built a house for David"

Translation Words - ULT

- [David](#)
- [Tyre, Tyrians](#)
- [cedar, cedarwood](#)
- [messenger](#)
- [king, kingdom, kingship](#)
- [house](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [David](#)
- [Tyre, Tyrians](#)
- [cedar, cedarwood](#)
- [messenger](#)
- [king, kingdom, kingship](#)
- [house](#)

ULT

¹ Then Hiram king of Tyre sent messengers to David, and cedar trees, carpenters, and masons. They built a house for him.

UST

¹ One day Hiram, the king of the city of Tyre, sent some messengers to David to talk about making an agreement between their countries. Then Hiram sent cedar logs, bricklayers, and carpenters to build a palace for David.

1 Chronicles 14:2

established him as

“made him”

his kingdom was exalted on high

The idiom “exalted on high” means that Yahweh had given great honor to David’s kingdom. This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: “Yahweh had exalted David’s kingdom on high” or “Yahweh had given great honor to David’s kingdom” (See: [Idiom](#) and [Active or Passive](#))

for the sake of his people Israel

Here the word “his” refers to Yahweh.

Translation Words - ULT

- Yahweh
- Israel, Israelites
- Israel, Israelites
- David
- people, people group,
- king, kingdom, kingship
- kingdom
- know, knowledge, unknown, distinguish

Translation Words - UST

- Yahweh
- Israel, Israelites
- Israel, Israelites
- David
- people, people group,
- king, kingdom, kingship
- kingdom
- know, knowledge, unknown, distinguish

ULT

² David knew that Yahweh had established him as king over Israel, and that his kingdom was exalted on high for the sake of his people Israel.

UST

² When that happened, David knew that Yahweh had truly caused him to be the king of Israel, and that he had caused his kingdom to be greatly respected. Yahweh did this because he loved his Israelite people.

1 Chronicles 14:3

(There are no notes for this verse.)

Translation Words - ULT

- son
- David
- David
- Jerusalem

Translation Words - UST

- son
- David
- David
- Jerusalem

ULT

³ In Jerusalem, David took more wives, and he became the father of more sons and daughters.

UST

³ David married more women in Jerusalem, and those women gave birth to more sons and daughters for him.

1 Chronicles 14:4

the children who were born to him

“the children whom his wives bore for him”

Shammua, Shobab, Nathan

These are names of men. See how you translated these in [1 Chronicles 3:5](#). (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [name](#)
- [Jerusalem](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [name](#)
- [Jerusalem](#)

ULT

⁴ These were the names of the children who were born to him in Jerusalem: Shammua, Shobab, Nathan, Solomon,

UST

⁴ The names of the children that were born to him there in Jerusalem are Shammua, Shobab, Nathan, Solomon,

1 Chronicles 14:5

This continues the list of the children who were born to David in Jerusalem. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

Ibhar, Elishua, Elpelet

These are names of men. These names appear also in [1 Chronicles 3:6](#), although there “Elpelet” is spelled “Eliphelet.” (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

ULT

⁵ Ibhar, Elishua, Elpelet,

UST

⁵ Ibhar, Elishama, Elpelet,

1 Chronicles 14:6

This continues the list of the children who were born to David in Jerusalem. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

Nogah, Nepheg, Japhia

These are names of men. These names appear also in [1 Chronicles 3:7](#). (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

ULT

⁶ Nogah, Nepheg, Japhia,

UST

⁶ Nogah, Nepheg, Japhia,

1 Chronicles 14:7

This ends the list of the children who were born to David in Jerusalem. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

Elishama, Beeliada, and Eliphelet

These are names of men. These names appear also in [1 Chronicles 3:8](#), although there “Beeliada” is spelled “Eliada.” (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

ULT

⁷ Elishama, Beeliada, and Eliphelet.

UST

⁷ Elishama, Beeliada, and Eliphelet.

1 Chronicles 14:8

Now

The writer uses this word to show that he has finished giving the background information that he started in [1 Chronicles 14:3](#) and is starting a new part of the story. Your language may have a different way of doing this.

David had been anointed as king

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: “the elders of Israel had anointed David as king” (See: [Active or Passive](#))

went out against them

It is implied that David led his army out to fight against them. Alternate translation: “led his army out to fight against them” (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [command, commandment](#)
- [Israel, Israelites](#)
- [Philistines](#)
- [Philistines](#)
- [David](#)
- [David](#)
- [David](#)
- [king, kingdom, kingship](#)
- [seek, search, look for](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [command, commandment](#)
- [Israel, Israelites](#)
- [Philistines](#)
- [Philistines](#)
- [David](#)
- [David](#)
- [David](#)
- [king, kingdom, kingship](#)
- [seek, search, look for](#)

ULT

⁸ Now when the Philistines heard that David had been anointed as king over all Israel, they all went out looking for him. But David heard about it and went out against them.

UST

⁸ When the army of Philistia heard that David has been appointed to be king of all of Israel, they went to try to capture him. But David heard that they were coming, so he and his soldiers went out to fight against them.

1 Chronicles 14:9

Valley of Rephaim

This is the name of a place. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

ULT

⁹ Now the Philistines had come and made a raid in the Valley of Rephaim.

UST

⁹ The army of Philistia had attacked the people in the Valley of Rephaim southwest of Jerusalem and had robbed them.

1 Chronicles 14:10

give them to you

This idiom means that Yahweh will enable David to have victory over them. Alternate translation: “give you victory over them” (See: [Idiom](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- God
- Yahweh
- Philistines
- David
- hand
- hand

Translation Words - UST

- God
- Yahweh
- Philistines
- David
- hand
- hand

ULT

10 Then David asked for help from God. He said, “Should I attack the Philistines? Will you give victory over them?” Yahweh said to him, “Attack, for I will certainly give them to you.”

UST

10 David asked God, “Should my men and I go and attack the army of Philistia? If we go, will you enable us to defeat them?” Yahweh replied, “Yes, go, and I will enable you to defeat them.”

1 Chronicles 14:11

Baal Perazim

This is the name of a place. You may add a footnote that says, "The name 'Baal Perazim' means 'Lord of breaking through.'" (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

God has burst through my enemies...like a bursting flood of water

David speaks of God easily defeating David's enemies as if God had burst through them, like a flood bursts through anything in its path. Alternate translation: "God has easily defeated my enemies...like a flood easily bursts through everything" (See: [Simile](#))

by my hand

This refers to David's resources. Alternate translation: "using my army" (See: [Metonymy](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [call, call out](#)
- [God](#)
- [name](#)
- [David](#)
- [David](#)
- [hand](#)
- [adversary, enemy](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [call, call out](#)
- [God](#)
- [name](#)
- [David](#)
- [David](#)
- [hand](#)
- [adversary, enemy](#)

ULT

11 So they came up to Baal Perazim, and there he defeated them. He commented, "God has burst through my enemies by my hand like a bursting flood of water." So the name of that place became Baal Perazim.

UST

11 So David and his men went up to a town where the soldiers of Philistia were staying and defeated the soldiers of Philistia. Then David said, "God has completely defeated my enemies by using me and my army." So they named that place "Baal Perazim," which means "The Lord breaks through."

1 Chronicles 14:12

that they should be burned

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: “to burn their false gods” (See: [Active or Passive](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [God](#)
- [David](#)
- [fire](#), [firebrands](#), [firepans](#), [fireplace](#), [firepot](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [God](#)
- [David](#)
- [fire](#), [firebrands](#), [firepans](#), [fireplace](#), [firepot](#)

ULT

12 The Philistines abandoned their gods there, and David gave an order that they should be burned.

UST

12 As the soldiers of Philistia fled, they left their idols there. So David commanded his soldiers to burn those idols.

1 Chronicles 14:13

the valley

“the Valley of Rephaim”

Translation Words - ULT

- [Philistines](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [Philistines](#)

ULT

13 Then the Philistines raided the valley yet again.

UST

13 But soon the army of Philistia attacked the people in that valley again.

1 Chronicles 14:14

attack their front

“attack from the front”

circle around behind them and come on them through the balsam woods

“go through the forest of balsam trees and attack them from behind”

balsam woods

“Balsam” here is a type of tree, and the “woods” describe many balsam trees growing together. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [God](#)
- [God](#)
- [David](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [God](#)
- [God](#)
- [David](#)

ULT

14 So David asked for help from God again. God said to him, “You must not attack their front, but rather circle around behind them and come on them through the balsam woods.

UST

14 So again David prayed to God to ask him what he should do, and God replied, saying “Do not attack the army of Philistia from the front. Instead, go around them, and attack them from the rear in front of the balsam trees.

1 Chronicles 14:15

Connecting Statement:

God continues his answer to David's question.

When you hear the sound of marching in the wind blowing through the balsam treetops

This speaks of the sound of the leaves rustling as wind blows through them as if it were the sound of marching. Alternate translation: "When the wind blowing through the tops of the balsam trees sounds like men marching" (See: [Metaphor](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [God](#)
- [Philistines](#)
- [preach, preaching, preacher, proclaim, proclamation](#)
- [head](#)
- [know, knowledge, unknown, distinguish](#)
- [know, knowledge, unknown, distinguish](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [God](#)
- [Philistines](#)
- [preach, preaching, preacher, proclaim, proclamation](#)
- [head](#)
- [know, knowledge, unknown, distinguish](#)
- [know, knowledge, unknown, distinguish](#)

ULT

15 When you hear the sound of marching in the wind blowing through the balsam treetops, then attack with force. Do this because God will have gone out before you to attack the army of the Philistines."

UST

15 When you hear something in the tops of the balsam trees that sounds like soldiers marching, attack them. I, God, will have gone ahead of you to enable you to defeat the army of Philistia."

1 Chronicles 14:16

Gezer

This is the name of a town. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [command](#), [commandment](#)
- [God](#)
- [Philistines](#)
- [David](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [command](#), [commandment](#)
- [God](#)
- [Philistines](#)
- [David](#)

ULT

16 So David did as God had commanded him. He defeated the army of the Philistines from Gibeon all the way to Gezer.

UST

16 So David did what God commanded him to do, and he and his army defeated the army of Philistia, all the way from the city of Gibeon west to the city of Gezer.

1 Chronicles 14:17

David's fame went out into all lands

People in every land hearing of David's reputation is spoken of as if David's fame traveled to those lands. Alternate translation: "People far away heard about David's fame" (See: [Personification](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [fear](#), [afraid](#), [dread](#)
- [command](#), [commandment](#)
- [Yahweh](#)
- [name](#)
- [David](#)
- [nation](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [fear](#), [afraid](#), [dread](#)
- [command](#), [commandment](#)
- [Yahweh](#)
- [name](#)
- [David](#)
- [nation](#)

ULT

17 Then David's fame went out into all lands, and Yahweh caused all nations to fear him.

UST

17 So David became famous in all the nearby countries, and Yahweh caused the leaders of all the nations to be afraid of him.

1 Chronicles 15

1 Chronicles 15 General Notes

Structure and formatting

Chapters 15 and 16 explain how David organized the priests and Levites. (See: [priest](#), [priesthood](#))

1 Chronicles 15:1

David built houses for himself...He prepared

It might be best to translate this so that the reader understands that David had other people do this for him. Alternate translation: “David had workers build houses for him...He had them prepare” (See: [Metonymy](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [God](#)
- [David](#)
- [house](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [God](#)
- [David](#)
- [house](#)

ULT

¹ David built houses for himself in the city of David. He prepared a place for the ark of God and set up a tent for it.

UST

¹ David commanded his workers to build houses for himself in Jerusalem. He also told them to set up a tent in which to put the sacred chest.

1 Chronicles 15:2

they had been chosen by Yahweh

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: "Yahweh had chosen them" (See: [Active or Passive](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [God](#)
- [Yahweh](#)
- [Yahweh](#)
- [David](#)
- [Levi, Levite, Levitical](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [God](#)
- [Yahweh](#)
- [Yahweh](#)
- [David](#)
- [Levi, Levite, Levitical](#)

ULT

² Then David said, "Only the Levites may carry the ark of God, for they had been chosen by Yahweh to carry the ark of Yahweh, and to serve him forever."

UST

² He said, "Only the descendants of Levi are permitted to carry God's sacred chest, because they are the ones whom Yahweh chose to carry it and to serve him forever."

1 Chronicles 15:3

David assembled all Israel at Jerusalem

Here the word “all” is a generalization. The phrase “all Israel” means that David assembled people from all over Israel, not that he assembled every person in Israel. Alternate translation: “David assembled at Jerusalem people from all over Israel” (See: [Hyperbole](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [Yahweh](#)
- [Israel, Israelites](#)
- [David](#)
- [Jerusalem](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [Yahweh](#)
- [Israel, Israelites](#)
- [David](#)
- [Jerusalem](#)

ULT

³ Then David assembled all Israel at Jerusalem, to bring up the ark of Yahweh to the place he had prepared for it.

UST

³ David summoned all the people of Israel to come to Jerusalem. He wanted the sacred chest of Yahweh to be put in the place that he had made for it.

1 Chronicles 15:4

General Information:

This begins the list of the number of men whom David assembled from each of the Levite clans. (See: [How to Translate Names](#) and [Numbers](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [son](#)
- [David](#)
- [Aaron](#)
- [Levi](#), [Levite](#), [Levitical](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [son](#)
- [David](#)
- [Aaron](#)
- [Levi](#), [Levite](#), [Levitical](#)

ULT

⁴ David gathered together Aaron's descendants and the Levites.

UST

⁴ He summoned the descendants of Aaron, who was the first high priest, and the descendants of Levi.

1 Chronicles 15:5

120 men

“one hundred twenty men” (See: [Numbers](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- brother
- son
- chief

Translation Words - UST

- brother
- son
- chief

ULT

⁵ From the descendants of Kohath, there was Uriel the leader and his relatives, 120 men.

UST

⁵ 120 descendants of Kohath, who was Levi's second son, came, with Uriel their leader.

1 Chronicles 15:6

This continues the list of the number of men whom David assembled from each of the Levite clans. (See: [How to Translate Names](#) and [Numbers](#))

220 men

“two hundred twenty men” (See: [Numbers](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [brother](#)
- [son](#)
- [chief](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [brother](#)
- [son](#)
- [chief](#)

ULT

⁶ From the descendants of Merari, there was Asaiah the leader and his relatives, 220 men.

UST

⁶ There were 220 descendants of Merari, Levi's third son, who came, with Asaiah their leader.

1 Chronicles 15:7

This continues the list of the number of men whom David assembled from each of the Levite clans. (See: [How to Translate Names](#) and [Numbers](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- brother
- son
- Joel
- chief

Translation Words - UST

- brother
- son
- Joel
- chief

ULT

⁷ From the descendants of Gershom, there was Joel the leader and his relatives, 130 men.

UST

⁷ There were 130 descendants of Gershon, Levi's first son, who came, with Joel their leader.

1 Chronicles 15:8

This continues the list of the number of men whom David assembled from each of the Levite clans. (See: [How to Translate Names](#) and [Numbers](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- brother
- son
- chief

Translation Words - UST

- brother
- son
- chief

ULT

⁸ From the descendants of Elizaphan, there was Shemaiah the leader and his relatives, 200 men.

UST

⁸ Also, there were 200 people from Elizaphan's clan who came, with Shemaiah their leader.

1 Chronicles 15:9

This continues the list of the number of men whom David assembled from each of the Levite clans. (See: [How to Translate Names](#) and [Numbers](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- brother
- son
- chief

Translation Words - UST

- brother
- son
- chief

ULT

⁹ From the descendants of Hebron, there was Eliel the leader and his relatives, eighty men.

UST

⁹ There were 80 people from Hebron's clan who came, with Eliel their leader.

1 Chronicles 15:10

This ends the list of the number of men whom David assembled from each of the Levite clans. (See: [How to Translate Names](#) and [Numbers](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- brother
- son
- chief

Translation Words - UST

- brother
- son
- chief

ULT

¹⁰ From the descendants of Uzziel, there was Amminadab the leader and his relatives, 112 men.

UST

¹⁰ And there were 112 people from Uzziel's clan who came, with Amminadab their leader.

1 Chronicles 15:11

Uriel, Asaiah, Joel, Shemaiah, Eliel, and Amminadab

These are names of men. See how you translated them in [1 Chronicles verses 5-6](#) and [1 Chronicles verses 7-10](#). (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [priest, priesthood](#)
- [David](#)
- [declare, proclaim, announce](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [priest, priesthood](#)
- [David](#)
- [declare, proclaim, announce](#)

ULT

11 David called for Zadok and Abiathar the priests, and the Levites Uriel, Asaiah, Joel, Shemaiah, Eliel, and Amminadab.

UST

11 David summoned the priests Zadok and Abiathar and these descendants of Levi: Uriel, Asaiah, Joel, Shemaiah, Eliel, and Amminadab.

1 Chronicles 15:12

(There are no notes for this verse.)

Translation Words - ULT

- consecrate, consecrated, consecration
- brother
- God
- Yahweh
- Israel, Israelites
- Levi, Levite, Levitical
- ancestor, father, fathered, forefather, grandfather
- head

Translation Words - UST

- consecrate, consecrated, consecration
- brother
- God
- Yahweh
- Israel, Israelites
- Levi, Levite, Levitical
- ancestor, father, fathered, forefather, grandfather
- head

ULT

12 He said to them, "You are the leaders of the Levite families. Consecrate yourselves, both you and your brothers, so that you may bring up the ark of Yahweh, the God of Israel, to the place that I have prepared for it.

UST

12 David said to them, "You are the leaders of the clans descended from Levi. You and the other descendants of Levi must purify yourselves, in order to be able to do this special work for Yahweh. You must bring the sacred chest of Yahweh, the God of us Israelites, up to the place that I have made for it here in Jerusalem.

1 Chronicles 15:13

You did not carry it

"You did not carry the ark"

broke out against us

The idiom to "break out against" means to act violently toward someone. Alternate translation: "acted violently toward us" or "attacked us" (See: [Idiom](#))

we did not seek him

Here seeking Yahweh means to seek his counsel. Alternate translation: "we did not ask him for instructions" (See: [Metonymy](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [God](#)
- [Yahweh](#)
- [seek, search, look for](#)
- [ordinance, regulations, requirements, strict law, customs](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [God](#)
- [Yahweh](#)
- [seek, search, look for](#)
- [ordinance, regulations, requirements, strict law, customs](#)

ULT

13 You did not carry it the first time. That is why Yahweh our God broke out against us, for we did not seek him or obey his decree."

UST

13 The first time that we tried to bring it, we did not ask Yahweh how we should carry it. You descendants of Levi were not the ones who carried it, so Yahweh our God punished us."

1 Chronicles 15:14

(There are no notes for this verse.)

Translation Words - ULT

- God
- set apart
- Yahweh
- Israel, Israelites
- priest, priesthood
- Levi, Levite, Levitical

Translation Words - UST

- God
- set apart
- Yahweh
- Israel, Israelites
- priest, priesthood
- Levi, Levite, Levitical

ULT

14 So the priests and the Levites consecrated themselves so they could bring up the ark of Yahweh, the God of Israel.

UST

14 Then the priests and the descendants of Levi performed the rituals to purify themselves, in order that it would be proper for them to do the work of carrying the sacred chest of Yahweh, the God of the Israelite people.

1 Chronicles 15:15

the rules given by the word of Yahweh

The word “word” can be translated with a verb. This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: “the rules that the word of Yahweh had given” or “the rules that Yahweh had spoken” (See: [Active or Passive](#) and [Abstract Nouns](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [command, commandment](#)
- [son](#)
- [God](#)
- [Yahweh](#)
- [Moses](#)
- [Levi, Levite, Levitical](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [command, commandment](#)
- [son](#)
- [God](#)
- [Yahweh](#)
- [Moses](#)
- [Levi, Levite, Levitical](#)

ULT

15 So the Levites carried the ark of God on their shoulders with the poles, as Moses had commanded—following the rules given by the word of Yahweh.

UST

15 The descendants of Levi fastened poles to the sacred chest so that they could carry it by fastening poles to it and putting it on their shoulders, as Moses had commanded, and as Yahweh had said that they should.

1 Chronicles 15:16

cymbals

two thin, round metal plates that are hit together to make a loud sound. See how you translated this in [1 Chronicles 13:8](#). (See: [Translate Unknowns](#))

lifting up their voices

This idiom means to sing loudly. Alternate translation: “singing loudly” (See: [Idiom](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [brother](#)
- [David](#)
- [Levi, Levite, Levitical](#)
- [joy, joyful, enjoy, rejoice, gladness, rejoicing](#)
- [chief](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [brother](#)
- [David](#)
- [Levi, Levite, Levitical](#)
- [joy, joyful, enjoy, rejoice, gladness, rejoicing](#)
- [chief](#)

ULT

16 David spoke to the leaders of the Levites to assign their brothers to be musicians with musical instruments, stringed instruments, harps and cymbals, playing loudly and joyfully lifting up their voices.

UST

16 David told the leaders of the descendants of Levi to appoint some of their relatives to sing and play lyres, harps, and cymbals, and to sing joyful songs while they were carrying the sacred chest.

1 Chronicles 15:17

General Information:

This begins the list of men whom the Levites appointed to sing and play music as the people brought the ark to Jerusalem. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- brother
- brother
- son
- son (2)
- son
- son (3)
- Joel
- Levi, Levite, Levitical
- Asaph

Translation Words - UST

- brother
- brother
- son
- son (2)
- son
- son (3)
- Joel
- Levi, Levite, Levitical
- Asaph

ULT

17 So the Levites appointed Heman son of Joel and one of his brothers, Asaph son of Berechiah. They also appointed kinsmen from Merari's descendants and Ethan son of Kushaiah.

UST

17 So they appointed Heman and his relatives Asaph and Ethan. Heman son of Joel; Asaph son of Berechiah. Ethan son of Kushaiah, was a descendant of Merari.

1 Chronicles 15:18

This continues the list of men whom the Levites appointed to sing and play music as the people brought the ark to Jerusalem. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

With them were their kinsmen of second rank

This likely means that these men served in lower positions and were assistants to Heman, Asaph, and Ethan. Alternate translation: "With them were their kinsmen who were in a lower position of power" or "The following relatives would help them" (See: [Ordinal Numbers](#))

Mikneiah, Obed Edom, and Jeiel, the gatekeepers

The word "gatekeepers" refers to people who guard gates or entryways. Here it refers to guarding access to the ark of the covenant and applies to Obed Edom and Jeiel. Alternate translation: "Mikneiah, and the gatekeepers, Obed Edom and Jeiel" (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- brother
- gate, gate bars, gatekeeper, gateposts, gateway

Translation Words - UST

- brother
- gate, gate bars, gatekeeper, gateposts, gateway

ULT

18 With them were their kinsmen of second rank: Zechariah, ^[1]Jaaziel, Shemiramoth, Jehiel, Unni, Eliab, Benaiah, Maaseiah, Mattithiah, Eliphelehu, Mikneiah, Obed Edom, and Jeiel, the gatekeepers.

UST

18 There was also another group of descendants of Levi who were appointed: Zechariah, Jaaziel, Shemiramoth, Jehiel, Unni, Eliab, Benaiah, Maaseiah, Mattithiah, Eliphelehu, Mikneiah, and two of the temple gatekeepers, Obed Edom and Jeiel.

1 Chronicles 15:19

This continues the list of men whom the Levites appointed to sing and play music as the people brought the ark to Jerusalem. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

The musicians Heman, Asaph, and Ethan were appointed

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: “The Levites appointed the musicians Heman, Asaph, and Ethan” (See: [Active or Passive](#))

cymbals

two thin, round metal plates that are hit together to make a loud sound. See how you translated this in [1 Chronicles 13:8](#). (See: [Translate Unknowns](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [Asaph](#)
- [bronze](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [Asaph](#)
- [bronze](#)

ULT

¹⁹ The musicians Heman, Asaph, and Ethan were appointed to play loud bronze cymbals.

UST

¹⁹ Heman, Asaph and Ethan sang, but also played bronze cymbals.

1 Chronicles 15:20

This continues the list of men whom the Levites appointed to sing and play music as the people brought the ark to Jerusalem. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

Alamoth

The meaning of this word is not clear but may refer to a style of music. (See: [Translate Unknowns](#))

ULT

²⁰ Zechariah, Aziel, Shemiramoth, Jehiel, Unni, Eliab, Maaseiah, and Benaiah played the stringed instruments, set to Alamoth.

UST

²⁰ Zechariah, Aziel, Shemiramoth, Jehiel, Unni, Eliab, Maaseiah, and Benaiah played lyres.

1 Chronicles 15:21

This continues the list of men whom the Levites appointed to sing and play music as the people brought the ark to Jerusalem. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

Sheminith

The meaning of this word is not clear but may refer to a style of music. (See: [Translate Unknowns](#))

led the way

“led the other musicians” or “led the procession”

Translation Words - ULT

- [oversee](#), [overseer](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [oversee](#), [overseer](#)

ULT

²¹ Mattithiah, Eliphelehu, Mikneiah, Obed Edom, Jeiel, and Azariah led the way with harps set to the Sheminith.

UST

²¹ Mattithiah, Eliphelehu, Mikneiah, Obed Edom, Jeiel and Azariah played harps.

1 Chronicles 15:22

This continues the list of men whom the Levites appointed to sing and play music as the people brought the ark to Jerusalem. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [Levi](#), [Levite](#), [Levitical](#)
- [understand](#), [understanding](#), [thinking](#)
- [prince](#), [princess](#), [governors](#), [provincial governors](#), [officials](#), [noblemen](#), [nobility](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [Levi](#), [Levite](#), [Levitical](#)
- [understand](#), [understanding](#), [thinking](#)
- [prince](#), [princess](#), [governors](#), [provincial governors](#), [officials](#), [noblemen](#), [nobility](#)

ULT

²² Kenaniah, leader of the Levites, was the director of the singing because he was a teacher of music.

UST

²² Kenaniah, the leader of the descendants of Levi, directed the singing because he was very capable of doing that.

1 Chronicles 15:23

This continues the list of men whom the Levites appointed to sing and play music as the people brought the ark to Jerusalem. (See:

[How to Translate Names](#))

ULT

²³ Berechiah and Elkanah were guards for the ark.

UST

²³ Berechiah and Elkanah were two of the men who guarded the sacred chest.

1 Chronicles 15:24

This ends the list of men whom the Levites appointed to sing and play music as the people brought the ark to Jerusalem. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- God
- priest, priesthood
- trumpet, trumpeters

Translation Words - UST

- God
- priest, priesthood
- trumpet, trumpeters

ULT

²⁴ Shebaniah, Joshaphat, Nethanel, Amasai, Zechariah, Benaiah, and Eliezer, the priests, were to blow the trumpets before the ark of God. Obed Edom and Jehiah were guards for the ark.

UST

²⁴ The priests Shebaniah, Joshaphat, Nethanel, Amasai, Zechariah, Benaiah, and Eliezer were appointed to blow trumpets in front of the sacred chest. Obed Edom and Jehiah also guarded the sacred chest.

1 Chronicles 15:25

the commanders over thousands

Possible meanings are 1) the word “thousands” represents the exact amount of soldiers that each of these commanders and led. Alternate translation: “the commanders of 1,000 soldiers” or 2) the word translated as “thousands” does not represent an exact numbers but is the name of a large military division. Alternate translation: “the commanders of large military divisions” (See: [Numbers](#))

Obed Edom

This is the name of a man. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [covenant](#)
- [Yahweh](#)
- [Israel, Israelites](#)
- [David](#)
- [joy, joyful, enjoy, rejoice, gladness, rejoicing](#)
- [prince, princess, governors, provincial governors, officials, noblemen, nobility](#)
- [house](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [covenant](#)
- [Yahweh](#)
- [Israel, Israelites](#)
- [David](#)
- [joy, joyful, enjoy, rejoice, gladness, rejoicing](#)
- [prince, princess, governors, provincial governors, officials, noblemen, nobility](#)
- [house](#)

ULT

25 So David, the elders of Israel, and the commanders over thousands went to bring up the ark of the covenant of Yahweh out of Obed Edom's house with rejoicing.

UST

25 David and the Israelite leaders and the officers who commanded one thousand soldiers went to get the sacred chest. They went to bring it from Obed Edom's house. They went very joyfully.

1 Chronicles 15:26

(There are no notes for this verse.)

Translation Words - ULT

- God
- covenant
- Yahweh
- Levi, Levite, Levitical
- cow, bull, calf, cattle, heifer, ox
- ewe, ram, sheep, sheepfold, sheepshearers, sheepskins

Translation Words - UST

- God
- covenant
- Yahweh
- Levi, Levite, Levitical
- cow, bull, calf, cattle, heifer, ox
- ewe, ram, sheep, sheepfold, sheepshearers, sheepskins

ULT

²⁶ While God helped the Levites who carried the ark of the covenant of Yahweh, they sacrificed seven bulls and seven rams.

UST

²⁶ God helped the descendants of Levi who carried the sacred chest of Yahweh; therefore David and the leaders sacrificed seven bulls and seven rams to thank him.

1 Chronicles 15:27

David was clothed with a robe of fine linen, as were the Levites who carried the ark, the singers, and Kenaniah, the leader of the song with the singers

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: "David, the Levites who carried the ark, the singers, and Kenaniah, the leader of the song with the singers all wore fine linen robes" (See: [Active or Passive](#))

linen

a cloth made from fibers of the flax plant

Kenaniah

This is the name of a man. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [David](#)
- [Levi, Levite, Levitical](#)
- [chief](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [David](#)
- [Levi, Levite, Levitical](#)
- [chief](#)

ULT

²⁷ David was clothed with a robe of fine linen, as were the Levites who carried the ark, the singers, and Kenaniah, the leader of the song with the singers. David was wearing a linen ephod.

UST

²⁷ All the descendants of Levi who carried the sacred chest, all the singers, and Kenaniah, the man who directed those who sang, all wore robes of fine white linen and sacred vests made of fine linen. David also wore a waistcloth made of white linen.

1 Chronicles 15:28

So all Israel brought up the ark

Here the word “all” is a generalization. Alternate translation: “So a great crowd of Israelites brought up the ark” (See: [Hyperbole](#))

cymbals

two thin, round metal plates that are hit together to make a loud sound. See how you translated this in [1 Chronicles 13:8](#). (See: [Translate Unknowns](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [covenant](#)
- [Yahweh](#)
- [Israel, Israelites](#)
- [trumpet, trumpeters](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [covenant](#)
- [Yahweh](#)
- [Israel, Israelites](#)
- [trumpet, trumpeters](#)

ULT

28 So all Israel brought up the ark of the covenant of Yahweh with joyful shouting, and with the sound of horns and trumpets, with cymbals, and with stringed instruments and harps.

UST

28 So all the of Israelite people joined in bringing the sacred chest up to Jerusalem. They shouted, blew horns and trumpets, and played cymbals, lyres, and harps.

1 Chronicles 15:29

as the ark of the covenant of Yahweh came to the city of David

“as the people brought the ark of the covenant of Yahweh to the city of David”

Michal

This is the name of David’s wife. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

she despised him in her heart

Here “heart” represents thoughts or emotions. Alternate translation: “she despised him” or “she hated him” (See: [Metonymy](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [heart](#)
- [covenant](#)
- [Yahweh](#)
- [David](#)
- [David](#)
- [king, kingdom, kingship](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [heart](#)
- [covenant](#)
- [Yahweh](#)
- [David](#)
- [David](#)
- [king, kingdom, kingship](#)

ULT

29 But as the ark of the covenant of Yahweh came to the city of David, Michal daughter of Saul, looked out the window. She saw King David dancing and celebrating. Then she despised him in her heart.

15:18 ^[1] Some ancient manuscripts add the name or prefix “ben,” assuming perhaps the name of Zechariah’s father was left out.

UST

29 While they were bringing the sacred chest into Jerusalem, Saul’s daughter Michal watched them, looking out of a window. When she saw King David dancing and celebrating, she despised him.

1 Chronicles 16

1 Chronicles 16 General Notes

Structure and formatting

Chapters 15 and 16 tell how David organized the priests and Levites. (See: [priest](#), [priesthood](#))

Some translations set each line of poetry farther to the right than the rest of the text to make it easier to read. The ULT does this with the poetic song in 16:8-36.

Special concepts in this chapter

David's psalm

As David organized the priests in their work in the tent, he wrote a psalm of praise to Yahweh.

1 Chronicles 16:1

General Information:

The word “they” in these verses refers to the priests and Levites.

before God

“to God”

Translation Words - ULT

- God
- God
- David
- burnt offering, offering by fire

Translation Words - UST

- God
- God
- David
- burnt offering, offering by fire

ULT

¹ They brought in the ark of God and put it in the middle of the tent that David had set up for it. Then they offered burnt offerings and fellowship offerings before God.

UST

¹ They brought the sacred chest to Jerusalem and put it inside the sacred tent that David had told his workers to set up. Then they brought offerings to be completely burned on the altar and offerings to enable them to promise friendship with God.

1 Chronicles 16:2

When David had finished sacrificing the burnt offering and the fellowship offerings

This is a metonym for David directing the priests, who performed the actual sacrifices. (See: [Metonymy](#))

he blessed the people in the name of Yahweh

To bless “in the name of Yahweh” means to bless with Yahweh’s power and authority or as his representative. (See: [Metonymy](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [bless, blessed, blessing](#)
- [Yahweh](#)
- [name](#)
- [David](#)
- [people, people group,](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [bless, blessed, blessing](#)
- [Yahweh](#)
- [name](#)
- [David](#)
- [people, people group,](#)

ULT

² When David had finished sacrificing the burnt offering and the fellowship offerings, he blessed the people in the name of Yahweh.

UST

² When David had finished presenting all those offerings, he asked Yahweh to bless the people.

1 Chronicles 16:3

He distributed to every Israelite

This was done under David's authority and direction. (See: [Metonymy](#))

cake of raisins

a baked sweet bread made with dried grapes

Translation Words - ULT

- [Israel, Israelites](#)
- [bread](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [Israel, Israelites](#)
- [bread](#)

ULT

³ He distributed to every Israelite, both to men and women, a loaf of bread, and a piece of meat, and a cake of raisins.

UST

³ He gave a loaf of bread, some dates, and some raisins to every Israelite man and woman who was there.

1 Chronicles 16:4

(There are no notes for this verse.)

Translation Words - ULT

- God
- Yahweh
- Yahweh
- Israel, Israelites
- Levi, Levite, Levitical
- servant, serve, slave, worker, young man, young women

Translation Words - UST

- God
- Yahweh
- Yahweh
- Israel, Israelites
- Levi, Levite, Levitical
- servant, serve, slave, worker, young man, young women

ULT

⁴ David appointed certain Levites to serve before the ark of Yahweh, and to celebrate, thank and praise Yahweh, the God of Israel.

UST

⁴ Then David appointed some of the descendants of Levi to stand in front of the sacred tent in which the sacred chest had been placed, to lead the people who worshiped and thanked and praised Yahweh, the God of the Israelite people.

1 Chronicles 16:5

**Zechariah...Jaaziel...Shemiramoth...Jehiel...Mattithiah...
Eliab...Benaiah...Obed Edom...Jeiel**

These are names of men. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

second to him

This means next to him in authority and position. (See: [Ordinal Numbers](#))

cymbals

These are two thin, round metal plates that are hit together to make a loud sound. See how you translated this in [1 Chronicles 13:8](#). (See: [Translate Unknowns](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [Asaph](#)
- [chief](#)
- [harp](#), [harpist](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [Asaph](#)
- [chief](#)
- [harp](#), [harpist](#)

ULT

⁵ These Levites were Asaph the leader, and second to him Zechariah, Jaaziel, Shemiramoth, Jehiel, Mattithiah, Eliab, Benaiah, Obed Edom, and Jeiel. These were to play with stringed instruments and with harps. Asaph was to sound the cymbals, sounding loudly.

UST

⁵ Asaph, who played the cymbals, was their leader. Zechariah was his assistant. The other descendants of Levi who helped Asaph were Jaaziel, Shemiramoth, Jehiel, Mattithiah, Eliab, Benaiah, Obed-Edom, and Jeiel. They played lyres and harps.

1 Chronicles 16:6

Benaiah

This is the name of a man. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- God
- covenant
- priest, priesthood
- trumpet, trumpeters

Translation Words - UST

- God
- covenant
- priest, priesthood
- trumpet, trumpeters

ULT

⁶ Benaiah and Jahaziel the priests were to blow the trumpets regularly, before the ark of the covenant of God.

UST

⁶ Benaiah and Jahaziel were priests who blew trumpets frequently in front of the sacred tent in which was the sacred chest.

1 Chronicles 16:7

on that day

Here “that day” refers to the day the ark of the covenant was moved from the house of Obed Edom to Jerusalem.

song of thanksgiving

“song of giving thanks”

Translation Words - ULT

- brother
- Yahweh
- David
- Asaph
- hand
- head

Translation Words - UST

- brother
- Yahweh
- David
- Asaph
- hand
- head

ULT

⁷ Then on that day David first appointed Asaph and his brothers to sing this song of thanksgiving to Yahweh.

UST

⁷ On that day, David gave to Asaph and his helpers this psalm to praise Yahweh:

1 Chronicles 16:8

call on his name

Here “his name” represents Yahweh. Alternate translation: “call on Yahweh” (See: [Metonymy](#))

the nations

This refers to the people in the nations. Alternate translation: “the people of the nations” (See: [Metonymy](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- call, call out
- Yahweh
- name
- people, people group,
- know, knowledge, unknown, distinguish

Translation Words - UST

- call, call out
- Yahweh
- name
- people, people group,
- know, knowledge, unknown, distinguish

ULT

⁸ Give thanks to Yahweh, call on his name; make known his deeds among the nations.

UST

⁸ Thank Yahweh and pray to him. Tell the people of all nations what he has done.

1 Chronicles 16:9

(There are no notes for this verse.)

Translation Words - ULT

- miracle, wonder, sign

Translation Words - UST

- miracle, wonder, sign

ULT

⁹ Sing to him, sing praises to him; speak of all his marvelous deeds.

UST

⁹ Sing to him; sing songs to praise him. Tell about all his miraculous deeds.

1 Chronicles 16:10

Boast in his holy name

Here “his holy name” represents Yahweh. Alternate translation: “Boast in who Yahweh is” or “Boast in Yahweh” (See: [Metonymy](#))

let the heart of those who seek Yahweh rejoice

- Here “the heart” represents the person who seeks Yahweh. Alternate translation: “let the people who seek Yahweh rejoice” (See: [Synecdoche](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [holy](#), [holiness](#), [unholy](#), [sacred](#)
- [heart](#)
- [Yahweh](#)
- [name](#)
- [joy](#), [joyful](#), [enjoy](#), [rejoice](#), [gladness](#), [rejoicing](#)
- [seek](#), [search](#), [look for](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [holy](#), [holiness](#), [unholy](#), [sacred](#)
- [heart](#)
- [Yahweh](#)
- [name](#)
- [joy](#), [joyful](#), [enjoy](#), [rejoice](#), [gladness](#), [rejoicing](#)
- [seek](#), [search](#), [look for](#)

ULT

10 Boast in his holy name; let the heart of those who seek Yahweh rejoice.

UST

10 Be glad that you belong to him. Those who want to know Yahweh better should rejoice.

1 Chronicles 16:11

Seek Yahweh and his strength

To “seek Yahweh’s strength” means to ask him to strengthen you.
Alternate translation: “Seek Yahweh and ask him to give you his strength” (See: [Idiom](#))

seek his presence continually

“seek to be near him always”

Translation Words - ULT

- power, powerful, powerfully
- Yahweh
- face, facial
- seek, search, look for
- seek, search, look for

Translation Words - UST

- power, powerful, powerfully
- Yahweh
- face, facial
- seek, search, look for
- seek, search, look for

ULT

11 Seek Yahweh and his strength; seek his presence continually.

UST

11 Ask Yahweh to help you and give you his strength, and always seek to be with him!

1 Chronicles 16:12

Recall the marvelous things

“Remember the marvelous things”

his miracles and

The understood verb may be supplied. Alternate translation: “remember his miracles and” (See: [Ellipsis](#))

decrees from his mouth

Here “mouth” refers to the things that Yahweh spoke. Alternate translation: “decrees that he has spoken” (See: [Metonymy](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [miracle](#), [wonder](#), [sign](#)
- [miracle](#), [wonder](#), [sign](#)
- [statute](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [miracle](#), [wonder](#), [sign](#)
- [miracle](#), [wonder](#), [sign](#)
- [statute](#)

ULT

¹² Recall the marvelous things he has done, his miracles and the decrees from his mouth,

UST

¹² Do not forget the wonderful things that he has done, the miracles and the just laws that he has decreed for us.

1 Chronicles 16:13

you descendants of Israel his servant, you people of Jacob, his chosen ones

These phrases share similar meanings and are used for emphasis.
(See: [Parallelism](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- son
- Israel, Israelites
- Israel, Israelite, Jacob
- seed, semen
- servant, serve, slave, worker, young man, young women

Translation Words - UST

- son
- Israel, Israelites
- Israel, Israelite, Jacob
- seed, semen
- servant, serve, slave, worker, young man, young women

ULT

¹³ you descendants of Israel his servant,
you people of Jacob, his chosen ones.

UST

¹³ We people are the descendants of his
servant Jacob; we are the people of
Israel whom he has chosen.

1 Chronicles 16:14

His decrees are on all the earth

Here “all the earth” refers to all the people of the earth. Alternate translation: “His laws are for all the people of the earth” (See: [Metonymy](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [God](#)
- [Yahweh](#)
- [judge, judgment](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [God](#)
- [Yahweh](#)
- [judge, judgment](#)

ULT

14 He is Yahweh, our God. His decrees are on all the earth.

UST

14 Yahweh is our God. His just laws are known by people throughout the world.

1 Chronicles 16:15

Keep his covenant...for a thousand generations

These two phrases share similar meanings and are used together for emphasis. Here “word” refers to the covenant. Alternate translation: “Keep his covenant in mind forever, the promise that he made for a thousand generations” (See: [Parallelism](#) and [Metonymy](#))

Keep his covenant in mind

This means to remember and think about his covenant. Alternate translation: “Remember his covenant” (See: [Idiom](#))

a thousand generations

“1,000 generations” (See: [Numbers](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [command, commandment](#)
- [covenant](#)
- [generation](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [command, commandment](#)
- [covenant](#)
- [generation](#)

ULT

15 Keep his covenant in mind forever, the word that he commanded for a thousand generations.

UST

15 He never forgets the covenants that he has made; he made a promise that will last for a thousand generations.

1 Chronicles 16:16

He calls to mind

The phrase “calls to mind” means to remember something. Alternate translation: “He remembers” (See: [Idiom](#))

the covenant that he made with Abraham, and his oath to Isaac

Both “the covenant” and “the oath” refer to the same promise that Yahweh made to his people. (See: [Parallelism](#))

his oath to Isaac

This refers to the oath that he had previously made to Isaac. Alternate translation: “his oath that he made to Isaac” (See: [Ellipsis](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [Abraham, Abram](#)
- [cut off](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [Abraham, Abram](#)
- [cut off](#)

ULT

16 He calls to mind the covenant that he made with Abraham, and his oath to Isaac.

UST

16 That is the covenant that he made with Abraham, and he repeated that covenant to Isaac.

1 Chronicles 16:17

(There are no notes for this verse.)

Translation Words - ULT

- [covenant](#)
- [Israel, Israelites](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [covenant](#)
- [Israel, Israelites](#)

ULT

¹⁷ This is what he confirmed to Jacob as a statute, and to Israel as an everlasting covenant.

UST

¹⁷ It was an covenant for the Israelite people, and he wanted that covenant to endure forever.

1 Chronicles 16:18

General Information:

The words “you” and “your” in this verse refers to Israel.

as your share

“as your part”

Translation Words - ULT

- inherit, inheritance, heir
- earth, earthen, earthly

Translation Words - UST

- inherit, inheritance, heir
- earth, earthen, earthly

ULT

18 He said, “I will give you the land of Canaan as your share of your inheritance.”

UST

18 What he said was, “I will give the region of Canaan to you, to belong to you and your descendants forever.”

1 Chronicles 16:19

General Information:

The word “they” in this verse refers to Israel.

strangers in the land

It is implied that “the land” refers to Canaan. Alternate translation: “foreigners in the land of Canaan” (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

ULT

¹⁹ When they were only few in number, so very few, and they were strangers in the land,

UST

¹⁹ When Yahweh’s people were only a few in number, a tiny group of people who were living in that land like strangers,

1 Chronicles 16:20

General Information:

The word “they” in this verse refers to Israel.

from nation to nation, from one kingdom to another

These two phrases have similar meanings and are used together for emphasis. (See: [Parallelism](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [people](#), [people group](#),
- [nation](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [people](#), [people group](#),
- [nation](#)

ULT

²⁰ they wandered from nation to nation,
from one kingdom to another.

UST

²⁰ they continued to wander from one
place to another, from one kingdom to
another.

1 Chronicles 16:21

General Information:

The words “them” and “their” in this verse refers to Israel.

for their sakes

“for their own well-being”

Translation Words - ULT

- king, kingdom, kingship

Translation Words - UST

- king, kingdom, kingship

ULT

²¹ He did not allow anyone to oppress them; he punished kings for their sakes.

UST

²¹ He did not allow others to oppress them, and he warned kings by saying to them,

1 Chronicles 16:22

Do not touch my anointed ones

Here “touch” means to harm. It is an exaggeration Yahweh used to strengthen his warning to not harm his people. Alternate translation: “Do not harm the people I have anointed” (See: [Hyperbole](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [afflict](#), [affliction](#), [distress](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [afflict](#), [affliction](#), [distress](#)

ULT

²² he said, “Do not touch my anointed ones, and do not harm my prophets.”

UST

²² “Do not harm the people whom I have chosen! Do not harm my prophets!”

1 Chronicles 16:23

General Information:

Parallelism is common in Hebrew poetry. (See: [Poetry](#) and [Parallelism](#))

all the earth

This refers to the people of the earth. Alternate translation: “all you people who live on the earth” (See: [Metonymy](#))

announce his salvation

The abstract noun “salvation” can be translated using the verb “save.” Alternate translation: “announce that he has saved us” or “tell people that he is the one who saves” (See: [Abstract Nouns](#))

day after day

“every day”

Translation Words - ULT

- [Yahweh](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [Yahweh](#)

ULT

²³ Sing to Yahweh, all the earth;
announce his salvation day after day.

UST

²³ You people throughout the world,
sing to Yahweh. Every day proclaim to
others that he has saved us.

1 Chronicles 16:24

Declare his glory among the nations

“Tell all the people in every nation about his great glory”

Translation Words - ULT

- miracle, wonder, sign
- glory, glorious, glorify
- people, people group,
- nation

Translation Words - UST

- miracle, wonder, sign
- glory, glorious, glorify
- people, people group,
- nation

ULT

24 Declare his glory among the nations,
his marvelous deeds among all the
nations.

UST

24 Tell among the nations that he is
great; tell all the people groups the
marvelous things that he has done.

1 Chronicles 16:25

Yahweh is great and is to be praised greatly

This can be translated in active form. Alternate translation: "Yahweh is great. Praise him greatly" or "Yahweh is great, and people should praise him greatly" (See: [Active or Passive](#))

he is to be feared above all other gods

This can be translated in active form. Alternate translation: "fear him above all other gods" (See: [Active or Passive](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [fear, afraid, dread](#)
- [God](#)
- [Yahweh](#)
- [praise, praised, praiseworthy](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [fear, afraid, dread](#)
- [God](#)
- [Yahweh](#)
- [praise, praised, praiseworthy](#)

ULT

²⁵ For Yahweh is great and is to be praised greatly, and he is to be feared above all other gods.

UST

²⁵ Yahweh is great, and he deserves to be praised very much. He should be revered more than all the gods,

1 Chronicles 16:26

(There are no notes for this verse.)

Translation Words - ULT

- heaven, sky, heavens, heavenly
- God
- Yahweh
- people, people group,

Translation Words - UST

- heaven, sky, heavens, heavenly
- God
- Yahweh
- people, people group,

ULT

²⁶ For all the gods of the nations are idols, but it is Yahweh who made the heavens.

UST

²⁶ because all the gods that the other people groups worship are only idols, but Yahweh is truly great; he created the skies.

1 Chronicles 16:27

Splendor and majesty are in his presence

The author speaks as if splendor and majesty are people who can stand before a king. (See: [Personification](#))

in his presence

“all around him” or “where he is”

Strength and joy are in his place

The author speaks as if strength and joy are people who can be in Yahweh’s sanctuary. (See: [Personification](#))

in his place

“in his temple” or “in his sanctuary”

ULT

²⁷ Splendor and majesty are in his presence. Strength and joy are in his place.

UST

²⁷ God shows his splendor and majesty; they shine from where he rules. Strength and beauty are in the place where he lives.

1 Chronicles 16:28

Ascribe to Yahweh

“Give praise to Yahweh” or “Praise Yahweh”

ascribe to Yahweh glory and strength

The abstract nouns “glory” and “strength” can be stated as adjectives.
Alternate translation: “praise Yahweh because he is glorious and strong” (See: [Abstract Nouns](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- power, powerful, powerfully
- glory, glorious, glorify
- Yahweh
- Yahweh
- people, people group,
- family, household

Translation Words - UST

- power, powerful, powerfully
- glory, glorious, glorify
- Yahweh
- Yahweh
- people, people group,
- family, household

ULT

28 Ascribe to Yahweh, you clans of peoples, ascribe to Yahweh glory and strength!

UST

28 You people in nations all over the world, praise Yahweh! Praise Yahweh for his glorious power!

1 Chronicles 16:29

Ascribe to Yahweh the glory his name deserves

The abstract noun “glory” can be stated as a verb or adjective.
Alternate translation: “Glorify Yahweh just as his name deserves” or “Proclaim that Yahweh is glorious just as his name deserves” (See: [Abstract Nouns](#))

his name deserves

Here “his name” refers to the person of God. Alternate translation: “due to him” or “he deserves” or “he is worthy to receive” (See: [Metonymy](#))

Bow down to Yahweh

The implied information is that the people were to bow down in worship. Alternate translation: “Bow down to worship Yahweh” (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#) and [Symbolic Action](#))

in the splendor of holiness

The abstract nouns “splendor” and “holiness” can be translated as adjectives. Alternate translation: “because he is gloriously beautiful and holy” (See: [Abstract Nouns](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [holy, holiness, unholy, sacred](#)
- [glory, glorious, glorify](#)
- [Yahweh](#)
- [Yahweh \(2\)](#)
- [name](#)
- [prostrate, worship](#)
- [grain offering](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [holy, holiness, unholy, sacred](#)
- [glory, glorious, glorify](#)
- [Yahweh](#)
- [Yahweh \(2\)](#)
- [name](#)
- [prostrate, worship](#)
- [grain offering](#)

ULT

29 Ascribe to Yahweh the glory his name deserves. Bring an offering and come before him. Bow down to Yahweh in the splendor of holiness.

UST

29 Praise Yahweh with the glory his name deserves. Come before him with offerings to give to him! Bow down and worship Yahweh because he is holy and his holiness shines out from him with wonderful beauty.

1 Chronicles 16:30

Tremble

shake because of fear

all the earth

This is a metonym for all the people who live on the earth. Alternate translation: “all the people of the earth” (See: [Metonymy](#))

ULT

³⁰ Tremble before him, all the earth. The world also is established; it cannot be shaken.

UST

³⁰ Be very afraid in his presence, because he is good and powerful, completely different than you. He put the earth firmly in its place; and nothing ever will be able to move it.

1 Chronicles 16:31

Let the heavens be glad, and let the earth rejoice

Possible meanings are 1) the heavens and the earth are spoken of as if they have emotions like people. Alternate translation: "Let it be as if the heavens are glad and the earth rejoices" or 2) "the heavens" and "the earth" are metonyms for those who dwell in those places.

Alternate translation: "Let those who live in the heavens be glad and let those who live on the earth rejoice" (See: [Personification](#) and [Metonymy](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- heaven, sky, heavens, heavenly
- Yahweh
- joy, joyful, enjoy, rejoice, gladness, rejoicing
- nation

Translation Words - UST

- heaven, sky, heavens, heavenly
- Yahweh
- joy, joyful, enjoy, rejoice, gladness, rejoicing
- nation

ULT

31 Let the heavens be glad, and let the earth rejoice; let them say among the nations, "Yahweh reigns."

UST

31 Everything in the sky and on the earth should be happy. People everywhere should say, "Yahweh is our king!"

1 Chronicles 16:32

that which fills it shout with joy

The implied information is that this refers to all the creatures living in the sea. They are spoken of as if they should shout with joy like people might do. Alternate translation: “the sea creatures shout joyfully” (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#) and [Personification](#))

Let the fields be joyful, and all that is in them

“Let the fields and all that is in them be joyful.” The author speaks as if the fields and the animals that live in them have emotions like people. Alternate translation: “Let it be as if the fields themselves and all the animals that live in them are rejoicing” (See: [Personification](#))

ULT

³² Let the sea roar, and that which fills it shout with joy. Let the fields be joyful, and all that is in them.

UST

³² The oceans and all the creatures that are in the oceans should shout; the fields and everything that is in them should rejoice.

1 Chronicles 16:33

let the trees in the forest shout for joy

This speaks about the trees as if they were people who could shout for joy. (See: [Personification](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [Yahweh](#)
- [judge, judgment](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [Yahweh](#)
- [judge, judgment](#)

ULT

33 Then let the trees in the forest shout for joy before Yahweh, for he is coming to judge the earth.

UST

33 When they do that, it will be as though the trees in the forest will sing joyfully in front of Yahweh. That will happen when he comes to judge everyone on the earth.

1 Chronicles 16:34

for his covenant faithfulness endures forever

The abstract noun "faithfulness" can be stated as "faithfully" or "faithful." Alternate translation: "for he faithfully loves us forever" or "for he is faithful to his covenant forever" (See: [Abstract Nouns](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [covenant faithfulness](#), [covenant loyalty](#), [covenant love](#)
- [Yahweh](#)
- [good](#), [right](#), [pleasant](#), [pleasing](#), [better](#), [best](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [covenant faithfulness](#), [covenant loyalty](#), [covenant love](#)
- [Yahweh](#)
- [good](#), [right](#), [pleasant](#), [pleasing](#), [better](#), [best](#)

ULT

³⁴ Give thanks to Yahweh, for he is good, for his covenant faithfulness endures forever.

UST

³⁴ Thank Yahweh, because everything that he does is good. He faithfully loves us forever.

1 Chronicles 16:35

from the other nations

Here “the other nations” represents the people in those nations.
Alternate translation: “from the people of other nations” or “from the armies of other nations” (See: [Metonymy](#))

give thanks to your holy name

Here Yahweh is referred to by his “holy name.” Alternate translation: “give thanks to you” or “give thanks to Yahweh” (See: [Metonymy](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [holy](#), [holiness](#), [unholy](#), [sacred](#)
- [God](#)
- [nation](#)
- [deliver](#), [deliverer](#), [deliverance](#), [hand over](#), [turn over](#), [released](#), [rescue](#)
- [deliver](#), [deliverer](#), [deliverance](#), [hand over](#), [turn over](#), [released](#), [rescue](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [holy](#), [holiness](#), [unholy](#), [sacred](#)
- [God](#)
- [nation](#)
- [deliver](#), [deliverer](#), [deliverance](#), [hand over](#), [turn over](#), [released](#), [rescue](#)
- [deliver](#), [deliverer](#), [deliverance](#), [hand over](#), [turn over](#), [released](#), [rescue](#)

ULT

35 Then say, “Save us, God of our salvation. Gather us together and rescue us from the other nations, so that we may give thanks to your holy name and glory in your praises.”

UST

35 Say to him, “God, you are the one who rescues us, so gather us together and save us from the armies of other nations. When you do that, we will thank you, and we will be happy to praise you.”

1 Chronicles 16:36

from everlasting to everlasting

This refers to two extremes and means for all time. Alternate translation: “for all eternity” (See: [Merism](#))

All the people

This is a generalization that refers to the group of people assembled to worship Yahweh. Alternate translation: “The people” or “Everyone who was there” (See: [Hyperbole](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- bless, blessed, blessing
- God
- amen, truly
- Yahweh
- Yahweh
- Israel, Israelites
- people, people group,
- praise, praised, praiseworthy

Translation Words - UST

- bless, blessed, blessing
- God
- amen, truly
- Yahweh
- Yahweh
- Israel, Israelites
- people, people group,
- praise, praised, praiseworthy

ULT

36 May Yahweh, the God of Israel, be praised from everlasting to everlasting. All the people said, “Amen” and praised Yahweh.

UST

36 Praise Yahweh, the God of us Israelite people, He has always existed, and he will exist forever. After the people finished singing that song, they all said “Amen!”, and they praised Yahweh.

1 Chronicles 16:37

his brothers

“his relatives”

as every day's work required

The implied information is that they were to perform the daily duties that were given in the law of Yahweh. Alternate translation: “as was required every day by the law” (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- brother
- covenant
- Yahweh

Translation Words - UST

- brother
- covenant
- Yahweh

ULT

37 So David left Asaph and his brothers there before the ark of the covenant of Yahweh, to serve continually before the ark, as every day's work required.

UST

37 Then David left Asaph and the other members of his clan there in front of the tent in which Yahweh's sacred chest had been placed. He told them that they must do their work there every day.

1 Chronicles 16:38

Obed Edom...Jeduthun...Hosah

These were names of men. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

sixty-eight relatives

"68 relatives" (See: [Numbers](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [brother](#)
- [son](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [brother](#)
- [son](#)

ULT

³⁸ Obed Edom with those sixty-eight relatives were included. Obed Edom son of Jeduthun, along with Hosah, were to be gatekeepers.

UST

³⁸ David also left Obed Edom and 68 other descendants of Levi to work with them. Hosah and Obed Edom guarded the entrances of the sacred tent.

1 Chronicles 16:39

to serve before the tabernacle

“to serve at the tabernacle”

Translation Words - ULT

- brother
- Yahweh
- priest, priesthood
- priest, priesthood

Translation Words - UST

- brother
- Yahweh
- priest, priesthood
- priest, priesthood

ULT

³⁹ Zadok the priest and his fellow priests were to serve before the tabernacle of Yahweh at the high place in Gibeon.

UST

³⁹ David also told Zadok the high priest and the other priests who worked with him to remain in front of Yahweh's sacred tent, at the place where the Israelite people worshiped Yahweh there in the city of Gibeon.

1 Chronicles 16:40

General Information:

The word “They” in this verse refers to the priests.

continually morning

“every day, morning”

Translation Words - ULT

- altar
- command, commandment
- law of Moses, God’s law, law of Yahweh, the law
- Yahweh
- Yahweh
- Israel, Israelites
- burnt offering, offering by fire

Translation Words - UST

- altar
- command, commandment
- law of Moses, God’s law, law of Yahweh, the law
- Yahweh
- Yahweh
- Israel, Israelites
- burnt offering, offering by fire

ULT

⁴⁰ They were to offer burnt offerings to Yahweh on the altar for burnt offerings continually morning and evening, according to all that is written in the law of Yahweh, which he gave as a command to Israel.

UST

⁴⁰ Every morning and every evening they burned offerings on the altar, obeying the rules that had been written by Moses, rules that Yahweh had given to the Israelite people.

1 Chronicles 16:41

General Information:

The word “them” in this verse refers to the priests.

Heman...Jeduthun

These were names of men. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [covenant faithfulness](#), [covenant loyalty](#), [covenant love](#)
- [Yahweh](#)
- [name](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [covenant faithfulness](#), [covenant loyalty](#), [covenant love](#)
- [Yahweh](#)
- [name](#)

ULT

41 Heman and Jeduthun were with them, together with the rest who were chosen by name, to give thanks to Yahweh, because his covenant faithfulness endures forever.

UST

41 With them were Heman and Jeduthun and other descendants of Levi. They were chosen to sing songs to praise Yahweh because he faithfully loves his people forever.

1 Chronicles 16:42

cymbals

These are two thin, round metal plates that are hit together to make a loud sound. See how you translated this in [1 Chronicles 13:8](#). (See: [Translate Unknowns](#))

guarded the gate

The implied information is that they were to guard the entrance to the tabernacle. Alternate translation: “guarded the tabernacle gate” (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [son](#)
- [God](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [son](#)
- [God](#)

ULT

⁴² Heman and Jeduthun were in charge of those who played trumpets, cymbals, and the other instruments for the sacred music. The sons of Jeduthun guarded the gate.

UST

⁴² Heman and Jeduthun were appointed to play the trumpets and cymbals when the other descendants of Levi sang sacred songs. The sons of Jeduthun were appointed to guard the gates of the sacred tent.

1 Chronicles 16:43

(There are no notes for this verse.)

Translation Words - ULT

- David
- people, people group,
- house
- house

Translation Words - UST

- David
- people, people group,
- house
- house

ULT

⁴³ Then all the people returned to their homes, and David returned to bless his own household.

UST

⁴³ Then all the people left. They all returned to their homes, and David returned home to ask Yahweh to bless his family.

1 Chronicles 17

1 Chronicles 17 General Notes

Special concepts in this chapter

Building the temple

David wanted to build a temple for God but God would not allow him to. Instead he promised that his son, Solomon, would build the temple and he promised David would have a descendant who would be king forever. (See: [temple](#) and [promise, promised](#) and [eternity, everlasting, eternal, forever](#))

1 Chronicles 17:1

It happened

This phrase is used here to mark the beginning of a new part of the story. If your language has a way for doing this, you could consider using it here. (See: [Introduction of a New Event](#))

settled

comfortable and happy, without the desire to move or change

I am living in a house of cedar

Cedar is a kind of tree that is known for its strength. If you have an equivalent type of tree in your culture, you can use that name, otherwise you can reword this. Alternate translation: "I am living in a strong, permanent house" (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

the ark of the covenant of Yahweh is staying under a tent

Tents are temporary dwellings. If you do not have tents in your culture, you can word this differently. Alternate translation: "the ark of the covenant of Yahweh is staying in a temporary place" (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- prophet, prophecy, prophesy, seer, prophetess
- covenant
- Yahweh
- pray, prayer
- temple
- temple
- David
- David

Translation Words - UST

- prophet, prophecy, prophesy, seer, prophetess
- covenant
- Yahweh
- pray, prayer
- temple
- temple
- David
- David

ULT

¹ It happened that after the king had settled in his house, he said to Nathan the prophet, "Look, I am living in a house of cedar, but the ark of the covenant of Yahweh is staying under a tent."

UST

¹ After David began to live in his palace, he said to the prophet Nathan, "It does not seem right that I am here living in a palace made of cedar wood, but Yahweh's sacred chest is kept inside a tent!"

1 Chronicles 17:2

do what is in your heart

Here “heart” represents the mind. Alternate translation: “do what you think you should” (See: [Metonymy](#))

God is with you

Here “with you” means God is helping and blessing David. (See: [Idiom](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [God](#)
- [David](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [God](#)
- [David](#)

ULT

² Then Nathan said to David, “Go, do what is in your heart, for God is with you.”

UST

² Nathan replied to David, “Whatever you are thinking about doing, do it, because God is with you.”

1 Chronicles 17:3

the word of God came to Nathan, saying,

The idiom “the word of God came to” is used to introduce a special message from God. Alternate translation: “God gave a message to Nathan. He said,” or “God spoke this message to Nathan:” (See: [Idiom](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [God](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [God](#)

ULT

³ But that same night the word of God came to Nathan, saying,

UST

³ But that night God spoke to Nathan. He said,

1 Chronicles 17:4

Go and tell David my servant, 'This is what Yahweh says: You will not build me a house in which to live

This has quotations within quotations. It may be necessary to translate them as indirect quotations. Alternate translation: "Go and tell David my servant that he will not be the one to build a house in which I will live" (See: [Quotes within Quotes](#) and [Direct and Indirect Quotations](#))

build me a house

Here "house" means a temple. In [1 Chronicles 17:10](#) Yahweh will say that he will build a house for David. There "house" means a family. If your language has a word that can express both ideas, use it here and in 17:10.

Translation Words - ULT

- [Yahweh](#)
- [David](#)
- [walk, walked](#)
- [servant, serve, slave, worker, young man, young women](#)
- [house](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [Yahweh](#)
- [David](#)
- [walk, walked](#)
- [servant, serve, slave, worker, young man, young women](#)
- [house](#)

ULT

⁴ "Go and tell David my servant, 'This is what Yahweh says: You will not build me a house in which to live.

UST

⁴ "Go and tell my servant David that this is what I, Yahweh, am saying to him: 'You are not the one who should build a temple for me to live in.

1 Chronicles 17:5

that I brought up Israel

The implied information is that this refers to God bringing up Israel out of the land of Egypt. Alternate translation: “that I brought the Israelites to the promised land from the land of Egypt” (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

a tent, a tabernacle

Both the words “tent” and “tabernacle” describe the same thing and emphasize that he had lived in a place that was not a permanent building. (See: [Doublet](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [Israel, Israelites](#)
- [temple](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [Israel, Israelites](#)
- [temple](#)

ULT

⁵ For I have not lived in a house from the day that I brought up Israel to this present day. Instead, I have been living in a tent, a tabernacle, in various places.

UST

⁵ I have not lived in any building, from the day that I brought the people of Israel up out of Egypt until now. Instead, I have lived in my sacred tent, moving from one place to another when the Israelites moved to other places.

1 Chronicles 17:6

did I ever say anything to any of Israel's leaders whom I appointed to shepherd my people, saying, "Why have you not built me a house of cedar?"

This has a quotation within a quotation. The direct quotation can be stated as an indirect quotation. Alternate translation: "did I ever ask any of Israel's leaders, whom I appointed to shepherd my people, why they had not built me a house of cedar?" (See: [Quotes within Quotes](#) and [Direct and Indirect Quotations](#))

did I ever say anything to any of Israel's leaders

Yahweh uses a question to emphasize that he never asked any of Israel's leaders to build him a house. Alternate translation: "I never said anything to any of Israel's leaders" (See: [Rhetorical Question](#))

whom I appointed to shepherd my people

Those who are leaders of the people of Israel are spoken of as if they were shepherds and the people were sheep. (See: [Metaphor](#))

Why have you not built me a house of cedar?

If Yahweh had asked the leaders this question, he would have been using a question to scold them for not building him a house of cedar. But, Yahweh said previously that he did not ask them this question. Alternate translation: "You should have built me a house of cedar." (See: [Rhetorical Question](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [command, commandment](#)
- [Israel, Israelites](#)
- [Israel, Israelites](#)
- [people, people group,](#)
- [cedar, cedarwood](#)
- [house](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [command, commandment](#)
- [Israel, Israelites](#)
- [Israel, Israelites](#)
- [people, people group,](#)
- [cedar, cedarwood](#)
- [house](#)

ULT

⁶ In all places I have moved among all Israel, did I ever say anything to any of Israel's leaders whom I appointed to shepherd my people, saying, "Why have you not built me a house of cedar?"

UST

⁶ Wherever I went with all the Israelites as they traveled, I never said to any of their leaders whom I appointed to lead them, "Why have you not built me a temple made of cedar wood?"

1 Chronicles 17:7

General Information:

Yahweh describes his promises to King David through the prophet Nathan.

Now

This does not mean “at this moment,” but is used to draw attention to the important point that follows.

tell my servant David

Yahweh is still telling the prophet Nathan what he should tell David.

I took you from the pasture

David's job as a shepherd is referred to by the place he watched his sheep. Alternate translation: “I took you from your job as a shepherd” (See: [Metonymy](#))

pasture

an area of land where animals feed on the grass. See how you translated this word in [1 Chronicles 4:39](#) and [4:40](#).

Translation Words - ULT

- Yahweh
- Israel, Israelites
- people, people group,
- ewe, ram, sheep, sheepfold, sheepshearers, sheepskins
- servant, serve, slave, worker, young man, young women

Translation Words - UST

- Yahweh
- Israel, Israelites
- people, people group,
- ewe, ram, sheep, sheepfold, sheepshearers, sheepskins
- servant, serve, slave, worker, young man, young women

ULT

⁷ “Now then, tell my servant David, ‘This is what Yahweh of hosts says: I took you from the pasture, from following the sheep, so that you would be ruler over my people Israel.’

UST

⁷ Therefore, this is what you should say to my servant David: ‘I, Yahweh, commander of the angel armies, took you from a pasture where you were taking care of sheep, and I appointed you to be the ruler of my Israelite people.’

1 Chronicles 17:8

Connecting Statement:

Yahweh continues describing his promises to King David through the prophet Nathan.

I have been with you

Here “with you” means that Yahweh has helped and blessed David. (See: [Idiom](#))

cut off all your enemies

Yahweh destroying David’s enemies is spoken of as if Yahweh cut them off, as one would cut a piece of cloth or cut a branch from a tree. (See: [Metaphor](#))

I will make you a name

Here “name” represents a person’s reputation. Alternate translation: “I will make your name to be great and well known” (See: [Metonymy](#))

the great ones

The phrase “great ones” means famous persons.

Translation Words - ULT

- [name](#)
- [adversary, enemy](#)
- [cut off](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [name](#)
- [adversary, enemy](#)
- [cut off](#)

ULT

⁸ I have been with you wherever you went and have cut off all your enemies from before you, and I will make you a name, like the name of the great ones who are on the earth.

UST

⁸ I have been with you wherever you have gone, and I have gotten rid of all your enemies who were in front of you. And now I will cause you to become very famous, as well known as the names of the greatest men who have ever lived on the earth.

1 Chronicles 17:9

Connecting Statement:

Yahweh continues describing his promises to King David through the prophet Nathan.

I will appoint a place

"I will choose a place"

will plant them there

God causing the people to live in the land permanently and securely is spoken of as if he would plant them in the land. Alternate translation: "I will settle them there" (See: [Metaphor](#))

be troubled no more

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: "no one will ever trouble them" (See: [Active or Passive](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- son
- appoint, appointed
- Israel, Israelites
- people, people group,
- tremble, stagger

Translation Words - UST

- son
- appoint, appointed
- Israel, Israelites
- people, people group,
- tremble, stagger

ULT

⁹ I will appoint a place for my people Israel and will plant them there, so that they may live in their own place and be troubled no more. No longer will wicked people oppress them, as they did before,

UST

⁹⁻¹⁰ Formerly, during the time that I appointed leaders for my Israelite people, many violent groups oppressed them. But this will not happen anymore. I have chosen a place where my Israelite people can live peacefully and no one will disturb them anymore. I will give them rest from being attacked by their enemies. And I will defeat all your enemies. I declare to you that I, Yahweh, will enable your descendants to rule after you die.

1 Chronicles 17:10

General Information:

The words “your” and “you” in this verse refers to David.

Connecting Statement:

Yahweh continues describing his promises to King David through the prophet Nathan.

from the days

Here “days” represents a longer period of time. Alternate translation: “from the time” (See: [Metonymy](#))

I commanded judges

After the people of Israel entered the land of Canaan and before they had kings to rule them, God appointed leaders called “judges” to lead them in times of trouble.

to be over my people Israel

To be in authority is referred to as being over someone. Alternate translation: “to rule my people Israel” (See: [Idiom](#))

subdue

make a person or animal unable to attack

build you a house

Here the metonym “house” refers to David’s ancestors continuing on as the rulers of Israel. In [1 Chronicles 17:4](#) God told David he would not be the one to build a house for Yahweh. There “house” represented a temple. If your language has a word that can express both ideas, use it here and in 17:4. (See: [Metonymy](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [command, commandment](#)
- [Yahweh](#)
- [Israel, Israelites](#)
- [adversary, enemy](#)
- [people, people group,](#)
- [house](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [command, commandment](#)
- [Yahweh](#)
- [Israel, Israelites](#)
- [adversary, enemy](#)
- [people, people group,](#)
- [house](#)

ULT

¹⁰ as they were doing from the days that I commanded judges to be over my people Israel. Then I will subdue all your enemies. Moreover I tell you that I, Yahweh, will build you a house.

UST

⁹⁻¹⁰ Formerly, during the time that I appointed leaders for my Israelite people, many violent groups oppressed them. But this will not happen anymore. I have chosen a place where my Israelite people can live peacefully and no one will disturb them anymore. I will give them rest from being attacked by their enemies. And I will defeat all your enemies. I declare to you that I, Yahweh, will enable your descendants to rule after you die.

1 Chronicles 17:11

Connecting Statement:

Yahweh continues describing his promises to King David through the prophet Nathan.

It will come about

“It will happen”

when your days are fulfilled for you to go to your fathers

The two phrases “when your days are fulfilled” and “go to your fathers” have similar meanings and are combined for emphasis. They both are polite ways to refer to death and dying. (See: [Parallelism](#) and [Euphemism](#))

I will raise up your descendant after you

God appointing David’s descendant is spoken of as if Yahweh would raise or lift him up. (See: [Metaphor](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [son](#)
- [ancestor](#), [father](#), [fathered](#), [forefather](#), [grandfather](#)
- [seed](#), [semen](#)
- [kingdom](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [son](#)
- [ancestor](#), [father](#), [fathered](#), [forefather](#), [grandfather](#)
- [seed](#), [semen](#)
- [kingdom](#)

ULT

11 It will come about that when your days are fulfilled for you to go to your fathers, I will raise up your descendant after you, and for one of your own descendants, I will establish his kingdom.

UST

11 When your life ends and you die and go to be with your ancestors who have died, I will appoint one of your sons to become king, and I will enable his kingdom to be strong.

1 Chronicles 17:12

Connecting Statement:

Yahweh continues describing his promises to King David through the prophet Nathan.

I will establish his throne forever

The right to rule as king is described by the place where a king sits.
Alternate translation: "I will make his rule over Israel to last forever"
(See: [Metonymy](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [throne, enthroned](#)
- [house](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [throne, enthroned](#)
- [house](#)

ULT

12 He will build me a house, and I will establish his throne forever.

UST

12 He is the one who will arrange for a temple to be built for me. And I will make the rule of one of his descendants so strong that it will last forever.

1 Chronicles 17:13

Connecting Statement:

Yahweh continues describing his promises to King David through the prophet Nathan.

I will be a father to him, and he will be my son

The prophecy in 17:11-14 refers to Solomon, David's son. But, aspects of the prophecy will be fulfilled by Jesus. So, here it is best to translate the words "father" and "son" with your normal words for a biological father and son.

I will not take my covenant faithfulness away from him, as I took it from Saul

The abstract noun "faithfulness" can be translated as "faithfully." Alternate translation: "I will never stop faithfully loving him, as I stopped loving Saul" (See: [Abstract Nouns](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- son
- covenant faithfulness, covenant loyalty, covenant love
- ancestor, father, fathered, forefather, grandfather

Translation Words - UST

- son
- covenant faithfulness, covenant loyalty, covenant love
- ancestor, father, fathered, forefather, grandfather

ULT

13 I will be a father to him, and he will be my son. I will not take my covenant faithfulness away from him, as I took it from Saul, who ruled before you.

UST

13 I will be like a father to him, and it will be as though he is a son to me. I stopped loving Saul, the one who was the king before you became king, but I will never stop loving your son.

1 Chronicles 17:14

Connecting Statement:

Yahweh finishes describing his promises to King David through the prophet Nathan.

I will set him over my house and in my kingdom forever, and his throne will be established forever

These two phrases have similar meanings and emphasize that David's dynasty will last forever. (See: [Parallelism](#))

his throne will be established forever

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: "I will establish his throne forever" (See: [Active or Passive](#))

his throne

A king's right to rule is referred to by the place a king sits. Alternate translation: "his right to rule" (See: [Metonymy](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [temple](#)
- [reign, rule](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [temple](#)
- [reign, rule](#)

ULT

14 I will set him over my house and in my kingdom forever, and his throne will be established forever."

UST

14 I will cause him to rule over my people and his kingdom will endure forever."

1 Chronicles 17:15

reported to him

“told him”

all these words

Here “words” represents what Yahweh said. (See: [Metonymy](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [David](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [David](#)

ULT

15 Nathan spoke to David and reported to him all these words, and he told him about the entire vision.

UST

15 So Nathan reported to David everything that Yahweh had revealed to him.

1 Chronicles 17:16

he said

"David said"

Who am I, Yahweh God, and what is my family, that you have brought me to this point?

- David asks this question to express the deep emotion he felt from hearing Yahweh's proclamation. This rhetorical question can be translated as a statement. Alternate translation: "My family and I are not worthy of this honor, Yahweh God." (See: [Rhetorical Question](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- God
- Yahweh
- Yahweh
- David
- king, kingdom, kingship
- house

Translation Words - UST

- God
- Yahweh
- Yahweh
- David
- king, kingdom, kingship
- house

ULT

16 Then David the king went in and sat before Yahweh; he said, "Who am I, Yahweh God, and what is my family, that you have brought me to this point?"

UST

16 Then David went into the sacred tent and sat in the presence of Yahweh, and prayed this: "Yahweh my God, I am certainly not worthy for you to have done of all these things for me, and my family is not worthy, either."

1 Chronicles 17:17

Connecting Statement:

David continues to speak to Yahweh.

this was a small thing

Something that is not important is described as being small. (See: [Idiom](#))

in your sight

Here sight represents judgment or evaluation. Alternate translation: “in your judgment” (See: [Metaphor](#))

your servant’s family

Here David refers to himself as “your servant.” This can be stated in first person. Alternate translation: “my family” (See: [First, Second or Third Person](#))

for a great while to come

This speaks about time as if it were something that travels and arrives somewhere. Alternate translation: “and what will happen to them in the future” (See: [Metaphor](#))

your servant

Here David refers to himself as “your servant.” This can be stated in first person. Alternate translation: “me” (See: [First, Second or Third Person](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [God](#)
- [God](#)
- [Yahweh](#)
- [servant, serve, slave, worker, young man, young women](#)
- [house](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [God](#)
- [God](#)
- [Yahweh](#)
- [servant, serve, slave, worker, young man, young women](#)
- [house](#)

ULT

17 For this was a small thing in your sight, God. You have spoken of your servant's family for a great while to come, and have shown me future generations, Yahweh God.

UST

17 And O God, now, in addition to everything else, you have spoken about what will happen to my descendants in the future for many generations. Yahweh my God, you have acted toward me as though I was the most important man on the earth!

1 Chronicles 17:18

Connecting Statement:

David continues to speak to Yahweh.

What more can I, David, say to you?

David uses this question to emphasize that he has nothing left to say to Yahweh. Alternate translation: "There is nothing more I can say to you." (See: [Rhetorical Question](#))

You have honored your servant. You have given your servant special recognition

These two phrases have similar meanings and are repeated for emphasis. (See: [Parallelism](#))

You have given your servant special recognition

The abstract noun "recognition" can be translated using the verb "recognize." Alternate translation: "You have recognized your servant in a special way" (See: [Abstract Nouns](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [David](#)
- [servant, serve, slave, worker, young man, young women](#)
- [servant, serve, slave, worker, young man, young women](#)
- [know, knowledge, unknown, distinguish](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [David](#)
- [servant, serve, slave, worker, young man, young women](#)
- [servant, serve, slave, worker, young man, young women](#)
- [know, knowledge, unknown, distinguish](#)

ULT

18 What more can I, David, say to you? You have honored your servant. You have given your servant special recognition.

UST

18 What more can I, David, say to you for honoring me? Yahweh, you know what kind of person I am.

1 Chronicles 17:19

Connecting Statement:

David continues to speak to Yahweh.

your servant's sake

Here David refers to himself as "your servant." This can be stated in first person. Alternate translation: "my sake" or "my benefit" (See: [First, Second or Third Person](#))

to fulfill your own purpose

"to accomplish what you planned to do"

Translation Words - ULT

- [Yahweh](#)
- [servant, serve, slave, worker, young man, young women](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [Yahweh](#)
- [servant, serve, slave, worker, young man, young women](#)

ULT

19 Yahweh, for your servant's sake, and to fulfill your own purpose, you have done this great thing to reveal all your great deeds.

UST

19 You have done all this, Yahweh, and because it is what you wanted to do. You have done these great things for me and you have revealed to me these things that you have promised to do for me, because you love me.

1 Chronicles 17:20

Connecting Statement:

David continues to speak to Yahweh.

there is none like you, and there is no God besides you

These phrases have similar meaning and are repeated for emphasis.
(See: [Parallelism](#))

as we have always heard

Here "we" refers to David and the nation of Israel. (See: [Exclusive and Inclusive 'We'](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [God](#)
- [Yahweh](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [God](#)
- [Yahweh](#)

ULT

²⁰ Yahweh, there is none like you, and there is no God besides you, just as we have always heard.

UST

²⁰ Yahweh, you are great. There is no one like you. Only you are God, which is what we have always heard.

1 Chronicles 17:21

Connecting Statement:

David continues to speak to Yahweh.

what nation on earth...by great and awesome deeds?

This question expects a negative answer to make the point that there was no other nation like Israel. It can be translated as a statement.

Alternate translation: "there is no nation on earth...by great and awesome deeds." (See: [Rhetorical Question](#))

you rescued from Egypt

The implied information is that they were rescued from slavery.

Alternate translation: "you rescued from slavery in Egypt" (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

to make a name for yourself

Here "name" represents Yahweh's reputation. Alternate translation: "to make all people know who you are" (See: [Metonymy](#))

You drove out nations

Here "nations" represents the people groups that were living in Canaan. (See: [Metonymy](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- fear, afraid, dread
- God
- redeem, redeemer, redemption
- name
- Israel, Israelites
- majesty
- Egypt, Egyptian
- people, people group,
- people, people group,
- people, people group,
- nation
- nation

Translation Words - UST

- fear, afraid, dread
- God
- redeem, redeemer, redemption
- name
- Israel, Israelites
- majesty
- Egypt, Egyptian
- people, people group,
- people, people group,

ULT

21 For what nation on earth is like your people Israel, whom you, God, rescued from Egypt as a people for yourself, to make a name for yourself by great and awesome deeds? You drove out nations from before your people, whom you rescued from Egypt.

UST

21 And there is no nation in the world like Israel. Israel is the only nation on the earth whose people you went out to rescue. You performed great and awesome miracles, rescuing our ancestors from being slaves in Egypt, expelling the people of other people groups who were in Canaan.

- people, people group,
- nation
- nation

1 Chronicles 17:22

Connecting Statement:

David continues to speak to Yahweh.

Translation Words - ULT

- God
- Yahweh
- Israel, Israelites
- people, people group,
- people, people group,

Translation Words - UST

- God
- Yahweh
- Israel, Israelites
- people, people group,
- people, people group,

ULT

²² You made Israel your own people forever, and you, Yahweh, became their God.

UST

²² You have caused us your Israelite people to belong to you forever, and you, Yahweh, have become our God!

1 Chronicles 17:23

Connecting Statement:

David continues to speak to Yahweh.

So now

Here “now” does not mean “at this moment,” but is used to draw attention to the important point that follows.

may the promise that you made concerning your servant and his family be established forever

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: “may you do what you promised to me and my family, and may your promise never change” (See: [Active or Passive](#))

your servant and his family

David is speaking about himself in the third person. This can be stated in the first person. Alternate translation: “me and my family” (See: [First, Second or Third Person](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [Yahweh](#)
- [faithful, faithfulness, unfaithful, unfaithfulness, trustworthy](#)
- [servant, serve, slave, worker, young man, young women](#)
- [house](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [Yahweh](#)
- [faithful, faithfulness, unfaithful, unfaithfulness, trustworthy](#)
- [servant, serve, slave, worker, young man, young women](#)
- [house](#)

ULT

²³ So now, Yahweh, may the promise that you made concerning your servant and his family be established forever. Do as you have spoken.

UST

²³ And now Yahweh, I pray that you will cause the things that you have promised about me and my descendants to be fulfilled forever, and do the things that you have said that you would do.

1 Chronicles 17:24

Connecting Statement:

David continues to speak to Yahweh.

May your name

Here "name" represents Yahweh's reputation. (See: [Metonymy](#))

the house of me, David, your servant

Here "house" represents family. Alternate translation: "my family" (See: [Metonymy](#))

is established before you

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: "is secure because of you" or "continues because of you" (See: [Active or Passive](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [God](#)
- [God](#)
- [Yahweh](#)
- [name](#)
- [Israel, Israelites](#)
- [Israel, Israelites](#)
- [David](#)
- [servant, serve, slave, worker, young man, young women](#)
- [house](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [God](#)
- [God](#)
- [Yahweh](#)
- [name](#)
- [Israel, Israelites](#)
- [Israel, Israelites](#)
- [David](#)
- [servant, serve, slave, worker, young man, young women](#)
- [house](#)

ULT

24 May your name be established forever and be great, so the people will say, 'Yahweh of hosts is the God of Israel,' while the house of me, David, your servant is established before you.

UST

24 When that happens, you will be famous forever. And people will exclaim, 'Yahweh, commander of the angel armies, is the God who rules Israel!' And you will cause that forever there will be descendants of mine who will rule.

1 Chronicles 17:25

Connecting Statement:

David continues to speak to Yahweh.

your servant

David refers to himself as “your servant.” This can be expressed in the first person. Alternate translation: “me” (See: [First, Second or Third Person](#))

that you will build him a house

Here the metonym “house” refers to David’s ancestors continuing on as the rulers of Israel. In [1 Chronicles 17:4](#) Yahweh tells David he would not be the one to build a house for Yahweh. There “house” represented a temple. If your language has a word that can express both ideas, use it here and in 17:4. (See: [Metonymy](#))

I, your servant, have found courage

The abstract noun “courage” can be expressed here as the verb “encouraged.” Alternate translation: “I, your servant, am encouraged”

Translation Words - ULT

- [God](#)
- [servant, serve, slave, worker, young man, young women](#)
- [servant, serve, slave, worker, young man, young women](#) (2)
- [exile, exiled](#)
- [house](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [God](#)
- [servant, serve, slave, worker, young man, young women](#)
- [servant, serve, slave, worker, young man, young women](#) (2)
- [exile, exiled](#)
- [house](#)

ULT

²⁵ For you, my God, have revealed to your servant that you will build him a house. That is why I, your servant, have found courage to pray to you.

UST

²⁵ You, my God, have revealed to me that you will cause some of my descendants to become kings. So I am brave enough to pray like this to you.

1 Chronicles 17:26

Connecting Statement:

David continues to speak to Yahweh.

Now

This does not mean “at this moment,” but is used to draw attention to the important point that follows.

Translation Words - ULT

- God
- Yahweh
- servant, serve, slave, worker, young man, young women

Translation Words - UST

- God
- Yahweh
- servant, serve, slave, worker, young man, young women

ULT

²⁶ Now, Yahweh, you are God, and have made this good promise to your servant:

UST

²⁶ Yahweh, you are God! You have promised to do these good things for me.

1 Chronicles 17:27

Connecting Statement:

David continues to speak to Yahweh.

your servant's house

David speaks of himself in the third person. This can be expressed in the first person. Alternate translation: "my house" or "my family" (See: [First, Second or Third Person](#))

You, Yahweh, have blessed it, and it will be blessed forever

These two phrases have about the same meaning and are repeated here for emphasis. (See: [Parallelism](#))

it will be blessed forever

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: "you will continue to bless it forever" (See: [Active or Passive](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [bless, blessed, blessing](#)
- [bless, blessed, blessing](#)
- [Yahweh](#)
- [servant, serve, slave, worker, young man, young women](#)
- [house](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [bless, blessed, blessing](#)
- [bless, blessed, blessing](#)
- [Yahweh](#)
- [servant, serve, slave, worker, young man, young women](#)
- [house](#)

ULT

²⁷ Now it has pleased you to bless your servant's house, that it may continue forever before you. You, Yahweh, have blessed it, and it will be blessed forever."

UST

²⁷ And now you, Yahweh, have promised to bless my descendants, in order that they will continue to rule forever. That will happen because you, Yahweh, are the one who has blessed them, and you will keep blessing them forever."

1 Chronicles 18

1 Chronicles 18 General Notes

Special concepts in this chapter

David's victories

David conquered all kingdoms neighboring Israel. The gold, silver and bronze he received from these victories, he saved for building the temple. This may indicate that he believed that the victories were because of Yahweh and therefore the goods received in victory belonged to him. (See: [temple](#))

1 Chronicles 18:1

After this

"After God's promise to bless David"

it came about

This phrase is used here to mark the beginning of a new part of the story. If your language has a way for doing this, you could consider using it here.

Translation Words - ULT

- Philistines
- Philistines
- David
- hand

Translation Words - UST

- Philistines
- Philistines
- David
- hand

ULT

¹ After this it came about that David attacked the Philistines and defeated them. He took Gath and its villages out of the Philistines' control.

UST

¹ Some time later, David's army attacked the army of Philistia and defeated them. They captured the city of Gath and the surrounding villages.

1 Chronicles 18:2

(There are no notes for this verse.)

Translation Words - ULT

- Moab, Moabite
- Moab, Moabite
- grain offering
- servant, serve, slave, worker, young man, young women

Translation Words - UST

- Moab, Moabite
- Moab, Moabite
- grain offering
- servant, serve, slave, worker, young man, young women

ULT

² Then he defeated Moab, and the Moabites became servants to David and paid him tribute.

UST

² His army also defeated the army of the Moab people group. The people were forced to accept David to be their ruler, and also to pay money each year to David's government, in order that David's army would protect them.

1 Chronicles 18:3

David then defeated Hadadezer

Here David and Hadadezer are spoken of as if they were alone, but the reader should understand that these kings represent their armies that were with them. Alternate translation: “David and his army then defeated the army of Hadadezer” (See: [Metonymy](#))

Hadadezer

This is the name of a man. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

Zobah

This is the name of a country.

was traveling to establish his rule by the Euphrates River

“was going to the Euphrates river to conquer people in that area”

Translation Words - ULT

- [David](#)
- [hand](#)
- [king, kingdom, kingship](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [David](#)
- [hand](#)
- [king, kingdom, kingship](#)

ULT

³ David then defeated Hadadezer, king of Zobah at Hamath, as Hadadezer was traveling to establish his rule by the Euphrates River.

UST

³ David's army also fought against the army of Hadadezer, the king of the region of Zobah in Aram near the city of Hamath, when Hadadezer was trying to establish control over the area near the Euphrates River.

1 Chronicles 18:4

a thousand chariots

"1,000 chariots" (See: [Numbers](#))

seven thousand horsemen

These are soldiers who rode on horses. "7,000 horsemen" (See: [Numbers](#))

twenty thousand footmen

These are soldiers who walked. "20,000 footmen" (See: [Numbers](#))

hamstrung all the chariot horses

David had his soldiers cut the hamstring muscles on the backs of the horses' thighs so they would no longer be able to run.

reserved

to keep for a special use

a hundred chariots

"100 chariots" (See: [Numbers](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [David](#)
- [David](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [David](#)
- [David](#)

ULT

⁴ David captured from him a thousand chariots, seven thousand horsemen, and twenty thousand footmen. David hamstrung all the chariot horses, but reserved enough of them for a hundred chariots.

UST

⁴ David's army captured one thousand of Hadadezer's chariots, seven thousand chariot drivers, and twenty thousand soldiers. They hamstrung most of their horses; there were only one hundred horses that they did not cripple.

1 Chronicles 18:5

killed twenty-two thousand

“killed 22,000” (See: [Numbers](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [David](#)
- [king, kingdom, kingship](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [David](#)
- [king, kingdom, kingship](#)

ULT

⁵ When the Arameans of Damascus came to help Hadadezer king of Zobah, David killed twenty-two thousand Aramean men.

UST

⁵ When the army of Aram came from the city of Damascus to help Hadadezer's army, David's soldiers killed twenty-two thousand of them.

1 Chronicles 18:6

garrisons

groups of soldiers assigned to particular areas

Yahweh gave victory to David

“Yahweh caused David to be victorious”

Translation Words - ULT

- appoint, appointed
- Yahweh
- David
- deliver, deliverer, deliverance, hand over, turn over, released, rescue
- grain offering
- servant, serve, slave, worker, young man, young women

Translation Words - UST

- appoint, appointed
- Yahweh
- David
- deliver, deliverer, deliverance, hand over, turn over, released, rescue
- grain offering
- servant, serve, slave, worker, young man, young women

ULT

⁶ Then David put garrisons in Aram of Damascus, and the Arameans became servants to him and brought him tribute. Yahweh gave victory to David wherever he went.

UST

⁶ Then David stationed groups of his soldiers in Damascus, and the people of Aram were forced to accept David to be their ruler, and to pay to David's government each year the payment that he demanded. And Yahweh enabled David's army to win battles everywhere they went.

1 Chronicles 18:7

Hadadezer

This was the king of Zobah. See how you translated his name in [1 Chronicles 18:3](#).

that were on Hadadezer's servants

"that Hadadezer's servants carried"

Translation Words - ULT

- [David](#)
- [Jerusalem](#)
- [gold, golden](#)
- [servant, serve, slave, worker, young man, young women](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [David](#)
- [Jerusalem](#)
- [gold, golden](#)
- [servant, serve, slave, worker, young man, young women](#)

ULT

⁷ David took the golden shields that were on Hadadezer's servants and brought them to Jerusalem.

UST

⁷ David soldiers took the gold shields that were carried by the officers of Hadadezer's army and brought them to Jerusalem.

1 Chronicles 18:8

Tebah...Kun

These are the names of cities. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

very much bronze

“a large quantity of bronze”

It was with this bronze that Solomon later made the bronze basin called “The Sea,” the pillars, and the bronze equipment

The writer adds this background information to explain what would happen to this bronze at a later time. (See: [Background Information](#))

the bronze basin called “The Sea,”

This a large bronze bowl, about 5 meters across, that was kept in the temple for ceremonial washing.

Translation Words - ULT

- [David](#)
- [Solomon](#)
- [bronze](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [David](#)
- [Solomon](#)
- [bronze](#)

ULT

⁸ From Tebah and Kun, cities of Hadadezer, David took very much bronze. It was with this bronze that Solomon later made the bronze basin called “The Sea,” the pillars, and the bronze equipment.

UST

⁸ They also brought from Tebah and Kun, two cities that belonged to Hadadezer, a lot of bronze, which David's son Solomon later used to make the huge bronze basin called “The Sea” and the pillars and other bronze items for the temple.

1 Chronicles 18:9

Tou

This is the name of a man. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

Hamath...Zobah

These are the names of places. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [David](#)
- [king](#), [kingdom](#), [kingship](#)
- [king](#), [kingdom](#), [kingship](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [David](#)
- [king](#), [kingdom](#), [kingship](#)
- [king](#), [kingdom](#), [kingship](#)

ULT

⁹ When Tou, king of Hamath, heard that David had defeated all the army of Hadadezer king of Zobah,

UST

⁹ When Tou, the king of the city of Hamath in Aram, heard that David's army had defeated the entire army of King Hadadezer,

1 Chronicles 18:10

Tou...Hadoram

These are the names of men. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

fought against

“been at war with”

Translation Words - ULT

- son
- David
- silver
- king, kingdom, kingship
- gold, golden

Translation Words - UST

- son
- David
- silver
- king, kingdom, kingship
- gold, golden

ULT

10 and so Tou sent Hadoram his son to King David to greet him and to bless him. He did this because David had fought against Hadadezer and defeated him, and because Tou had often been at war with Hadadezer. Tou also sent David many different sorts of articles made of gold and silver and bronze.

UST

10 he sent his son Hadoram to King David, to greet him and congratulate him about his defeating Hadadezer's army, which had been fighting the army of Tou. Hadoram brought to David many items made of gold, silver, and bronze.

1 Chronicles 18:11

set these objects apart to Yahweh

“decided that these objects would only be used to worship Yahweh”

he carried away from all the nations

“David took from all the nations that he defeated”

Translation Words - ULT

- consecrate, consecrated, consecration
- son
- Yahweh
- David
- Edom, Edomite, Idumea
- silver
- nation
- king, kingdom, kingship
- gold, golden

Translation Words - UST

- consecrate, consecrated, consecration
- son
- Yahweh
- David
- Edom, Edomite, Idumea
- silver
- nation
- king, kingdom, kingship
- gold, golden

ULT

11 King David set these objects apart to Yahweh, together with the silver and the gold that he carried away from all the nations: Edom, Moab, the people of Ammon, the Philistines, and Amalek.

UST

11 King David dedicated those thngs to Yahweh, like he had done with the silver and gold that his soldiers had taken from the Edom and Moab people groups, and from the Ammon people group and from the people of Philistia, and from the descendants of Amalek.

1 Chronicles 18:12

Abishai...Zeruiah

These are names of men. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

eighteen thousand Edomites

"18,000 Edomites" (See: [Numbers](#))

Valley of Salt

This is the name of a valley between Edom and Judah that was used as a battlefield.

Translation Words - ULT

- [son](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [son](#)

ULT

¹² Abishai son of Zeruiah killed eighteen thousand Edomites in the Valley of Salt.

UST

¹² The army of David's army commander Abishai, whose mother was Zeruiah, killed eighteen thousand soldiers from Edom in the Valley of Salt.

1 Chronicles 18:13

(There are no notes for this verse.)

Translation Words - ULT

- appoint, appointed
- Yahweh
- David
- deliver, deliverer, deliverance, hand over, turn over, released, rescue
- servant, serve, slave, worker, young man, young women

Translation Words - UST

- appoint, appointed
- Yahweh
- David
- deliver, deliverer, deliverance, hand over, turn over, released, rescue
- servant, serve, slave, worker, young man, young women

ULT

13 He placed garrisons in Edom, and all the Edomites became David's servants. Yahweh gave victory to David wherever he went.

UST

13 Then David stationed groups of his soldiers there in Edom, and the people of Edom were forced to become the servants of David.

1 Chronicles 18:14

over all Israel

“over all the Israelites”

he administered justice and righteousness to all his people

The abstract nouns “justice” and “righteousness” can be translated as adjectives. Alternate translation: “he did what was just and right for all his people” (See: [Abstract Nouns](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- Israel, Israelites
- judge, judgment
- David
- people, people group,
- reign, rule

Translation Words - UST

- Israel, Israelites
- judge, judgment
- David
- people, people group,
- reign, rule

ULT

14 David reigned over all Israel, and he administered justice and righteousness to all his people.

UST

14 David ruled over all the Israelite people, and he always did for them what was just and fair.

1 Chronicles 18:15

Zeruiah...Ahilud

These are names of men. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

recorder

the person who writes down details of special events

Translation Words - ULT

- [son](#)
- [son](#) (2)

Translation Words - UST

- [son](#)
- [son](#) (2)

ULT

¹⁵ Joab son of Zeruiah was the commander of the army, and Jehoshaphat son of Ahilud was recorder.

UST

¹⁵ Joab son of Zeruiah was the chief army commander. Jehoshaphat son of Ahilud was the record keeper.

1 Chronicles 18:16

Ahitub...Abiathar...Shavsha

These are the names of men. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

Ahimelech

This spelling represents a correction of the spelling “Abimelech,” which some versions follow. The corrected spelling makes this verse agree with [2 Samuel 8:17](#).

Translation Words - ULT

- [scribe](#)
- [son](#)
- [son](#) (2)
- [priest, priesthood](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [scribe](#)
- [son](#)
- [son](#) (2)
- [priest, priesthood](#)

ULT

16 Zadok son of Ahitub and Ahimelech son of Abiathar were priests, and Shavsha was scribe.

UST

16 Zadok son of Ahitub and Ahimelech son of Abiathar were priests. Shavsha was the official secretary.

1 Chronicles 18:17

Benaiah...Jehoiada

These are the names of men. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

Kerethites...Pelethites

These are the names of foreign people groups who became David's bodyguards. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [son](#)
- [son](#)
- [David](#)
- [king, kingdom, kingship](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [son](#)
- [son](#)
- [David](#)
- [king, kingdom, kingship](#)

ULT

17 Benaiah son of Jehoiada was over the Kerethites and Pelethites, and David's sons were the chief officials at the hand of the king.

UST

17 Benaiah son of Jehoiada ruled over the Kereth and Peleth groups who were David's bodyguards. And David's sons were his most important officials.

1 Chronicles 19

1 Chronicles 19 General Notes

Structure and formatting

This is the beginning of the story about the war against the Ammonites. This story continues in the first part of the next chapter.

Special concepts in this chapter

Insults

The young king of Ammon insulted David when he had David's servants shaved and cut off their garments. Knowing David was going to attack him for this, he hired mercenaries from Aram to help him. Israel was able to defeat the Aramean mercenaries.

1 Chronicles 19:1

It came about

This phrase is used here to mark the beginning of a new part of the story. If your language has a way for doing this, you could consider using it here.

Nahash

This is the name of a man. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- son
- son
- die, dead, deadly, death,
- reign, rule
- king, kingdom, kingship

Translation Words - UST

- son
- son
- die, dead, deadly, death,
- reign, rule
- king, kingdom, kingship

ULT

¹ It came about later that Nahash, king of the people of Ammon, died, and that his son became king in his place.

UST

¹ Some time later, Nahash, the king of the Ammon people group, died. Then his son Hanun became their king.

1 Chronicles 19:2

Nahash...Hanun

These are names of men. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

I will show kindness...showed kindness

The abstract noun "kindness" can be stated as an action. Alternate translation: "I will be kind...was kind" (See: [Abstract Nouns](#))

console

comfort

Translation Words - ULT

- son
- son
- covenant faithfulness, covenant loyalty, covenant love
- covenant faithfulness, covenant loyalty, covenant love
- David
- David
- David
- ancestor, father, fathered, forefather, grandfather
- ancestor, father, fathered, forefather, grandfather
- messenger
- earth, earthen, earthly
- servant, serve, slave, worker, young man, young women

Translation Words - UST

- son
- son
- covenant faithfulness, covenant loyalty, covenant love
- covenant faithfulness, covenant loyalty, covenant love
- David
- David
- David
- ancestor, father, fathered, forefather, grandfather
- ancestor, father, fathered, forefather, grandfather
- messenger
- earth, earthen, earthly
- servant, serve, slave, worker, young man, young women

ULT

² David said, "I will show kindness to Hanun son of Nahash, because his father showed kindness to me." So David sent messengers to console him concerning his father. David's servants entered the land of the Ammonites and went to Hanun, in order to console him.

UST

² When David heard about that, he thought to himself, "Nahash was kind to me, so I will be kind to his son." So David sent some officials there, to tell Hanun that he was sorry to hear that Hanun's father had died. But when David's officials came to Hanun in the land where the Ammonite lived,

1 Chronicles 19:3

Do you think that David is honoring your father because he has sent men to comfort you?

The princes asked this question to turn the king against David. This question can be translated as a statement. Alternate translation: "You should not think that David is honoring your father because he has sent men to comfort you." (See: [Rhetorical Question](#))

Do not his servants come to you to explore and examine the land in order to overthrow it?

The princes asked this question to turn the king against David. It can be translated as a statement. Alternate translation: "Surely his servants come to you to explore the land in order to overthrow it." (See: [Rhetorical Question](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- son
- David
- ancestor, father, fathered, forefather, grandfather
- comfort, comforts, comforter, uncomfited
- prince, princess, governors, provincial governors, officials, noblemen, nobility
- servant, serve, slave, worker, young man, young women

Translation Words - UST

- son
- David
- ancestor, father, fathered, forefather, grandfather
- comfort, comforts, comforter, uncomfited
- prince, princess, governors, provincial governors, officials, noblemen, nobility
- servant, serve, slave, worker, young man, young women

ULT

³ But the Ammonite princes said to Hanun, "Do you think that David is honoring your father because he has sent men to comfort you? Do not his servants come to you to explore and examine the land in order to overthrow it?"

UST

³ the leaders of the Ammon people group said to Hanun, "Do you think that David is really to honor your father that King David is sending these men to say that he is sorry that your father died? We think that his men have come to look around our city in order to determine how his army can conquer us."

1 Chronicles 19:4

So Hanun seized

Hanun did not do this personally, but ordered his men to do it.
Alternate translation: "So Hanun's men seized" (See: [Metonymy](#))

their garments

"their clothes"

Translation Words - ULT

- [David](#)
- [cut off](#)
- [servant, serve, slave, worker, young man, young women](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [David](#)
- [cut off](#)
- [servant, serve, slave, worker, young man, young women](#)

ULT

⁴ So Hanun seized David's servants, shaved them, cut off their garments to the waist, up to their buttocks, and sent them away.

UST

⁴ Hanun believed what they said; so he commanded some soldiers who seized the officials whom David had sent, and shaved off their beards, and insulted them by cutting off the lower part of their robes, and then sent them away.

1 Chronicles 19:5

he sent to meet with them

“David sent some messengers to encourage them”

deeply ashamed

In this idiom, shame is described as deep to show that it has greatly affected them. Alternate translation: “very ashamed” (See: [Idiom](#))

The king

This refers to David.

then return

“then return to Jerusalem”

Translation Words - ULT

- shame, ashamed, disgrace, humiliate, reproach
- king, kingdom, kingship
- return

Translation Words - UST

- shame, ashamed, disgrace, humiliate, reproach
- king, kingdom, kingship
- return

ULT

⁵ When they explained this to David, he sent to meet with them, for the men were deeply ashamed. The king said, “Stay at Jericho until your beards have grown back, and then return.”

UST

⁵ The officials were greatly humiliated. When David found out about what had happened to his officials, he sent some messengers to them to tell them, “Stay at Jericho until your beards have grown again, and then return home.”

1 Chronicles 19:6

saw that they had become a stench to David

The word “stench” refers to a bad smell. This describes the Ammonites as something unpleasant and unwanted. Alternate translation: “realized that they had become repulsive to David” or “realized that they had angered David” (See: [Metaphor](#))

a thousand talents

“1,000 talents” (See: [Numbers](#))

talents

approximately 33 kilograms (See: [Biblical Money](#))

Naharaim...Maacah...Zobah

These are names of cities. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [son](#)
- [son](#)
- [David](#)
- [silver](#)
- [horseman](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [son](#)
- [son](#)
- [David](#)
- [silver](#)
- [horseman](#)

ULT

⁶ When the Ammonites saw that they had become a stench to David, Hanun and the Ammonites sent a thousand talents of silver to hire Aramean chariots and horsemen from Naharaim, Maacah, and Zobah.

UST

⁶ Then the leaders of the Ammon people group realized that they had greatly insulted David. So Hanun and some of his officials sent thirty-three thousand kilograms of silver to hire chariots and chariot drivers from the regions of Aram Naharaim, Aram Maacah and Zobah northeast of Israel.

1 Chronicles 19:7

thirty-two thousand chariots

“32,000 talents” (See: [Numbers](#))

Maacah...Medeba

These are names of cities. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

thirty-two thousand chariots

It is not clear if the Ammonites paid the entire thousand talents to the king of Maacah, or if they paid him only a portion of that amount and gave the rest to the other cities that sent additional chariots and horsemen.

Translation Words - ULT

- [son](#)
- [people, people group,](#)
- [assembly, assemble, congregation, meeting](#)
- [king, kingdom, kingship](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [son](#)
- [people, people group,](#)
- [assembly, assemble, congregation, meeting](#)
- [king, kingdom, kingship](#)

ULT

⁷ They hired thirty-two thousand chariots and the king of Maacah and his army, who came and encamped before Medeba. Then the Ammonites gathered themselves together from their cities and came out to battle.

UST

⁷ They hired thirty-two thousand chariots and chariot drivers, as well as the kings of the region of Maacah and their armies. They came and set up their tents near the city of Medeba in the region of Moab. The soldiers from the Ammon people group also marched out and stood in their positions at the entrance to their capital city, Rabbah.

1 Chronicles 19:8

heard of it

“heard that the Ammonites were coming out for war”

to meet them

“to fight against them”

Translation Words - ULT

- David
- might, mighty, mighty works

Translation Words - UST

- David
- might, mighty, mighty works

ULT

⁸ When David heard of it, he sent Joab and his entire army to meet them.

UST

⁸ When David heard about that, he sent Joab and all his army.

1 Chronicles 19:9

at the city gate

this refers to the gate of the Ammonite capital city

the kings who had come

this refers to the Aramean kings that the Ammonites hired to help them fight Israel

by themselves in the field

in the field outside the city, separate from the Ammonites

Translation Words - ULT

- command, commandment
- son
- elder, older, old
- king, kingdom, kingship

Translation Words - UST

- command, commandment
- son
- elder, older, old
- king, kingdom, kingship

ULT

⁹ The people of Ammon came out and lined up for battle at the city gate, while the kings who had come were by themselves in the field.

UST

⁹ The soldiers of the Ammon people group came out of their city and lined up for battle at the entrance to their capital city, Rabbah. Meanwhile, the other kings who had come with their armies stood in their positions in the open fields.

1 Chronicles 19:10

the battle lines

“the enemy soldiers lined up for battle”

Translation Words - ULT

- Israel, Israelites
- face, facial
- face, facial

Translation Words - UST

- Israel, Israelites
- face, facial
- face, facial

ULT

10 When Joab saw the battle lines facing him both in front and behind, he chose some of Israel's best fighters and arranged them against the Arameans.

UST

10 Joab saw that there were groups of enemy soldiers in front of his troops and behind his troops. So he selected some of the best Israelite troops and put them in positions to fight against the soldiers of Aram.

1 Chronicles 19:11

put them into battle lines

“arranged his soldiers in lines for battle”

Abishai

This is the name of Joab’s brother. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [brother](#)
- [son](#)
- [hand](#)
- [people, people group,](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [brother](#)
- [son](#)
- [hand](#)
- [people, people group,](#)

ULT

11 As for the rest of the army, he gave it into the command of Abishai his brother, and he put them into battle lines against the army of Ammon.

UST

11 He appointed his older brother Abishai to be the commander of his other soldiers and he told them to stand in their positions in front of the army of the Ammon people group.

1 Chronicles 19:12

(There are no notes for this verse.)

Translation Words - ULT

- son
- deliver, deliverer, deliverance, hand over, turn over, released, rescue
- strength, strengthen, strong
- strength, strengthen, strong

Translation Words - UST

- son
- deliver, deliverer, deliverance, hand over, turn over, released, rescue
- strength, strengthen, strong
- strength, strengthen, strong

ULT

¹² Joab said, "If the Arameans are too strong for me, then you, Abishai, must rescue me. But if the army of Ammon is too strong for you, then I will come and rescue you."

UST

¹² Joab said to them, "If the soldiers from Aram are too strong for us to defeat them, then your soldiers must come and help us. But if the soldiers from the Ammon people group are too strong for you to defeat them, then my soldiers will come and help your men."

1 Chronicles 19:13

Be strong...show ourselves to be strong

"Be brave...behave bravely"

for our people and for the cities of our God

"for the sake of our people and for the cities of our God" or "to protect our people and the cities of our God"

what is good in his eyes

Here sight represents judgment or evaluation. Alternate translation: "what he considers to be good" (See: [Metaphor](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- God
- Yahweh
- good, right, pleasant, pleasing, better, best
- people, people group,
- strength, strengthen, strong

Translation Words - UST

- God
- Yahweh
- good, right, pleasant, pleasing, better, best
- people, people group,
- strength, strengthen, strong

ULT

13 Be strong, and let us show ourselves to be strong for our people and for the cities of our God, for Yahweh will do what is good in his eyes."

UST

13 We must be strong and fight hard to defend our people and our cities that belong to our God. Yahweh will do what he considers to be good."

1 Chronicles 19:14

advanced to the battle

“moved forward to the battle” or “approached the enemy soldiers in the battle”

ULT

14 So Joab and the soldiers of his army advanced to the battle against the Arameans, who were forced to flee before the army of Israel.

UST

14 So Joab and his troops advanced to fight the army of Aram; and the soldiers from Aram were driven away by the army of Israel.

1 Chronicles 19:15

Then Joab returned...and went back to Jerusalem

It does not appear that Joab and his soldiers continued to attack the Ammonites in their city. When the Ammonites went into their city, the battle ended and the Israelites returned home.

Translation Words - ULT

- brother
- son
- Jerusalem
- elder, older, old

Translation Words - UST

- brother
- son
- Jerusalem
- elder, older, old

ULT

15 When the army of Ammon saw that the Arameans had fled, they also fled from Joab's brother Abishai and went back into the city. Then Joab returned from the people of Ammon and went back to Jerusalem.

UST

15 And when the soldiers of the Ammon people group saw that the soldiers from Aram were running away, they also started to run away from Abishai and his army, and they retreated back inside the city. So Joab and his army returned to Jerusalem.

1 Chronicles 19:16

General Information:

Verses 16-19 describes a second battle when the Arameans who fled from Joab in [1 Chronicles 19:15](#) were reinforced by other Arameans and attacked Israel again.

the Arameans saw

What the Arameans understood is spoken of as what they saw.
Alternate translation: "the Arameans understood" (See: [Metonymy](#))

sent for reinforcements

"requested more soliders"

Shophak...Hadadezer

These are names of men. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [command, commandment](#)
- [Israel, Israelites](#)
- [messenger](#)
- [prince, princess, governors, provincial governors, officials, noblemen, nobility](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [command, commandment](#)
- [Israel, Israelites](#)
- [messenger](#)
- [prince, princess, governors, provincial governors, officials, noblemen, nobility](#)

ULT

16 When the Arameans saw that they were being defeated by Israel, they sent for reinforcements from beyond the Euphrates River, with Shophak the commander of Hadadezer's army.

UST

16 After the leaders of the army of Aram realized that they had been defeated by the army of Israel, they sent messengers to another part of Aram on the east side of the Euphrates river, and brought troops from there to the battle area, with Shophak, the commander of Hadadezer's army, leading them.

1 Chronicles 19:17

Connecting Statement:

This verse continues to describe a second battle when the Arameans who fled from Joab in [1 Chronicles 19:15](#) were reinforced by other Arameans and attacked Israel again.

When David was told this

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: "When David's messengers told him that a larger Aramean army was coming" (See: [Active or Passive](#))

he gathered...He arranged

David did not do these things alone. His official and officers helped him. Alternate translation: "David and his officials gathered...David and his officers arranged" (See: [Synecdoche](#))

all Israel

This is a generalization. Not every person in Israel came to fight. Alternate translation: "a very large number of Israelites" (See: [Hyperbole](#))

He arranged

"He organized"

they fought him

Here "him" refers to David's soldiers, in addition to David. Alternate translation: "the Arameans fought David and his soldiers" (See: [Synecdoche](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [Israel, Israelites](#)
- [David](#)
- [preach, preaching, preacher, proclaim, proclamation](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [Israel, Israelites](#)
- [David](#)
- [preach, preaching, preacher, proclaim, proclamation](#)

ULT

17 When David was told this, he gathered all Israel together, crossed the Jordan, and came upon them. He arranged the army for battle against the Arameans, and they fought him.

UST

17 When David heard about that, he gathered all the Israelite soldiers, and they crossed the Jordan River. They advanced and took their battle positions to attack the army of Aram.

1 Chronicles 19:18

Connecting Statement:

This verse continues to describe a second battle when the Arameans who fled from Joab in [1 Chronicles 19:15](#) were reinforced by other Arameans and attacked Israel again.

killed seven thousand...forty thousand

“killed 7,000...40,000” (See: [Numbers](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [Israel, Israelites](#)
- [David](#)
- [prince, princess, governors, provincial governors, officials, noblemen, nobility](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [Israel, Israelites](#)
- [David](#)
- [prince, princess, governors, provincial governors, officials, noblemen, nobility](#)

ULT

18 The Arameans fled from Israel, and David killed seven thousand Aramean charioteers and forty thousand foot soldiers. He also killed Shophak, the commander of the army.

UST

18 But the army of Aram ran away from the soldiers of Israel. However, David's soldiers killed seven thousand of their chariot drivers and forty thousand other soldiers. They also killed Shophak, their army commander.

1 Chronicles 19:19

Connecting Statement:

This verse finishes describing a second battle when the Arameans who fled from Joab in [1 Chronicles 19:15](#) were reinforced by other Arameans and attacked Israel again.

they were defeated by Israel

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: "Israel had defeated them" (See: [Active or Passive](#))

they made peace with David and served them

They made the peace agreement with David as the king, and served the Israelites.

Translation Words - ULT

- [son](#)
- [Israel, Israelites](#)
- [David](#)
- [servant, serve, slave, worker, young man, young women](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [son](#)
- [Israel, Israelites](#)
- [David](#)
- [servant, serve, slave, worker, young man, young women](#)

ULT

19 When all the kings who were servants of Hadadezer saw that they were defeated by Israel, they made peace with David and served them. So the people of Aram were no longer willing to help the Ammonites.

UST

19 When the kings who had been ruled by Hadadezer realized that they had been defeated by the Israelite army, they made peace with David, and agreed to allow him to rule them. So the rulers of Aram did not want to help the rulers of the Ammon people group anymore.

1 Chronicles 20

1 Chronicles 20 General Notes

Structure and formatting

This chapter ends the story of the war with Ammon and tells of giants being killed by David's soldiers.

Special concepts in this chapter

“When kings normally go to war”

It was advantageous for kings to go to war in the springtime. This was possibly due to the weather being neither too hot nor too cold.

Other possible translation difficulties in this chapter

“It came about”

This is a phrase used to indicate the next event in a series. It can often be translated as “after,” “then” or “next.”

1 Chronicles 20:1

It came about

This phrase is used here to mark the beginning of a new part of the story. If your language has a way for doing this, you could consider using it here.

at the time when kings normally go to war

This is background information from the author. It was harder to fight wars in the cold winter, so kings normally waited for spring to attack their enemies. (See: [Background Information](#))

kings normally go to war...Joab led the army into battle

Here “kings” is a metonym that means the kings sent their armies into battle. Joab was the commander of David’s army. Alternate translation: “kings normally send their armies to war...Joab led David’s army into battle” (See: [Metonymy](#))

devastated the land

“destroyed the land.” This refers to when an army will ruin the land where their enemies grow food.

He went and besieged Rabbah

“He” refers to the soldiers as well as Joab. Alternate translation: “Joab and his soldiers surrounded Rabbah” (See: [Metonymy](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [son](#)
- [Jerusalem](#)
- [king, kingdom, kingship](#)
- [earth, earthen, earthly](#)
- [know, knowledge, unknown, distinguish](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [son](#)
- [Jerusalem](#)
- [king, kingdom, kingship](#)
- [earth, earthen, earthly](#)
- [know, knowledge, unknown, distinguish](#)

ULT

¹ It came about in the springtime, at the time when kings normally go to war, that Joab led the army into battle and devastated the land of the Ammonites. He went and besieged Rabbah. David remained in Jerusalem. Joab attacked Rabbah and defeated it.

UST

¹ In that region, kings usually went with their armies to fight their enemies in the springtime. But the following year, David did not do that. Instead, he stayed in Jerusalem, and he sent his commander Joab to lead the army. Joab took his troops. They crossed the Jordan River and ruined the land of the Ammon people group. Then they went to Rabbah, the capital city, and surrounded it. David stayed in Jerusalem for a while. But later he took more troops and went to help Joab. Their armies attacked Rabbah and destroyed it.

1 Chronicles 20:2

talent

about 33 kilograms (See: [Biblical Money](#))

The crown was set on David's head

This can be stated in active form. Possible meanings are 1) David put the crown on his own head or 2) David's men placed the crown on his head. (See: [Active or Passive](#))

he brought out

The word "he" refers to David, but also refers to David's soldiers who helped David do this. (See: [Synecdoche](#))

plunder

valuable items taken in war

Translation Words - ULT

- [David](#)
- [David](#)
- [head](#)
- [head](#)
- [elder, older, old](#)
- [king, kingdom, kingship](#)
- [gold, golden](#)
- [know, knowledge, unknown, distinguish](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [David](#)
- [David](#)
- [head](#)
- [head](#)
- [elder, older, old](#)
- [king, kingdom, kingship](#)
- [gold, golden](#)
- [know, knowledge, unknown, distinguish](#)

ULT

² David took the crown of their king from off his head, and he found that it weighed a talent of gold, and in it were precious stones. The crown was set on David's head, and he brought out the plunder of the city in large quantities.

UST

² Then David took the crown from the head of the king of Rabbah and put it on his own head. It was very heavy; it weighed thirty-three kilograms, and it had many very valuable stones. They also took many other valuable things from the city.

1 Chronicles 20:3

He brought out

The word “He” refers to David, but also refers to David’s soldiers who helped David do this. (See: [Synecdoche](#))

forced them to work with saws and iron picks and axes

These terms describe difficult manual labor that the defeated people were forced to do.

David required all the cities of the people

The people are referred to by their city. Alternate translation: “David required all the peoples of the cities” (See: [Metonymy](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- son
- David
- David
- Jerusalem
- people, people group,
- people, people group,
- return
- know, knowledge, unknown, distinguish

Translation Words - UST

- son
- David
- David
- Jerusalem
- people, people group,
- people, people group,
- return
- know, knowledge, unknown, distinguish

ULT

³ He brought out the people who were in the city and forced them to work with saws and iron picks and axes. David required all the cities of the people of Ammon to do this labor. Then David and all the army returned to Jerusalem.

UST

³ Then they brought the people out of the city and forced them to work for their army, using saws and iron picks and axes. David’s soldiers did this in all the cities of the Ammon people group. Then David and all of his army returned to Jerusalem.

1 Chronicles 20:4

It came about

This phrase is used here to mark the beginning of a new part of the story. If your language has a way for doing this, you could consider using it here.

there was a battle at Gezer with the Philistines

“the Israelites battled the Philistines at Gezer”

Gezer

This is the name of a city. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

Sibbekai...Sippai

These are names of men. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

Hushathite...Rephaim

These are names of people groups. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

the Philistines were subdued

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: “they subdued the Philistines” or “they defeated the Philistines” (See: [Active or Passive](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [Philistines](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [Philistines](#)

ULT

⁴ It came about after this that there was a battle at Gezer with the Philistines. Sibbekai the Hushathite killed Sippai, one of the descendants of the Rephaim, and the Philistines were subdued.

UST

⁴ Later, David's army fought a battle with the army of Philistia, at the city of Gezer. During the battle Sibbekai, from Hushah clan, killed Sippai, one of the descendants of the of the Rapha giants. So the armies of Philistia were defeated.

1 Chronicles 20:5

Gob

This is the name of a city. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

Elhanan...Jair...Lahmi

These are names of men. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

Bethlehemite...Gittite

These are names of people groups. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

staff

a long and thin pole.

the staff of whose spear was like a weaver's beam

A weaver's beam was a very large piece of wood used to stretch strings as the threads of a rug are weaved together around them. This means the handle of Lahmi's spear was very large.

Translation Words - ULT

- [brother](#)
- [son](#)
- [Philistines](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [brother](#)
- [son](#)
- [Philistines](#)

ULT

⁵ It came about again in a battle with the Philistines at Gob, that Elhanan son of Jair the Bethlehemite killed Lahmi brother of Goliath the Gittite, the staff of whose spear was like a weaver's beam.

UST

⁵ In another battle against the soldiers of Philistia, Elhanan son of Jair, killed Lahmi, the younger brother of the giant Goliath from the city of Gath, who had a spear which was as thick as a weaver's rod.

1 Chronicles 20:6

It came about

This phrase is used here to mark the beginning of a new part of the story. If your language has a way for doing this, you could consider using it here.

Rephaim

This is the name given to a race of people who were very tall and strong. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

ULT

⁶ It came about in another battle at Gath that there was a man of great height who had six fingers on each hand and six toes on each foot. He also was descended from the Rephaim.

UST

⁶ There was another battle near Gath. A huge man was there who had six fingers on each hand and six toes on each foot. He was descended from the Rapha giants.

1 Chronicles 20:7

Jehonadab...Shimea

These are names of men.

Translation Words - ULT

- brother
- son
- Israel, Israelites
- David

Translation Words - UST

- brother
- son
- Israel, Israelites
- David

ULT

⁷ When he mocked the army of Israel, Jehonadab son of Shimea, David's brother, killed him.

UST

⁷ When he made fun of the soldiers of Israel, Jehonadab son of Shimea killed him. Shimea was David's older brother.

1 Chronicles 20:8

These were descendants of the Rephaim of Gath

Here “these” refer to Sippai in [1 Chronicles 20:4](#), Lahmi in [1 Chronicles 20:5](#), and the giant in verse 6.

they were killed by the hand of David and by the hand of his soldiers

David and his soldiers are referred to by the part of their bodies used to hold a sword. This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: “David and his soldiers killed the descendants of the Rephaim” (See: [Synecdoche](#) and [Active or Passive](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [David](#)
- [hand](#)
- [hand](#)
- [servant, serve, slave, worker, young man, young women](#)
- [bow, bow down, knelt, bend, bend the knee](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [David](#)
- [hand](#)
- [hand](#)
- [servant, serve, slave, worker, young man, young women](#)
- [bow, bow down, knelt, bend, bend the knee](#)

ULT

⁸ These were descendants of the Rephaim of Gath, and they were killed by the hand of David and by the hand of his soldiers.

UST

⁸ Those were some of the descendants of the Rapha giants who had lived in Gath, who were killed by David and his soldiers.

1 Chronicles 21

1 Chronicles 21 General Notes

Special concepts in this chapter

Trust

To trust in one's own power instead of God's protection is a sin. David had been trusting God to protect him, but now he counted the men of military age so he could know the strength of his army. (See: [trust](#), [trusted](#), [trustworthy](#), [trustworthiness](#) and [sin](#), [sinful](#), [sinner](#), [sinning](#))

1 Chronicles 21:1

An adversary arose against Israel

Possible meanings of “adversary” are 1) this refers to Satan who decided to cause trouble for Israel or 2) this refers to an enemy army that began to threaten Israel.

incited David to count Israel

“caused David to do wrong, to count Israel.” If your language has a word for getting someone to become angry and do something he knows is wrong, you should use it here.

Translation Words - ULT

- [Israel, Israelites](#)
- [Israel, Israelites](#)
- [David](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [Israel, Israelites](#)
- [Israel, Israelites](#)
- [David](#)

ULT

¹ An adversary arose against Israel and incited David to count Israel.

UST

¹ Satan decided to cause the Israelite people to have trouble. So he incited David to find out how many men in Israel were able to be in the army.

1 Chronicles 21:2

count the people of Israel...that I may know their number

It is apparent from [1 Chronicles 21:5](#) that David wanted to count only the men who were able to fight.

from Beersheba to Dan

The Israelites considered these two cities their most southern and most northern cities. David uses these cities to refer to all of Israel. (See: [Merism](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- Israel, Israelites
- David
- people, people group,
- walk, walked
- prince, princess, governors, provincial governors, officials, noblemen, nobility
- know, knowledge, unknown, distinguish

Translation Words - UST

- Israel, Israelites
- David
- people, people group,
- walk, walked
- prince, princess, governors, provincial governors, officials, noblemen, nobility
- know, knowledge, unknown, distinguish

ULT

² David said to Joab and to the commanders of the army, "Go, count the people of Israel from Beersheba to Dan and report back to me, that I may know their number."

UST

² So David commanded Joab and the other army commanders, "Count all the men in Israel who are able to be in the army. Start at Beersheba in the south and go all the way to Dan in the north. Then come back and report to me, in order that I may know how many men there are."

1 Chronicles 21:3

a hundred times greater than it is

Joab expresses the desire for an army the size of 100 armies to say he would like the army to have more soldiers and be more powerful. (See: [Hyperbole](#))

But my master the king, do they not all serve my master? Why does my master want this? Why bring guilt on Israel?

Joab uses these three rhetorical questions to tell David that the census was a bad idea. It appears that David was trusting the size of his army instead of trusting Yahweh, and thus making Israel guilty of sin. These rhetorical questions can be translated as statements. Alternate translation: But my master the king, they all serve you already. My master should not request this. You will only bring guilt on the people of Israel by trusting your military power.” (See: [Rhetorical Question](#))

Why does my master want this?

The word “this” refers to David’s plan to count all the men of Israel.

Translation Words - ULT

- lord, Lord, master, sir
- lord, Lord, master, sir
- Yahweh
- Israel, Israelites
- people, people group,
- king, kingdom, kingship
- seek, search, look for
- servant, serve, slave, worker, young man, young women

Translation Words - UST

- lord, Lord, master, sir
- lord, Lord, master, sir
- Yahweh
- Israel, Israelites
- people, people group,
- king, kingdom, kingship
- seek, search, look for
- servant, serve, slave, worker, young man, young women

ULT

³ Joab said, “May Yahweh make his army a hundred times greater than it is. But my master the king, do they not all serve my master? Why does my master want this? Why bring guilt on Israel?”

UST

³ But Joab replied, “Your Majesty, I hope that Yahweh will make our army a hundred times larger than it is now. But we all serve you. So you should not commit this sin and make Israel suffer for it.”

1 Chronicles 21:4

the king's word was enforced against Joab

"the command of the king prevailed despite Joab's objections"

So Joab left and went throughout all Israel

It is understood from David's command in [1 Chronicles 21:2](#) that Joab went to count the people of Israel. It can be stated clearly. Alternate translation: "So Joab left and went throughout all Israel to count the people" (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- command, commandment
- Israel, Israelites
- Jerusalem
- strength, strengthen, strong
- king, kingdom, kingship

Translation Words - UST

- command, commandment
- Israel, Israelites
- Jerusalem
- strength, strengthen, strong
- king, kingdom, kingship

ULT

⁴ But the king's word was enforced against Joab. So Joab left and went throughout all Israel. Then he came back to Jerusalem.

UST

⁴ But David would not change his mind. So Joab and his soldiers went everywhere in Israel and in Judah, and counted the people. Then they returned to Jerusalem,

1 Chronicles 21:5

1,100,000 men

“one million, one hundred thousand men” (See: [Numbers](#))

men who drew the sword

The soldiers in Israel are described by the action of pulling out a sword to fight with it. Alternate translation: “men who were prepared to serve as soldiers” (See: [Metonymy](#))

470,000 soldiers

“four hundred seventy thousand soldiers” (See: [Numbers](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [Israel, Israelites](#)
- [Judah](#)
- [David](#)
- [people, people group,](#)
- [sword, swordsmen](#)
- [sword, swordsmen](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [Israel, Israelites](#)
- [Judah](#)
- [David](#)
- [people, people group,](#)
- [sword, swordsmen](#)
- [sword, swordsmen](#)

ULT

⁵ Then Joab reported the total of the count of the fighting men to David. There were in Israel 1,100,000 men who drew the sword. Judah alone had 470,000 soldiers.

UST

⁵ and they reported to David that there were 1,100,000 men in Israel who could be in the army, and 470,000 in Judah.

1 Chronicles 21:6

But Levi and Benjamin were not counted among them

The Levites were supposed to lead worship and not to fight. It is unclear why Joab did not count Benjamin. This can be stated in active voice. Alternate translation: "But Joab did not count the men from the tribes of Levi and Benjamin" (See: [Active or Passive](#))

the king's command had disgusted Joab

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: "Joab was offended by what David had commanded" (See: [Active or Passive](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [command, commandment](#)
- [Benjamin, Benjamite](#)
- [king, kingdom, kingship](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [command, commandment](#)
- [Benjamin, Benjamite](#)
- [king, kingdom, kingship](#)

ULT

⁶ But Levi and Benjamin were not counted among them, for the king's command had disgusted Joab.

UST

⁶ However, Joab did not count the men from the tribes of Levi and Benjamin, because he was disgusted with what the king had commanded.

1 Chronicles 21:7

by this action

Here “this action” refers to David’s plan to count all the men of Israel who are able to fight.

so he attacked Israel

The nature of this attack is not clear. It was apparently enough to cause David to realize that Yahweh was angry with him for counting the people.

Translation Words - ULT

- God
- Israel, Israelites

Translation Words - UST

- God
- Israel, Israelites

ULT

⁷ God was offended by this action, so he attacked Israel.

UST

⁷ David’s command to count the people caused God to become angry, so he told David that he had decided to punish the people of Israel.

1 Chronicles 21:8

take away your servant's guilt

This is an idiom. Forgiveness is here spoken of as having guilt taken away. Alternate translation: "forgive me" (See: [Idiom](#))

your servant's guilt

David refers to himself as God's servant. Alternate translation: "my guilt" (See: [First, Second or Third Person](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [sin](#), [sinful](#), [sinner](#), [sinning](#)
- [God](#)
- [iniquity](#)
- [transgress](#), [transgression](#)
- [David](#)
- [servant](#), [serve](#), [slave](#), [worker](#), [young man](#), [young women](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [sin](#), [sinful](#), [sinner](#), [sinning](#)
- [God](#)
- [iniquity](#)
- [transgress](#), [transgression](#)
- [David](#)
- [servant](#), [serve](#), [slave](#), [worker](#), [young man](#), [young women](#)

ULT

⁸ David said to God, "I have greatly sinned by doing this. Now take away your servant's guilt, for I have acted very foolishly."

UST

⁸ Then David prayed to God. He said to him, "What I did was very foolish. I have sinned greatly by what I have done. So now I plead with you, please forgive me."

1 Chronicles 21:9

(There are no notes for this verse.)

Translation Words - ULT

- Yahweh
- David

Translation Words - UST

- Yahweh
- David

ULT

⁹ Yahweh told Gad, David's prophet,

UST

⁹ Then Yahweh said to Gad, David's prophet,

1 Chronicles 21:10

(There are no notes for this verse.)

Translation Words - ULT

- Yahweh
- David
- walk, walked

Translation Words - UST

- Yahweh
- David
- walk, walked

ULT

10 "Go say to David, 'This is what Yahweh says: I am giving you three choices. Choose one of them.'"

UST

10 "Go and tell this to David: 'I am allowing you to choose one of three things to punish you. I will do whichever one you choose.'"

1 Chronicles 21:11

(There are no notes for this verse.)

Translation Words - ULT

- [Yahweh](#)
- [David](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [Yahweh](#)
- [David](#)

ULT

11 So Gad went to David and said to him, “Yahweh says this, ‘Choose one of these:

UST

11 So Gad went to David and said to him, “This is what Yahweh says: ‘You can choose one of these punishments:

1 Chronicles 21:12

being caught by their swords

Here “their swords” represents death in battle. Alternate translation: “being killed by them in battle” (See: [Metonymy](#))

Yahweh’s sword, that is, a plague in the land

Here the plague is spoken of as Yahweh’s sword because the “sword” is a metonym for death. (See: [Metonymy](#))

destroying throughout all the land

“killing people who live in every part of the land”

I should take to the one who sent me

The one who sent him was Yahweh. This can be stated explicitly. Alternate translation: “I should take to Yahweh who sent me” (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- Yahweh
- Yahweh
- restore, restoration
- Israel, Israelites
- adversary, enemy
- adversary, enemy
- sword, swordsmen
- famine

Translation Words - UST

- Yahweh
- Yahweh
- restore, restoration
- Israel, Israelites
- adversary, enemy
- adversary, enemy
- sword, swordsmen
- famine

ULT

¹² either three years of famine, three months being pursued by your enemies and being caught by their swords, or else three days of Yahweh’s sword, that is, a plague in the land, with the angel of Yahweh destroying throughout all the land of Israel.’ Now then, decide what answer I should take to the one who sent me.”

UST

¹² three years of famine in Israel, or three months during which your armies will run away from their enemies who will attack them with swords, or three days during which I will send my angel to cause many people in the country to die because of a plague.’ So you must decide what I will say to answer Yahweh, the one who sent me.”

1 Chronicles 21:13

Let me fall into the hand of Yahweh rather than into the hand of man

Here “hand” represents power to harm or punish Israel. Alternate translation: “Let me be punished by Yahweh, rather than be punished by people” (See: [Metonymy](#))

Let me fall

The people of Israel are the ones who would die from the plague, but David is personalizing this judgment as if he himself was being killed.

hand of man

Here “man” is used in the generic sense of “people.”

his merciful actions are very great

“Yahweh is very merciful”

Translation Words - ULT

- [Yahweh](#)
- [David](#)
- [hand](#)
- [hand](#)
- [adversary, enemy](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [Yahweh](#)
- [David](#)
- [hand](#)
- [hand](#)
- [adversary, enemy](#)

ULT

13 Then David said to Gad, “I am in great distress! Let me fall into the hand of Yahweh rather than into the hand of man, for his merciful actions are very great.”

UST

13 David replied to Gad, “I am very distressed. But allow Yahweh to punish me, because he is very merciful. Do not allow humans to punish me, because they will not be merciful.”

1 Chronicles 21:14

on Israel

Here Israel is a metonym that represents the people of Israel. (See: [Metonymy](#))

seventy thousand people died

“70,000 people died” (See: [Numbers](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- Yahweh
- Israel, Israelites
- Israel, Israelites
- bow, bow down, knelt, bend, bend the knee

Translation Words - UST

- Yahweh
- Israel, Israelites
- Israel, Israelites
- bow, bow down, knelt, bend, bend the knee

ULT

14 So Yahweh sent a plague on Israel, and seventy thousand people died.

UST

14 So Yahweh sent a plague on the people of Israel, and seventy thousand of them died because of it.

1 Chronicles 21:15

changed his mind about the harm

Here “mind” represents his decision. Alternate translation: “decided not to destroy Jerusalem” (See: [Metonymy](#))

Enough!

This exclamation means “You have killed enough people!” (See: [Exclamations](#))

draw back your hand

This is an idiom that means to stop doing something. Alternate translation: “do not kill attack the people of Jerusalem” (See: [Idiom](#))

Ornan

This is the name of a man. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [God](#)
- [appoint, appointed](#)
- [Yahweh](#)
- [Yahweh \(2\)](#)
- [evil, wicked, unpleasant](#)
- [Jerusalem](#)
- [Jebus, Jebusite](#)
- [hand](#)
- [thresh](#)
- [messenger](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [God](#)
- [appoint, appointed](#)
- [Yahweh](#)
- [Yahweh \(2\)](#)
- [evil, wicked, unpleasant](#)
- [Jerusalem](#)
- [Jebus, Jebusite](#)
- [hand](#)
- [thresh](#)
- [messenger](#)

ULT

15 God sent an angel to Jerusalem to destroy it. As he was about to destroy it, Yahweh watched and changed his mind about the harm. He said to the destroying angel, “Enough! Now draw back your hand.” At that time the angel of Yahweh was standing at the threshing floor of Ornan the Jebusite.

UST

15 And God sent an angel to destroy the people in Jerusalem by the plague. But when the angel was standing at the ground where Ornan, from the Jebus people group, threshed grain, Yahweh saw all the suffering that the people had endured, and he was grieved. So he said to the angel, “Stop what you are doing! That is enough!”

1 Chronicles 21:16

standing between earth and heaven

This is symbolic language to indicate that the angel was sent from Yahweh in heaven to judge the people on the earth. (See: [Symbolic Language](#))

having a drawn sword in his hand raised over Jerusalem

The angel holding a sword in his hand is a symbolic action that shows he is ready to attack Jerusalem. This is symbolic, because the judgment was sickness. Alternate translation: "holding a sword in his hand as if ready to attack Jerusalem" (See: [Symbolic Action](#))

clothed in sackcloth, lay facedown on the ground

These were symbols of repentance. (See: [Symbolic Action](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [heaven, sky, heavens, heavenly](#)
- [appoint, appointed](#)
- [Yahweh](#)
- [David](#)
- [David](#)
- [Jerusalem](#)
- [hand](#)
- [sackcloth](#)
- [messenger](#)
- [elder, older, old](#)
- [face, facial](#)
- [bow, bow down, knelt, bend, bend the knee](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [heaven, sky, heavens, heavenly](#)
- [appoint, appointed](#)
- [Yahweh](#)
- [David](#)
- [David](#)
- [Jerusalem](#)
- [hand](#)
- [sackcloth](#)
- [messenger](#)
- [elder, older, old](#)
- [face, facial](#)
- [bow, bow down, knelt, bend, bend the knee](#)

ULT

16 David looked up and saw the angel of Yahweh standing between earth and heaven, having a drawn sword in his hand raised over Jerusalem. Then David and the elders, clothed in sackcloth, lay facedown on the ground.

UST

16 David looked up and saw the angel whom Yahweh had sent, standing between the sky and the ground. The angel had a sword in his hand that was pointed toward Jerusalem. Then David and the elders of the city, who were wearing clothes made of rough sackcloth, prostrated themselves on the ground.

1 Chronicles 21:17

Is it not I that commanded that the army be numbered?

David uses this question to emphasize that he is the one who sinned by counting the people. Alternate translation: "I am the one who commanded that the army be numbered." (See: [Rhetorical Question](#))

But these sheep

David speaks of the people of Israel as if they were sheep, who are known for trusting and following their leader. (See: [Metaphor](#))

what have they done?

David uses this question to ask God not to punish the people. This rhetorical question can be translated as a statement. Alternate translation: "they certainly have done nothing that deserves punishment." (See: [Rhetorical Question](#))

Let your hand strike me and my family

Here "hand" represents Yahweh's power to punish. Alternate translation: "Punish me and my family" (See: [Metonymy](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- sin, sinful, sinner, sinning
- God
- God
- Yahweh
- David
- ancestor, father, fathered, forefather, grandfather
- hand
- people, people group,
- afflict, affliction, distress
- ewe, ram, sheep, sheepfold, sheepshearers, sheepskins

Translation Words - UST

- sin, sinful, sinner, sinning
- God
- God
- Yahweh
- David
- ancestor, father, fathered, forefather, grandfather
- hand
- people, people group,
- afflict, affliction, distress
- ewe, ram, sheep, sheepfold, sheepshearers, sheepskins

ULT

17 David said to God, "Is it not I that commanded that the army be numbered? I did this wicked thing. But these sheep, what have they done? Yahweh my God! Let your hand strike me and my family, but do not let the plague remain on your people."

UST

17 David said to God, "I am the one who ordered the men who could be in the army to be counted. I am the one who has sinned and done what is very wrong, but these people are as innocent as sheep. They have certainly not done anything that is wrong. So Yahweh my God, punish me and my family, but do not allow this plague to continue to cause your people to become sick and die."

1 Chronicles 21:18

David should go up

This is a reference to elevation. This threshing floor which became the future site of the temple was the highest point in Jerusalem.

Ornan

See how you translated this man's name in [1 Chronicles 21:15](#).

Translation Words - ULT

- altar
- Yahweh
- Yahweh
- David
- Jebus, Jebusite
- confirm, confirmation, legal

Translation Words - UST

- altar
- Yahweh
- Yahweh
- David
- Jebus, Jebusite
- confirm, confirmation, legal

ULT

18 So the angel of Yahweh commanded Gad to say to David, that David should go up and build an altar for Yahweh at the threshing floor of Ornan the Jebusite.

UST

18 Then the angel who was sent by Yahweh told Gad to go up to the place where Ornan threshed grain and tell David to build an altar to worship Yahweh there.

1 Chronicles 21:19

David went up

This is a reference to elevation. This threshing floor which became the future site of the temple was the highest point in Jerusalem.

as Gad instructed him to do in the name of Yahweh

Speaking “in the name of Yahweh” means speaking with his power and authority, or as his representative. Alternate translation: “as Gad, speaking for Yahweh, instructed David to do” (See: [Metonymy](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [Yahweh](#)
- [name](#)
- [David](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [Yahweh](#)
- [name](#)
- [David](#)

ULT

19 So David went up as Gad instructed him to do in the name of Yahweh.

UST

19 So after Gad told David, he obeyed the message that Yahweh had given to Gad, and he went up there.

1 Chronicles 21:20

hid themselves

They were afraid of the angel. This can be made explicit. Alternate translation: "hid themselves because they were afraid of the angel" (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [son](#)
- [wheat](#)
- [return](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [son](#)
- [wheat](#)
- [return](#)

ULT

²⁰ While Ornan was threshing wheat, he turned and saw the angel. He and his four sons with him hid themselves.

UST

²⁰ While Ornan was threshing some wheat, he turned and saw the angel. His four sons who were with him also saw the angel, and they hid themselves.

1 Chronicles 21:21

with his face to the ground

This phrase describes that Ornan bowed far forward. To bow before someone is a way to show humility and respect. A deeper bow shows greater humility and respect. Alternate translation: “bowed very low to the ground” (See: [Symbolic Action](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [command](#), [commandment](#)
- [prostrate](#), [worship](#)
- [David](#)
- [David](#)
- [thresh](#)
- [earth](#), [earthen](#), [earthly](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [command](#), [commandment](#)
- [prostrate](#), [worship](#)
- [David](#)
- [David](#)
- [thresh](#)
- [earth](#), [earthen](#), [earthly](#)

ULT

21 When David came to Ornan, Ornan looked and saw David. He left the threshing floor and bowed to David with his face to the ground.

UST

21 Then David approached. When Ornan saw him, he left the place where he was threshing grain and prostrated himself, with his face touching the ground.

1 Chronicles 21:22

full price

"I will pay the full price for what this threshing floor is worth"

Translation Words - ULT

- altar
- Yahweh
- David
- silver
- people, people group,
- thresh

Translation Words - UST

- altar
- Yahweh
- David
- silver
- people, people group,
- thresh

ULT

22 Then David said to Ornan, "Sell me this threshing floor, so I can build an altar for Yahweh. I will pay the full price, so that the plague may be removed from the people."

UST

22 David said to him, "Please sell me this place for threshing in order that I can build an altar here to worship Yahweh, in order that he will stop this plague. I will pay the full price."

1 Chronicles 21:23

Take it as your own

This implies that David should take the land without paying for it. Alternate translation: "Take it as a gift" (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

what is good in your sight

David's understanding is described as his sight. Alternate translation: "whatever you decide to do with it" (See: [Metonymy](#))

threshing sledges

These are wooden sleds with rocks or metal fitted underneath, dragged by oxen over the grain on the threshing floor to separate the grain from its stalks. (See: [Translate Unknowns](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- lord, Lord, master, sir
- good, right, pleasant, pleasing, better, best
- David
- sacrifice, sacrifices, offering
- king, kingdom, kingship

Translation Words - UST

- lord, Lord, master, sir
- good, right, pleasant, pleasing, better, best
- David
- sacrifice, sacrifices, offering
- king, kingdom, kingship

ULT

23 Ornan said to David, "Take it as your own, my master the king. Do with it what is good in your sight. Look, I will give you oxen for burnt offerings, threshing sledges for wood, and wheat for the grain offering; I will give it all to you."

UST

23 Ornan replied, "Take it! Your Majesty, do whatever you want to. I will give you the oxen that thresh the grain for an offering to be completely burned on the altar. And I will give you the threshing boards to use as wood on the altar, and I will give you flour for a flour offering. I will give all those things to you."

1 Chronicles 21:24

full price

See how you translated this in [1 Chronicles 21:22](#).

Translation Words - ULT

- redeem, redeemer, redemption
- redeem, redeemer, redemption
- Yahweh
- David
- silver
- king, kingdom, kingship
- burnt offering, offering by fire

Translation Words - UST

- redeem, redeemer, redemption
- redeem, redeemer, redemption
- Yahweh
- David
- silver
- king, kingdom, kingship
- burnt offering, offering by fire

ULT

24 King David said to Ornan, "No, I insist on buying it for the full price. I will not take what is yours and offer it as a burnt offering to Yahweh if it costs me nothing."

UST

24 But the king said to Ornan, "No, I will not take these things as a gift. I will pay you the full price for it. I will not take what belongs to you, and offer sacrifices that have cost me nothing and offer them to Yahweh to be completely burned on the altar."

1 Chronicles 21:25

six hundred shekels of gold

“600 shekels of gold” (See: [Numbers](#))

shekels

a unit of weight equal to about 11 grams (See: [Biblical Money](#))

for the place

“to buy the threshing floor”

Translation Words - ULT

- [David](#)
- [gold, golden](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [David](#)
- [gold, golden](#)

ULT

25 So David paid six hundred shekels of gold for the place.

UST

25 So David paid to Ornan six and one-half kilograms of gold for the whole area.

1 Chronicles 21:26

He called on Yahweh

“He prayed for help to Yahweh”

who answered him with fire from heaven on the altar for burnt offerings

“who answered him by sending fire from heaven to the altar where David would offer the burnt offerings”

Translation Words - ULT

- heaven, sky, heavens, heavenly
- altar
- altar
- Yahweh
- Yahweh
- David
- fire, firebrands, firepans, fireplace, firepot
- burnt offering, offering by fire
- declare, proclaim, announce

Translation Words - UST

- heaven, sky, heavens, heavenly
- altar
- altar
- Yahweh
- Yahweh
- David
- fire, firebrands, firepans, fireplace, firepot
- burnt offering, offering by fire
- declare, proclaim, announce

ULT

²⁶ David built an altar for Yahweh there and offered on it burnt offerings and fellowship offerings. He called on Yahweh, who answered him with fire from heaven on the altar for burnt offerings.

UST

²⁶ David built an altar to worship Yahweh there, and he offered sacrifices to be completely burned on the altar and sacrifices to restore fellowship with Yahweh. David prayed to Yahweh, and Yahweh answered by sending a fire from heaven to burn up the offerings on the altar.

1 Chronicles 21:27

the angel put his sword back into its sheath

The angel putting his sword back in the sheath is a symbolic action to show that he would not continue to kill the people. Alternate translation: the angel put his sword in its sheath to show that he would stop killing the people" (See: [Symbolic Action](#))

sheath

cover for a sword or knife

Translation Words - ULT

- [Yahweh](#)
- [sword, swordsmen](#)
- [return](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [Yahweh](#)
- [sword, swordsmen](#)
- [return](#)

ULT

27 Then Yahweh gave an order to the angel, and the angel put his sword back into its sheath.

UST

27 Then Yahweh spoke to the angel, and told him to put his sword back into its sheath. So the angel did that.

1 Chronicles 21:28

Ornan

Translate his name as in [1 Chronicles 21:15](#).

Translation Words - ULT

- testimony, testify, witness, eyewitness
- Yahweh
- David
- Jebus, Jebusite

Translation Words - UST

- testimony, testify, witness, eyewitness
- Yahweh
- David
- Jebus, Jebusite

ULT

28 When David saw that Yahweh had answered him at the threshing floor of Ornan the Jebusite, he performed the sacrifice there at that same time.

UST

28 And when David saw that Yahweh had answered him there at the place where Ornan threshed grain and had ended the plague, he offered sacrifices there.

1 Chronicles 21:29

Now at that time

Verses 29-30 are background information to explain why David offered this sacrifice at the threshing floor instead of on the altar at the tabernacle. (See: [Background Information](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [Yahweh](#)
- [Moses](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [Yahweh](#)
- [Moses](#)

ULT

29 Now at that time, Yahweh's tabernacle, which Moses had made in the wilderness, and the altar for burnt offerings, were at the high place at Gibeon.

UST

29 Yahweh's sacred tent, which Moses had commanded to be set up in the wilderness, and the altar for burning sacrifices completely, were at that time on a hill at the city of Gibeon.

1 Chronicles 21:30

Verses 29-30 are background information to explain why David offered this sacrifice at the threshing floor instead of on the altar at the tabernacle. (See: [Background Information](#))

to ask for God's direction

"to ask God to tell him what he should do"

afraid of the sword of the angel of Yahweh

Here "sword" represents being killed by the angel of Yahweh. Alternate translation: "afraid he would be killed by the angel of Yahweh" (See: [Metonymy](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [God](#)
- [Yahweh](#)
- [David](#)
- [messenger](#)
- [sword, swordsmen](#)
- [seek, search, look for](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [God](#)
- [Yahweh](#)
- [David](#)
- [messenger](#)
- [sword, swordsmen](#)
- [seek, search, look for](#)

ULT

³⁰ However, David could not go there to ask for God's direction, because he was afraid of the sword of the angel of Yahweh.

UST

³⁰ But David did not want to go there to request God to tell him what he wanted David to do, because he was afraid that the angel sent from Yahweh might strike him with his sword; he realized that this was the place that Yahweh now wanted sacrifices to be made.

1 Chronicles 22

1 Chronicles 22 General Notes

Structure and formatting

This chapter begins a new section lasting for the remainder of the book. David begins preparing the things needed for building the temple. (See: [temple](#))

Special concepts in this chapter

Solomon

In addition to preparing for the construction of the temple by gathering supplies, David also prepares his son, Solomon, to build the temple. David instructs Solomon to obey God. This is what is most necessary.

1 Chronicles 22:1

This is where

"This threshing floor is where"

Translation Words - ULT

- altar
- God
- Yahweh
- Israel, Israelites
- David
- house

Translation Words - UST

- altar
- God
- Yahweh
- Israel, Israelites
- David
- house

ULT

¹ Then David said, "This is where the house of Yahweh God will be, with the altar for the burnt offerings of Israel."

UST

¹ Then David said, "Here, at the edge of Jerusalem, is where we will build the temple for our God Yahweh, and where we will make the altar for burning the offerings that the Israelite people will bring."

1 Chronicles 22:2

stonecutters

persons who gathered large stones and cut them to the correct size so builders could use the rocks in walls and buildings

Translation Words - ULT

- God
- Israel, Israelites
- David
- house

Translation Words - UST

- God
- Israel, Israelites
- David
- house

ULT

² So David ordered his servants to gather together the foreigners living in the land of Israel. He assigned them to be stonecutters, to cut stone blocks, in order to build God's house.

UST

² So David commanded that the foreigners who lived in Israel must gather together. When they did that, he appointed some of those men to cut huge stones from the quarries and to smooth their surfaces, to be used to build the temple of God.

1 Chronicles 22:3

braces

items that connect two things together. "clamps" or "hinges"

more bronze than could be weighed

This is an exaggeration to show that there was a very large quantity of bronze. This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: "so much bronze that no one could weigh it" (See: [Active or Passive](#) and [Hyperbole](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [David](#)
- [gate](#), [gate bars](#), [gatekeeper](#), [gateposts](#), [gateway](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [David](#)
- [gate](#), [gate bars](#), [gatekeeper](#), [gateposts](#), [gateway](#)

ULT

³ David supplied a large amount of iron for the nails for the doors to go in the gateways, and for braces. He also supplied more bronze than could be weighed,

UST

³ David provided a large amount of iron for making nails and hinges for the doors in the gates of the temple. He also provided a huge amount of bronze for making various utensils; and because there was a huge amount of it, no one could weigh it all.

1 Chronicles 22:4

more cedar trees than could be counted

This is an exaggeration to show that there was a very large number of cedar trees. This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: "so many cedar trees that no one could count them" (See: [Active or Passive](#) and [Hyperbole](#))

The Sidonians and the Tyrians brought too many cedar logs to David to count

This is background information to explain who provided so many logs. (See: [Background Information](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- cedar, cedarwood
- cedar, cedarwood

Translation Words - UST

- cedar, cedarwood
- cedar, cedarwood

ULT

⁴ and more cedar trees than could be counted. (The Sidonians and the Tyrians brought too many cedar logs to David to count.)

UST

⁴ He also provided money for buying a large amount of cedar logs. Because there was a huge number of them, no one counted them. Those were logs that men from Tyre and Sidon cities sent to David.

1 Chronicles 22:5

the house that is to be built for Yahweh

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: “the house that he will build for Yahweh” (See: [Active or Passive](#))

so that it will be famous and glorious in all other lands

Here the word “lands” refers to the people who lived there. Alternate translation: “so that people in every other land will know about it and think that it is glorious” (See: [Metonymy](#))

prepare for its building

“prepare to build it”

Translation Words - ULT

- [son](#)
- [Yahweh](#)
- [David](#)
- [David](#)
- [Solomon](#)
- [servant, serve, slave, worker, young man, young women](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [son](#)
- [Yahweh](#)
- [David](#)
- [David](#)
- [Solomon](#)
- [servant, serve, slave, worker, young man, young women](#)

ULT

⁵ David said, “My son Solomon is young and inexperienced, and the house that is to be built for Yahweh must be especially magnificent, so that it will be famous and glorious in all other lands. So I will prepare for its building.” So David made extensive preparations before his death.

UST

⁵ David provided all those things because he thought, “My son Solomon is still young and he does not know what he needs to know about building buildings, and the temple of Yahweh must be magnificent. It must be a glorious building that will become famous, and people throughout the world must consider it to be glorious. So now I will begin to prepare for it to be built, and Solomon will be responsible for finishing it.” So David collected a great amount of building materials before he died.

1 Chronicles 22:6

he called

"David called"

commanded him to build

The readers should understand that David intended for laborers to do the actual work. Alternate translation: "commanded him to oversee the building of" (See: [Metonymy](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [command, commandment](#)
- [son](#)
- [God](#)
- [Yahweh](#)
- [Israel, Israelites](#)
- [declare, proclaim, announce](#)
- [house](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [command, commandment](#)
- [son](#)
- [God](#)
- [Yahweh](#)
- [Israel, Israelites](#)
- [declare, proclaim, announce](#)
- [house](#)

ULT

⁶ Then he called for Solomon his son and commanded him to build a house for Yahweh, the God of Israel.

UST

⁶ Then David summoned his son Solomon, and told him that he should arrange for a temple to be built for Yahweh, the God whom the Israelites worshiped.

1 Chronicles 22:7

it was my intention to build a house myself

The readers should understand that David intended for laborers to do the actual work. Alternate translation: “it was my intention to oversee the building of the house myself” (See: [Metonymy](#))

it was my intention

“I intended”

to build a house myself

The reflexive “myself” means that David originally planned to build the temple. Alternate translation: “that I would be the one to build the temple” (See: [Reflexive Pronouns](#))

for the name of Yahweh my God

Here “name” represents God’s honor. Alternate translation: “in order to honor Yahweh my God” (See: [Metonymy](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [son](#)
- [God](#)
- [heart](#)
- [Yahweh](#)
- [David](#)
- [house](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [son](#)
- [God](#)
- [heart](#)
- [Yahweh](#)
- [David](#)
- [house](#)

ULT

⁷ David said to Solomon, “My son, it was my intention to build a house myself, for the name of Yahweh my God.

UST

⁷ He said to him, “I wanted to build a temple to honor Yahweh, my God.

1 Chronicles 22:8

shed much blood

Here the killing of people is spoken of as shedding their blood, where “blood” represents their lives. Alternate translation: “killed many people” (See: [Metonymy](#))

for my name

Here “name” represents God’s honor. Alternate translation: “to honor me” (See: [Metonymy](#))

you have shed...in my sight

Here “sight” refers to what God has seen. Alternate translation: “I have seen that you have shed much blood on the earth” (See: [Metonymy](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- blood
- blood
- Yahweh
- earth, earthen, earthly
- house

Translation Words - UST

- blood
- blood
- Yahweh
- earth, earthen, earthly
- house

ULT

⁸ But Yahweh came to me and said, ‘You have shed much blood and have fought many battles. You will not build a house for my name, because you have shed much blood on the earth in my sight.’

UST

⁸ But Yahweh told a prophet to tell me, ‘You have killed many men in the big battles that you have fought. I have seen the blood of all the people whom you killed, so you will not be the one who will arrange for a temple to be built to honor me.’

1 Chronicles 22:9

Connecting Statement:

David continues telling Solomon what Yahweh said to him.

be a peaceful man

“live at peace with everyone”

give him rest from all his enemies

“cause there to be peace between him and all his enemies”

on every side

This means in every place surrounding Israel.

For his name will be Solomon

The name “Solomon” sounds like the Hebrew word for “peace.” This can be made explicit. Alternate translation: “His name will be Solomon, which sounds like the word for peace” (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

in his days

“while he rules”

Translation Words - ULT

- son
- name
- Israel, Israelites
- Solomon
- adversary, enemy
- rest, rested, restless
- rest, rested, restless

Translation Words - UST

- son
- name
- Israel, Israelites
- Solomon
- adversary, enemy
- rest, rested, restless
- rest, rested, restless

ULT

⁹ However, you will have a son who will be a peaceful man. I will give him rest from all his enemies on every side. For his name will be Solomon, and I will give peace and quiet to Israel in his days.

UST

⁹ But you will have a son who will be king of Israel after you die. He will be a man who is peaceful and quiet, not a man who kills others. And I will cause that there will be peace between him and his enemies who are in all the nearby lands. His name will be Solomon, which sounds like the word for peace. During the time that he is king, people in Israel will be peaceful and safe.

1 Chronicles 22:10

Connecting Statement:

David finishes telling Solomon what Yahweh said to him.

a house for my name

Here “name” refers to honor. Alternate translation: “a temple to honor me” (See: [Metonymy](#))

He will be my son, and I will be his father

God will treat Solomon as if he were God’s own son. (See: [Metaphor](#))

I will establish the throne of his kingdom over Israel forever

Here “throne” refers to the authority to rule as king. Alternate translation: “I will make his descendants rule over Israel forever” (See: [Metonymy](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- son
- Israel, Israelites
- ancestor, father, fathered, forefather, grandfather
- throne, enthroned
- kingdom
- house

Translation Words - UST

- son
- Israel, Israelites
- ancestor, father, fathered, forefather, grandfather
- throne, enthroned
- kingdom
- house

ULT

10 He will build a house for my name. He will be my son, and I will be his father. I will establish the throne of his kingdom over Israel forever.’

UST

10 He is the one who will arrange for a temple to be built to honor me. He will be like a son to me, and I will cause some of his descendants to rule over Israel forever.’

1 Chronicles 22:11

Connecting Statement:

David continues speaking to Solomon.

Now

David uses this word to introduce something important he is about to say.

May you build

Solomon would not personally do the building, but he would direct others to do it. Alternate translation: “May you direct people to build” (See: [Metonymy](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- son
- God
- Yahweh
- Yahweh
- prosper, prosperity, prosperous
- house

Translation Words - UST

- son
- God
- Yahweh
- Yahweh
- prosper, prosperity, prosperous
- house

ULT

11 Now, my son, may Yahweh be with you and enable you to succeed. May you build the house of Yahweh your God, as he said you would.

UST

11 So now, my son, I hope that Yahweh will help you, and enable you to be successful in arranging for building the temple of Yahweh, your God, which is what he said that you would do.

1 Chronicles 22:12

Connecting Statement:

David continues speaking to Solomon.

when he places you in charge over Israel

“when he makes you king of Israel”

Translation Words - ULT

- command, commandment
- God
- law of Moses, God’s law, law of Yahweh, the law
- Yahweh
- Yahweh
- Israel, Israelites
- understand, understanding, thinking

Translation Words - UST

- command, commandment
- God
- law of Moses, God’s law, law of Yahweh, the law
- Yahweh
- Yahweh
- Israel, Israelites
- understand, understanding, thinking

ULT

¹² Only may Yahweh give you insight and understanding, so that you may obey the law of Yahweh your God, when he places you in charge over Israel.

UST

¹² I also hope that he will enable you to be wise and to understand what you need to know, and enable you to obey his laws while you rule over Israel.

1 Chronicles 22:13

Connecting Statement:

David continues speaking to Solomon.

Be strong and courageous...Do not fear or be discouraged

These two sentences mean the same thing, stated in different ways in order to emphasize that Solomon should not be afraid. (See: [Parallelism](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- fear, afraid, dread
- command, commandment
- Yahweh
- Israel, Israelites
- Moses
- prosper, prosperity, prosperous
- statute
- strength, strengthen, strong
- ordinance, regulations, requirements, strict law, customs
- watch, watchman, watchful, guard, take heed, beware, watch out

Translation Words - UST

- fear, afraid, dread
- command, commandment
- Yahweh
- Israel, Israelites
- Moses
- prosper, prosperity, prosperous
- statute
- strength, strengthen, strong
- ordinance, regulations, requirements, strict law, customs
- watch, watchman, watchful, guard, take heed, beware, watch out

ULT

13 Then you will succeed, if you carefully obey the statutes and the decrees that Yahweh gave to Moses concerning Israel. Be strong and courageous. Do not fear or be discouraged.

UST

13 If you carefully obey all the laws and decrees which Yahweh told Moses to tell Israel to do, you will be successful. Be strong and courageous. Do not be afraid of anything, and do not become discouraged!

1 Chronicles 22:14

Connecting Statement:

David continues speaking to Solomon.

Now, see, at great

The words "Now, see" introduce something important David is about to say. Alternate translation: "Listen! At great"

at great effort I have prepared

"I have worked hard to prepare"

100,000 talents

"one hundred thousand talents" (See: [Numbers](#))

talents

about 33 kilograms (See: [Biblical Money](#))

one million

"1,000,000" (See: [Numbers](#))

You must add more to all this

"You will need to increase that amount"

Translation Words - ULT

- [Yahweh](#)
- [silver](#)
- [gold, golden](#)
- [house](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [Yahweh](#)
- [silver](#)
- [gold, golden](#)
- [house](#)

ULT

14 Now, see, at great effort I have prepared for Yahweh's house 100,000 talents of gold, one million talents of silver, and bronze and iron in large quantities. I have also provided timber and stone. You must add more to all this.

UST

14 I have tried hard to provide materials for building the temple of Yahweh. I have provided 3,300 metric tons of gold, 33,000 metric tons of silver. I have also provided a very large amount of iron and bronze, no one has been able to weigh it all. I have also gathered lumber and stone for the walls of the temple, but you may need to get some more of those things.

1 Chronicles 22:15

Connecting Statement:

David continues speaking to Solomon.

stonecutters, masons

These are both workers who cut stone and prepare it for builders to use in walls and buildings.

carpenters

persons who work with wood

skillful craftsmen without number of every kind

Here "without number" is an exaggeration to emphasize that there were a large number of them. Alternate translation: "a very large number of every kind of skillful craftsmen" (See: [Hyperbole](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [wise men, advisor](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [wise men, advisor](#)

ULT

15 You have many workmen with you: stonecutters, masons, carpenters, and skillful craftsmen without number of every kind,

UST

15 There are many men in Israel who have good ability to cut big stones for making stone walls, and carpenters, and men who are very skilled at making various kinds of things.

1 Chronicles 22:16

Connecting Statement:

David finishes speaking to Solomon.

may Yahweh be with you

This is an idiom that implies that Yahweh will help Solomon be successful in the project. (See: [Idiom](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [Yahweh](#)
- [gold, golden](#)
- [decree, decreed](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [Yahweh](#)
- [gold, golden](#)
- [decree, decreed](#)

ULT

16 who can work with gold, silver, bronze, and iron. Arise and begin the work, and may Yahweh be with you."

UST

16 There are many men who know how to make things from gold and silver and bronze and iron. So now I say to you, begin the work of building the temple, and I hope that Yahweh will be with you."

1 Chronicles 22:17

(There are no notes for this verse.)

Translation Words - ULT

- command, commandment
- son
- Israel, Israelites
- David
- prince, princess, governors, provincial governors, officials, noblemen, nobility

Translation Words - UST

- command, commandment
- son
- Israel, Israelites
- David
- prince, princess, governors, provincial governors, officials, noblemen, nobility

ULT

17 David also ordered all the leaders of Israel to help Solomon his son, saying,

UST

17 Then David commanded that all the Israelite leaders must assist Solomon. He said to them,

1 Chronicles 22:18

Yahweh your God is with you

This is an idiom that implies that Yahweh will help Israel to prosper. (See: [Idiom](#))

your...you

Here these pronouns are plural. (See: [Forms of You](#))

has given you peace on every side

“has caused all the nations who live around Israel to live peacefully with you”

He has given the region’s inhabitants into my hand

Here “hand” refers to power to defeat his enemies. Alternate translation: “He has given me power over everyone who lives around us” (See: [Metonymy](#))

The region is subdued before Yahweh and his people

This can be stated in active form. “The other nations no longer attack Yahweh and his people” (See: [Active or Passive](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- God
- Yahweh
- Yahweh
- hand
- people, people group,
- rest, rested, restless

Translation Words - UST

- God
- Yahweh
- Yahweh
- hand
- people, people group,
- rest, rested, restless

ULT

18 “Yahweh your God is with you and has given you peace on every side. He has given the region’s inhabitants into my hand. The region is subdued before Yahweh and his people.

UST

18 “Yahweh our God is certainly with you. He has allowed you to have peace with all the nearby nations. He has enabled my army to conquer them, so now Yahweh and my people control them.

1 Chronicles 22:19

Connecting Statement:

David continues speaking to all the leaders of Israel.

Now

This word introduces something important that David is about to say.

seek Yahweh your God

Seeking Yahweh represents either 1) asking God for help or 2) thinking about God and obeying him. (See: [Metaphor](#))

your...you

Here these pronouns are plural. (See: [Forms of You](#))

with all your heart and your soul

Here “heart” and “soul” refer to the whole person. Alternate translation: “with your whole being” (See: [Synecdoche](#))

Get up and build the holy place

It is understood that Solomon will not do the work personally, but he will direct others to do it. Alternate translation: “Get up and direct the workers as they build the holy place” (See: [Metonymy](#))

the house built for Yahweh’s name

Here “name” refers to honor. This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: “the temple you will build to honor Yahweh” (See: [Metonymy](#) and [Active or Passive](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [holy](#), [holiness](#), [unholy](#), [sacred](#)
- [God](#)
- [God](#)
- [God](#)
- [heart](#)
- [covenant](#)
- [Yahweh](#)
- [Yahweh](#)
- [Yahweh](#)
- [Yahweh](#)
- [seek](#), [search](#), [look for](#)
- [house](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [holy](#), [holiness](#), [unholy](#), [sacred](#)
- [God](#)

ULT

19 Now seek Yahweh your God with all your heart and your soul. Get up and build the holy place of Yahweh God. Then you can bring the ark of the covenant of Yahweh and the things that belong to God into the house built for Yahweh’s name.”

UST

19 Now you must obey Yahweh with your entire inner beings. Help Solomon to arrange for building the temple for Yahweh God, in order that you can bring the sacred chest that contains the Ten Commandments and the other sacred items that belong to Yahweh into the temple that you will build to honor him.”

- God
- God
- heart
- covenant
- Yahweh
- Yahweh
- Yahweh
- Yahweh
- seek, search, look for
- house

1 Chronicles 23

1 Chronicles 23 General Notes

Structure and formatting

The preparation for the construction of the temple continues in this chapter. (See: [temple](#))

Special concepts in this chapter

Organizing the Levites

As priests, the Levites had a significant role in the construction of the temple. David organized the Levites according to their families and explained what each group was to do. (See: [priest](#), [priesthood](#))

1 Chronicles 23:1

General Information:

David appoints Solomon as his successor and organizes Levitical priests and staff for temple service.

Translation Words - ULT

- son
- Israel, Israelites
- Solomon
- reign, rule

Translation Words - UST

- son
- Israel, Israelites
- Solomon
- reign, rule

ULT

¹ When David was old and near the end of his life, he made Solomon his son king over Israel.

UST

¹ David was a very old man when he appointed his son Solomon to be the next king.

1 Chronicles 23:2

(There are no notes for this verse.)

Translation Words - ULT

- Israel, Israelites
- priest, priesthood
- Levi, Levite, Levitical
- prince, princess, governors, provincial governors, officials, noblemen, nobility

Translation Words - UST

- Israel, Israelites
- priest, priesthood
- Levi, Levite, Levitical
- prince, princess, governors, provincial governors, officials, noblemen, nobility

ULT

² He gathered together all the leaders of Israel, with the priests and Levites.

UST

² David gathered the leaders of Israel and the priests and other descendants of Levi.

1 Chronicles 23:3

The Levites who were thirty years old and older were counted

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: “Some of David’s men counted the Levites who were 30 years old and older” (See: [Active or Passive](#))

They numbered thirty-eight thousand

“There were 38,000 of them” (See: [Numbers](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [son](#)
- [Levi](#), [Levite](#), [Levitical](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [son](#)
- [Levi](#), [Levite](#), [Levitical](#)

ULT

³ The Levites who were thirty years old and older were counted. They numbered thirty-eight thousand.

UST

³ He commanded some of his officials to count the descendants of Levi who were at least thirty years old, and they found out that there were thirty-eight thousand of them.

1 Chronicles 23:4

Of these, twenty-four thousand

"Of these Levities, 24,000" (See: [Numbers](#))

six thousand

"6,000 Levites" (See: [Numbers](#))

officers and judges

These Levites listened to legal arguments and administered justice according to the law of Moses.

four thousand

"4,000 Levites" (See: [Numbers](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [Yahweh](#)
- [judge, judgment](#)
- [oversee, overseer](#)
- [house](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [Yahweh](#)
- [judge, judgment](#)
- [oversee, overseer](#)
- [house](#)

ULT

⁴ "Of these, twenty-four thousand were to oversee the work of Yahweh's house, and six thousand were officers and judges.

UST

⁴ Then David said, "From those thirty-eight thousand men, I want twenty-four thousand of them to supervise the work at the temple of Yahweh, and I want six thousand of them to be officials and judges.

1 Chronicles 23:5

gatekeepers

These Levites guarded the temple entrance so no person who was ceremonially unclean entered.

Translation Words - ULT

- Yahweh
- praise, praised, praiseworthy

Translation Words - UST

- Yahweh
- praise, praised, praiseworthy

ULT

⁵ Four thousand were gatekeepers, and four thousand were to praise Yahweh with the instruments that I made to give praise," David said.

UST

⁵ I want four thousand to be guards at the gates, and four thousand to praise Yahweh, using the musical instruments that I have provided for them."

1 Chronicles 23:6

that corresponded to

“based on” or “according to the descendants of”

Gershon, Kohath, and Merari

These are names of Levi’s sons. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [son](#)
- [David](#)
- [Levi](#), [Levite](#), [Levitical](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [son](#)
- [David](#)
- [Levi](#), [Levite](#), [Levitical](#)

ULT

⁶ He divided them into groups that corresponded to Levi’s sons: Gershon, Kohath, and Merari.

UST

⁶ David divided the descendants of Levi into three groups; each group consisted of men who were descendants of one of the three sons of Levi—Gershon, Kohath, and Merari.

The descendants of Gershon are listed next.

1 Chronicles 23:7

General Information:

This is the list of Levites according to their clans. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

ULT

⁷ From the clans descended from Gershon, there were Ladan and Shimei.

UST

⁷ The descendants of Gershon were Ladan and Shimei.

1 Chronicles 23:8

This continues the list of Levites according to their clans. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [son](#)
- [chief](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [son](#)
- [chief](#)

ULT

⁸ There were three of Ladan's sons: Jehiel the leader, Zetham, and Joel.

UST

⁸ There were three sons of Ladan: Jehiel was the oldest, and his younger brothers Zetham and Joel.

1 Chronicles 23:9

This continues the list of Levites according to their clans. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- son
- ancestor, father, fathered, forefather, grandfather
- head

Translation Words - UST

- son
- ancestor, father, fathered, forefather, grandfather
- head

ULT

⁹ There were three of Shimei's sons: Shelomoth, Haziël, and Haran. These were the leaders of the clans of Ladan.

UST

⁹ There were three of the sons of Shimei: Shelomoth, Haziël, and Haran. They were all leaders of the clans of Ladan.

1 Chronicles 23:10

This continues the list of Levites according to their clans. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- son
- son

Translation Words - UST

- son
- son

ULT

¹⁰ There were four of Shimei's sons: Jahath, Ziza, Jeush, and Beriah.

UST

¹⁰ There were four men who were sons of Shimei:

1 Chronicles 23:11

This continues the list of Levites according to their clans. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

the oldest...the second

The word “son” is understood. Also, “second” is in ordinal form. Alternate translation: “the oldest son...the second son” (See: [Ellipsis](#) and [Ordinal Numbers](#))

so they were considered as one clan

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: “so David considered them to be one clan” (See: [Active or Passive](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [son](#)
- [ancestor, father, fathered, forefather, grandfather](#)
- [chief](#)
- [house](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [son](#)
- [ancestor, father, fathered, forefather, grandfather](#)
- [chief](#)
- [house](#)

ULT

¹¹ Jahath was the oldest, and Ziza the second, but Jeush and Beriah did not have many sons, so they were considered as one clan with the same duties.

UST

¹¹ Jahath, who was his oldest son, and his younger brothers Ziza, Jeush, and Beriah. Jeush and Beriah did not have many sons, so they were counted as though they were one family.

The descendants of Kohath are listed next.

1 Chronicles 23:12

This continues the list of Levites according to their clans. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

There were four of Kohath's sons

"Kohath had 4 sons"

Translation Words - ULT

- [son](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [son](#)

ULT

¹² There were four of Kohath's sons: Amram, Izhar, Hebron, and Uzziel.

UST

¹² Kohath had four sons: Amram, Izhar, Hebron, and Uzziel.

1 Chronicles 23:13

This continues the list of Levites according to their clans. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

Aaron was chosen to set apart the most holy things

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: "Yahweh chose Aaron to dedicate the most holy things" (See: [Active or Passive](#))

to give blessings in his name forever

Here "in his name" refers to the authority to speak as his representative. Alternate translation: "to bless the people as representatives of God forever" (See: [Metonymy](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- son
- son
- holy, holiness, unholy, sacred
- holy, holiness, unholy, sacred
- set apart
- set apart
- Yahweh
- name
- Aaron
- Aaron

Translation Words - UST

- son
- son
- holy, holiness, unholy, sacred
- holy, holiness, unholy, sacred
- set apart
- set apart
- Yahweh
- name
- Aaron
- Aaron

ULT

¹³ These were Amram's sons: Aaron and Moses. Aaron was chosen to set apart the most holy things, that he and his descendants would offer incense before Yahweh, to serve him and to give blessings in his name forever.

UST

¹³ There were two sons of Amram: Aaron and Moses. Aaron and his descendants were set apart to dedicate to Yahweh the very holy things, to offer sacrifices to Yahweh, to serve in his presence, and to declare to the people what Yahweh would do to bless them. They were to do those things forever.

1 Chronicles 23:14

his sons were considered to be Levites

The sons of Aaron were the most important Levite clan, but the sons of Moses were also considered to be Levites. This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: “the people considered Moses’ sons to be part of the Levite clan” (See: [Active or Passive](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- call, call out
- son
- God
- Levi, Levite, Levitical

Translation Words - UST

- call, call out
- son
- God
- Levi, Levite, Levitical

ULT

14 But as for Moses the man of God, his sons were considered to be Levites.

UST

14 The sons of Moses, the man who served God well, were counted as part of the tribe of Levi. They are listed next.

1 Chronicles 23:15

This continues the list of Levites according to their clans. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [son](#)
- [Moses](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [son](#)
- [Moses](#)

ULT

15 Moses' sons were Gershom and Eliezer.

UST

15 The sons of Moses were Gershom and Eliezer.

1 Chronicles 23:16

This continues the list of Levites according to their clans. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [son](#)
- [chief](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [son](#)
- [chief](#)

ULT

16 Gershom's descendant was Shubael the oldest.

UST

16 The oldest son of Gershom was Shubael.

1 Chronicles 23:17

This continues the list of Levites according to their clans. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- son
- son
- son
- chief

Translation Words - UST

- son
- son
- son
- chief

ULT

¹⁷ Eliezer's descendant was Rehabiah. Eliezer had no other sons, but Rehabiah had many descendants.

UST

¹⁷ Rehabiah was the oldest son of Eliezer. Eliezer had no other sons, but Rehabiah had many sons.

1 Chronicles 23:18

This continues the list of Levites according to their clans. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [son](#)
- [chief](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [son](#)
- [chief](#)

ULT

¹⁸ Izhar's son was Shelomith the leader.

UST

¹⁸ The oldest son of Izhar was Shelomith.

1 Chronicles 23:19

This continues the list of Levites according to their clans. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

the oldest...the second...the third...the fourth

The word “son” is understood. Also, these numbers are in ordinal form. Alternate translation: “the oldest son...the second son...the third son...the fourth son” (See: [Ellipsis](#) and [Ordinal Numbers](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [son](#)
- [chief](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [son](#)
- [chief](#)

ULT

¹⁹ Hebron’s descendants were Jeriah, the oldest, Amariah the second, Jahaziel the third, and Jekameam the fourth.

UST

¹⁹ Hebron had four sons. Jeriah was his oldest son, and his younger brothers were Amariah, Jahaziel, and Jekameam.

1 Chronicles 23:20

This continues the list of Levites according to their clans. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

the oldest...the second

The word “son” is understood. Also, “second” is in ordinal form. Alternate translation: “the oldest son...the second son” (See: [Ellipsis](#) and [Ordinal Numbers](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [son](#)
- [chief](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [son](#)
- [chief](#)

ULT

²⁰ Uzziel's sons were Micah the oldest, and Ishijah the second.

UST

²⁰ Uzziel had two sons. Micah was the oldest son, and his younger brother was Isshiah.

The descendants of Merari are listed next.

1 Chronicles 23:21

This continues the list of Levites according to their clans. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- son
- son

Translation Words - UST

- son
- son

ULT

²¹ Merari's sons were Mahli and Mushi. Mahli's sons were Eleazar and Kish.

UST

²¹ Merari had two sons: Mahli and Mushi. The sons of Mahli were Eleazar and Kish.

1 Chronicles 23:22

This continues the list of Levites according to their clans. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- brother
- son
- son
- die, dead, deadly, death,

Translation Words - UST

- brother
- son
- son
- die, dead, deadly, death,

ULT

²² Eleazar died without having any sons. He had only daughters. The sons of Kish married them.

UST

²² Eleazar had no sons; he had only daughters. So their cousins, the sons of Kish, married them.

1 Chronicles 23:23

This ends the list of Levites according to their clans. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [son](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [son](#)

ULT

²³ Mushi's three sons were Mahli, Eder, and Jerimoth.

UST

²³ The three sons of Mushi were Mahli, Eder, and Jerimoth.

1 Chronicles 23:24

These were Levi's descendants corresponding to their clans. They were the leaders, counted and listed by name, of the clans

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: "These were the names of Levi's descendants and their families, whom David's men counted and listed. They were the leaders of the clans" (See: [Active or Passive](#))

from twenty years old and upward

"from 20 years old and older" (See: [Numbers](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- son
- son
- Yahweh
- name
- Levi, Levite, Levitical
- ancestor, father, fathered, forefather, grandfather
- ancestor, father, fathered, forefather, grandfather
- head
- servant, serve, slave, worker, young man, young women
- house
- house

Translation Words - UST

- son
- son
- Yahweh
- name
- Levi, Levite, Levitical
- ancestor, father, fathered, forefather, grandfather
- ancestor, father, fathered, forefather, grandfather
- head
- servant, serve, slave, worker, young man, young women
- house
- house

ULT

²⁴ These were Levi's descendants corresponding to their clans. They were the leaders, counted and listed by name, of the clans that did the work in the service of Yahweh's house, from twenty years old and upward.

UST

²⁴ Those were the descendants of Levi, whose names were listed according to their families. They were chosen for special jobs by casting lots. Each person who was at least twenty years old was listed. They all worked in the temple of Yahweh.

1 Chronicles 23:25

has given rest

Here “rest” refers to peace with surrounding nations. See how you translated a similar phrase in [1 Chronicles 22:9](#).

He makes his home in Jerusalem forever

Possible meanings are 1) Yahweh will be present in Jerusalem forever or 2) Yahweh’s temple will be present in Jerusalem forever.

Translation Words - ULT

- God
- Yahweh
- Israel, Israelites
- David
- Jerusalem
- people, people group,
- rest, rested, restless

Translation Words - UST

- God
- Yahweh
- Israel, Israelites
- David
- Jerusalem
- people, people group,
- rest, rested, restless

ULT

²⁵ For David said, “Yahweh, the God of Israel, has given rest to his people. He makes his home in Jerusalem forever.

UST

²⁵ David had said previously, “Yahweh, the God to whom we Israelite people belong, has enabled us to have peace, and he has come to live in Jerusalem forever.

1 Chronicles 23:26

all the equipment used in its service

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: "all the equipment they used in its service"

Translation Words - ULT

- Levi, Levite, Levitical
- servant, serve, slave, worker, young man, young women

Translation Words - UST

- Levi, Levite, Levitical
- servant, serve, slave, worker, young man, young women

ULT

²⁶ The Levites will no longer need to carry the tabernacle and all the equipment used in its service."

UST

²⁶ Therefore, the descendants of Levi no longer need to carry the sacred tent and the items used in the work there."

1 Chronicles 23:27

For by David's last words the Levites were counted

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: "For David's last command was for his men to count the Levites" (See: [Active or Passive](#))

from twenty years old and upward

"who were 20 years old and older." See how you translated this phrase in [1 Chronicles 23:24](#). (See: [Numbers](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- son
- son
- David
- Levi, Levite, Levitical

Translation Words - UST

- son
- son
- David
- Levi, Levite, Levitical

ULT

27 For by David's last words the Levites were counted, from twenty years old and upward.

UST

27 Obeying the final instructions of David before he died, instructions for doing this work at the temple, they counted only the descendants of Levi who were at least twenty years old.

1 Chronicles 23:28

(There are no notes for this verse.)

Translation Words - ULT

- son
- holy, holiness, unholy, sacred
- God
- Yahweh
- Aaron
- servant, serve, slave, worker, young man, young women
- house
- house

Translation Words - UST

- son
- holy, holiness, unholy, sacred
- God
- Yahweh
- Aaron
- servant, serve, slave, worker, young man, young women
- house
- house

ULT

²⁸ Their duty was to assist Aaron's descendants in the service of Yahweh's house. They were to care for the courtyards, the rooms, the ceremonial purification of all the things that belong to Yahweh, and other work in the service of God's house.

UST

²⁸ The work of those descendants of Levi was to assist the descendants of Aaron in their work in Yahweh's temple. They were to be in charge of the temple courtyards and the side rooms, the ceremonies for purifying all the sacred things, and to do other work at the temple.

1 Chronicles 23:29

bread of the presence

See the Translation Word page about "bread" for the specific definition of "bread of the presence." See how you translated this in [1 Chronicles 9:32](#).

flour

grain that is ground into a powder

Translation Words - ULT

- [sacrifice](#), [sacrifices](#), [offering](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [sacrifice](#), [sacrifices](#), [offering](#)

ULT

²⁹ They also took care of the bread of the presence, the fine flour for grain offerings, the unleavened wafers, the baked offerings, the offerings mixed with oil, and all the measuring of the amounts and sizes of things.

UST

²⁹ They were also in charge of the loaves of bread on display before God, the loaves that were placed each week on the table in the temple, the flour for the flour offerings, and the wafers that were made without yeast. They also had to measure the ingredients, mix them, and bake the bread and wafers.

1 Chronicles 23:30

They also stood

“The Levites also stood at the temple”

Translation Words - ULT

- Yahweh

Translation Words - UST

- Yahweh

ULT

³⁰ They also stood every morning to thank and praise Yahweh. They also did this in the evening

UST

³⁰ They were also told to stand every morning at the temple and thank Yahweh and praise him. They were also required to do the same thing every evening.

1 Chronicles 23:31

whenever burnt offerings were offered to Yahweh

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: “whenever the priests offered burnt offerings to Yahweh” (See: [Active or Passive](#))

new moon festivals

These holidays marked the beginning of each new month.

A fixed number, assigned by decree, always had to be present before Yahweh

“A specific number of the Levites were always assigned to be present at the temple to make offerings to Yahweh”

Translation Words - ULT

- [Yahweh](#)
- [Yahweh](#)
- [ordinance, regulations, requirements, strict law, customs](#)
- [burnt offering, offering by fire](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [Yahweh](#)
- [Yahweh](#)
- [ordinance, regulations, requirements, strict law, customs](#)
- [burnt offering, offering by fire](#)

ULT

³¹ and whenever burnt offerings were offered to Yahweh, on the Sabbath and at the new moon festivals and feast days. A fixed number, assigned by decree, always had to be present before Yahweh.

UST

³¹ And they were to do the same thing whenever offerings that were to be completely burned on the altar were presented to Yahweh on Sabbath days and during the new moon celebrations and other religious festivals. They were told how many of them should be there and what they should do each time.

1 Chronicles 23:32

They were in charge of

"The Levites were responsible for"

Translation Words - ULT

- brother
- son
- holy, holiness, unholy, sacred
- Yahweh
- Aaron
- feast, feasting
- servant, serve, slave, worker, young man, young women
- house

Translation Words - UST

- brother
- son
- holy, holiness, unholy, sacred
- Yahweh
- Aaron
- feast, feasting
- servant, serve, slave, worker, young man, young women
- house

ULT

³² They were in charge of the tent of meeting, the holy place, and helped their fellow descendants of Aaron in the service of Yahweh's house.

UST

³² So the descendants of Levi did the work that was assigned to them by their fellow Israelites who were descendants of Aaron. They did that work at the sacred tent and in the holy place inside the tent, and later at the temple.

1 Chronicles 24

1 Chronicles 24 General Notes

Structure and formatting

The preparation for the temple continues in this chapter. (See: [temple](#))

Special concepts in this chapter

Arranging the priests

David arranged for the order in which priests would be on duty. (See: [priest](#), [priesthood](#))

1 Chronicles 24:1

General Information:

This chapter describes how the Levites in the previous chapter were divided into work groups with different assignments.

Nadab, Abihu, Eleazar and Ithamar

Translate the names of these men as in [1 Chronicles 6:3](#).

Translation Words - ULT

- son
- son
- Aaron
- Aaron

Translation Words - UST

- son
- son
- Aaron
- Aaron

ULT

¹ The work groups based on Aaron's descendants were these: Nadab, Abihu, Eleazar and Ithamar.

UST

¹ These are the divisions of the descendants of Aaron the first high priest: Aaron's four sons were Nadab, Abihu, Eleazar, and Ithamar.

1 Chronicles 24:2

(There are no notes for this verse.)

Translation Words - ULT

- son
- ancestor, father, fathered, forefather, grandfather
- die, dead, deadly, death,

Translation Words - UST

- son
- ancestor, father, fathered, forefather, grandfather
- die, dead, deadly, death,

ULT

² Nadab and Abihu died before their father died. They had no children, so Eleazar and Ithamar served as priests.

UST

² But Nadab and Abihu died before their father died, and they had no children. So their younger brothers Eleazar and Ithamar became the priests.

1 Chronicles 24:3

Ahimelech

This is the name of a man. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

divided them into groups

“divided the descendants of Eleazar and Ithamar into groups”

Translation Words - ULT

- [son](#)
- [son](#) (2)
- [David](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [son](#)
- [son](#) (2)
- [David](#)

ULT

³ David, together with Zadok, a descendant of Eleazar, and Ahimelech, a descendant of Ithamar, divided them into groups for their work as priests.

UST

³ Zadok, who was a descendant of Eleazar, and Ahimelech, who was a descendant of Ithamar, helped David to separate the family groups into two groups. Each group had certain duties.

1 Chronicles 24:4

they divided

“David, Zadok, and Ahimelech divided”

sixteen groups

“16 groups” (See: [Numbers](#))

heads of clans

Here “heads” is a metaphor for the more important people—the leaders of the clans. Alternate translation: “leaders of the clans” (See: [Metaphor](#))

These divisions were eight in number, corresponding to their clans

“There were 8 divisions based on the clans of Ithamar’s descendants”

Translation Words - ULT

- [son](#)
- [son](#)
- [son](#)
- [son](#)
- [ancestor, father, fathered, forefather, grandfather](#)
- [ancestor, father, fathered, forefather, grandfather](#)
- [head](#)
- [house](#)
- [house](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [son](#)
- [son](#)
- [son](#)
- [son](#)
- [ancestor, father, fathered, forefather, grandfather](#)
- [ancestor, father, fathered, forefather, grandfather](#)
- [head](#)
- [house](#)
- [house](#)

ULT

⁴ There were more leading men among Eleazar’s descendants than among Ithamar’s descendants, so they divided Eleazar’s descendants into sixteen groups. They did this by heads of clans and by Ithamar’s descendants. These divisions were eight in number, corresponding to their clans.

UST

⁴ There were more leaders among the descendants of Eleazar than there were among the descendants of Ithamar. So they appointed sixteen leaders from Eleazar’s descendants and eight leaders from Ithamar’s descendants.

1 Chronicles 24:5

They divided them impartially by lot

"They divided them by lot so that the divisions would be fair"

Translation Words - ULT

- son
- holy, holiness, unholy, sacred
- God
- prince, princess, governors, provincial governors, officials, noblemen, nobility
- prince, princess, governors, provincial governors, officials, noblemen, nobility

Translation Words - UST

- son
- holy, holiness, unholy, sacred
- God
- prince, princess, governors, provincial governors, officials, noblemen, nobility
- prince, princess, governors, provincial governors, officials, noblemen, nobility

ULT

⁵ They divided them impartially by lot, for there were holy officials and officials of God, from both Eleazar's descendants and Ithamar's descendants.

UST

⁵ There were temple officials and priests who were there, including descendants of both Eleazar and Ithamar, to make sure that the work was divided fairly. So they decided what work each group would do by casting lots.

1 Chronicles 24:6

Shemaiah

This is the name of a man. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

Nethanel

See how you translated this man's name in [1 Chronicles 15:24](#).

Ahimelech

See how you translated this man's name in [1 Chronicles 18:16](#).

One clan was drawn by lot from Eleazar's descendants, and then the next would be drawn from Ithamar's descendants

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: "They chose one by lot from Eleazar's descendants, then they would choose by lot one from Ithamar's descendants" (See: [Active or Passive](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [scribe](#)
- [son](#)
- [son](#)
- [priest, priesthood](#)
- [priest, priesthood](#)
- [Levi, Levite, Levitical](#)
- [ancestor, father, fathered, forefather, grandfather](#)
- [ancestor, father, fathered, forefather, grandfather](#)
- [head](#)
- [king, kingdom, kingship](#)
- [prince, princess, governors, provincial governors, officials, noblemen, nobility](#)
- [house](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [scribe](#)
- [son](#)
- [son](#)
- [priest, priesthood](#)
- [priest, priesthood](#)
- [Levi, Levite, Levitical](#)
- [ancestor, father, fathered, forefather, grandfather](#)
- [ancestor, father, fathered, forefather, grandfather](#)
- [head](#)
- [king, kingdom, kingship](#)
- [prince, princess, governors, provincial governors, officials, noblemen, nobility](#)
- [house](#)

ULT

⁶ Shemaiah son of Nethanel the scribe, a Levite, wrote down their names in the presence of the king, the officials, Zadok the priest, Ahimelech son of Abiathar, and the leaders of the priestly and Levite families. One clan was drawn by lot from Eleazar's descendants, and then the next would be drawn from Ithamar's descendants.

UST

⁶ Shemaiah son of Nethanel, who was a descendant of Levi, wrote down the names of the leaders of each group while David and his officials were watching. Zadok, the high priest, and Ahimelech his assistant, and the leaders of the families of the priests and of the families of the other descendants of Levi also watched.

1 Chronicles 24:7

General Information:

This begins a list of 24 lots that were cast to decide how the descendants of Eleazar and Ithamar would be divided into groups for their work as priests. This list ends in [1 Chronicles 24:18](#).

The first lot...the second

“Lot number 1...lot number 2.” This shows the order in which the families were chosen by lots. If this is unnatural in your language you may use “The initial” for “The first” and “the next” for all of the following ones. (See: [Ordinal Numbers](#))

Jehoiarib...Jedaiah

See how you translated the names of these men in [1 Chronicles 9:10](#). (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

the second

This refers to the second lot. The word “lot” may be supplied here. Alternate translation: “the second lot” or “lot number 2” (See: [Ordinal Numbers](#) and [Ellipsis](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [command](#), [commandment](#)
- [lots](#), [casting lots](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [command](#), [commandment](#)
- [lots](#), [casting lots](#)

ULT

⁷ The first lot went to Jehoiarib, the second to Jedaiah,

UST

⁷ Jehoiarib was the first one whose name was selected by casting lots. Next Jedaiah was selected.

1 Chronicles 24:8

Connecting Statement:

This continues the list begun in [1 Chronicles 24:7](#) of 24 lots that were cast to decide how the descendants of Eleazar and Ithamar would be divided into groups for their work as priests.

the third...the fourth

This refers to the third and fourth lots. The word “lot” may be supplied here. Alternate translation: “the third lot...the fourth lot” or “lot number 3...lot number 4” (See: [Ordinal Numbers](#) and [Ellipsis](#))

Harim...Seorim

These are names of men. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

ULT

⁸ the third to Harim, the fourth to Seorim,

UST

⁸ Next, Harim was selected. Next, Seorim was selected.

1 Chronicles 24:9

Connecting Statement:

This continues the list begun in [1 Chronicles 24:7](#) of 24 lots that were cast to decide how the descendants of Eleazar and Ithamar would be divided into groups for their work as priests.

the fifth...the sixth

This refers to the fifth and sixth lots. The word “lot” may be supplied here. Alternate translation: “the fifth lot...the sixth lot” or “lot number 5...lot number 6” (See: [Ordinal Numbers](#) and [Ellipsis](#))

Malkijah...Mijamin

These are names of men. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

ULT

⁹ the fifth to Malkijah, the sixth to Mijamin,

UST

⁹ Next, Malkijah was selected. Next, Mijamin was selected.

1 Chronicles 24:10

Connecting Statement:

This continues the list begun in [1 Chronicles 24:7](#) of 24 lots that were cast to decide how the descendants of Eleazar and Ithamar would be divided into groups for their work as priests.

the seventh...the eighth

This refers to the seventh and eighth lots. The word “lot” may be supplied here. Alternate translation: “the seventh lot...the eighth lot” or “lot number 7...lot number 8” (See: [Ordinal Numbers](#) and [Ellipsis](#))

Hakkoz...Abijah

These are names of men. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

ULT

¹⁰ the seventh to Hakkoz, the eighth to Abijah,

UST

¹⁰ Next, Hakkoz was selected. Next, Abijah was selected.

1 Chronicles 24:11

Connecting Statement:

This continues the list begun in [1 Chronicles 24:7](#) of 24 lots that were cast to decide how the descendants of Eleazar and Ithamar would be divided into groups for their work as priests.

the ninth...the tenth

This refers to the ninth and tenth lots. The word “lot” may be supplied here. Alternate translation: “the ninth lot...the tenth lot” or “lot number 9...lot number 10” (See: [Ordinal Numbers](#) and [Ellipsis](#))

Jeshua...Shecaniah

These are names of men. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

ULT

11 the ninth to Jeshua, the tenth to Shecaniah,

UST

11 Next, Jeshua was selected. Next, Shecaniah was selected.

1 Chronicles 24:12

Connecting Statement:

This continues the list begun in [1 Chronicles 24:7](#) of 24 lots that were cast to decide how the descendants of Eleazar and Ithamar would be divided into groups for their work as priests.

the eleventh...the twelfth

This refers to the eleventh and twelfth lots. The word "lot" may be supplied here. Alternate translation: "the eleventh lot...the twelfth lot" or "lot number 11...lot number 12" (See: [Ordinal Numbers](#) and [Ellipsis](#))

Eliashib...Jakim

These are names of men. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

ULT

¹² the eleventh to Eliashib, the twelfth to Jakim,

UST

¹² Next, Eliashib was selected. Next, Jakim was selected.

1 Chronicles 24:13

Connecting Statement:

This continues the list begun in [1 Chronicles 24:7](#) of 24 lots that were cast to decide how the descendants of Eleazar and Ithamar would be divided into groups for their work as priests.

the thirteenth...the fourteenth

This refers to the thirteenth and fourteenth lots. The word “lot” may be supplied here. Alternate translation: “the thirteenth lot...the fourteenth lot” or “lot number 13...lot number 14” (See: [Ordinal Numbers](#) and [Ellipsis](#))

Huppah...Jeshebeab

These are names of men. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

ULT

¹³ the thirteenth to Huppah, the fourteenth to Jeshebeab,

UST

¹³ Next, Huppah was selected. Next, Jeshebeab was selected.

1 Chronicles 24:14

Connecting Statement:

This continues the list begun in [1 Chronicles 24:7](#) of 24 lots that were cast to decide how the descendants of Eleazar and Ithamar would be divided into groups for their work as priests.

the fifteenth...the sixteenth

This refers to the fifteenth and sixteenth lots. The word “lot” may be supplied here. Alternate translation: “the fifteenth lot...the sixteenth lot” or “lot number 15...lot number 16” (See: [Ordinal Numbers](#) and [Ellipsis](#))

Bilgah...Immer

These are names of men. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

ULT

¹⁴ the fifteenth to Bilgah, the sixteenth to Immer,

UST

¹⁴ Next, Bilgah was selected. Next, Immer was selected.

1 Chronicles 24:15

Connecting Statement:

This continues the list begun in [1 Chronicles 24:7](#) of 24 lots that were cast to decide how the descendants of Eleazar and Ithamar would be divided into groups for their work as priests.

the seventeenth...the eighteenth

This refers to the seventeenth and eighteenth lots. The word “lot” may be supplied here. Alternate translation: “the seventeenth lot... the eighteenth lot” or “lot number 17...lot number 18” (See: [Ordinal Numbers](#) and [Ellipsis](#))

Hezir...Happizziez

These are names of men. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

ULT

¹⁵ the seventeenth to Hezir, the eighteenth to Happizziez,

UST

¹⁵ Next, Hezir was selected. Next, Happizziez was selected.

1 Chronicles 24:16

Connecting Statement:

This continues the list begun in [1 Chronicles 24:7](#) of 24 lots that were cast to decide how the descendants of Eleazar and Ithamar would be divided into groups for their work as priests.

the nineteenth...the twentieth

This refers to the nineteenth and twentieth lots. The word “lot” may be supplied here. Alternate translation: “the nineteenth lot...the twentieth lot” or “lot number 19...lot number 20” (See: [Ordinal Numbers](#) and [Ellipsis](#))

Pethahiah...Jehezkel

These are names of men. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

ULT

¹⁶ the nineteenth to Pethahiah, the twentieth to Jehezkel,

UST

¹⁶ Next, Pethahiah was selected. Next, Jehezkel was selected.

1 Chronicles 24:17

Connecting Statement:

This continues the list begun in [1 Chronicles 24:7](#) of 24 lots that were cast to decide how the descendants of Eleazar and Ithamar would be divided into groups for their work as priests.

the twenty-first...the twenty-second

This refers to the twenty-first and twenty-second lots. The word “lot” may be supplied here. Alternate translation: “the twenty-first lot...the twenty-second lot” or “lot number 21...lot number 22” (See: [Ordinal Numbers](#) and [Ellipsis](#))

Jakin...Gamul

These are names of men. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

ULT

¹⁷ the twenty-first to Jakin, the twenty-second to Gamul,

UST

¹⁷ Next, Jakin was selected. Next, Gamul was selected.

1 Chronicles 24:18

Connecting Statement:

This ends the list begun in [1 Chronicles 24:7](#) of 24 lots that were cast to decide how the descendants of Eleazar and Ithamar would be divided into groups for their work as priests.

the twenty-third...the twenty-fourth

This refers to the twenty-third and twenty-fourth lots. The word “lot” may be supplied here. Alternate translation: “the twenty-third lot... the twenty-fourth lot” or “lot number 23...lot number 24” (See: [Ordinal Numbers](#) and [Ellipsis](#))

Delaiah...Maaziah

These are names of men. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

ULT

¹⁸ the twenty-third to Delaiah, and the twenty-fourth to Maaziah.

UST

¹⁸ Next, Delaiah was selected. Next, Maaziah was selected.

1 Chronicles 24:19

following the procedure given to them by Aaron their ancestor

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: “following the rules that Aaron their ancestor gave them” (See: [Active or Passive](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- command, commandment
- God
- Yahweh
- Yahweh
- Israel, Israelites
- Aaron
- ancestor, father, fathered, forefather, grandfather
- hand
- ordinance, regulations, requirements, strict law, customs
- servant, serve, slave, worker, young man, young women
- house

Translation Words - UST

- command, commandment
- God
- Yahweh
- Yahweh
- Israel, Israelites
- Aaron
- ancestor, father, fathered, forefather, grandfather
- hand
- ordinance, regulations, requirements, strict law, customs
- servant, serve, slave, worker, young man, young women
- house

ULT

¹⁹ This was the order of their service, when they came into Yahweh's house, following the procedure given to them by Aaron their ancestor, as Yahweh, the God of Israel, had instructed him.

UST

¹⁹ Those were the men who were chosen to be the leaders of the groups that would serve in the temple, obeying the regulations that were set down by Aaron, regulations which Yahweh, the God to whom we Israelite people belong, had given to him.

1 Chronicles 24:20

General Information:

This begins the list of names of the other sons of Levi. This list will end in [1 Chronicles 24:30](#). (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

Amram

See how you translated this man's name in [1 Chronicles 6:3](#).

Shubael

See how you translated this man's name in [1 Chronicles 23:16](#).

Translation Words - ULT

- [son](#)
- [son](#)
- [son](#)
- [Levi, Levite, Levitical](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [son](#)
- [son](#)
- [son](#)
- [Levi, Levite, Levitical](#)

ULT

²⁰ These were the rest of the descendants of Levi: Of the sons of Amram, Shubael; of the sons of Shubael, Jehdeiah.

UST

²⁰ This is a list of some of the other descendants of Levi: From the sons of Amram there was Shubael. From the sons of Shubael there was Jehdeiah.

1 Chronicles 24:21

(There are no notes for this verse.)

Translation Words - ULT

- son
- chief

Translation Words - UST

- son
- chief

ULT

²¹ As for Rehabiah, the sons of Rehabiah: Ishijah the leader.

UST

²¹ From Rehabiah son of Eleazar there was Isshiah, his oldest son.

1 Chronicles 24:22

(There are no notes for this verse.)

Translation Words - ULT

- son

Translation Words - UST

- son

ULT

²² From the Izharites: Shelomoth; from the sons of Shelomoth: Jahath.

UST

²² From the descendants of Kohath's son Izhar there was Shelomoth. From the descendants of Shelomoth there was Jahath.

1 Chronicles 24:23

Hebron...Jeriah...Amariah...Jahaziel...Jekameam

Translate the names of these men as in [1 Chronicles 23:19](#).

the second...the third...the fourth

“the second son...the third son...the fourth son” (See: [Ordinal Numbers](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [son](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [son](#)

ULT

²³ The sons of Hebron: Jeriah the leader, Amariah the second, Jahaziel the third, and Jekameam the fourth.

UST

²³ From the descendants of Kohath's son Hebron there was his oldest son Jeriah and Jeriah's younger brothers Amariah, Jahaziel, and Jekameam.

1 Chronicles 24:24

Uzziel...Micah

Translate the names of these men as in [1 Chronicles 23:20](#).

Shamir

This is the name of a man. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- son
- son

Translation Words - UST

- son
- son

ULT

24 The son of Uzziel: Micah; from the sons of Micah: Shamir.

UST

24 From the descendants of Kohath's son Uzziel there was Micah. From the descendants of Micah there was Shamir.

1 Chronicles 24:25

Ishijah

Translate the name of this man as in [1 Chronicles 23:20](#).

Zechariah

This is the name of a man. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- brother
- son

Translation Words - UST

- brother
- son

ULT

²⁵ The brother of Micah: Ishijah. From the sons of Ishijah: Zechariah.

UST

²⁵ And Micah's younger brother was Isshiah. From the descendants of Isshiah was Zechariah.

1 Chronicles 24:26

Merari...Mahli...Mushi

Translate the names of these men as in [1 Chronicles 23:21](#).

Jaaziah

This is the name of a man. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

from the son of Jaaziah: Beno

It seems Jaaziah is another son of Merari. And, Beno is the son of Jaaziah. Beno is mentioned in both verses 26 and 27 because he is a leader in his family. However, some Bibles translate “Beno” as “his son” rather than as a proper name. Those Bibles read like this: “and from his sons, Jaaziah, his son.”

ULT

26 The sons of Merari: Mahli and Mushi; from the son of Jaaziah: Beno.

UST

26 The sons of Merari were Mahli, Mushi, and Jaaziah.

Translation Words - ULT

- [son](#)
- [son](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [son](#)
- [son](#)

1 Chronicles 24:27

Jaaziah...Shoham...Zaccur...Ibri

These are the names of men. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

from Jaaziah: Beno, Shoham

It seems Jaaziah is another son of Merari. And, Beno is the son of Jaaziah. Beno is mentioned in both verses 26 and 27 because he is a leader in his family. However, some Bibles translate "Beno" as "his son" rather than as a proper name. Those Bibles read like this: "from Jaaziah, his son: Shoham."

Translation Words - ULT

- [son](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [son](#)

ULT

27 The sons of Merari from Jaaziah: Beno, Shoham, Zaccur, and Ibri.

UST

27 From the descendants of Jaaziah there were Beno, Shoham, Zaccur, and Ibri.

1 Chronicles 24:28

Mahli...Eleazar

Translate the names of these men as in [1 Chronicles 23:21](#).

Translation Words - ULT

- [son](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [son](#)

ULT

28 From Mahli: Eleazar, who had no sons.

UST

28 Mahli's son Eleazar did not have any sons.

1 Chronicles 24:29

From Kish: The son of Kish

This is written in the text as a title, but could be stated in a more complete form. Alternate translation: "These are the sons who were descended from Kish"

Kish

Translate the name of this man as in [1 Chronicles 23:21](#).

Jerahmeel

This is the name of a man. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [son](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [son](#)

ULT

²⁹ From Kish: The son of Kish: Jerahmeel.

UST

²⁹ From the descendants of Kish there was his son Jerahmeel.

1 Chronicles 24:30

Mushi

Translate the name of this man as in [1 Chronicles 23:21](#).

Mahli...Eder...Jerimoth

These are names of men. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [son](#)
- [son](#)
- [Levi, Levite, Levitical](#)
- [ancestor, father, fathered, forefather, grandfather](#)
- [house](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [son](#)
- [son](#)
- [Levi, Levite, Levitical](#)
- [ancestor, father, fathered, forefather, grandfather](#)
- [house](#)

ULT

³⁰ The sons of Mushi: Mahli, Eder, and Jerimoth. These were the Levites, listed by their families.

UST

³⁰ The sons of Mushi were Mahli, Eder, and Jerimoth. Those were descendants of Levi who were listed according to the leaders of their families.

1 Chronicles 24:31

Ahimelech

Translate the name of this man as in [1 Chronicles 18:16](#).

Translation Words - ULT

- brother
- brother
- son
- priest, priesthood
- David
- Aaron
- ancestor, father, fathered, forefather, grandfather
- ancestor, father, fathered, forefather, grandfather
- head
- lots, casting lots
- chief
- king, kingdom, kingship
- bow, bow down, knelt, bend, bend the knee

Translation Words - UST

- brother
- brother
- son
- priest, priesthood
- David
- Aaron
- ancestor, father, fathered, forefather, grandfather
- ancestor, father, fathered, forefather, grandfather
- head
- lots, casting lots
- chief
- king, kingdom, kingship
- bow, bow down, knelt, bend, bend the knee

ULT

³¹ These men who were the head of each father's house and each of their younger brothers, cast lots in the presence of King David, and Zadok and Ahimelech, along with the leaders of the families of the priests and Levites. They cast lots just as Aaron's descendants had done.

UST

³¹ The jobs they would do were decided by casting lots like their fellow Israelites the descendants of Aaron, did. They cast lots while King David, Zadok, Ahimelech, and the leaders of he families of the priests and the other descendants of Levi watched. The jobs that were given to the families of each oldest brother and each youngest brother were equal.

1 Chronicles 25

1 Chronicles 25 General Notes

Structure and formatting

The preparation for the temple continues in this chapter. (See: [temple](#))

Special concepts in this chapter

Music

The 24 groups who were chosen to play music in the temple cast lots to see in what order they would serve.

1 Chronicles 25:1

this service

“the work done at the tabernacle”

cymbals

This refers to two thin, round metal plates that are hit together to make a loud sound. See how you translated this in [1 Chronicles 13:8](#). (See: [Translate Unknowns](#))

Heman...Jeduthun

Translate the names of these men the same as you did in [1 Chronicles 16:41](#). (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- son
- prophet, prophecy, prophesy, seer, prophetess
- set apart
- David
- Asaph
- prince, princess, governors, provincial governors, officials, noblemen, nobility
- servant, serve, slave, worker, young man, young women
- servant, serve, slave, worker, young man, young women

Translation Words - UST

- son
- prophet, prophecy, prophesy, seer, prophetess
- set apart
- David
- Asaph
- prince, princess, governors, provincial governors, officials, noblemen, nobility
- servant, serve, slave, worker, young man, young women
- servant, serve, slave, worker, young man, young women

ULT

¹ David and the leaders of the army selected some of the sons of Asaph, Heman, and Jeduthun to prophesy with harps, with stringed instruments, and with cymbals. Here is the list of the men who performed this service:

UST

¹ David and some of the temple officials chose some of the descendants of Asaph, Heman, and Jeduthun to be in charge of the preaching, and to play harps and lyres and cymbals. This is a list of the men whom they chose for that work:

1 Chronicles 25:2

General Information:

This begins a list of leaders of the tabernacle service.

Zaccur...Joseph...Nethaniah...Asharelah

These are names of men. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

the sons of Asaph, under the direction of Asaph, who prophesied under the king's supervision

"these were the sons of Asaph, whom he supervised. Asaph prophesied under the king's supervision"

under the direction of

"under the supervision of"

Translation Words - ULT

- son
- son
- Asaph
- Asaph
- Asaph
- hand
- hand
- king, kingdom, kingship

Translation Words - UST

- son
- son
- Asaph
- Asaph
- Asaph
- hand
- hand
- king, kingdom, kingship

ULT

² From the sons of Asaph: Zaccur, Joseph, Nethaniah, and Asharelah, ^[1] the sons of Asaph, under the direction of Asaph, who prophesied under the king's supervision.

UST

² From the sons of Asaph they chose Zaccur, Joseph, Nethaniah, and Aserelah. Asaph supervised them. And the king appointed Asaph to preach.

1 Chronicles 25:3

Connecting Statement:

This continues the list of leaders of the tabernacle service that was started in [1 Chronicles 25:2](#).

Gedaliah...Zeri...Jeshaiah...Shimei...Hashabiah... Mattithiah

These are names of men. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [son](#)
- [Yahweh](#)
- [ancestor, father, fathered, forefather, grandfather](#)
- [hand](#)
- [praise, praised, praiseworthy](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [son](#)
- [Yahweh](#)
- [ancestor, father, fathered, forefather, grandfather](#)
- [hand](#)
- [praise, praised, praiseworthy](#)

ULT

³ From the sons of Jeduthun: Gedaliah, Zeri, ^[2]Jeshaiah, Shimei, Hashabiah, and Mattithiah, six in all, under the direction of their father Jeduthun, who played the harp for giving thanks and praising Yahweh.

UST

³ From the sons of Jeduthun they chose six men: Gedaliah, Zeri, Jeshaiah, Shimei, Hashabiah, and Mattithiah. Jeduthun supervised them and also preached, playing his harp while he thanked and praised Yahweh.

1 Chronicles 25:4

Connecting Statement:

This continues the list of leaders of the tabernacle service that was started in [1 Chronicles 25:2](#).

Heman

See how you translated this man's name in [1 Chronicles 16:41](#). (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

**Bukkiah...Mattaniah...Uzziel...Shubael...Jerimoth...
Hananiah...Hanani...Eliathah...Giddalti...Romamti-Ezer...
Joshbekashah...Mallothi...Hothir...Mahazioth**

These are all names of men. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [son](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [son](#)

ULT

⁴ From the sons of Heman: Bukkiah, Mattaniah, Uzziel, ^[3] Shubael, and Jerimoth, Hananiah, Hanani, Eliathah, Giddalti, Romamti-Ezer, Joshbekashah, Mallothi, Hothir, and Mahazioth.

UST

⁴ From the sons of Heman they chose Bukkiah, Mattaniah, Uzziel, Shubael, Jerimoth, Hananiah, Hanani, Eliathah, Giddalti, Romamti-Eze, Joshbekashah, Mallothi, Hothir, and Mahazioth.

1 Chronicles 25:5

fourteen sons and three daughters

"14 sons and 3 daughters" (See: [Numbers](#))

to lift up his horn

An animal horn is a symbol of strength or authority. To lift up someone's horn is a metaphor for honoring him. Alternate translation: "to honor Heman" (See: [Metaphor](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [son](#)
- [son](#)
- [God](#)
- [God](#)
- [king, kingdom, kingship](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [son](#)
- [son](#)
- [God](#)
- [God](#)
- [king, kingdom, kingship](#)

ULT

⁵ All these were the sons of Heman the king's prophet. God gave Heman fourteen sons and three daughters to lift up his horn.

UST

⁵ They were all sons of Heman, who was King David's prophet. God promised to cause Heman to be strong, so altogether, God gave him fourteen sons and three daughters.

1 Chronicles 25:6

were under the direction of their fathers

“were supervised by their fathers”

cymbals

This refers to two thin, round metal plates that are hit together to make a loud sound. See how you translated this in [1 Chronicles 13:8](#). (See: [Translate Unknowns](#))

Jeduthun...Heman

Translate the names of these men the same as you did in [1 Chronicles 16:41](#). (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [God](#)
- [Yahweh](#)
- [Asaph](#)
- [ancestor, father, fathered, forefather, grandfather](#)
- [hand](#)
- [hand](#)
- [king, kingdom, kingship](#)
- [servant, serve, slave, worker, young man, young women](#)
- [house](#)
- [house \(2\)](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [God](#)
- [Yahweh](#)
- [Asaph](#)
- [ancestor, father, fathered, forefather, grandfather](#)
- [hand](#)
- [hand](#)
- [king, kingdom, kingship](#)
- [servant, serve, slave, worker, young man, young women](#)
- [house](#)
- [house \(2\)](#)

ULT

⁶ All these were under the direction of their fathers. They were musicians in Yahweh's house, with cymbals and stringed instruments as they served in God's house. Asaph, Jeduthun, and Heman were under the king's supervision.

UST

⁶ All those men were supervised by their fathers while they played music in the temple of Yahweh. They played cymbals, lyres, and harps. And their fathers—Asaph, Jeduthun, and Heman—were supervised by the king.

1 Chronicles 25:7

numbered 288

“were two hundred and eighty-eight men” (See: [Numbers](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- brother
- Yahweh
- teach, teaching, untaught

Translation Words - UST

- brother
- Yahweh
- teach, teaching, untaught

ULT

⁷ They and their brothers who were skilled and trained to make music to Yahweh numbered 288.

UST

⁷ Those men and their relatives were all trained and skilled for playing musical instruments in the temple. That was their work for Yahweh. Including their relatives, there were 288 of them.

1 Chronicles 25:8

all alike, the same for the young as well as the old, the teacher as well as the student

This refers to all of the men by describing the extremes. Alternate translation: "all of them, including the young men and the old men, the teachers and the students" (See: [Merism](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- lots, casting lots
- understand, understanding, thinking
- bow, bow down, knelt, bend, bend the knee

Translation Words - UST

- lots, casting lots
- understand, understanding, thinking
- bow, bow down, knelt, bend, bend the knee

ULT

⁸ They cast lots for their duties, all alike, the same for the young as well as the old, the teacher as well as the student.

UST

⁸ All of them, including ones who were young and those who were old, cast lots to determine what work they would do.

1 Chronicles 25:9

General Information:

This begins the list of 24 lots that were cast to choose the order in which families would serve. This list ends in [1 Chronicles 25:31](#).

The first lot...the second

“Lot number 1...lot number 2.” This shows the order in which the families were chosen by lots. If this is unnatural in your language you may use “The initial” for “The first” and “the next” for all of the following ones. (See: [Ordinal Numbers](#))

The first lot fell to Joseph’s family

For all of the other people in the list, the text specifies that there were “twelve persons in number.” Since this was likely true for Joseph’s family also, you may want to state it clearly. Alternate translation: “The first lot fell to Joseph’s family, twelve persons in number” (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

the second

This refers to the second lot. The word “lot” may be supplied here. Alternate translation: “the second lot” or “lot number 2” (See: [Ordinal Numbers](#) and [Ellipsis](#))

Gedaliah

See how you translated this man’s name in [1 Chronicles 25:3](#). (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

twelve persons in number

“12 people” (See: [Numbers](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [command, commandment](#)
- [brother](#)
- [son](#)
- [lots, casting lots](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [command, commandment](#)
- [brother](#)
- [son](#)
- [lots, casting lots](#)

ULT

⁹ Now regarding Asaph’s sons: The first lot fell to Joseph’s family; the second fell to Gedaliah’s family, twelve persons in number;

UST

⁹ From the family of Asaph, the first ones selected were Joseph and 12 of his sons and relatives.

1 Chronicles 25:10

Connecting Statement:

This continues the list begun in [1 Chronicles 25:9](#) of 24 lots that were cast to choose the order in which families would serve.

the third

This refers to the third lot. The word “lot” may be supplied here.
Alternate translation: “the third lot” or “lot number 3” (See: [Ordinal Numbers](#) and [Ellipsis](#))

Zaccur

See how you translated the name of this man in [1 Chronicles 25:2](#). (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

twelve persons in number

“12 people” (See: [Numbers](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [brother](#)
- [son](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [brother](#)
- [son](#)

ULT

¹⁰ the third fell to Zaccur, his sons and his relatives, twelve persons in number;

UST

¹⁰ Next, Gedaliah and 12 of his sons and relatives were selected.

1 Chronicles 25:11

Connecting Statement:

This continues the list begun in [1 Chronicles 25:9](#) of 24 lots that were cast to choose the order in which families would serve.

the fourth

This refers to the fourth lot. The word “lot” may be supplied here. Alternate translation: “the fourth lot” or “lot number 4” (See: [Ordinal Numbers](#) and [Ellipsis](#))

Izri

This name of this man is spelled Zeri in [1 Chronicles 25:3](#). (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

twelve persons in number

“12 people” (See: [Numbers](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [brother](#)
- [son](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [brother](#)
- [son](#)

ULT

11 the fourth fell to Izri, ^[4] his sons and his relatives, twelve persons in number;

UST

11 Next, Zaccur and 12 of his sons and relatives were selected.

1 Chronicles 25:12

Connecting Statement:

This continues the list begun in [1 Chronicles 25:9](#) of 24 lots that were cast to choose the order in which families would serve.

the fifth

This refers to the fifth lot. The word “lot” may be supplied here. Alternate translation: “the fifth lot” or “lot number 5” (See: [Ordinal Numbers](#) and [Ellipsis](#))

Nethaniah

See how you translated the name of this man in [1 Chronicles 25:2](#). (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

twelve persons in number

“12 people” (See: [Numbers](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [brother](#)
- [son](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [brother](#)
- [son](#)

ULT

¹² the fifth fell to Nethaniah, his sons and his relatives, twelve persons in number;

UST

¹² Next, Nethaniah and 12 of his sons and relatives were selected.

1 Chronicles 25:13

Connecting Statement:

This continues the list begun in [1 Chronicles 25:9](#) of 24 lots that were cast to choose the order in which families would serve.

the sixth

This refers to the sixth lot. The word “lot” may be supplied here.
Alternate translation: “the sixth lot” or “lot number 6” (See: [Ordinal Numbers](#) and [Ellipsis](#))

Bukkiah

See how you translated the name of this man in [1 Chronicles 25:4](#). (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

twelve persons in number

“12 people” (See: [Numbers](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [brother](#)
- [son](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [brother](#)
- [son](#)

ULT

¹³ the sixth fell to Bukkiah, his sons and his relatives, twelve persons in number;

UST

¹³ Next, Bukkiah and 12 of his sons and relatives were selected.

1 Chronicles 25:14

Connecting Statement:

This continues the list begun in [1 Chronicles 25:9](#) of 24 lots that were cast to choose the order in which families would serve.

the seventh

This refers to the seventh lot. The word “lot” may be supplied here. Alternate translation: “the seventh lot” or “lot number 7” (See: [Ordinal Numbers](#) and [Ellipsis](#))

Jesarelah

This is the name of a man. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

twelve persons in number

“12 people” (See: [Numbers](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [brother](#)
- [son](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [brother](#)
- [son](#)

ULT

14 the seventh fell to Jesarelah, ^[5] his sons and his relatives, twelve persons in number;

UST

14 Next, Jesarelah and 12 of his sons and relatives were selected.

1 Chronicles 25:15

Connecting Statement:

This continues the list begun in [1 Chronicles 25:9](#) of 24 lots that were cast to choose the order in which families would serve.

the eighth

This refers to the eighth lot. The word “lot” may be supplied here. Alternate translation: “the eighth lot” or “lot number 8” (See: [Ordinal Numbers](#) and [Ellipsis](#))

Jeshaiah

See how you translated this man’s name in [1 Chronicles 25:3](#). (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

twelve persons in number

“12 people” (See: [Numbers](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [brother](#)
- [son](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [brother](#)
- [son](#)

ULT

¹⁵ the eighth fell to Jeshaiah, his sons and his relatives, twelve persons in number;

UST

¹⁵ Next, Jeshaiah and 12 of his sons and relatives were selected.

1 Chronicles 25:16

Connecting Statement:

This continues the list begun in [1 Chronicles 25:9](#) of 24 lots that were cast to choose the order in which families would serve.

the ninth

This refers to the ninth lot. The word “lot” may be supplied here.
Alternate translation: “the ninth lot” or “lot number 9” (See: [Ordinal Numbers](#) and [Ellipsis](#))

Mattaniah

See how you translated the name of this man in [1 Chronicles 25:4](#). (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

twelve persons in number

“12 people” (See: [Numbers](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [brother](#)
- [son](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [brother](#)
- [son](#)

ULT

16 the ninth fell to Mattaniah, his sons and his relatives, twelve persons in number;

UST

16 Next, Mattaniah and 12 of his sons and relatives were selected.

1 Chronicles 25:17

Connecting Statement:

This continues the list begun in [1 Chronicles 25:9](#) of 24 lots that were cast to choose the order in which families would serve.

the tenth

This refers to the tenth lot. The word “lot” may be supplied here.
Alternate translation: “the tenth lot” or “lot number 10” (See: [Ordinal Numbers](#) and [Ellipsis](#))

Shimei

See how you translated the name of this man in [1 Chronicles 25:3](#). (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

twelve persons in number

“12 people” (See: [Numbers](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [brother](#)
- [son](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [brother](#)
- [son](#)

ULT

17 the tenth fell to Shimei, his sons and his relatives, twelve persons in number;

UST

17 Next, Shimei and 12 of his sons and relatives were selected.

1 Chronicles 25:18

Connecting Statement:

This continues the list begun in [1 Chronicles 25:9](#) of 24 lots that were cast to choose the order in which families would serve.

the eleventh

This refers to the eleventh lot. The word “lot” may be supplied here. Alternate translation: “the eleventh lot” or “lot number 11” (See: [Ordinal Numbers](#) and [Ellipsis](#))

Azarel

This is the name of a man. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

twelve persons in number

“12 people” (See: [Numbers](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [brother](#)
- [son](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [brother](#)
- [son](#)

ULT

¹⁸ the eleventh fell to Azarel, ^[6] his sons and his relatives, twelve persons in number;

UST

¹⁸ Next, Azarel and 12 of his sons and relatives were selected.

1 Chronicles 25:19

Connecting Statement:

This continues the list begun in [1 Chronicles 25:9](#) of 24 lots that were cast to choose the order in which families would serve.

the twelfth

This refers to the twelfth lot. The word "lot" may be supplied here. Alternate translation: "the twelfth lot" or "lot number 12" (See: [Ordinal Numbers](#) and [Ellipsis](#))

Hashabiah

See how you translated the name of this man in [1 Chronicles 25:3](#). (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

twelve persons in number

"12 people" (See: [Numbers](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [brother](#)
- [son](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [brother](#)
- [son](#)

ULT

¹⁹ the twelfth fell to Hashabiah, his sons and his relatives, twelve persons in number;

UST

¹⁹ Next, Hashabiah and 12 of his sons and relatives were selected.

1 Chronicles 25:20

Connecting Statement:

This continues the list begun in [1 Chronicles 25:9](#) of 24 lots that were cast to choose the order in which families would serve.

the thirteenth

This refers to the thirteenth lot. The word “lot” may be supplied here. Alternate translation: “the thirteenth lot” or “lot number 13” (See: [Ordinal Numbers](#) and [Ellipsis](#))

Shubael

See how you translated this man’s name in [1 Chronicles 25:4](#). (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

twelve persons in number

“12 people” (See: [Numbers](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [brother](#)
- [son](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [brother](#)
- [son](#)

ULT

²⁰ the thirteenth fell to Shubael, his sons and his relatives, twelve persons in number;

UST

²⁰ Next, Shubael and 12 of his sons and relatives were selected.

1 Chronicles 25:21

Connecting Statement:

This continues the list begun in [1 Chronicles 25:9](#) of 24 lots that were cast to choose the order in which families would serve.

the fourteenth

This refers to the fourteenth lot. The word “lot” may be supplied here. Alternate translation: “the fourteenth lot” or “lot number 14” (See: [Ordinal Numbers](#) and [Ellipsis](#))

Mattithiah

See how you translated this man’s name in [1 Chronicles 25:3](#). (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

twelve persons in number

“12 people” (See: [Numbers](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [brother](#)
- [son](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [brother](#)
- [son](#)

ULT

²¹ the fourteenth fell to Mattithiah, his sons and his relatives, twelve persons in number;

UST

²¹ Next, Mattithiah and 12 of his sons and relatives were selected.

1 Chronicles 25:22

Connecting Statement:

This continues the list begun in [1 Chronicles 25:9](#) of 24 lots that were cast to choose the order in which families would serve.

the fifteenth

This refers to the fifteenth lot. The word “lot” may be supplied here. Alternate translation: “the fifteenth lot” or “lot number 15” (See: [Ordinal Numbers](#) and [Ellipsis](#))

Jerimoth

See how you translated the name of this man in [1 Chronicles 25:4](#). (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

twelve persons in number

“12 people” (See: [Numbers](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [brother](#)
- [son](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [brother](#)
- [son](#)

ULT

²² the fifteenth fell to Jerimoth, his sons and his relatives, twelve persons in number;

UST

²² Next, Jerimoth and 12 of his sons and relatives were selected.

1 Chronicles 25:23

Connecting Statement:

This continues the list begun in [1 Chronicles 25:9](#) of 24 lots that were cast to choose the order in which families would serve.

the sixteenth

This refers to the sixteenth lot. The word “lot” may be supplied here. Alternate translation: “the sixteenth lot” or “lot number 16” (See: [Ordinal Numbers](#) and [Ellipsis](#))

Hananiah

See how you translated the name of this man in [1 Chronicles 25:4](#). (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

twelve persons in number

“12 people” (See: [Numbers](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [brother](#)
- [son](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [brother](#)
- [son](#)

ULT

²³ the sixteenth fell to Hananiah, his sons and his relatives, twelve persons in number;

UST

²³ Next, Hananiah and 12 of his sons and relatives were selected.

1 Chronicles 25:24

Connecting Statement:

This continues the list begun in [1 Chronicles 25:9](#) of 24 lots that were cast to choose the order in which families would serve.

the seventeenth

This refers to the seventeenth lot. The word “lot” may be supplied here. Alternate translation: “the seventeenth lot” or “lot number 17” (See: [Ordinal Numbers](#) and [Ellipsis](#))

Joshbekashah

See how you translated the name of this man in [1 Chronicles 25:4](#). (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

twelve persons in number

“12 people” (See: [Numbers](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [brother](#)
- [son](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [brother](#)
- [son](#)

ULT

²⁴ the seventeenth fell to Joshbekashah, his sons and his relatives, twelve persons in number;

UST

²⁴ Next, Joshbekashah and 12 of his sons and relatives were selected.

1 Chronicles 25:25

Connecting Statement:

This continues the list begun in [1 Chronicles 25:9](#) of 24 lots that were cast to choose the order in which families would serve.

the eighteenth

This refers to the eighteenth lot. The word “lot” may be supplied here. Alternate translation: “the eighteenth lot” or “lot number 18” (See: [Ordinal Numbers](#) and [Ellipsis](#))

Hanani

Translate the name of this man as you did in [1 Chronicles 25:4](#).

twelve persons in number

“12 people” (See: [Numbers](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [brother](#)
- [son](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [brother](#)
- [son](#)

ULT

²⁵ the eighteenth fell to Hanani, his sons and his relatives, twelve persons in number;

UST

²⁵ Next, Hanani and 12 of his sons and relatives were selected.

1 Chronicles 25:26

Connecting Statement:

This continues the list begun in [1 Chronicles 25:9](#) of 24 lots that were cast to choose the order in which families would serve.

the nineteenth

This refers to the nineteenth lot. The word “lot” may be supplied here. Alternate translation: “the nineteenth lot” or “lot number 19” (See: [Ordinal Numbers](#) and [Ellipsis](#))

Mallothi

Translate the name of this man as you did in [1 Chronicles 25:4](#).

twelve persons in number

“12 people” (See: [Numbers](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [brother](#)
- [son](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [brother](#)
- [son](#)

ULT

²⁶ the nineteenth fell to Mallothi, his sons and his relatives, twelve persons in number;

UST

²⁶ Next, Mallothi and 12 of his sons and relatives were selected.

1 Chronicles 25:27

Connecting Statement:

This continues the list begun in [1 Chronicles 25:9](#) of 24 lots that were cast to choose the order in which families would serve.

the twentieth

This refers to the twentieth lot. The word “lot” may be supplied here. Alternate translation: “the twentieth lot” or “lot number 20” (See: [Ordinal Numbers](#) and [Ellipsis](#))

Eliathah

Translate the name of this man as you did in [1 Chronicles 25:4](#).

twelve persons in number

“12 people” (See: [Numbers](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [brother](#)
- [son](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [brother](#)
- [son](#)

ULT

²⁷ the twentieth fell to Eliathah, his sons and his relatives, twelve persons in number;

UST

²⁷ Next, Eliathah and 12 of his sons and relatives were selected.

1 Chronicles 25:28

Connecting Statement:

This continues the list begun in [1 Chronicles 25:9](#) of 24 lots that were cast to choose the order in which families would serve.

the twenty-first

This refers to the twenty-first lot. The word “lot” may be supplied here. Alternate translation: “the twenty-first lot” or “lot number 21” (See: [Ordinal Numbers](#) and [Ellipsis](#))

Hothir

Translate the name of this man as you did in [1 Chronicles 25:4](#).

twelve persons in number

“12 people” (See: [Numbers](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [brother](#)
- [son](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [brother](#)
- [son](#)

ULT

²⁸ the twenty-first fell to Hothir, his sons and his relatives, twelve persons in number;

UST

²⁸ Next, Hothir and 12 of his sons and relatives were selected.

1 Chronicles 25:29

Connecting Statement:

This continues the list begun in [1 Chronicles 25:9](#) of 24 lots that were cast to choose the order in which families would serve.

the twenty-second

This refers to the twenty-second lot. The word “lot” may be supplied here. Alternate translation: “the twenty-second lot” or “lot number 2” (See: [Ordinal Numbers](#) and [Ellipsis](#))

Giddalti

Translate the name of this man the same as you did in [1 Chronicles 25:4](#). (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

twelve persons in number

“12 people” (See: [Numbers](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [brother](#)
- [son](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [brother](#)
- [son](#)

ULT

²⁹ the twenty-second fell to Giddalti, his sons and his relatives, twelve persons in number;

UST

²⁹ Next, Giddalti and 12 of his sons and relatives were selected.

1 Chronicles 25:30

Connecting Statement:

This continues the list begun in [1 Chronicles 25:9](#) of 24 lots that were cast to choose the order in which families would serve.

the twenty-third

This refers to the twenty-third lot. The word “lot” may be supplied here. Alternate translation: “the twenty-third lot” or “lot number 23” (See: [Ordinal Numbers](#) and [Ellipsis](#))

Mahazioth

Translate the name of this man the same as you did in [1 Chronicles 25:4](#). (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

twelve persons in number

“12 people” (See: [Numbers](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [brother](#)
- [son](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [brother](#)
- [son](#)

ULT

³⁰ the twenty-third fell to Mahazioth, his sons and his relatives, twelve persons in number;

UST

³⁰ Next, Mahazioth and 12 of his sons and relatives were selected.

1 Chronicles 25:31

Connecting Statement:

This ends the list begun in [1 Chronicles 25:9](#) of 24 lots that were cast to choose the order in which families would serve.

the twenty-fourth

This refers to the twenty-fourth lot. The word “lot” may be supplied here. Alternate translation: “the twenty-fourth lot” or “lot number 24” (See: [Ordinal Numbers](#) and [Ellipsis](#))

Romamti-Ezer

Translate the name of this man the same as you did in [1 Chronicles 25:4](#). (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

twelve persons in number

“12 people” (See: [Numbers](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [brother](#)
- [son](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [brother](#)
- [son](#)

ULT

31 the twenty-fourth fell to Romamti-Ezer, his sons and his relatives, twelve persons in number.

25:2 ^[1] This is the same person referred to in 1 Chronicles 25:14 as Jesarelah

25:3 ^[2] this is a variant of the name Izri, which is found in 1 Chronicles 25:11, and refers to the same person

25:4 ^[3] Uzziel is the same person referred to in 1 Chronicles 25:18 as Azarel.

25:11 ^[4] this is a variant of Zeri, found in 1 Chronicles 25:3, and refers to the same person

25:14 ^[5] This is the same person referred to in 1 Chronicles 25:2 as Asharelah

25:18 ^[6] This is the same person referred to in 1 Chronicles 25:4 as Uzziel

UST

31 Next, Romamti-Eze and 12 of his sons and relatives were selected.

1 Chronicles 26

1 Chronicles 26 General Notes

Structure and formatting

The preparation for the temple continues in this chapter. (See: [temple](#))

Special concepts in this chapter

Casting lots

The gatekeepers cast lots to see which gate they would guard. Those who took care of the storage also cast lots.

1 Chronicles 26:1

General Information:

This begins the list of the gatekeepers.

divisions

groups

Korahites

See how you translated the name of this people group in [1 Chronicles 19:19](#). (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

Meshelemiah

See how you translated the name of this man in [1 Chronicles 9:21](#). (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

Kore

See how you translated the name of this man in [1 Chronicles 9:19](#). (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

Asaph

This is an alternative spelling to “Ebiasaph” in [1 Chronicles 9:19](#). (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [son](#)
- [son](#)
- [Asaph](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [son](#)
- [son](#)
- [Asaph](#)

ULT

¹ Here were the divisions of the gatekeepers: From the Korahites, Meshelemiah son of Kore, a descendant of Asaph ^[1].

UST

¹ This is a list of the groups of men who guarded the temple gates: From the descendants of Korah, there was Meshelemiah son of Kore, who was one of the sons of Asaph.

1 Chronicles 26:2

Connecting Statement:

This continues the list of gatekeepers that started in [1 Chronicles 26:1](#).

Meshelemiah...Zechariah

See how you translated the names of these men in [1 Chronicles 9:21](#). (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

Jediael...Zebadiah...Jathniel

These are names of men. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

the second...the third...the fourth

This shows the order in which the sons were born. If it is more natural in your language, you may say “the next” for each son. The word “son” may be supplied here. Alternate translation: “the second son...the third son...the fourth son” (See: [Ordinal Numbers](#) and [Ellipsis](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [son](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [son](#)

ULT

² Meshelemiah ^[2] had sons: Zechariah the firstborn, Jediael the second, Zebadiah the third, Jathniel the fourth,

UST

² The oldest son of Meshelemiah was Zechariah. His other sons were Jediael, Zebadiah, Jathniel,

1 Chronicles 26:3

Connecting Statement:

This continues the list of gatekeepers that started in [1 Chronicles 26:1](#).

Elam...Jehohanan...Eliehoenai

These are names of men. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

the fifth...the sixth...the seventh

This shows the order in which the sons were born. If it is more natural in your language, you may say “the next” for each son. The word “son” may be supplied here. Alternate translation: “the fifth son...the sixth son...the seventh son” (See: [Ordinal Numbers](#) and [Ellipsis](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [Elam](#), [Elamites](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [Elam](#), [Elamites](#)

ULT

³ Elam the fifth, Jehohanan the sixth, Eliehoenai the seventh.

UST

³ Elam, Jehohanan, and Eliehoenai.

1 Chronicles 26:4

Connecting Statement:

This continues the list of gatekeepers that started in [1 Chronicles 26:1](#).

Obed Edom

See how you translated this man's name in [1 Chronicles 16:38](#). (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

Shemaiah...Jehozabad...Joah...Sakar...Nethanel

These are names of men. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

the second...the third...the fourth...the fifth

This shows the order in which the sons were born. If it is more natural in your language, you may say "the next" for each son. The word "son" may be supplied here. Alternate translation: "the second son...the third son...the fourth son...the fifth son" (See: [Ordinal Numbers](#) and [Ellipsis](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [son](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [son](#)

ULT

⁴ Obed Edom had sons: Shemaiah the firstborn, Jehozabad the second, Joah the third, and Sakar the fourth, and Nethanel the fifth,

UST

⁴ Another guard was Obed Edom. His oldest son was Shemaiah. His other sons were Jehozabad, Joah, Sakar, Nethanel,

1 Chronicles 26:5

Connecting Statement:

This continues the list of gatekeepers that started in [1 Chronicles 26:1](#).

Ammiel...Issachar...Peullethai

These are names of men. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

the sixth...the seventh...the eighth

This shows the order in which the sons were born. If it is more natural in your language, you may say “the next” for each son. The word “son” may be supplied here. Alternate translation: “the sixth son...the seventh son...the eighth son” (See: [Ordinal Numbers](#) and [Ellipsis](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [bless, blessed, blessing](#)
- [God](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [bless, blessed, blessing](#)
- [God](#)

ULT

⁵ Ammiel the sixth, Issachar the seventh, Peullethai the eighth, for God had blessed Obed Edom.

UST

⁵ Ammiel, Issachar, and Peullethai. It was because God had blessed him that he had many sons.

1 Chronicles 26:6

who ruled over their families

“who were leaders in their father’s family.” This means that they were leaders among their clan.

Translation Words - ULT

- son
- son
- ancestor, father, fathered, forefather, grandfather
- might, mighty, mighty works
- prosper, prosperity, prosperous
- house

Translation Words - UST

- son
- son
- ancestor, father, fathered, forefather, grandfather
- might, mighty, mighty works
- prosper, prosperity, prosperous
- house

ULT

⁶ To Shemaiah his son were born sons who ruled over their families; they were men with many abilities.

UST

⁶ Obed Edom’s son Shemaiah also had sons. They were leaders in their father’s family because they were capable of doing many things well.

1 Chronicles 26:7

Connecting Statement:

This continues the list of gatekeepers that started in [1 Chronicles 26:1](#).

Shemaiah

Translate this name of this man the same as you did in [1 Chronicles 26:4](#). (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

Othni...Rephael...Obed...Elzabad...Elihu...Semakiah

These are the names of men. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

His relatives

"Shemaiah's relatives" or "Shemaiah's family members"

Translation Words - ULT

- [brother](#)
- [son](#)
- [son](#)
- [prosper, prosperity, prosperous](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [brother](#)
- [son](#)
- [son](#)
- [prosper, prosperity, prosperous](#)

ULT

⁷ The sons of Shemaiah were Othni, Rephael, Obed, and Elzabad. His relatives Elihu and Semakiah were also men with many abilities.

UST

⁷ The sons of Shemaiah were Othni, Rephael, Obed, and Elzabad. Shemaiah's relatives Elihu and Semakiah were also capable men.

1 Chronicles 26:8

Obed Edom

Translate the name of this man as you did in [1 Chronicles 26:4](#). (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

sixty-two of them

"62 men" (See: [Numbers](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [brother](#)
- [son](#)
- [son](#)
- [prosper, prosperity, prosperous](#)
- [strength, strengthen, strong](#)
- [servant, serve, slave, worker, young man, young women](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [brother](#)
- [son](#)
- [son](#)
- [prosper, prosperity, prosperous](#)
- [strength, strengthen, strong](#)
- [servant, serve, slave, worker, young man, young women](#)

ULT

⁸ All these were descendants of Obed Edom. They and their sons and relatives were men capable of doing their duties in the tabernacle service. There were sixty-two of them related to Obed Edom.

UST

⁸ All of those descendants of Obed Edom and their sons and relatives were capable people and strong workers. Altogether there were 62 of them.

1 Chronicles 26:9

Connecting Statement:

This continues the list of gatekeepers that started in [1 Chronicles 26:1](#).

Meshelemiah

Translate the name of this man as you did in [1 Chronicles 26:1](#). (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

eighteen in all

"18 total" (See: [Numbers](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [brother](#)
- [son](#)
- [son](#)
- [prosper, prosperity, prosperous](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [brother](#)
- [son](#)
- [son](#)
- [prosper, prosperity, prosperous](#)

ULT

⁹ Meshelemiah had sons and relatives, capable men, eighteen in all.

UST

⁹ Another guard was Meshelemiah. He and his sons and relatives were also capable people. There were 18 of them altogether.

1 Chronicles 26:10

Connecting Statement:

This continues the list of gatekeepers that started in [1 Chronicles 26:1](#).

Hosah...Merari...Shimri

These are names of men. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [son](#)
- [son](#)
- [appoint, appointed](#)
- [ancestor, father, fathered, forefather, grandfather](#)
- [chief](#)
- [firstborn](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [son](#)
- [son](#)
- [appoint, appointed](#)
- [ancestor, father, fathered, forefather, grandfather](#)
- [chief](#)
- [firstborn](#)

ULT

10 Hosah, a descendant of Merari, had sons: Shimri the leader (although he was not the firstborn, his father made him leader),

UST

10 Another guard was Hosah's son Shimri, a descendant of Merari. Hosah appointed Shimri to be the leader, even though he was not Hosah's oldest son.

1 Chronicles 26:11

Connecting Statement:

This ends the list of gatekeepers that started in [1 Chronicles 26:1](#).

Hilkiah...Tabaliah...Zechariah...Hosah

These are names of men. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

the second...the third...the fourth

This shows the order in which the sons were born. If it is more natural in your language, you may say “the next” for each son. The word “son” may be supplied here. Alternate translation: “the second son...the third son...the fourth son” (See: [Ordinal Numbers](#) and [Ellipsis](#))

All of Hosah’s sons and kinsmen were thirteen in number

“There were 13 of Hosah’s sons and kinsmen.” (See: [Numbers](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [brother](#)
- [son](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [brother](#)
- [son](#)

ULT

11 Hilkiah the second, Tabaliah the third, Zechariah the fourth. All of Hosah’s sons and kinsmen were thirteen in number.

UST

11 Hosah’s other sons were Hilkiah, Tabaliah, and Zechariah. Altogether there were 13 sons and relatives of Hosah.

1 Chronicles 26:12

divisions

groups

Translation Words - ULT

- brother
- Yahweh
- temple
- gate, gate bars, gatekeeper, gateposts, gateway

Translation Words - UST

- brother
- Yahweh
- temple
- gate, gate bars, gatekeeper, gateposts, gateway

ULT

¹² These divisions of the gatekeepers, corresponding to their leaders, had responsibilities, like their relatives, to serve in Yahweh's house.

UST

¹² Those men were leaders of the groups of men who guarded the gates of the temple. They worked at the temple like their relatives did.

1 Chronicles 26:13

threw lots

“cast lots”

both young and old

This refers to all of the men by describing the extremes. See how you translated a similar phrase in [1 Chronicles 25:8](#). Alternate translation: “all of them, including the young men and the old men” or “men of all ages” (See: [Merism](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- ancestor, father, fathered, forefather, grandfather
- gate, gate bars, gatekeeper, gateposts, gateway
- lots, casting lots
- house
- bow, bow down, knelt, bend, bend the knee

Translation Words - UST

- ancestor, father, fathered, forefather, grandfather
- gate, gate bars, gatekeeper, gateposts, gateway
- lots, casting lots
- house
- bow, bow down, knelt, bend, bend the knee

ULT

13 They threw lots, both young and old, corresponding to their families, for every gate.

UST

13 By casting lots, the leader of each family chose one gate for their group to guard. All of them, including young men and old men, cast lots.

1 Chronicles 26:14

When the lot was cast

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: “When they cast the lot” (See: [Active or Passive](#))

Zechariah

See how you translated this man’s name in [1 Chronicles 26:2](#). (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

a prudent advisor

This is a person who shows good judgment in making decisions.

Translation Words - ULT

- [command, commandment](#)
- [son](#)
- [lots, casting lots](#)
- [lots, casting lots](#)
- [lots, casting lots](#)
- [advice, advise, advisor, counsel, counselor, counsels](#)
- [bow, bow down, knelt, bend, bend the knee](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [command, commandment](#)
- [son](#)
- [lots, casting lots](#)
- [lots, casting lots](#)
- [lots, casting lots](#)
- [advice, advise, advisor, counsel, counselor, counsels](#)
- [bow, bow down, knelt, bend, bend the knee](#)

ULT

14 When the lot was cast for the east gate, it fell to Shelemiah ^[3]. They then cast lots for Zechariah his son, a prudent advisor, and his lot came out for the north gate.

UST

14 Shelemiah’s group was selected to guard the east gate. The group of Shelemiah’s son Zechariah, who was a wise counselor, was selected to guard the north gate.

1 Chronicles 26:15

To Obed Edom was assigned the south gate, and his sons were assigned the storehouses

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: “Obed Edom was responsible for guarding the south gate, and his sons guarded the storehouses” (See: [Active or Passive](#))

Obed Edom

See how you translated this man’s name in [1 Chronicles 26:4](#). (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [son](#)
- [house](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [son](#)
- [house](#)

ULT

¹⁵ To Obed Edom was assigned the south gate, and his sons were assigned the storehouses.

UST

¹⁵ Then Obed Edom’s group was selected to guard the south gate, and his sons were selected to guard the entrances to the temple storerooms.

1 Chronicles 26:16

Shuppim and Hosah were assigned

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: “Shuppim and Hosah were responsible for guarding” (See: [Active or Passive](#))

Shuppim

This is the name of a man. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

Hosah

See how you translated this man’s name in [1 Chronicles 26:10](#). (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

Shalleketh

This is the name of the gate. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

Watches were established for each family.

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: “Each family was responsible for a watch” or “Each family has a set period of time that it was responsible for guarding” (See: [Active or Passive](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [gate](#), [gate bars](#), [gatekeeper](#), [gateposts](#), [gateway](#)
- [watch](#), [watchman](#), [watchful](#), [guard](#), [take heed](#), [beware](#), [watch out](#)
- [watch](#), [watchman](#), [watchful](#), [guard](#), [take heed](#), [beware](#), [watch out](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [gate](#), [gate bars](#), [gatekeeper](#), [gateposts](#), [gateway](#)
- [watch](#), [watchman](#), [watchful](#), [guard](#), [take heed](#), [beware](#), [watch out](#)
- [watch](#), [watchman](#), [watchful](#), [guard](#), [take heed](#), [beware](#), [watch out](#)

ULT

16 Shuppim and Hosah were assigned the west gate along with the gate of Shalleketh, on the upper road. Watches were established for each family.

UST

16 Then Shuppim’s group and Hosah’s group were selected to guard the west gate and the Shalleketh Gate on the upper road to the temple. The work for the guards was divided evenly.

1 Chronicles 26:17

six Levites

"6 Levites" (See: [Numbers](#))

the east...the north...the south

These phrases refer to the gates. Alternate translation: "the east gate...the north gate...the south gate" (See: [Ellipsis](#))

four a day

This refers to the number of men on guard duty. Alternate translation: "four men each day" or "four Levites each day" (See: [Ellipsis](#))

two pairs

"2 pairs of men" or "2 sets of 2 men each" (See: [Numbers](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [Levi](#), [Levite](#), [Levitical](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [Levi](#), [Levite](#), [Levitical](#)

ULT

17 On the east were six Levites, on the north four a day, on the south four a day, and at the storehouses two pairs.

UST

17 Each day there were six descendants of Levi who guarded the east gate, four who guarded the north gate, four who guarded the south gate, and two at a time who guarded the entrances to the storerooms.

1 Chronicles 26:18

At the pillar to the west there were four stationed

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: “four men guarded the pillar to the west” (See: [Active or Passive](#))

four stationed at the road and two at the pillar

The numbers “four” and “two” refer to guards. Alternate translation: “Four men guarded the road, and two men guarded the court” (See: [Ellipsis](#))

ULT

18 At the pillar to the west there were four stationed at the road and two at the pillar ^[4]

UST

18 At the west gate there were two men who guarded the courtyard and four who guarded the road outside the courtyard.

1 Chronicles 26:19

They were filled with

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: "They were"
(See: [Active or Passive](#))

Merari

See how you translated this man's name in [1 Chronicles 26:10](#). (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- son
- son
- gate, gate bars, gatekeeper, gateposts, gateway

Translation Words - UST

- son
- son
- gate, gate bars, gatekeeper, gateposts, gateway

ULT

19 These were the gatekeepers' divisions. They were filled with descendants of Korah and Merari.

UST

19 Those were the groups of men who were descendants of Korah and Merari who guarded the gates of the temple.

1 Chronicles 26:20

(There are no notes for this verse.)

Translation Words - ULT

- holy, holiness, unholy, sacred
- God
- Levi, Levite, Levitical
- storehouse
- house

Translation Words - UST

- holy, holiness, unholy, sacred
- God
- Levi, Levite, Levitical
- storehouse
- house

ULT

²⁰ Among the Levites, Ahijah was in charge of the treasures of God's house, and of the treasures of the things that belong to Yahweh.

UST

²⁰ Other descendants of Levi were in charge of the chests that contained the money that was dedicated to God, money that the people brought to the temple.

1 Chronicles 26:21

Ladan...Gershon

Translate the names of these men the same as you did in [1 Chronicles 23:7](#). (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

descended from Gershon through him and who were leaders of the families of Ladan the Gershonite

Since it is obvious that Ladan's descendants were also descendants of Ladan's ancestor Gershon, the information about them being Gershom's descendants can be left implicit. Alternate translation: "who were leaders of the families of Ladan the Gershonite" (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

Gershonite

A descendant of Gershon. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

Jehieli

This is the name of a man. This is the same person as in [1 Chronicles 23:8](#), but there his name is spelled "Jehiel." (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- son
- son
- ancestor, father, fathered, forefather, grandfather
- head

Translation Words - UST

- son
- son
- ancestor, father, fathered, forefather, grandfather
- head

ULT

21 The descendants of Ladan, descended from Gershon through him and who were leaders of the families of Ladan the Gershonite, were Jehieli

UST

21 One of those men was Ladan, a descendant of Gershon. He was the ancestor of several family groups. Jehiel was the leader of one of those family groups.

1 Chronicles 26:22

the sons of Jehieli: Zetham and Joel his brother

Zetham and Joel were Jehieli's sons.

Jehieli

This is the name of a man. This is the same person as in [1 Chronicles 23:8](#), but there his name is spelled "Jehiel." (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

Zetham...Joel

Translate the names of these men the same as you did in [1 Chronicles 23:8](#). (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

They were in charge

The word "They" refers to Jehieli, Zetham, and Joel.

Translation Words - ULT

- brother
- son
- Yahweh
- storehouse
- house

Translation Words - UST

- brother
- son
- Yahweh
- storehouse
- house

ULT

²² and the sons of Jehieli: Zetham and Joel his brother. They were in charge of the storehouses of the house of Yahweh.

UST

²² Others who were in charge of the chests in the temple of the Lord were Zetham and his younger brother Joel, who were the sons of Jehiel.

1 Chronicles 26:23

Amram...Izhar...Hebron...Uzziel

Translate the names of these men the same as you did in [1 Chronicles 23:12](#). (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

ULT

²³ From the clans of Amram, the clans of Izhar, the clans of Hebron, and the clans of Uzziel:

UST

²³ Others who did that work were descendants of Amram, Izhar, Hebron and Uzziel.

1 Chronicles 26:24

Shubael

Translate the name of this man as you did in [1 Chronicles 23:16](#). (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

Gershom

Translate the name of this man as you did in [1 Chronicles 23:15](#). (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [son](#)
- [son](#) (2)
- [Moses](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [son](#)
- [son](#) (2)
- [Moses](#)

ULT

²⁴ Shubael son of Gershom son of Moses, was supervisor over the storehouses.

UST

²⁴ Shubuel, a descendant of Moses's son Gershom, was the leader who was in charge of the money chests.

1 Chronicles 26:25

Eliezer

Translate the name of this man as you did in [1 Chronicles 23:15](#). (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

His relatives from the clan of Eliezer

These were his relatives who did this work with him. Alternate translation: "His relatives who did the work with him from the clan of Eliezer" (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

Rehabiah

Translate the name of this man as you did in [1 Chronicles 23:17](#). (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

Jeshaiah...Joram...Zichri...Shelomith

These are names of men. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- brother
- son
- son
- son
- son
- son

Translation Words - UST

- brother
- son
- son
- son
- son
- son

ULT

²⁵ His relatives from the clan of Eliezer were his son Rehabiah, Rehabiah's son Jeshaiah, Jeshaiah's son Joram, Joram's son Zichri, and Zichri's son Shelomith.

UST

²⁵ Others who did that work were the descendants of Gershom's younger brother Eliezer. Those men were Eliezer's son Rehabiah, Rehabiah's son Jeshaiah, Jeshaiah's son Joram, Joram's son Zichri, and Zichri's son Shelomith.

1 Chronicles 26:26

were over

This is an idiom. Alternate translation: “were in charge of” (See: [Idiom](#))

commanders over thousands and hundreds

Possible meanings are 1) these numbers represent the exact amount of soldiers that these commanders led. Alternate translation: “the commanders over 1,000 soldiers and the commanders over 100 soldiers” or 2) the words translated as “thousands” and “hundreds” do not represent exact numbers, but are the names of larger and smaller military divisions. Alternate translation: “the commanders over large military divisions and the commanders over smaller military divisions” (See: [Numbers](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [consecrate, consecrated, consecration](#)
- [brother](#)
- [holy, holiness, unholy, sacred](#)
- [David](#)
- [ancestor, father, fathered, forefather, grandfather](#)
- [head](#)
- [storehouse](#)
- [chief](#)
- [king, kingdom, kingship](#)
- [prince, princess, governors, provincial governors, officials, noblemen, nobility](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [consecrate, consecrated, consecration](#)
- [brother](#)
- [holy, holiness, unholy, sacred](#)
- [David](#)
- [ancestor, father, fathered, forefather, grandfather](#)
- [head](#)
- [storehouse](#)
- [chief](#)
- [king, kingdom, kingship](#)
- [prince, princess, governors, provincial governors, officials, noblemen, nobility](#)

ULT

26 Shelomith and his relatives were over all the storehouses holding the things that belong to Yahweh, that David the king, the family leaders, commanders over thousands and hundreds, and the army commanders had set apart.

UST

26 Shelomith and his relatives were in charge of all the valuable things that had been dedicated to Yahweh by King David, by the leaders of the family groups, by the army commanders of one thousand soldiers and commanders of 100 soldiers, and by other army commanders.

1 Chronicles 26:27

plunder

things an army takes from its enemies after a victory

Translation Words - ULT

- consecrate, consecrated, consecration
- Yahweh
- house

Translation Words - UST

- consecrate, consecrated, consecration
- Yahweh
- house

ULT

²⁷ They set apart the plunder won in battles for the upkeep of the house of Yahweh.

UST

²⁷ Some of the things that those army officers had taken from Israel's enemies in battles they dedicated for the repair of the temple of Yahweh.

1 Chronicles 26:28

everything that was set apart to Yahweh by Samuel the prophet...Joab son of Zeruiah

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: “everything that Samuel the prophet...Joab son of Zeruiah set apart to Yahweh” (See: [Active or Passive](#))

Kish...Ner...Zeruiah

These are names of men. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

Everything that was set apart

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: “Everything that the leaders set apart” (See: [Active or Passive](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [consecrate, consecrated, consecration](#)
- [consecrate, consecrated, consecration](#)
- [brother](#)
- [son](#)
- [son](#) (2)
- [son](#) (3)
- [hand](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [consecrate, consecrated, consecration](#)
- [consecrate, consecrated, consecration](#)
- [brother](#)
- [son](#)
- [son](#) (2)
- [son](#) (3)
- [hand](#)

ULT

²⁸ They were also in charge of everything that was set apart to Yahweh by Samuel the prophet, Saul son of Kish, Abner son of Ner, and Joab son of Zeruiah. Everything that was set apart to Yahweh was under the guard of Shelomith and his relatives.

UST

²⁸ And Shelomith and his relatives were also in charge of everything that had been dedicated to Yahweh by the prophet Samuel, by King Saul, and by David's two army commanders Abner and Joab.

1 Chronicles 26:29

Izhar

Translate the name of this man the same as you did in [1 Chronicles 23:12](#). (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

civil affairs of Israel

“daily business of the people of Israel.” This refers to the regular business of the people of Israel, not connected to the military or to the temple.

Kenaniah

This is the name of a man. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [son](#)
- [Israel, Israelites](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [son](#)
- [Israel, Israelites](#)

ULT

²⁹ Of Izhar’s descendants, Kenaniah and his sons were in charge of the civil affairs of Israel. They were officers and judges.

UST

²⁹ From the descendants of Izhar, Kenaniah and his sons were given work outside the temple area. They were officials and judges in various places in Israel.

1 Chronicles 26:30

Hebron

Translate the name of this man the same as you did in [1 Chronicles 23:12](#). (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

Hashabiah

This is the name of a man. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

1,700 capable men

“one thousand seven hundred capable men” (See: [Numbers](#))

Yahweh’s work and the king’s work

“work done for Yahweh and the king.”

Translation Words - ULT

- brother
- son
- Yahweh
- Israel, Israelites
- prosper, prosperity, prosperous
- king, kingdom, kingship

Translation Words - UST

- brother
- son
- Yahweh
- Israel, Israelites
- prosper, prosperity, prosperous
- king, kingdom, kingship

ULT

³⁰ Of Hebron’s descendants, Hashabiah and his brothers, 1,700 capable men, were in charge of Yahweh’s work and the king’s work. They were on the west side of the Jordan.

UST

³⁰ From the descendants of Hebron, Hashabiah and his relatives were responsible for the work done for Yahweh and for the king in all the area west of the Jordan river. There were 1,700 of them who were able to do their work well.

1 Chronicles 26:31

Hebron

See how you translated this man's name in [1 Chronicles 23:12](#). (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

Jeriah

See how you translated this man's name in [1 Chronicles 23:19](#). (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

counted from the lists

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: "their names were on the lists" (See: [Active or Passive](#))

In the fortieth year of the reign of David

"When David had been king for 40 years" (See: [Ordinal Numbers](#) and [Numbers](#))

men of ability

"capable men"

Jazer

This is the name of a city. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [David](#)
- [ancestor](#), [father](#), [fathered](#), [forefather](#), [grandfather](#)
- [might](#), [mighty](#), [mighty works](#)
- [prosper](#), [prosperity](#), [prosperous](#)
- [chief](#)
- [seek](#), [search](#), [look for](#)
- [kingdom](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [David](#)
- [ancestor](#), [father](#), [fathered](#), [forefather](#), [grandfather](#)
- [might](#), [mighty](#), [mighty works](#)
- [prosper](#), [prosperity](#), [prosperous](#)
- [chief](#)
- [seek](#), [search](#), [look for](#)
- [kingdom](#)

ULT

31 From Hebron's descendants, Jeriah was the leader of his descendants, counted from the lists of their families. In the fortieth year of the reign of David they examined the records and found among them men of ability in Jazer of Gilead.

UST

31 It was written in the records of the descendants of Hebron that Jeriah was their leader. When David had been ruling for almost forty years, they searched in those records, and they found names of capable men descended from Hebron who were at the city of Jazer in the region of Gilead.

1 Chronicles 26:32

2,700 relatives

“two thousand seven hundred family members” (See: [Numbers](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- brother
- son
- God
- appoint, appointed
- David
- ancestor, father, fathered, forefather, grandfather
- head
- prosper, prosperity, prosperous
- king, kingdom, kingship
- king, kingdom, kingship

Translation Words - UST

- brother
- son
- God
- appoint, appointed
- David
- ancestor, father, fathered, forefather, grandfather
- head
- prosper, prosperity, prosperous
- king, kingdom, kingship
- king, kingdom, kingship

ULT

³² Jeriah had 2,700 relatives, who were capable family leaders. David made them overseers over the tribes of Reuben and Gad, and the half tribe of Manasseh, for every matter pertaining to God, and for the king's affairs.

26:1 ^[1] Asaph is the same person referred to as *Ebiasaph* in 1 Chronicles 9:19.

26:2 ^[2] Meshelemiah is the same person referred to as *Shelemiah* in 1 Chronicles 26:14.

26:14 ^[3] Shelemiah is the same person referred to as *Meshelemiah* in 1 Chronicles 26:2.

26:18 ^[4] The word translated “pillar” is translated in some versions as “parbar.” This word appears only here and in 2 Kings 23:11 in the Old Testament. The meaning of this word is not clear.

UST

³² Jeriah had 2,700 relatives who were able to do their work well, and who were leaders of their families. King David put them in charge of governing the tribes of Reuben, Gad, and the western half of the tribe of Manasseh, to be sure that all the people did what God and the king told them to do.

1 Chronicles 27

1 Chronicles 27 General Notes

Structure and formatting

The preparation for the temple continues in this chapter. (See: [temple](#))

1 Chronicles 27:1

This is the list

"These are the names"

commanders of thousands and hundreds

Possible meanings are 1) these numbers represent the exact amount of soldiers that these commanders led. Alternate translation: "the commanders of 1,000 soldiers and the commanders of 100 soldiers" or 2) the words translated as "thousands" and "hundreds" do not represent exact numbers, but are the names of larger and smaller military divisions. Alternate translation: "the commanders of large military divisions and the commanders of smaller military divisions" See how you translated this in [1 Chronicles 13:1](#). (See: [Numbers](#))

in various ways

"in different ways" or "in many ways"

Each military division served month by month throughout the year

This means that each division took turns serving periods of a month at a time.

Each military division

"Each group"

throughout the year

"all year long"

twenty-four thousand men

"24,000 men" (See: [Numbers](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [son](#)
- [to minister, ministry](#)
- [Israel, Israelites](#)
- [ancestor, father, fathered, forefather, grandfather](#)
- [head](#)
- [king, kingdom, kingship](#)
- [prince, princess, governors, provincial governors, officials, noblemen, nobility](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [son](#)
- [to minister, ministry](#)
- [Israel, Israelites](#)
- [ancestor, father, fathered, forefather, grandfather](#)

ULT

¹ This is the list of the Israelite family leaders, commanders of thousands and hundreds, as well as army officers who served the king in various ways. Each military division served month by month throughout the year. Each division had twenty-four thousand men.

UST

¹ This is a list of the Israelite men who served the king in the army. Some were leaders of families, some were commanders of one hundred men, some were commanders of one thousand men, and some were other officers. There were twenty-four thousand men in each group. Each group served one month of each year.

- head
- king, kingdom, kingship
- prince, princess, governors, provincial governors, officials, noblemen, nobility

1 Chronicles 27:2

Over the division

This is an idiom. Alternate translation: "In charge of the division" (See: [Idiom](#))

first month

"month 1." This is the first month of the Hebrew calendar. It is during the last part of March and the first part of April on Western calendars. (See: [Hebrew Months](#) and [Ordinal Numbers](#))

Jashobeam...Zabdiel

These are names of men. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

twenty-four thousand men

"24,000 men" (See: [Numbers](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [son](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [son](#)

ULT

² Over the division for the first month was Jashobeam son of Zabdiel. In his division were twenty-four thousand men.

UST

² Jashobeam, son of Zabdiel, was in charge of the group that served during the first month of each year.

1 Chronicles 27:3

Perez

This is the name of a man. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- son
- chief
- prince, princess, governors, provincial governors, officials, noblemen, nobility

Translation Words - UST

- son
- chief
- prince, princess, governors, provincial governors, officials, noblemen, nobility

ULT

³ He was among the descendants of Perez and in charge of all the army officers for the first month.

UST

³ He was a descendant of Perez, and he was the commander of all the army officers during the first month of each year.

1 Chronicles 27:4

Over the division

"In charge of the division"

the second month

"month 2." This is the second month of the Hebrew calendar. It is during the last part of April and the first part of May on Western calendars. (See: [Hebrew Months](#) and [Ordinal Numbers](#))

Dodai...Mikloth

These are names of men. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

Ahoah

See how you translated this man's name in [1 Chronicles 8:4](#). (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

In his division

"In his group of soldiers"

twenty-four thousand men

"24,000 men" (See: [Numbers](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [new moon](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [new moon](#)

ULT

⁴ Over the division for the second month was Dodai, from the clan descended from Ahoah. Mikloth was second in rank. In his division were twenty-four thousand men.

UST

⁴ Dodai, from the clan of Ahohi, was the commander of the group that served during the following.

1 Chronicles 27:5

the third month

“month 3.” This is the third month of the Hebrew calendar. It is during the last part of May and the first part of June on Western calendars. (See: [Hebrew Months](#) and [Ordinal Numbers](#))

Jehoiada

See how you translated this man’s name in [1 Chronicles 11:22](#). (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

twenty-four thousand men

“24,000 men” (See: [Numbers](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [son](#)
- [priest, priesthood](#)
- [head](#)
- [prince, princess, governors, provincial governors, officials, noblemen, nobility](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [son](#)
- [priest, priesthood](#)
- [head](#)
- [prince, princess, governors, provincial governors, officials, noblemen, nobility](#)

ULT

⁵ The commander of the army for the third month was Benaiah son of Jehoiada, a priest and leader. In his division were twenty-four thousand men.

UST

⁵ Benaiah, son of Jehoiada the high priest, was the commander of the group that served during the following month.

1 Chronicles 27:6

Ammizabad

This is the name of a man. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

the thirty

“the 30.” This refers to “David’s 30 mightiest soldiers.” (See: [Numbers](#))

over the thirty

This is an idiom. Alternate translation: “in charge of the 30 men” (See: [Idiom](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [son](#)
- [might, mighty, mighty works](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [son](#)
- [might, mighty, mighty works](#)

ULT

⁶ This is the Benaiah who was the leader of the thirty, and over the thirty. Ammizabad his son was in his division.

UST

⁶ He was the one who was a mighty warrior among David’s thirty greatest soldiers, and he was their leader. His son Ammizabad was his assistant.

1 Chronicles 27:7

The commander for the fourth month was Asahel brother of Joab

“Asahel, brother of Joab, was the commander for the fourth month”

the fourth month

“month 4.” This is the fourth month of the Hebrew calendar. It is during the last part of June and the first part of July on Western calendars. (See: [Hebrew Months](#) and [Ordinal Numbers](#))

Asahel...Zebadiah

These are the names of men. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

his division

“his military group”

twenty-four thousand men

“24,000 men” (See: [Numbers](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [brother](#)
- [son](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [brother](#)
- [son](#)

ULT

⁷ The commander for the fourth month was Asahel brother of Joab. Zebadiah his son became commander after him. In his division were twenty-four thousand men.

UST

⁷ Asahel, Joab's younger brother, was the commander of the group that served during the following month. Asahel's son Zebadiah became the commander after Asahel was killed.

1 Chronicles 27:8

Shamhuth...Izrah

These are the names of men. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

the fifth month

"month 5." This is the fifth month of the Hebrew calendar. It is during the last part of July and the first part of August on Western calendars. (See: [Hebrew Months](#) and [Ordinal Numbers](#))

twenty-four thousand men

"24,000 men" (See: [Numbers](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [chief](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [chief](#)

ULT

⁸ The commander for the fifth month was Shamhuth, a descendant of Izrah. In his division were twenty-four thousand men.

UST

⁸ The commander for the following month was Shamhuth, a descendant of Izrah.

1 Chronicles 27:9

the sixth month

“month 6.” This is the sixth month of the Hebrew calendar. It is during the last part of August and the first part of September on Western calendars. (See: [Hebrew Months](#) and [Ordinal Numbers](#))

Ira...Ikkesh

Translate the names of these men the same as you did in [1 Chronicles 11:28](#). (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

Tekoa

This is the name of a place. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

twenty-four thousand men

“24,000 men” (See: [Numbers](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [son](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [son](#)

ULT

⁹ The commander for the sixth month was Ira son of Ikkesh, from Tekoa. In his division were twenty-four thousand men.

UST

⁹ The commander for the following month was Ira son of Ikkesh from the city of Tekoa.

1 Chronicles 27:10

The commander for the seventh month was Helez the Pelonite, from the people of Ephraim

“Helez, the Pelonite, from the people of Ephraim, was the commander for the seventh month”

the seventh month

“month 7.” This is the seventh month of the Hebrew calendar. It is during the last part of September and the first part of October on Western calendars. (See: [Hebrew Months](#) and [Ordinal Numbers](#))

Helez the Pelonite

See how you translated the name of this man and the name of his clan in [1 Chronicles 11:27](#). (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

twenty-four thousand men

“24,000 men” (See: [Numbers](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [son](#)
- [Ephraim, Ephraimite](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [son](#)
- [Ephraim, Ephraimite](#)

ULT

¹⁰ The commander for the seventh month was Helez the Pelonite, from the people of Ephraim. In his division were twenty-four thousand men.

UST

¹⁰ The commander for the following month was Helez, a member of the clan of Pelon from the tribe of Ephraim.

1 Chronicles 27:11

the eighth month

“month 8.” This is the eighth month of the Hebrew calendar. It is during the last part of October and the first part of November on Western calendars. (See: [Hebrew Months](#) and [Ordinal Numbers](#))

Sibbekai the Hushathite

See how you translated the name of this man and the name of his clan in [1 Chronicles 11:29](#). (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

Zerah

See how you translated this man’s name in [1 Chronicles 2:4](#). (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

twenty-four thousand men

“24,000 men” (See: [Numbers](#))

ULT

11 The commander for the eighth month was Sibbekai the Hushathite, from the clan descended from Zerah. In his division were twenty-four thousand men.

UST

11 The commander for the following month was Sibbekai, a descendant of Zerah from the city of Hushah.

1 Chronicles 27:12

the ninth month

“month 9.” This is the ninth month of the Hebrew calendar. It is during the last part November and the first part December on Western calendars. (See: [Hebrew Months](#) and [Ordinal Numbers](#))

Abiezer the Anathothite

See how you translated the name of this man and the name of his clan [1 Chronicles 11:28](#). (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

twenty-four thousand men

“24,000 men” (See: [Numbers](#))

ULT

¹² The commander for the ninth month was Abiezer the Anathothite, from the tribe of Benjamin. In his division were twenty-four thousand men.

UST

¹² The commander for the following month was Abiezer from the city of Anathoth in the tribe of Benjamin.

1 Chronicles 27:13

the tenth month

“month 10.” This is the tenth month of the Hebrew calendar. It is during the last part of December and the first part of January on Western calendars. (See: [Hebrew Months](#) and [Ordinal Numbers](#))

Maharai

See how you translated the name of this man in [1 Chronicles 11:30](#). (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

Netophah

This is the name of a place. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

Zerah

See how you translated the name of this man in [1 Chronicles 2:4](#). (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

twenty-four thousand men

“24,000 men” (See: [Numbers](#))

ULT

13 The commander for the tenth month was Maharai from the city of Netophah, from the clan descended from Zerah. In his division were twenty-four thousand men.

UST

13 The commander for the following month was Maharai, a descendant of Zerah from the city of Netophath.

1 Chronicles 27:14

the eleventh month

“month 11.” This is the eleventh month of the Hebrew calendar. It is during the last part of January and the first part of February on Western calendars. (See: [Hebrew Months](#) and [Ordinal Numbers](#))

Pirathon

This is the name of a place. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

twenty-four thousand men

“24,000 men” (See: [Numbers](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [son](#)
- [Ephraim, Ephraimite](#)
- [new moon](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [son](#)
- [Ephraim, Ephraimite](#)
- [new moon](#)

ULT

14 The commander for the eleventh month was Benaiah from the city of Pirathon, from the tribe of Ephraim. In his division were twenty-four thousand men.

UST

14 The commander for the following month was Benaiah from the city of Pirathon in the tribe of Ephraim.

1 Chronicles 27:15

the twelfth month

“month 12.” This is the twelfth and last month of the Hebrew calendar. It is during the last part of February and the first part of March on Western calendars. (See: [Hebrew Months](#) and [Ordinal Numbers](#))

Heldai...Othniel

These are names of men. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

Netophah

This is the name of a place. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

twenty-four thousand men

“24,000 men” (See: [Numbers](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [new moon](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [new moon](#)

ULT

¹⁵ The commander for the twelfth month was Heldai from the city of Netophah, from the clan descended from Othniel. In his division were twenty-four thousand men.

UST

¹⁵ The commander for the last month of each year was Heldai, a descendant of Othniel from the city of Netophath.

1 Chronicles 27:16

Eliezer...Zichri...Shephatiah...Maacah

These are names of men. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [son](#)
- [son](#)
- [Israel, Israelites](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [son](#)
- [son](#)
- [Israel, Israelites](#)

ULT

16 These were the leaders of the tribes of Israel: For the tribe of Reuben, Eliezer son of Zichri was the leader. For the tribe of Simeon, Shephatiah son of Maacah was the leader.

UST

16 This is a list of the administrators of the twelve tribes of Israel: Eliezer, son of Zicri, was the administrator of the tribe of Reuben. Shephatiah, son of Maacah, was the administrator of the tribe of Simeon.

1 Chronicles 27:17

Hashabiah...Kemuel

These are names of men. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

Zadok

See how you translated the hame of this man in [1 Chronicles 6:8](#).
(See: [How to Translate Names](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [son](#)
- [Levi](#), [Levite](#), [Levitical](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [son](#)
- [Levi](#), [Levite](#), [Levitical](#)

ULT

17 For the tribe of Levi, Hashabiah son of Kemuel was the leader, and Zadok led Aaron's descendants.

UST

17 Hashabiah, the son of Kemuel, was the administrator of the tribe of Levi. Zadok was the administrator of the tribe of Aaron.

1 Chronicles 27:18

Omri

This is the name of a man. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

Elihu

See how you translated the name of this man in [1 Chronicles 12:20](#).
(See: [How to Translate Names](#))

Michael

See how you translated the name of this man in [1 Chronicles 7:3](#).
(See: [How to Translate Names](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- brother
- son
- Judah
- David

Translation Words - UST

- brother
- son
- Judah
- David

ULT

18 For the tribe of Judah, Elihu, one of David's brothers, was the leader. For the tribe of Issachar, Omri son of Michael was the leader.

UST

18 Elihu, David's older brother, was the administrator of the tribe of Judah. Omri, son of Michael, was the administrator of the tribe of Issachar.

1 Chronicles 27:19

Ishmaiah...Obadiah...Jerimoth...Azriel

These are names of men. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- son
- son (2)

Translation Words - UST

- son
- son (2)

ULT

19 For the tribe of Zebulun, Ishmaiah son of Obadiah was the leader. For the tribe of Naphtali, Jerimoth son of Azriel was the leader.

UST

19 Ishmaiah, son of Obadiah, was the administrator of the tribe of Zebulun. Jerimoth, son of Azriel, was the administrator of the tribe of Naphtali.

1 Chronicles 27:20

Hoshea...Azaziah...Joel...Pedaiah

These are names of men. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [son](#)
- [son](#)
- [son](#) (2)
- [Joel](#)
- [Ephraim, Ephraimite](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [son](#)
- [son](#)
- [son](#) (2)
- [Joel](#)
- [Ephraim, Ephraimite](#)

ULT

²⁰ For the tribe of Ephraim, Hoshea son of Azaziah was the leader. For the half tribe of Manasseh, Joel son of Pedaiah was the leader.

UST

²⁰ Hoshea, son of Azaziah, was the administrator of the tribe of Ephraim. Joel, son of Pedaiah, was the administrator of the tribe of the western half of the tribe of Manasseh.

1 Chronicles 27:21

Iddo...Zechariah...Jaasiel...Abner

These are names of men. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [son](#)
- [son](#) (2)
- [Benjamin, Benjamite](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [son](#)
- [son](#) (2)
- [Benjamin, Benjamite](#)

ULT

²¹ For the half tribe of Manasseh in Gilead, Iddo son of Zechariah was the leader. For the tribe of Benjamin, Jaasiel son of Abner was the leader.

UST

²¹ Iddo, son of Zechariah, was the administrator of the eastern half of the tribe of Manasseh, in the region of Gilead. Jaasiel, son of Abner, was the administrator of the tribe of Benjamin.

1 Chronicles 27:22

Azarel...Jeroham

These are names of men. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- son
- Israel, Israelites
- prince, princess, governors, provincial governors, officials, noblemen, nobility

Translation Words - UST

- son
- Israel, Israelites
- prince, princess, governors, provincial governors, officials, noblemen, nobility

ULT

²² For the tribe of Dan, Azarel son of Jeroham was the leader. These were the leaders of the tribes of Israel.

UST

²² Azarel, son of Jeroham, was the administrator of the tribe of Dan.

1 Chronicles 27:23

those twenty years old or younger

“people 20 years old or younger” (See: [Numbers](#))

to increase Israel like the stars of heaven

This speaks of the number of people in Israel increasing as if they would become as numerous as the stars. Alternate translation: “to increase the number of people in Israel to be as many as the stars in the heavens” (See: [Simile](#))

increase Israel

Here “Israel” represents the people who live there. Alternate translation: “increase the population of Israel” (See: [Metonymy](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [heaven, sky, heavens, heavenly](#)
- [Yahweh](#)
- [Israel, Israelites](#)
- [David](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [heaven, sky, heavens, heavenly](#)
- [Yahweh](#)
- [Israel, Israelites](#)
- [David](#)

ULT

²³ David did not count those twenty years old or younger, because Yahweh had promised to increase Israel like the stars of heaven.

UST

²³ David did not tell Joab to count the men who were less than twenty years old, because Yahweh had promised many years previously that there would be as many people in Israel as there are stars in the sky.

1 Chronicles 27:24

Zeruiah

See how you translated this woman's name in [1 Chronicles 2:16](#). (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

Wrath fell on Israel

This speaks of God punishing the people as if his "wrath" were something that fell upon them. Alternate translation: "God punished the people of Israel" (See: [Metonymy](#))

This number was not written down

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: "No one wrote this number down" (See: [Active or Passive](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [son](#)
- [Israel, Israelites](#)
- [David](#)
- [king, kingdom, kingship](#)
- [consume, devour](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [son](#)
- [Israel, Israelites](#)
- [David](#)
- [king, kingdom, kingship](#)
- [consume, devour](#)

ULT

²⁴ Joab son of Zeruiah began to count the men, but did not finish. Wrath fell on Israel for this. This number was not written down in the Chronicles of King David.

UST

²⁴ Joab and his helpers started to count the men of Israel, but they did not finish counting them because Joab knew that Yahweh was angry about their being counted. Yahweh punished the people of Israel because of this counting, and as a result the total number of Israelite men able to serve in the army was not written on the scroll about King David's rule.

1 Chronicles 27:25

Azmaveth...Adiel...Jonathan...Uzziah

These are names of men. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

in charge of

“responsible for guarding”

was over

This is an idiom. Alternate translation: “was in charge of” (See: [Idiom](#))

fortified towers

“strong towers”

Translation Words - ULT

- [son](#)
- [son](#) (2)
- [storehouse](#)
- [king](#), [kingdom](#), [kingship](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [son](#)
- [son](#) (2)
- [storehouse](#)
- [king](#), [kingdom](#), [kingship](#)

ULT

²⁵ Azmaveth son of Adiel was in charge of the king's treasuries. Jonathan son of Uzziah was over the storehouses in the fields, in the cities, and in the villages, and in the fortified towers.

UST

²⁵ Azmaveth, son of Adiel, was in charge of the king's storehouses.

Jonathan, son of Uzziah, was in charge of the storehouses in other towns and villages in Israel, and also in charge of the watchtowers.

1 Chronicles 27:26

Ezri...Kelub

These are names of men. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

plowed the land

This means to dig into or break up the dirt before planting.

Translation Words - ULT

- [son](#)
- [servant, serve, slave, worker, young man, young women](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [son](#)
- [servant, serve, slave, worker, young man, young women](#)

ULT

²⁶ Ezri son of Kelub was over the farmers, those who plowed the land.

UST

²⁶ Ezri son of Kelub was in charge of the workers who farmed the land that belonged to the king.

1 Chronicles 27:27

Zabdi

This is the name of a man. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

Ramathite

This is the name of a person from the city of Ramah. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

Shiphmite

This is the name of a person from the city of Shepham. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

wine cellars

These are the parts of a building that are below the ground and used to store wine.

Translation Words - ULT

- [storehouse](#)
- [wine](#), [wineskin](#), [new wine](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [storehouse](#)
- [wine](#), [wineskin](#), [new wine](#)

ULT

27 Shimei the Ramathite was over the vineyards, and Zabdi the Shiphmite was over the grapes and the wine cellars.

UST

27 Shimei from the city of Ramath was in charge of the king's vineyards.

Zabdi from the city of Shepham was in charge of storing the wine from the grapes produced in vineyards.

1 Chronicles 27:28

Over the

This is an idiom. Alternate translation: “In charge of the” (See: [Idiom](#))

sycamore

This is a type of tree. (See: [Translate Unknowns](#))

Baal-Hanan

This is the name of a man. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

Geder

This is the name of a place. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [storehouse](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [storehouse](#)

ULT

²⁸ Over the olive trees and the sycamore trees that were in the lowlands was Baal-Hanan from Geder, and over the storehouses of oil was Joash.

UST

²⁸ Baal-Hanan from the city of Geder was in charge of storing the olive oil.

1 Chronicles 27:29

Sharon

This is the name of a place. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

Shitrai...Shaphat...Adlai

These are names of men. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

that were pastured

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: "that ate grass in the fields" (See: [Active or Passive](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [son](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [son](#)

ULT

²⁹ Over the herds that were pastured in Sharon was Shitrai from Sharon, and over the herds that were in the valleys was Shaphat son of Adlai.

UST

²⁹ Shitrai from the Plain of Sharon was in charge of the herds of cattle that grazed there.

Shaphat son of Adlai was in charge of the cattle in the valleys.

1 Chronicles 27:30

Over the

This is an idiom. Alternate translation: “In charge of the” (See: [Idiom](#))

Obil...Jehdeiah...Jaziz

These are names of men. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

Ishmaelite

Translate the name of this clan as you did in [1 Chronicles 2:17](#). (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

Hagrite

Translate the name of this people group as you did in [1 Chronicles 5:10](#). (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

Meronoth

This is the name of a place. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

ULT

³⁰ Over the camels was Obil the Ishmaelite, and over the female donkeys was Jehdeiah from Meronoth. Over the flocks was Jaziz the Hagrite.

UST

³⁰ Obil, a descendant of Ishmael, was in charge of the camels.

Jehdeiah from the city of Meronoth was in charge of the donkeys.

1 Chronicles 27:31

Jaziz

This is the name of a man. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

Hagrite

Translate the name of this people group as you did in [1 Chronicles 5:10](#). (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

All these officials

“All of these men”

Translation Words - ULT

- [David](#)
- [king, kingdom, kingship](#)
- [ewe, ram, sheep, sheepfold, sheepshearers, sheepskins](#)
- [prince, princess, governors, provincial governors, officials, noblemen, nobility](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [David](#)
- [king, kingdom, kingship](#)
- [ewe, ram, sheep, sheepfold, sheepshearers, sheepskins](#)
- [prince, princess, governors, provincial governors, officials, noblemen, nobility](#)

ULT

³¹ Jaziz the Hagrite was in charge of the flocks. All these officials were in charge of the property of King David.

UST

³¹ Jaziz, a descendant of Hagar, was in charge of the king's flocks of sheep. All of those officials were in charge of the things that belonged to King David.

1 Chronicles 27:32

Jonathan...Jehiel...Hakmoni

These are names of men. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [son](#)
- [son](#)
- [David](#)
- [king, kingdom, kingship](#)
- [advice, advise, advisor, counsel, counselor, counsels](#)
- [understand, understanding, thinking](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [son](#)
- [son](#)
- [David](#)
- [king, kingdom, kingship](#)
- [advice, advise, advisor, counsel, counselor, counsels](#)
- [understand, understanding, thinking](#)

ULT

³² Jonathan, David's uncle, was an advisor, since he was a wise man and a scribe. Jehiel son of Hakmoni cared for the king's sons.

UST

³² David's uncle Jonathan was a wise counselor for him.

Jehiel, son of Hacmoni, taught the king's sons.

1 Chronicles 27:33

Ahithophel...Hushai

These are names of men. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

Arkite

This is the name of a tribe or clan. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- king, kingdom, kingship
- king, kingdom, kingship
- advice, advise, advisor, counsel, counselor, counsels

Translation Words - UST

- king, kingdom, kingship
- king, kingdom, kingship
- advice, advise, advisor, counsel, counselor, counsels

ULT

³³ Ahithophel was the king's advisor, and Hushai from the Arkite people was the king's private advisor.

UST

³³ Ahithophel was the king's official counselor.

1 Chronicles 27:34

Ahithophel...Jehoiada

These are names of men. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- son
- king, kingdom, kingship
- prince, princess, governors, provincial governors, officials, noblemen, nobility

Translation Words - UST

- son
- king, kingdom, kingship
- prince, princess, governors, provincial governors, officials, noblemen, nobility

ULT

³⁴ Ahithophel's position was taken by Jehoiada son of Benaiah, and by Abiathar. Joab was commander of the king's army.

UST

³⁴ Hushai from the Ark people group was the king's special friend. Benaiah's son Jehoiada became the king's advisor after Ahithophel died, and later Abiathar became his advisor.

Joab was the chief commander of the army.

1 Chronicles 28

1 Chronicles 28 General Notes

Structure and formatting

The preparation for the temple continues in this chapter. David lectured the people and Solomon on what they should do. (See: [temple](#))

Special concepts in this chapter

David's instructions

David gives instructions to the people because he knows that he will not be there when the temple is built. It was common in the ancient Near East for leaders to give instructions to people before they die in preparation or anticipation of their death.

1 Chronicles 28:1

assembled

called together

scheduled work

Work that needs to be repeated, for example every day or every month.

the commanders of thousands and of hundreds

Possible meanings are 1) these numbers represent the exact amount of soldiers that these commanders led. Alternate translation: “the commanders of 1,000 soldiers and the commanders of 100 soldiers” or 2) the words translated as “thousands” and “hundreds” do not represent exact numbers, but are the names of larger and smaller military divisions. Alternate translation: “the commanders of large military divisions and the commanders of smaller military divisions” See how you translated this in [1 Chronicles 13:1](#). (See: [Numbers](#))

the managers over

The word “over” is used here as an idiom. Alternate translation: “the managers in charge of” (See: [Idiom](#))

property and possessions

These two words share similar meanings and refer to all of the items and lands that the king owned. (See: [Doublet](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [son](#)
- [to minister, ministry](#)
- [Israel, Israelites](#)
- [David](#)
- [Jerusalem](#)
- [might, mighty, mighty works](#)
- [prosper, prosperity, prosperous](#)
- [king, kingdom, kingship](#)
- [king, kingdom, kingship](#)
- [prince, princess, governors, provincial governors, officials, noblemen, nobility](#)
- [prince, princess, governors, provincial governors, officials, noblemen, nobility](#) (2)
- [prince, princess, governors, provincial governors, officials, noblemen, nobility](#)
- [prince, princess, governors, provincial governors, officials, noblemen, nobility](#) (2)
- [prince, princess, governors, provincial governors, officials, noblemen, nobility](#) (3)
- [prince, princess, governors, provincial governors, officials, noblemen, nobility](#) (4)

Translation Words - UST

- [son](#)
- [to minister, ministry](#)

ULT

¹ David assembled all the officials of Israel at Jerusalem: the officials of the tribes, the officers of the divisions that served the king in their scheduled work, the commanders of thousands and of hundreds, the managers over all the property and possessions of the king and of his sons, and the officers and fighting men, including the most skilled of them.

UST

¹ David summoned all the leaders of Israel to come to Jerusalem. He summoned the leaders of the tribes, the leaders of the groups that worked for the king, the commanders of one hundred soldiers, the commanders of one thousand soldiers, those who were in charge of the king's property and his livestock, those who taught his sons, all the palace officials, and his mighty soldiers and bravest warriors.

- Israel, Israelites
- David
- Jerusalem
- might, mighty, mighty works
- prosper, prosperity, prosperous
- king, kingdom, kingship
- king, kingdom, kingship
- prince, princess, governors, provincial governors, officials, noblemen, nobility
- prince, princess, governors, provincial governors, officials, noblemen, nobility (2)
- prince, princess, governors, provincial governors, officials, noblemen, nobility
- prince, princess, governors, provincial governors, officials, noblemen, nobility (2)
- prince, princess, governors, provincial governors, officials, noblemen, nobility (3)
- prince, princess, governors, provincial governors, officials, noblemen, nobility (4)

1 Chronicles 28:2

rose to his feet

This is an idiom. Alternate translation: “stood up” (See: [Idiom](#))

my brothers and my people

These two phrases share similar meanings and emphasize that David and the people of Israel are family. (See: [Doublet](#))

the ark of the covenant of Yahweh; a footstool for our God

The second phrase defines the first phrase. The “ark of the covenant” is spoke of as Yahweh’s footstool to picture God on his throne, with his feet resting on his footstool, which represents all that is in submission to him. (See: [Parallelism](#) and [Metaphor](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- brother
- God
- heart
- covenant
- Yahweh
- David
- people, people group,
- king, kingdom, kingship
- rest, rested, restless
- house

Translation Words - UST

- brother
- God
- heart
- covenant
- Yahweh
- David
- people, people group,
- king, kingdom, kingship
- rest, rested, restless
- house

ULT

² Then David the king rose to his feet and said, “Listen to me, my brothers and my people. It was my intention to build a temple for the ark of the covenant of Yahweh; a footstool for our God, and I have made preparations to build it.

UST

² David stood up and said, “My fellow Israelites, listen to me. I wanted to build a temple to be a place where we would put the sacred chest containing Yahweh’s covenant, where the sacred chest would stay permanently. And I made plans to build it.

1 Chronicles 28:3

Connecting Statement:

David continues speaking to the Israelites.

a temple for my name

Here God refers to himself by his "name." Alternate translation: "a temple for me" (See: [Metonymy](#))

a man of war and have shed blood

"a man accustomed to war and have shed blood." Both descriptions emphasize the same thing, namely that David had killed people. (See: [Parallelism](#))

have shed blood

This refers to killing people. Alternate translation: "have killed people" (See: [Euphemism](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [house](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [house](#)

ULT

³ But God said to me, 'You will not build a temple for my name, because you are a man of war and have shed blood.'

UST

³ But God said to me, 'You are not the one who will arrange to build a temple, because you have fought battles and have killed people.'

1 Chronicles 28:4

Connecting Statement:

David continues speaking to the Israelites.

chose me...to be king over Israel forever

One possible meaning is that here David is a metonym for David and his descendants who will rule Israel forever. Alternate translation:

“chose me and my descendants...to be kings over Israel forever”

Another is that David will continue to be the king of Israel after he is resurrected from the dead. (See: [Metonymy](#))

all Israel

“the whole land of Israel” or “all the Israelites”

Translation Words - ULT

- God
- Yahweh
- Israel, Israelites
- Israel, Israelites
- Israel, Israelites
- Judea
- Judah
- ancestor, father, fathered, forefather, grandfather
- ancestor, father, fathered, forefather, grandfather
- ancestor, father, fathered, forefather, grandfather
- reign, rule
- king, kingdom, kingship
- house
- house

Translation Words - UST

- God
- Yahweh
- Israel, Israelites
- Israel, Israelites
- Israel, Israelites
- Judea
- Judah
- ancestor, father, fathered, forefather, grandfather
- ancestor, father, fathered, forefather, grandfather
- ancestor, father, fathered, forefather, grandfather
- reign, rule
- king, kingdom, kingship
- house
- house

ULT

⁴ Yet Yahweh, the God of Israel, chose me from all my father's family to be king over Israel forever. He has chosen the tribe of Judah as leader. In the tribe of Judah, and in my father's household, out of all my father's sons, he chose me to be king over all Israel.

UST

⁴ But Yahweh, the God to whom we Israelites belong, had chosen me and my descendants to be the kings of Israel forever. First he chose Judah to be a leader, and from the people of Judah he chose me to be the king over all of Israel.

1 Chronicles 28:5

Connecting Statement:

David continues speaking to the Israelites.

to sit on the throne of

Here “to sit on the throne” means to rule as king. Alternate translation: “to rule over” or “to be the king of” (See: [Metonymy](#))

the kingdom of Yahweh, over Israel

“Israel, which is Yahweh’s kingdom”

Translation Words - ULT

- son
- son
- son
- Yahweh
- Yahweh
- Israel, Israelites
- throne, enthroned
- kingdom

Translation Words - UST

- son
- son
- son
- Yahweh
- Yahweh
- Israel, Israelites
- throne, enthroned
- kingdom

ULT

⁵ From the many sons whom Yahweh has given me, he chose Solomon, my son, to sit on the throne of the kingdom of Yahweh, over Israel.

UST

⁵ Yahweh has given me many sons, but from them he chose my son Solomon to be the next king to rule his kingdom of Israel.

1 Chronicles 28:6

Connecting Statement:

David continues speaking to the Israelites.

He said to me

“God said to me”

my house

The word “house” refers to the temple of Yahweh.

I have chosen him to be my son, and I will be his father

This does not mean that Solomon becomes an actual son of God, but it describes the personal relationship that he and God will have. Alternate translation: “I have chosen to treat him like a son, and I will be like a father to him” (See: [Metaphor](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [son](#)
- [son](#)
- [Solomon](#)
- [ancestor, father, fathered, forefather, grandfather](#)
- [house](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [son](#)
- [son](#)
- [Solomon](#)
- [ancestor, father, fathered, forefather, grandfather](#)
- [house](#)

ULT

⁶ He said to me, ‘Solomon your son will build my house and my courtyards, for I have chosen him to be my son, and I will be his father.’

UST

⁶ He said to me, ‘Solomon your son is the one who will arrange to build my temple and the courtyards around it, because I have chosen him to be like my son and I will be like his father.’

1 Chronicles 28:7

Connecting Statement:

David continues speaking to the Israelites.

my commandments and decrees

These two words basically mean the same thing and refer to everything that Yahweh had commanded. (See: [Doublet](#))

as you are this day

The word “you” here refers to David. Also, the understood word “committed” may be supplied. Alternate translation: “just as you are committed this day” (See: [Ellipsis](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [command, commandment](#)
- [statute](#)
- [strength, strengthen, strong](#)
- [kingdom](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [command, commandment](#)
- [statute](#)
- [strength, strengthen, strong](#)
- [kingdom](#)

ULT

⁷ I will establish his kingdom forever, if he remains committed to obey my commandments and decrees, as you are this day.'

UST

⁷ I will enable his kingdom to endure forever if he continues to obey my laws and decrees, like you are doing now.'

1 Chronicles 28:8

Connecting Statement:

David finishes speaking to the Israelites.

Now then, in the sight of all Israel...all of you must

Here David is giving a command to all of the people of Israel. Alternate translation: “Now then, in the sight of all Israel, this assembly for Yahweh, and in the presence of our God, I command all of you to” (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

Now then

This indicates that David starts a new phase in his speech.

all Israel, this assembly for Yahweh

These two phrases have the same meaning and the second describes the first. Even though all of the people of Israel are not present, those present represent all of Israel. Alternate translation: “all you people of Israel, in this assembly for Yahweh” (See: [Parallelism](#) and [Synecdoche](#))

in the sight of

The phrase “in the sight of” means that they are all present and listening. Alternate translation: “in the hearing of” (See: [Idiom](#))

keep and try to carry out

The phrase “to carry out” means basically the same thing as “keep.” Together the words emphasize importance of doing what God commands. Alternate translation: “carefully obey” (See: [Doublet](#))

your children after you forever

This means that the land will belong to their children and the descendants in the future. The phrase “after you” is an idiom. Alternate translation: “your children and your descendants who will take your place after you die” (See: [Synecdoche](#) and [Idiom](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [command, commandment](#)
- [son](#)
- [God](#)
- [God](#)
- [Yahweh](#)
- [Yahweh](#)
- [Israel, Israelites](#)
- [good, right, pleasant, pleasing, better, best](#)
- [assembly, assemble, congregation, meeting](#)
- [watch, watchman, watchful, guard, take heed, beware, watch out](#)

ULT

⁸ Now then, in the sight of all Israel, this assembly for Yahweh, and in the presence of our God, all of you must keep and try to carry out all the commandments of Yahweh your God. Do this so that you may possess this good land and leave it as an inheritance to your children after you forever.

UST

⁸ So now, while all you people of Israel, all of you who belong to Yahweh, are watching, and while God is listening, I command all you people to carefully obey all the commands of Yahweh our God, in order that you may continue to possess this good land and enable your descendants to inherit it forever.

Translation Words - UST

- command, commandment
- son
- God
- God
- Yahweh
- Yahweh
- Israel, Israelites
- good, right, pleasant, pleasing, better, best
- assembly, assemble, congregation, meeting
- watch, watchman, watchful, guard, take heed, beware, watch out

1 Chronicles 28:9

the God of your father

David calls himself “your father” because this is a very formal occasion. Alternate translation: “my God” (See: [First](#), [Second](#) or [Third Person](#))

with your whole heart

Here the “heart” the represents the whole person. To do something with “your whole heart” is an idiom. Alternate translation: “with complete devotion” or “completely” (See: [Synecdoche](#) and [Idiom](#))

a willing spirit

Here the “spirit” represents the whole person and emphasizes the person’s will. Alternate translation: “willingly” (See: [Synecdoche](#))

searches all hearts and understands every motivation of everyone’s thoughts

These two phrases mean basically the same thing and emphasize that Yahweh knows the thoughts and motives of every person. (See: [Parallelism](#))

all hearts

Here people’s “hearts” represent their feelings and desires. Alternate translation: “searches everyone’s emotions and desires” (See: [Metonymy](#))

If you seek him, he will be found by you

This can be written in active form. Also, this speaks of following Yahweh and having him listen to you as searching for him and finding him. Alternate translation: “If you seek him, you will find him” or “If you try to get Yahweh to pay attention to you, he will do so” (See: [Active or Passive](#) and [Metaphor](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [son](#)
- [God](#)
- [heart](#)
- [heart](#)
- [Yahweh](#)
- [Solomon](#)
- [ancestor](#), [father](#), [fathered](#), [forefather](#), [grandfather](#)
- [forsake](#), [forsaken](#), [leave](#)
- [seek](#), [search](#), [look for](#)
- [seek](#), [search](#), [look for](#)
- [understand](#), [understanding](#), [thinking](#)
- [know](#), [knowledge](#), [unknown](#), [distinguish](#)

ULT

⁹ As for you, Solomon my son, obey the God of your father, and serve him with your whole heart and a willing spirit. Do this because Yahweh searches all hearts and understands every motivation of everyone’s thoughts. If you seek him, he will be found by you, but if you abandon him, he will reject you permanently.

UST

⁹ And you, my son Solomon, must know God like I know him, and you must serve him faithfully and because you want to. You must do that because he knows what everyone is thinking and he understands the reasons that people do what they do. If you seek to know him, he will heed your prayers. But if you abandon him, he will abandon you forever.

Translation Words - UST

- son
- God
- heart
- heart
- Yahweh
- Solomon
- ancestor, father, fathered, forefather, grandfather
- forsake, forsaken, leave
- seek, search, look for
- seek, search, look for
- understand, understanding, thinking
- know, knowledge, unknown, distinguish

1 Chronicles 28:10

Connecting Statement:

David continues speaking to Solomon.

Realize that

“Be aware that” or “Be sure you remember that”

Be strong and do it

The word “strong” here refers to willpower and strength of character.

Translation Words - ULT

- Yahweh
- strength, strengthen, strong
- house

Translation Words - UST

- Yahweh
- strength, strengthen, strong
- house

ULT

10 Realize that Yahweh has chosen you to build this temple as his sanctuary. Be strong and do it.”

UST

10 Yahweh has chosen you to arrange to build a temple for him. So think about what I have said, and be strong and do what he is wanting you to do.”

1 Chronicles 28:11

temple portico

“temple porch” or “temple entrance.” This refers to the columns that supported the roof at the entrance of the temple.

Translation Words - ULT

- son
- David
- house
- house

Translation Words - UST

- son
- David
- house
- house

ULT

11 Then David gave to Solomon his son the plans for the temple portico, the temple buildings, the storerooms, the upper rooms, the inner rooms, and the room with the atonement lid.

UST

11 Then David gave to his son Solomon the scroll on which were written the plans for the main rooms of the temple, its porch, its storerooms, all the other upper and lower rooms, the holy place, and the very holy place having the sacred chest and its lid.

1 Chronicles 28:12

treasuries

storerooms for valuable things

Translation Words - ULT

- holy, holiness, unholy, sacred
- God
- spirit, spiritual
- Yahweh
- court, courtyard
- storehouse
- house
- house

Translation Words - UST

- holy, holiness, unholy, sacred
- God
- spirit, spiritual
- Yahweh
- court, courtyard
- storehouse
- house
- house

ULT

¹² He gave him the plans he had drawn for the courtyards of Yahweh's house, all the surrounding rooms, the storerooms in God's house, and the treasuries for the things that belong to Yahweh.

UST

¹² David wrote for him the plans that he had made for building the courtyards and all the rooms that surrounded the temple, including the room where the money and other valuable things that were dedicated to God were kept.

1 Chronicles 28:13

regulations

These were specific rules about how the priests and Levites should work in the temple.

divisions of the priests and Levites

“groups of the priests and Levites.” This refers to the groups in which the priests and other temple workers were organized to fulfill their duties.

Translation Words - ULT

- Yahweh
- Yahweh
- priest, priesthood
- Levi, Levite, Levitical
- house
- house (2)

Translation Words - UST

- Yahweh
- Yahweh
- priest, priesthood
- Levi, Levite, Levitical
- house
- house (2)

ULT

13 He gave him regulations for the divisions of the priests and Levites, for the assigned responsibilities for the service of the house of Yahweh, and for all the objects for the service in Yahweh's house.

UST

13 He gave Solomon instructions for the work groups of priests and other descendants of Levi, about all the work that they must do to serve in Yahweh's temple, and about taking care of all the things that would be used in the work at the temple.

1 Chronicles 28:14

(There are no notes for this verse.)

Translation Words - ULT

- silver
- gold, golden
- gold, golden

Translation Words - UST

- silver
- gold, golden
- gold, golden

ULT

14 He determined the weight of all the gold vessels for each service, the weight of silver vessels for each service,

UST

14 He wrote down how much gold and how much silver should be used to make all the items in the temple.

1 Chronicles 28:15

according to the use of each lampstand in the service

“determined by what each lampstand would be used for in the service in the temple.” There would be silver lampstands of different weights for different purposes.

Translation Words - ULT

- silver
- gold, golden
- gold, golden

Translation Words - UST

- silver
- gold, golden
- gold, golden

ULT

15 the weight of the gold for all the gold articles, to be lampstands and gold lamps, the weight of gold for each lampstand, the weight of silver for each silver lampstand, according to the use of each lampstand in the service.

UST

15 This was a list of how much gold would be needed for making the gold lampstands and the lamps, how much silver to make the silver lamps and lampstands.

1 Chronicles 28:16

for every table

The understood information may be supplied. Alternate translation: "the weight of the gold for every other table" (See: [Ellipsis](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- silver
- silver
- gold, golden

Translation Words - UST

- silver
- silver
- gold, golden

ULT

16 He gave the weight of the gold for the tables of the bread of the presence, for every table, and the weight of the silver for the silver tables.

UST

16 There was a list for how much gold would be needed for making the table on which the priests would put the bread to display before God, how much silver to make the other tables,

1 Chronicles 28:17

(There are no notes for this verse.)

Translation Words - ULT

- clean, wash
- silver
- gold, golden
- gold, golden

Translation Words - UST

- clean, wash
- silver
- gold, golden
- gold, golden

ULT

17 He gave the weight of pure gold for the meat forks, basins, and cups. He gave the weight for each of the gold bowls, and the weight of each of the silver bowls.

UST

17 and how much pure gold for the meat forks and the bowls and the cups, how much gold for each gold dish, how much silver for each silver dish.

1 Chronicles 28:18

refined gold

“purified gold” or “extra valuable gold”

of the gold for the design

The refers to the weight of the gold. Alternate translation: “the weight of the gold for the design” (See: [Ellipsis](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- altar
- covenant
- Yahweh
- gold, golden
- gold, golden

Translation Words - UST

- altar
- covenant
- Yahweh
- gold, golden
- gold, golden

ULT

18 He gave the weight of refined gold for the incense altar, and of the gold for the design of the cherubim that spread out their wings and covered the ark of the covenant of Yahweh.

UST

18 There was a list for how much pure gold would be needed to make the altar for burning incense. He also gave to Solomon his plans for making the golden statues of winged creatures that would be above the sacred chest of Yahweh, like a chariot for him.

1 Chronicles 28:19

I have put all this in writing

This is an idiom. Alternate translation: "I wrote all of this down" (See: [Idiom](#))

gave me to understand regarding the design

This refers to the detail for the design of the temple. Alternate translation: "helped me to understand the details for his temple" (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [Yahweh](#)
- [hand](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [Yahweh](#)
- [hand](#)

ULT

19 David said, "I have put all this in writing as Yahweh directed me and gave me to understand regarding the design."

UST

19 Then David said, "I have written all these plans while Yahweh was directing me. He has enabled me to understand all the details of his plan for the temple that is to be built."

1 Chronicles 28:20

strong and brave

These two words basically mean the same thing and emphasize that Solomon must be courageous. (See: [Doublet](#))

Do not be afraid or anxious

The words “afraid” and “anxious” basically mean the same thing and emphasize that Solomon must never give up. Also, this can be written in positive form. Alternate translation: “Be courageous” or “Be confident” (See: [Doublet](#))

is with you

This is an idiom. Alternate translation: “will help you” (See: [Idiom](#))

He will not leave you nor abandon you

These two phrases mean the same thing and emphasize that Yahweh will always be with Solomon. Also, this can be stated in positive form. Alternate translation: “He will always be with you” (See: [Parallelism](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- fear, afraid, dread
- son
- God
- God
- Yahweh
- Yahweh
- fulfill, fulfilled, carried out
- David
- forsake, forsaken, leave
- strength, strengthen, strong
- house

Translation Words - UST

- fear, afraid, dread
- son
- God
- God
- Yahweh
- Yahweh
- fulfill, fulfilled, carried out
- David
- forsake, forsaken, leave
- strength, strengthen, strong
- house

ULT

²⁰ David said to Solomon his son, “Be strong and brave. Do the work. Do not be afraid or anxious, for Yahweh God, my God, is with you. He will not leave you nor abandon you until all the work for the service of Yahweh’s temple is finished.

UST

²⁰ David also said to his son Solomon, “Be strong and courageous, and do this work. Do not be afraid or discouraged, because Yahweh our God, whom I worship, will be with you. He will not fail to help you or abandon you until you finish all the work of making the temple of his.

1 Chronicles 28:21

Connecting Statement:

David finishes speaking to Solomon.

See, here are the divisions

"Here are the divisions." David uses the word "see" here to refer back to the listings of the divisions of the Levites and their duties for the temple.

the divisions of the priests and Levites

See how you translated this in [1 Chronicles 28:13](#).

Translation Words - ULT

- God
- priest, priesthood
- Levi, Levite, Levitical
- people, people group,
- prince, princess, governors, provincial governors, officials, noblemen, nobility
- house

Translation Words - UST

- God
- priest, priesthood
- Levi, Levite, Levitical
- people, people group,
- prince, princess, governors, provincial governors, officials, noblemen, nobility
- house

ULT

²¹ See, here are the divisions of the priests and Levites for all the service in God's temple. They will be with you, together with all willing and skillful men, to assist you in the work and to perform the service. The officials and all the people are ready to follow your commands."

UST

²¹ The groups of priests and other descendants of Levi are ready to begin their work at God's temple, and every man who has a special skill will help you in all the work. And my officials and the other people will obey you, whatever you command them to do."

1 Chronicles 29

1 Chronicles 29 General Notes

Structure and formatting

The preparation for the temple is finished in this chapter. (See: [temple](#))

Special concepts in this chapter

Offering

David and the people made a free will offering and dedicated it all to God.

1 Chronicles 29:1

whom alone God has chosen

“the one whom God has chosen”

Translation Words - ULT

- son
- God
- God
- Yahweh
- David
- Solomon
- assembly, assemble, congregation, meeting
- king, kingdom, kingship
- stronghold, fortifications, fortress, citadel
- servant, serve, slave, worker, young man, young women

Translation Words - UST

- son
- God
- God
- Yahweh
- David
- Solomon
- assembly, assemble, congregation, meeting
- king, kingdom, kingship
- stronghold, fortifications, fortress, citadel
- servant, serve, slave, worker, young man, young women

ULT

¹ King David said to the whole assembly, “Solomon my son, whom alone God has chosen, is still young and inexperienced, and the task is great. For the temple is not for people but for Yahweh God.

UST

¹ Then King David said to all the people who had gathered there, “My son Solomon, the one whom God has chosen to be the next king, is young and does not have much experience. This work of building the temple is great, because this glorious building will not be to honor people, but to honor Yahweh our God.

1 Chronicles 29:2

Connecting Statement:

David continues talking to the people about his provisions for the building of the temple.

gold for the things to be made of gold...to be made of wood

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: “gold so the craftsmen may make the gold things, silver so they may make the silver things, bronze so they may make the bronze things, iron so they may make the iron things, and wood so they may make the wooden things” (See: [Active or Passive](#))

onyx stones...stones to be set...stones for inlaid work of various colors

Each of these phrases refer to different types of stones intended for different purposes.

onyx stones

These are stones with black and white lines that are used to make jewelry.

stones to be set

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: “stones for the craftsmen to set” or “stones for mounting”

inlaid work

This refers to the beautiful and decorative designs or patterns formed by the stones.

Translation Words - ULT

- God
- silver
- strength, strengthen, strong
- gold, golden
- gold, golden
- house

Translation Words - UST

- God
- silver
- strength, strengthen, strong
- gold, golden
- gold, golden
- house

ULT

² So I have done my best to provide for the temple of my God. I am giving gold for the things to be made of gold, silver for the things to be made of silver, bronze for the things to be made of bronze, iron for the things to be made of iron, and wood for the things to be made of wood. I am also giving onyx stones, stones to be set, stones for inlaid work of various colors—all kinds of precious stones—and marble stone in abundance.

UST

² From all the things that I possess, I have provided what will be needed to build the temple of my God—gold for the things to be made of gold, silver for the things to be made of silver, bronze for the things to be made of bronze, iron for the things to be made of iron, wood for the things to be made of wood, and large amounts of onyx and turquoise and other valuable stones of various colors, and marble and all kinds of valuable stones.

1 Chronicles 29:3

Connecting Statement:

David continues talking to the people about his provisions for the building of the temple.

Translation Words - ULT

- holy, holiness, unholy, sacred
- God
- God
- temple
- silver
- gold, golden
- house
- house

Translation Words - UST

- holy, holiness, unholy, sacred
- God
- God
- temple
- silver
- gold, golden
- house
- house

ULT

³ Now, because of my delight in the house of my God, I am giving my personal treasure of gold and silver for it. I am doing this in addition to all that I have prepared for this holy temple:

UST

³ In addition to all these things that I have given for the temple, I am giving my own treasures of gold and silver, because I very earnestly desire that this holy temple for my God be built.

1 Chronicles 29:4

Connecting Statement:

David continues talking to the people about his provisions for the building of the temple.

three thousand talents

"3,000 talents." This can be stated in modern measurements. Alternate translation: "about 100,000 kilograms" or "about 100 metric tons" (See: [Biblical Money](#) and [Numbers](#))

gold from Ophir

This was the best quality and most valuable gold.

seven thousand talents

"7,000 talents." This can be stated in modern measurements. Alternate translation: "about 230,000 kilograms" or "230 metric tons" (See: [Biblical Money](#) and [Numbers](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [silver](#)
- [gold, golden](#)
- [house](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [silver](#)
- [gold, golden](#)
- [house](#)

ULT

⁴ three thousand talents of gold from Ophir, and seven thousand talents of refined silver, in order to overlay the walls of the buildings.

UST

⁴ I am giving about 100 metric tons of gold from Ophir and 230 metric tons of refined silver to cover the walls of the buildings,

1 Chronicles 29:5

Connecting Statement:

David finishes talking to the people about his provisions for the building of the temple.

gold for the things to be made of gold...work to be done by craftsmen

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: “gold for the craftsmen to make the gold things, silver so they may make the silver things, and things of all kinds for their other work” (See: [Active or Passive](#))

give himself to him

“give himself to God”

Translation Words - ULT

- Yahweh
- hand
- hand
- silver
- freewill offering
- gold, golden
- gold, golden

Translation Words - UST

- Yahweh
- hand
- hand
- silver
- freewill offering
- gold, golden
- gold, golden

ULT

⁵ I am donating gold for the things to be made of gold, and silver for the things to be made of silver, and things for all kinds of work to be done by craftsmen. Who else wants to make a contribution to Yahweh today and give himself to him?”

UST

⁵ for making the other items of gold and silver, and for the other work to be done by the craftsmen. So now, I ask you, who is willing to show by contributing other gifts for the building of the temple that he has dedicated himself to Yahweh?”

1 Chronicles 29:6

General Information:

(See: [Numbers](#))

Then freewill offerings were made by the leaders...and by the officials over the king's work.

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: "Then the leaders...and the officials over the king's work made freewill offerings" (See: [Active or Passive](#))

the commanders of thousands and hundreds

Possible meanings are 1) these numbers represent the exact amount of soldiers that these commanders led. Alternate translation: "the commanders of 1,000 soldiers and the commanders of 100 soldiers" or 2) the words translated as "thousands" and "hundreds" do not represent exact numbers, but are the names of larger and smaller military divisions. Alternate translation: "the commanders of large military divisions and the commanders of smaller military divisions" See how you translated this in [1 Chronicles 13:1](#). (See: [Numbers](#))

the officials over the king's work

Here the word "over" is used as an idiom. Alternate translation: "the officials in charge of the king's work" (See: [Idiom](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [Israel, Israelites](#)
- [ancestor, father, fathered, forefather, grandfather](#)
- [king, kingdom, kingship](#)
- [prince, princess, governors, provincial governors, officials, noblemen, nobility](#)
- [prince, princess, governors, provincial governors, officials, noblemen, nobility](#)
- [prince, princess, governors, provincial governors, officials, noblemen, nobility](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [Israel, Israelites](#)
- [ancestor, father, fathered, forefather, grandfather](#)
- [king, kingdom, kingship](#)
- [prince, princess, governors, provincial governors, officials, noblemen, nobility](#)
- [prince, princess, governors, provincial governors, officials, noblemen, nobility](#)
- [prince, princess, governors, provincial governors, officials, noblemen, nobility](#)

ULT

⁶ Then freewill offerings were made by the leaders of their ancestors' families, the leaders of the tribes of Israel, the commanders of thousands and hundreds, and by the officials over the king's work.

UST

⁶ Then the leaders of the families, the leaders of the tribes of Israel, the commanders of one thousand soldiers and the commanders of one hundred soldiers, and the officials who supervised the work that the king wanted done, gave gifts willingly.

1 Chronicles 29:7

five thousand talents...and 100,000 talents of iron

"5,000 talents and 10,000 darics of gold, 10,000 talents of silver, 18,000 talents of bronze, and 100,000 talents of iron." These may be written in modern measurements. Alternate translation: "165 metric tons and 84 kilograms of gold, 330 metric tons of silver, 600 metric tons of bronze, and 3,300 metric tons of iron" (See: [Biblical Money](#))

100,000 talents

"one hundred thousand talents" (See: [Numbers](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [God](#)
- [silver](#)
- [gold, golden](#)
- [servant, serve, slave, worker, young man, young women](#)
- [house](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [God](#)
- [silver](#)
- [gold, golden](#)
- [servant, serve, slave, worker, young man, young women](#)
- [house](#)

ULT

⁷ They gave for the service of God's house five thousand talents and ten thousand darics of gold, ten thousand talents of silver, eighteen thousand talents of bronze, and 100,000 talents of iron.

UST

⁷ For the work at the temple they gave 165 metric tons and eighty-four kilograms of gold, 330 metric tons of silver, 600 metric tons of bronze, and 3,300 metric tons of iron.

1 Chronicles 29:8

treasury

This is a place where money and valuable objects are kept.

Jehiel

See how you translated these men's names in [1 Chronicles 23:8](#). (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

Gershon

This was the firstborn son of Levi. See how you translated these men's names in [1 Chronicles 23:7](#). (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [Yahweh](#)
- [hand](#)
- [storehouse](#)
- [house](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [Yahweh](#)
- [hand](#)
- [storehouse](#)
- [house](#)

ULT

⁸ Those who had precious stones gave them to the treasury of Yahweh's house, under the supervision of Jehiel, a descendant of Gershon.

UST

⁸ Any people who owned valuable stones gave them to be put in the storeroom of the temple. Jehiel, a descendant of Gershon, was appointed to be in charge of them.

1 Chronicles 29:9

wholeheartedly

willingly and without any doubt or hesitation

Translation Words - ULT

- heart
- Yahweh
- David
- people, people group,
- joy, joyful, enjoy, rejoice, gladness, rejoicing
- joy, joyful, enjoy, rejoice, gladness, rejoicing
- joy, joyful, enjoy, rejoice, gladness, rejoicing
- king, kingdom, kingship
- freewill offering
- freewill offering

Translation Words - UST

- heart
- Yahweh
- David
- people, people group,
- joy, joyful, enjoy, rejoice, gladness, rejoicing
- joy, joyful, enjoy, rejoice, gladness, rejoicing
- joy, joyful, enjoy, rejoice, gladness, rejoicing
- king, kingdom, kingship
- freewill offering
- freewill offering

ULT

⁹ The people rejoiced because of these freewill offerings, because they had contributed wholeheartedly to Yahweh. King David also rejoiced greatly.

UST

⁹ The people were happy to see that their leaders wanted to give those things; they were happy and enthusiastic to give those things to Yahweh. And King David also was very happy.

1 Chronicles 29:10

May you be praised

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: "May people praise you" (See: [Active or Passive](#))

Israel our ancestor

Here "Israel" refers to the man Jacob. Alternate translation: "Jacob our ancestor" (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- bless, blessed, blessing
- bless, blessed, blessing
- God
- Yahweh
- Yahweh
- Israel, Israelites
- David
- David
- ancestor, father, fathered, forefather, grandfather
- assembly, assemble, congregation, meeting

Translation Words - UST

- bless, blessed, blessing
- bless, blessed, blessing
- God
- Yahweh
- Yahweh
- Israel, Israelites
- David
- David
- ancestor, father, fathered, forefather, grandfather
- assembly, assemble, congregation, meeting

ULT

10 David blessed Yahweh in front of all the assembly. He said, "May you be praised, Yahweh, God of Israel our ancestor, forever and ever.

UST

10 Then, while all the people there were listening, David praised Yahweh. He said, "We praise you, Yahweh, the God whom our ancestor Jacob worshiped. We will praise you forever!

1 Chronicles 29:11

Connecting Statement:

David continues his prayer of praise to Yahweh.

Translation Words - ULT

- heaven, sky, heavens, heavenly
- Yahweh
- Yahweh
- earth, earthen, earthly

Translation Words - UST

- heaven, sky, heavens, heavenly
- Yahweh
- Yahweh
- earth, earthen, earthly

ULT

11 Yours, Yahweh, is the greatness, the power, the glory, the victory, and the majesty. For all that is in the heavens and on the earth is yours. Yours is the kingdom, Yahweh, and you are exalted as ruler over all.

UST

11 You alone are great and powerful; only you are truly glorious and majestic and wonderful. And that is true because everything in heaven and on the earth is yours. You are the king of all the people in this world; you are the ruler of everything.

1 Chronicles 29:12

Connecting Statement:

David continues his prayer of praise to Yahweh.

In your hand is power and might

This speaks of Yahweh having control over whether people are powerful or not as if “power and might” were something in hand that he had control over. Alternate translation: “You determine who has power and might” (See: [Metaphor](#))

power and might

The words “power” and “might” mean the same thing and emphasize the greatness of Yahweh’s power. (See: [Doublet](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [dominion](#)
- [hand](#)
- [hand](#)
- [strength, strengthen, strong](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [dominion](#)
- [hand](#)
- [hand](#)
- [strength, strengthen, strong](#)

ULT

¹² Both riches and honor come from you, and you rule over all people. In your hand is power and might. You possess the strength and might to make people great and to give strength to anyone.

UST

¹² Because you are very powerful, you are able to cause anyone to be great and be strong.

1 Chronicles 29:13

Connecting Statement:

David continues his prayer of praise to Yahweh.

your glorious name

Here Yahweh is represented by his name. Alternate translation: “you who are glorious” or “you because you are glorious” (See: [Metonymy](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [God](#)
- [praise](#), [praised](#), [praiseworthy](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [God](#)
- [praise](#), [praised](#), [praiseworthy](#)

ULT

13 Now then, our God, we thank you and praise your glorious name.

UST

13 So now, our God, we thank you, and we praise you for being very great.

1 Chronicles 29:14

Connecting Statement:

David continues his prayer of praise to Yahweh.

But who am I, and who are my people, that we should be able to offer so willingly these things?

David uses this rhetorical question to express that he and his people deserve no praise for giving anything to God. Alternate translation: "My people and I should definitely offer these things to you willingly!" (See: [Rhetorical Question](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- people, people group,
- strength, strengthen, strong

Translation Words - UST

- people, people group,
- strength, strengthen, strong

ULT

14 But who am I, and who are my people, that we should be able to offer so willingly these things? Indeed, all things come from you, and we have simply given back to you what is yours.

UST

14 But I and my people are not really able to give anything to you, because everything that we have comes from you; the things that we have given to you are only the things that we have received from you.

1 Chronicles 29:15

Connecting Statement:

David continues his prayer of praise to Yahweh.

we are strangers and travelers before you

This speaks of people's lives being short as if they were travelers only here on earth for a short time. Alternate translation: "For our lives are short and we are like strangers and travelers who pass before you" (See: [Metaphor](#))

Our days on the earth are like a shadow

This speaks of people's lives being short as if they were a shadow that is only visible for a short time. A person's lifetime is represented by his "days." Alternate translation: "Our time here on earth is like a shadow that disappears quickly" (See: [Simile](#) and [Synecdoche](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [hope, hoped](#)
- [ancestor, father, fathered, forefather, grandfather](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [hope, hoped](#)
- [ancestor, father, fathered, forefather, grandfather](#)

ULT

15 For we are strangers and travelers before you, as all our ancestors were. Our days on the earth are like a shadow, and there is no hope of remaining on earth.

UST

15 You know that we are like foreigners and strangers to you, as our ancestors were. Our years here on earth are like a shadow that disappears quickly; we know that there is nothing that can enable us to escape dying.

1 Chronicles 29:16

Connecting Statement:

David continues his prayer of praise to Yahweh.

Translation Words - ULT

- holy, holiness, unholy, sacred
- God
- Yahweh
- hand
- house

Translation Words - UST

- holy, holiness, unholy, sacred
- God
- Yahweh
- hand
- house

ULT

16 Yahweh our God, all this wealth that we have collected in order to build a temple to honor your holy name—it comes from you and belongs to you.

UST

16 Yahweh our God, we have gathered all these things to use in building your temple, but all of it really belongs to you, and you have given it to us.

1 Chronicles 29:17

Connecting Statement:

David continues his prayer of praise to Yahweh.

you examine the heart

Here the "heart" represents a person's thoughts and feelings.
Alternate translation: "you examine people's thoughts" (See: [Metonymy](#))

in the uprightness of my heart

Here the "heart" represents a person's thoughts and feelings.
Alternate translation: "because I want to be honest and honorable in everything I do for you" (See: [Metonymy](#))

I look with joy as

"I am joyful as I see"

Translation Words - ULT

- [God](#)
- [heart](#)
- [heart](#)
- [people, people group,](#)
- [joy, joyful, enjoy, rejoice, gladness, rejoicing](#)
- [freewill offering](#)
- [know, knowledge, unknown, distinguish](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [God](#)
- [heart](#)
- [heart](#)
- [people, people group,](#)
- [joy, joyful, enjoy, rejoice, gladness, rejoicing](#)
- [freewill offering](#)
- [know, knowledge, unknown, distinguish](#)

ULT

17 I know also, my God, that you examine the heart and have pleasure in uprightness. As for me, in the uprightness of my heart I have willingly offered all these things, and now I look with joy as your people who are present here willingly offer gifts to you.

UST

17 My God, I know that you test us people, and you are pleased if you find out that we do what is right. All these things I have given to you because I wanted to. And now I have seen that your people have joyfully and generously given things to you.

1 Chronicles 29:18

Connecting Statement:

David continues his prayer of praise to Yahweh.

keep this forever in the thoughts of the minds of your people

“keep this in the thoughts and minds of your people forever”

Direct their hearts toward you

Here the people’s “hearts” represent their thoughts and desires.
Alternate translation: “Direct them to be loyal to you” or “Keep them loyal to you” (See: [Metonymy](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- God
- heart
- heart
- Yahweh
- Abraham, Abram
- ancestor, father, fathered, forefather, grandfather
- people, people group,
- watch, watchman, watchful, guard, take heed, beware, watch out

Translation Words - UST

- God
- heart
- heart
- Yahweh
- Abraham, Abram
- ancestor, father, fathered, forefather, grandfather
- people, people group,
- watch, watchman, watchful, guard, take heed, beware, watch out

ULT

18 Yahweh, the God of Abraham, Isaac, and Israel—our ancestors—keep this forever in the thoughts of the minds of your people. Direct their hearts toward you.

UST

18 Yahweh, the God whom our ancestors Abraham, Isaac, and Jacob worshiped, I desire that your people will continue to desire to do things like this forever, and that they will always be loyal to you.

1 Chronicles 29:19

Connecting Statement:

David finishes his prayer of praise to Yahweh.

Give to Solomon my son a wholehearted desire

The word “desire” may be expressed as a verb. Alternate translation: “Make my son Solomon fully desire” (See: [Abstract Nouns](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [command](#), [commandment](#)
- [son](#)
- [heart](#)
- [stronghold](#), [fortifications](#), [fortress](#), [citadel](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [command](#), [commandment](#)
- [son](#)
- [heart](#)
- [stronghold](#), [fortifications](#), [fortress](#), [citadel](#)

ULT

19 Give to Solomon my son a wholehearted desire to keep your commandments, your covenant decrees, and your statutes, and to carry out all these plans to build the palace for which I have made provision.”

UST

19 And now, please enable my son Solomon to faithfully and sincerely do everything that is needed to build this beautiful building for which I have provided all these things.”

1 Chronicles 29:20

Now bless Yahweh

"Now praise Yahweh"

prostrated themselves before the king

This refers to laying down on the ground before someone to show great respect. Alternate translation: "prostrated themselves on the ground to show respect to Yahweh and the king" (See: [Symbolic Action](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- bless, blessed, blessing
- bless, blessed, blessing
- God
- God
- Yahweh
- Yahweh
- Yahweh
- prostrate, worship
- David
- ancestor, father, fathered, forefather, grandfather
- assembly, assemble, congregation, meeting
- assembly, assemble, congregation, meeting
- bow, bow down, knelt, bend, bend the knee

Translation Words - UST

- bless, blessed, blessing
- bless, blessed, blessing
- God
- God
- Yahweh
- Yahweh
- Yahweh
- prostrate, worship
- David
- ancestor, father, fathered, forefather, grandfather
- assembly, assemble, congregation, meeting
- assembly, assemble, congregation, meeting
- bow, bow down, knelt, bend, bend the knee

ULT

²⁰ David said to all the assembly, "Now bless Yahweh your God." All the assembly blessed Yahweh, the God of their ancestors, bowed their heads and worshiped Yahweh and prostrated themselves before the king.

UST

²⁰ Then David said to all the people who were gathered there, "Praise Yahweh our God!" So they all praised Yahweh the God whom their ancestors also worshiped. They prostrated themselves on the ground in front of Yahweh and in front of the king.

1 Chronicles 29:21

they made sacrifices to Yahweh and offered burnt offerings to him

The people offered animals to be sacrificed to Yahweh by the priests. Most of the people did not actually kill and sacrifice the animals themselves. (See: [Metonymy](#))

a thousand bulls, a thousand rams, and a thousand lambs

"1,000 bulls, 1,000 rams, and 1,000 lambs" (See: [Numbers](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [lamb](#), [Lamb of God](#)
- [Yahweh](#)
- [Yahweh](#)
- [Israel](#), [Israelites](#)
- [cow](#), [bull](#), [calf](#), [cattle](#), [heifer](#), [ox](#)
- [drink offering](#)
- [sacrifice](#), [sacrifices](#), [offering](#)
- [ewe](#), [ram](#), [sheep](#), [sheepfold](#), [sheepshearers](#), [sheepskins](#)
- [burnt offering](#), [offering by fire](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [lamb](#), [Lamb of God](#)
- [Yahweh](#)
- [Yahweh](#)
- [Israel](#), [Israelites](#)
- [cow](#), [bull](#), [calf](#), [cattle](#), [heifer](#), [ox](#)
- [drink offering](#)
- [sacrifice](#), [sacrifices](#), [offering](#)
- [ewe](#), [ram](#), [sheep](#), [sheepfold](#), [sheepshearers](#), [sheepskins](#)
- [burnt offering](#), [offering by fire](#)

ULT

²¹ On the next day, they made sacrifices to Yahweh and offered burnt offerings to him. They offered a thousand bulls, a thousand rams, and a thousand lambs, with their drink offerings and sacrifices in abundance for all Israel.

UST

²¹ The next day the people offered sacrifices to Yahweh. They presented many animals to be completely burned on the altar: A thousand bulls, a thousand rams, a thousand male sheep, offerings of wine, and many other sacrifices for all the people of Israel to eat.

1 Chronicles 29:22

before Yahweh

This is an idiom. Alternate translation: “in honor of Yahweh” (See: [Idiom](#))

a second time

This means that they anointed him and declared him as king. The first time is described in [1 Chronicles 23:1](#).

anointed him with Yahweh’s authority to be ruler

To do something with “Yahweh’s authority” means to do it on his behalf and with his approval. Alternate translation: “anointed him to rule over Israel on Yahweh’s behalf” (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- son
- Yahweh
- Yahweh
- priest, priesthood
- David
- devour
- joy, joyful, enjoy, rejoice, gladness, rejoicing
- reign, rule

Translation Words - UST

- son
- Yahweh
- Yahweh
- priest, priesthood
- David
- devour
- joy, joyful, enjoy, rejoice, gladness, rejoicing
- reign, rule

ULT

22 On that day, they ate and drank before Yahweh with great celebration. They made Solomon, David’s son, king a second time, and anointed him with Yahweh’s authority to be ruler. They also anointed Zadok to be priest.

UST

22 On that day the people were joyful and ate and drank in Yahweh’s honor. Then for the second time they declared that Solomon was now the king. As Yahweh had commanded, they anointed him with olive oil to be the king, and they anointed Zadok to be the high priest.

1 Chronicles 29:23

Then Solomon sat on Yahweh's throne as king instead of David his father

Here the throne of Israel is referred to as "Yahweh's throne," to emphasize that the people of Israel are Yahweh's people. Sitting on the throne represents ruling as king. Alternate translation: "So Solomon sat on the throne, instead of his father David, as king over Yahweh's people" (See: [Metonymy](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [Yahweh](#)
- [Israel, Israelites](#)
- [David](#)
- [Solomon](#)
- [ancestor, father, fathered, forefather, grandfather](#)
- [prosper, prosperity, prosperous](#)
- [throne, enthroned](#)
- [king, kingdom, kingship](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [Yahweh](#)
- [Israel, Israelites](#)
- [David](#)
- [Solomon](#)
- [ancestor, father, fathered, forefather, grandfather](#)
- [prosper, prosperity, prosperous](#)
- [throne, enthroned](#)
- [king, kingdom, kingship](#)

ULT

²³ Then Solomon sat on Yahweh's throne as king instead of David his father. He prospered, and all Israel obeyed him.

UST

²³ So Solomon sat on the throne because Yahweh wanted him to be the king to succeed his father David. During the following years Solomon prospered, and all the Israelite people obeyed him.

1 Chronicles 29:24

gave allegiance to King Solomon

“told King Solomon that they would be faithful to him”

Translation Words - ULT

- son
- David
- Solomon
- hand
- chief
- king, kingdom, kingship
- king, kingdom, kingship

Translation Words - UST

- son
- David
- Solomon
- hand
- chief
- king, kingdom, kingship
- king, kingdom, kingship

ULT

24 All the leaders, soldiers, and King David's sons gave allegiance to King Solomon.

UST

24 King David's other sons and all the officers and mighty warriors accepted Solomon to be their king, and they solemnly promised to obey him.

1 Chronicles 29:25

Yahweh greatly honored Solomon before all Israel... bestowed on him greater power

These two phrases emphasize that Solomon received special favor from Yahweh, which made him Israel's greatest and most powerful king. (See: [Parallelism](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [Yahweh](#)
- [Israel, Israelites](#)
- [Israel, Israelites](#)
- [Solomon](#)
- [king, kingdom, kingship](#)
- [kingdom](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [Yahweh](#)
- [Israel, Israelites](#)
- [Israel, Israelites](#)
- [Solomon](#)
- [king, kingdom, kingship](#)
- [kingdom](#)

ULT

²⁵ Yahweh greatly honored Solomon before all Israel and bestowed on him greater power than he had ever given to any king before him in Israel.

UST

²⁵ Yahweh caused Solomon to be highly respected by all the Israelite people, and they honored him very much. No king of Israel had been honored as much as Solomon was.

1 Chronicles 29:26

(There are no notes for this verse.)

Translation Words - ULT

- son
- Israel, Israelites
- Jesse

Translation Words - UST

- son
- Israel, Israelites
- Jesse

ULT

²⁶ David son of Jesse reigned over all Israel.

UST

²⁶ Jesse's son David was the king who ruled all of Israel.

1 Chronicles 29:27

forty years...thirty-three years

"40 years...33 years" (See: [Numbers](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [Israel, Israelites](#)
- [Jerusalem](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [Israel, Israelites](#)
- [Jerusalem](#)

ULT

²⁷ David had been king of Israel for forty years. He ruled for seven years in Hebron and for thirty-three years in Jerusalem.

UST

²⁷ He ruled for forty years: seven years in the city of Hebron and thirty-three years in Jerusalem.

1 Chronicles 29:28

at a good old age

“as an old man”

Translation Words - ULT

- son
- good, right, pleasant, pleasing, better, best
- Solomon
- die, dead, deadly, death,
- reign, rule

Translation Words - UST

- son
- good, right, pleasant, pleasing, better, best
- Solomon
- die, dead, deadly, death,
- reign, rule

ULT

²⁸ He died at a good old age, after enjoying a long life, wealth and honor. Solomon his son succeeded him.

UST

²⁸ He was very rich and very much honored, and he became an old man. Then he died, and his son Solomon became the king of Israel.

1 Chronicles 29:29

written in the history of Samuel the prophet,...and in the history of Gad the prophet

These are written accounts that no longer exist.

Translation Words - ULT

- prophet, prophecy, prophesy, seer, prophetess
- David
- king, kingdom, kingship

Translation Words - UST

- prophet, prophecy, prophesy, seer, prophetess
- David
- king, kingdom, kingship

ULT

29 King David's accomplishments are written in the history of Samuel the prophet, in the history of Nathan the prophet, and in the history of Gad the prophet.

UST

29 A record of all the things that King David did while he ruled, from the beginning to the end, was on scrolls written by the prophets Samuel, Nathan, and Gad.

1 Chronicles 29:30

Recorded there are the deeds

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: "There men wrote down the deeds" (See: [Active or Passive](#))

the deeds of his rule

"the things that happened while David was king"

the events that affected him, Israel, and all the kingdoms of the other lands

"all the things that happened to him and to the people of Israel and in the kingdoms of other countries while he was ruling Israel" (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [Israel, Israelites](#)
- [transgress, transgression](#)
- [kingdom](#)
- [kingdom](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [Israel, Israelites](#)
- [transgress, transgression](#)
- [kingdom](#)
- [kingdom](#)

ULT

³⁰ Recorded there are the deeds of his rule, his accomplishments and the events that affected him, Israel, and all the kingdoms of the other lands.

UST

³⁰ They told about his powerful rule, and all the things that happened to him and to the people of Israel and in the kingdoms of other countries while he was ruling Israel.



unfoldingWord® Translation Academy

Version 12

Abstract Nouns

Abstract nouns are nouns that refer to attitudes, qualities, events, or situations. These are things that cannot be seen or touched in a physical sense, such as happiness, weight, unity, friendship, health, and reason. This is a translation issue because some languages may express a certain idea with an abstract noun, while others would need a different way to express it.

This page answers the question: *What are abstract nouns and how do I deal with them in my translation?*

In order to understand this topic, it would be good to read:

[\[\[rc://en/ta/man/translate/figs-partsofspeech\]\]](#)

[\[\[rc://en/ta/man/translate/figs-sentences\]\]](#)

Description

Remember that nouns are words that refer to a person, place, thing, or idea. **Abstract Nouns** are the nouns that refer to ideas. These can be attitudes, qualities, events, situations, or even relationships among these ideas. These are things that cannot be seen or touched in a physical sense, such as joy, peace, creation, goodness, contentment, justice, truth, freedom, vengeance, slowness, length, weight, and many, many more.

Some languages, such as Biblical Greek and English, use abstract nouns a lot. It is a way of giving names to actions or qualities so that people who speak these languages can talk about them as though they were things. For example, in languages that use abstract nouns, people can say, "I believe in the forgiveness of sin." But some languages do not use abstract nouns very much. In these languages, they may not have the two abstract nouns "forgiveness" and "sin," but they would express the same meaning in other ways. They would say, for example, "I believe that God is willing to forgive people after they have sinned," using verb phrases instead of nouns for those ideas.

Reason this is a translation issue

The Bible that you translate from may use abstract nouns to express certain ideas. Your language might not use abstract nouns for some of those ideas; instead, it might use phrases to express those ideas. Those phrases will use other kinds of words such as adjectives, verbs, or adverbs to express the meaning of the abstract noun. For example, "What is its **weight**?" could be expressed as "How much does it **weigh**?" or "How **heavy** is it?"

Examples from the Bible

...from ***childhood*** you have known the sacred writings... (2 Timothy 3:15 ULT)

The abstract noun "childhood" refers to when someone is a child.

But **godliness** with **contentment** is great **gain**. (1 Timothy 6:6 ULT)

The abstract nouns "godliness" and "contentment" refer to being godly and content. The abstract noun "gain" refers to something that benefits or helps someone.

Today **salvation** has come to this house, because he too is a son of Abraham. (Luke 19:9 ULT)

The abstract noun "salvation" here refers to being saved.

The Lord does not move slowly concerning his promises, as some consider **slowness** to be (2 Peter 3:9 ULT)

The abstract noun "slowness" refers how slowly something is done.

He will bring to light the hidden things of darkness and reveal the **purposes** of the heart. (1 Corinthians 4:5 ULT)

The abstract noun "purposes" refers to the things that people want to do and the reasons they want to do them.

Translation Strategies

If an abstract noun would be natural and give the right meaning in your language, consider using it. If not, here is another option:

1. Reword the sentence with a phrase that expresses the meaning of the abstract noun. Instead of a noun, the new phrase will use a verb, an adverb, or an adjective to express the idea of the abstract noun.

Examples of Translation Strategies Applied

(1) Reword the sentence with a phrase that expresses the meaning of the abstract noun. Instead of a noun, the new phrase will use a verb, an adverb, or an adjective to express the idea of the abstract noun.

...**from** childhood

you have known the sacred writings... (2 Timothy 3:15 ULT)

Ever since **you were a child** you have known the sacred writings.

But godliness

with contentment is great gain. (1 Timothy 6:6 ULT)

But **being godly** and **content** is very **beneficial**.
 But we **benefit** greatly when we **are godly** and **content**.
 But we **benefit** greatly when we **honor and obey God** and when we are **happy with what we have**.

Today salvation

has come to this house, because he too is a son of Abraham. (Luke 19:9 ULT)

Today the people in this house **have been saved**...
 Today God **has saved** the people in this house...

The Lord does not move slowly concerning his promises, as some consider slowness

to be. (2 Peter 3:9 ULT)

The Lord does not move slowly concerning his promises, as some consider **moving slowly** to be.

He will bring to light the hidden things of darkness and reveal the purposes

of the heart. (1 Corinthians 4:5 ULT)

He will bring to light the hidden things of darkness and reveal **the things that people want to do and the reasons that they want to do them**.

(Go back to: [1 Chronicles 7:28](#); [15:15](#); [16:23](#); [16:28](#); [16:29](#); [16:34](#); [17:13](#); [17:18](#); [18:14](#); [19:2](#); [29:19](#))

Active or Passive

Some languages use both active and passive sentences. In active sentences, the subject does the action. In passive sentences, the subject is the one that receives the action. Here are some examples with their subjects underlined:

- ACTIVE: **My father** built the house in 2010.
- PASSIVE: **The house** was built in 2010.

Translators whose languages do not use passive sentences will need to know how they can translate passive sentences that they find in the Bible. Other translators will need to decide when to use a passive sentence and when to use the active form.

This page answers the question: *What do active and passive mean, and how do I translate passive sentences?*

In order to understand this topic, it would be good to read:

[\[\[rc://en/ta/man/translate/figs-sentences\]\]](#)

[\[\[rc://en/ta/man/translate/figs-verbs\]\]](#)

Description

Some languages have both active and passive forms of sentences.

- In the **ACTIVE** form, the subject does the action and is always mentioned.
- In the **PASSIVE** form, the action is done to the subject, and the one who does the action is *not always* mentioned.

In the examples of active and passive sentences below, we have underlined the subject.

- **ACTIVE:** **My father** built the house in 2010.
- **PASSIVE:** **The house** was built by my father in 2010.
- **PASSIVE:** **The house** was built in 2010. (This does not tell who did the action.)

Reasons this is a translation issue

All languages use active forms. Some languages use passive forms, and some do not. Some languages use passive forms only for certain purposes, and the passive form is not used for the same purposes in all of the languages that use it.

Purposes for the passive

- The speaker is talking about the person or thing the action was done to, not about the person who did the action.
- The speaker does not want to tell who did the action.
- The speaker does not know who did the action.

Translation Principles Regarding the Passive

- Translators whose language does not use passive forms will need to find another way to express the idea.
- Translators whose language has passive forms will need to understand why the passive is used in a particular sentence in the Bible and decide whether or not to use a passive form for that purpose in his translation of the sentence.

Examples from the Bible

And their shooters shot at your soldiers from off the wall, and some of the king's servants **were killed**, and your servant Uriah the Hittite **was killed**, too. (2 Samuel 11:24 ULT)

This means that the enemy's shooters shot and killed some of the king's servants, including Uriah. The point is what happened to the king's servants and Uriah, not who shot them. The purpose of the passive form here is to keep the focus on the king's servants and Uriah.

In the morning when the men of the town got up, the altar of Baal **was broken down**... (Judges 6:28 ULT)

The men of the town saw what had happened to the altar of Baal, but they did not know who broke it down. The purpose of the passive form here is to communicate this event from the perspective of the men of the town.

It would be better for him if a millstone **were put** around his neck and he **were thrown** into the sea (Luke 17:2 ULT)

This describes a situation in which a person ends up in the sea with a millstone around his neck. The purpose of the passive form here is to keep the focus on what happens to this person. Who does these things to the person is not important.

Translation Strategies

If your language would use a passive form for the same purpose as in the passage that you are translating, then use a passive form. If you decide that it is better to translate without a passive form, here are some strategies that you might consider.

1. Use the same verb in an active sentence and tell who or what did the action. If you do this, try to keep the focus on the person receiving the action.
2. Use the same verb in an active sentence, and do not tell who or what did the action. Instead, use a generic expression like "they" or "people" or "someone."
3. Use a different verb.

Examples of Translation Strategies Applied

(1) Use the same verb in an active sentence and tell who did the action. If you do this, try to keep the focus on the person receiving the action.

A loaf of bread was given

him every day from the street of the bakers. (Jeremiah 37:21 ULT)

The king's servants gave Jeremiah a loaf of bread every day from the street of the bakers.

(2) Use the same verb in an active sentence, and do not tell who did the action. Instead, use a generic expression like "they" or "people" or "someone."

It would be better for him if a millstone were put

around his neck and he were thrown into the sea. (Luke 17:2 ULT)

It would be better for him if **they were to put** a millstone around his neck and **throw** him into the sea.

It would be better for him if **someone were to put** a heavy stone around his neck and **throw** him into the sea.

(3) Use a different verb in an active sentence.

A loaf of bread was given

him every day from the street of the bakers. (Jeremiah 37:21 ULT)

He **received** a loaf of bread every day from the street of the bakers.

Next we recommend you learn about:

[Abstract Nouns](#)

[[rc://en/ta/man/translate/figs-order]]

(Go back to: 1 Chronicles 2:3; 5:1; 5:7; 5:17; 6:32; 6:48; 6:54; 6:74; 6:76; 6:77; 6:78; 6:80; 7:21; 9:1; 9:22; 9:24; 9:26; 9:28; 9:29; 11:3; 11:6; 11:20; 11:21; 11:24; 11:25; 12:1; 13:2; 13:11; 14:2; 14:8; 14:12; 15:2; 15:15; 15:19; 15:27; 16:25; 17:9; 17:14; 17:23; 17:24; 17:27; 19:17; 19:19; 20:2; 20:4; 20:8; 21:6; 22:3; 22:4; 22:5; 22:18; 22:19; 23:3; 23:11; 23:13; 23:14; 23:24; 23:27; 23:31; 24:6; 24:19; 26:14; 26:15; 26:16; 26:18; 26:19; 26:28; 26:31; 27:24; 27:29; 28:9; 29:2; 29:5; 29:6; 29:10; 29:30)

Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information

- **Assumed knowledge** is whatever a speaker assumes his audience knows before he speaks and gives them some kind of information. The speaker does not give the audience this information because he believes that they already know it.
- When the speaker does give the audience information, he can do so in two ways:
 - **Explicit information** is what the speaker states directly.
 - **Implicit information** is what the speaker does not state directly because he expects his audience to be able to learn it from what he says.

This page answers the question: *How can I be sure that my translation communicates the assumed knowledge and implicit information along with the explicit information of the original message?*

Description

When someone speaks or writes, he has something specific that he wants people to know or do or think about. He normally states this directly. This is **explicit information**.

The speaker assumes that his audience already knows certain things that they will need to think about in order to understand this information. Normally he does not tell people these things, because they already know them. This is called **assumed knowledge**.

The speaker does not always directly state everything that he expects his audience to learn from what he says. **Implicit information** is information that he expects people to learn from what he says even though he does not state it directly.

Often, the audience understands this **implicit information** by combining what they already know (**assumed knowledge**) with the **explicit information** that the speaker tells them directly.

Reasons this is a translation issue

All three kinds of information are part of the speaker's message. If one of these kinds of information is missing, then the audience will not understand the message. Because the target translation is in a language that is very different than the biblical languages and is made for an audience that lives in a very different time and place than the people in the Bible, many times the **assumed knowledge** or the **implicit information** is missing from the message. In other words, modern readers do not know everything that the original speakers and hearers in the Bible knew. When these things are important for understanding the message, it is helpful if you include this information in the text or in a footnote.

Examples from the Bible

Then a scribe came to him and said, "Teacher, I will follow you wherever you go." Jesus said to him, "Foxes **have holes**, and the birds of the sky **have nests**, but the Son of Man has nowhere to lay his head." (Matthew 8:20 ULT)

Jesus did not say what foxes and birds use holes and nests for, because he assumed that the scribe would have known that foxes sleep in holes in the ground and birds sleep in their nests. This is **assumed knowledge**.

Jesus did not directly say here "I am the Son of Man" but, if the scribe did not already know it, then that fact would be **implicit information** that he could learn because Jesus referred to himself that way. Also, Jesus did not state explicitly that he travelled a lot and did not have a house that he slept in every night. That is **implicit information** that the scribe could learn when Jesus said that he had nowhere to lay his head.

Woe to you, Chorazin! Woe to you, Bethsaida! If the mighty deeds had been done in **Tyre and Sidon** which were done in you, they would have repented long ago in sackcloth and ashes. But

it will be more tolerable for Tyre and Sidon at the **day of judgment** than for you. (Matthew 11:21, 22 ULT)

Jesus assumed that the people he was speaking to knew that Tyre and Sidon were very wicked, and that the day of judgment is a time when God will judge every person. Jesus also knew that the people he was talking to believed that they were good and did not need to repent. Jesus did not need to tell them these things. This is all **assumed knowledge**.

An important piece of **implicit information** here is that the people he was speaking to would be judged more severely than the people of Tyre and Sidon would be judged **because** they did not repent.

Why do your disciples violate the traditions of the elders? For **they do not wash their hands when they eat**. (Matthew 15:2 ULT)

One of the traditions of the elders was a ceremony in which people would wash their hands in order to be ritually clean before eating. People thought that in order to be righteous, they had to follow all the traditions of the elders. This was **assumed knowledge** that the Pharisees who were speaking to Jesus expected him to know. By saying this, they were accusing his disciples of not following the traditions, and thus not being righteous. This is **implicit information** that they wanted him to understand from what they said.

Translation Strategies

If readers have enough assumed knowledge to be able to understand the message, along with any important implicit information that goes with the explicit information, then it is good to leave that knowledge unstated and leave the implicit information implicit. If the readers do not understand the message because one of these is missing for them, then follow these strategies:

1. If readers cannot understand the message because they do not have certain assumed knowledge, then provide that knowledge as explicit information.
2. If readers cannot understand the message because they do not know certain implicit information, then state that information clearly, but try to do it in a way that does not imply that the information was new to the original audience.

Examples of Translation Strategies Applied

(1) If readers cannot understand the message because they do not have certain assumed knowledge, then provide that knowledge as explicit information.

Jesus said to him, "**Foxes** have holes

, and the birds of the sky have nests, but the Son of Man has nowhere to lay his head." (Matthew 8:20 ULT) - The assumed knowledge was that the foxes slept in their holes and birds slept in their nests.

Jesus said to him, "Foxes **have holes to live in**, and the birds of the sky **have nests to live in**, but the Son of Man has nowhere to lay his head and sleep."

it will be more tolerable for Tyre and Sidon

at the day of judgment than for you (Matthew 11:22 ULT) - The assumed knowledge was that the people of Tyre and Sidon were very, very wicked. This can be stated explicitly.

...it will be more tolerable for **those cities Tyre and Sidon, whose people were very wicked**, at the day of judgment than for you.
or:
...it will be more tolerable for those **wicked cities Tyre and Sidon** at the day of judgment than for you.

Why do your disciples violate the traditions of the elders? For they do not wash their hands

when they eat. (Matthew 15:2 ULT) - The assumed knowledge was that one of the traditions of the elders was a ceremony in which people would wash their hands in order to be ritually clean before eating, which they must do to be righteous. It was not to remove germs from their hands to avoid sickness, as a modern reader might think.

Why do your disciples violate the traditions of the elders? For **they do not go through the ceremonial handwashing ritual of righteousness** when they eat.

(2) If readers cannot understand the message because they do not know certain implicit information, then state that information clearly, but try to do it in a way that does not imply that the information was new to the original audience.

Then a scribe came to him and said, "Teacher, I will follow you wherever you go." Jesus said to him, "Foxes have holes, and the birds of the sky have nests, but the Son of Man has nowhere to lay his head." (Matthew 8:19, 20 ULT) - The implicit information is that Jesus himself is the Son of Man. Other implicit information is that if the scribe wanted to follow Jesus, he would have to live like Jesus without a house.

Jesus said to him, "Foxes have holes, and the birds of the sky have nests, but **I, the Son of Man**, have **no home to rest in. If you want to follow me, you will live as I live.**"

it will be more tolerable for Tyre and Sidon at the day of judgment than for you (Matthew 11:22 ULT) - The implicit information is that God would not only judge the people; he would punish them. This can be made explicit.

At the day of judgment, God will **punish Tyre and Sidon**, cities whose people were very wicked, **less severely than he will punish you.**

or:

At the day of judgment, God will **punish you more severely** than Tyre and Sidon, cities whose people were very wicked.

Modern readers may not know some of the things that the people in the Bible and the people who first read it knew. This can make it hard for them to understand what a speaker or writer says, and to learn things that the speaker left implicit. Translators may need to state some things explicitly in the translation that the original speaker or writer left unstated or implicit.

Next we recommend you learn about:

[\[\[rc://en/ta/man/translate/figs-explicitinfo\]\]](#)

(Go back to: [1 Chronicles 4:14](#); [6:54](#); [10:1](#); [11:10](#); [11:18](#); [11:23](#); [Notes](#); [12:8](#); [12:17](#); [12:33](#); [13:2](#); [13:6](#); [14:8](#); [15:18](#); [16:19](#); [16:29](#); [16:32](#); [16:37](#); [16:42](#); [17:1](#); [17:5](#); [17:21](#); [21:4](#); [21:12](#); [21:20](#); [21:23](#); [22:9](#); [25:9](#); [26:21](#); [26:25](#); [28:8](#); [28:19](#); [29:10](#); [29:22](#); [29:30](#))

Background Information

Description

When people tell a story, they normally tell the events in the order that they happened. This sequence of events makes up the storyline. The storyline is full of action verbs that move the story along in time. But sometimes a writer may take a break from the storyline and give some information to help his listeners understand the story better. This type of information is called

background information. The background information might be about things that happened before the events he has already told about, or it might explain something in the story, or it might be about something that would happen much later in the story.

This page answers the question: *What is background information, and how can I show that some information is background information?*

In order to understand this topic, it would be good to read:

[[rc://en/ta/man/translate/figs-events]]

[[rc://en/ta/man/translate/writing-intro]]

Example - The underlined sentences in the story below are all background information.

Peter and John went on a hunting trip because ***their village was going to have a feast the next day. Peter was the best hunter in the village. He once killed three wild pigs in one day!*** They walked for hours through low bushes until they heard a wild pig. The pig ran, but they managed to shoot the pig and kill it. Then they tied up its legs with some rope ***they had brought with them***, and carried it home on a pole. When they brought it to the village, Peter's cousin saw the pig and realized that ***it was his own pig. Peter had mistakenly killed his cousin's pig.***

Background information often tells about something that had happened earlier or something that would happen much later. Examples of these are: "their village was going to have a feast the next day;" "He once killed three wild pigs in one day;" "that they had brought with them;" and "Peter had mistakenly killed his cousins' pig."

Often background information uses "be" verbs like "was" and "were", rather than action verbs. Examples of these are "Peter ***was*** the best hunter in the village" and "it ***was*** his own pig."

Background information can also be marked with words that tell the reader that this information is not part of the event line of the story. In this story, some of these words are "because," "once," and "had."

A writer may use background information

- To help their listeners be interested in the story
- To help their listeners understand something in the story
- To help the listeners understand why something is important in the story
- To tell the setting of a story
- Setting includes:
 - where the story takes place
 - when the story takes place
 - who is present when the story begins
 - what is happening when the story begins

Reasons this is a translation issue

- Languages have different ways of marking background information and storyline information.
- You (the translator) need to know the order of the events in the Bible, which information is background information, and which is storyline information.
- You will need to translate the story in a way that marks the background information in a way that your own readers will understand the order of events, which information is background information, and which is storyline information.

Examples from the Bible

Hagar gave birth to Abram's son, and Abram named his son, whom Hagar bore, Ishmael. Abram **was eighty-six years old** when Hagar bore Ishmael to Abram. (Genesis 16:16 ULT)

The first sentence tells about two events. Hagar gave birth and Abraham named his son. The second sentence is background information about how old Abram was when those things happened.

Now Jesus himself, when he began to teach, **was about thirty years of age**. He **was the son** (as was supposed) of Joseph, the son of Heli. (Luke 3:23 ULT)

The verses before this tell about when Jesus was baptized. This sentence introduces background information about Jesus' age and ancestors. The story starts up again in chapter 4 where it tells about Jesus going to the wilderness.

Now **it happened on a Sabbath** that Jesus **was going through the grain fields** and his disciples **were picking the heads of grain**, rubbing them between their hands, and eating the grain. But some of the Pharisees said... (Luke 6:1-2a ULT)

These verses give the setting of the story. The events took place in a grain field on the Sabbath day. Jesus, his disciples, and some Pharisees were there, and Jesus' disciples were picking heads of grain and eating them. The main action in the story starts with the sentence, "But some of the Pharisees said."

Translation Strategies

To keep translations clear and natural you will need to study how people tell stories in your language. Observe how your language marks background information. You may need to write down some stories in order to study this. Observe what kind of verbs your language uses for background information and what kinds of words or other markers signal that something is background information. Do these same things when you translate, so that your translation is clear and natural and people can understand it easily.

1. Use your language's way of showing that certain information is background information.
2. Reorder the information so that earlier events are mentioned first. (This is not always possible when the background information is very long.)

Examples of Translation Strategies Applied

(1) Use your language's way of showing that certain information is background information. The examples below explain how this was done in the ULT English translations.

Now

Jesus himself, when he began to teach, was about thirty years of age. He was the son (as was supposed) of Joseph, the son of Heli. (Luke 3:23 ULT)

English uses the word "now" to show that there is some kind of change in the story. The verb "was" shows that it is background information.

With many other exhortations also, he preached good news to the people. John also rebuked Herod the tetrarch for marrying his brother's wife, Herodias

, and for all the other evil things that Herod had done. But then Herod did another very evil thing. He had John locked up in prison. (Luke 3:18-20 ULT)

The underlined phrases happened before John rebuked Herod. In English, the helping verb "had" in "had done" shows that Herod did those things before John rebuked him.

(2) Reorder the information so that earlier events are mentioned first.

Hagar gave birth to Abram's son, and Abram named his son, whom Hagar bore, Ishmael.
 Abram was eighty-six years old when Hagar bore Ishmael to Abram

. (Genesis 16:16 ULT)

"When Abram was eighty-six years old, Hagar gave birth to his son, and Abram named his son Ishmael."

John also rebuked Herod the tetrarch for marrying his brother's wife, Herodias

, and for all the other evil things that Herod had done. But then Herod did another very evil thing. He had John locked up in prison. (Luke 3:18-20)

The translation below reorders John's rebuke and Herod's actions.

"Now Herod the tetrarch married his brother's wife, Herodias, and he did many other evil things, so John rebuked him. But then Herod did another very evil thing. He had John locked up in prison."

Next we recommend you learn about:

[\[\[rc://en/ta/man/translate/grammar-connect-words-phrases\]\]](#)

[Introduction of a New Event](#)

(Go back to: [1 Chronicles 5:1](#); [5:2](#); [11:2](#); [11:4](#); [18:8](#); [20:1](#); [21:29](#); [21:30](#); [22:4](#))

Biblical Distance

Description

The following terms are the most common measures for distance or length that were originally used in the Bible. Most of these are based on the sizes of the hand and forearm.

- The **handbreadth** was the width of the palm of a man’s hand.
- The **span** or handspan was the width of a man’s hand with the fingers spread out.
- The **cubit** was the length of a man’s forearm, from the elbow to the tip of the longest finger.
- The **“long” cubit** is used only in Ezekiel 40-48. It is the length of a normal cubit plus a span.
- The **stadium** (plural, **stadia**) referred to a certain footrace that was about 185 meters in length. Some older English versions translated this word as “furlong”, which referred to the average length of a plowed field.

This page answers the question: *How can I translate the lengths and distances that are in the Bible?*

In order to understand this topic, it would be good to read:

[\[\[rc://en/ta/man/translate/translate-decimal\]\]](#)
[\[\[rc://en/ta/man/translate/translate-fraction\]\]](#)

The metric values in the table below are close but not exactly equal to the biblical measures. The biblical measures probably differed in exact length from time to time and place to place. The equivalents below are an attempt to give an average measurement.

Original Measure	Metric Measure
handbreadth	8 centimeters
span	23 centimeters
cubit	46 centimeters
“long” cubit	54 centimeters
stadia	185 meters

Translation Principles

1. The people in the Bible did not use modern measures such as meters, liters, and kilograms. Using the original measures can help readers know that the Bible really was written long ago in a time when people used those measures.
2. Using modern measures can help readers understand the text more easily.
3. Whatever measure you use, it would be good, if possible, to tell about the other kind of measure in the text or a footnote.
4. If you do not use the Biblical measures, try not to give the readers the idea that the measurements are exact. For example, if you translate one cubit as “.46 meters” or even as “46 centimeters”, readers might think that the measurement is exact. It would be better to say “half a meter”, “45 centimeters”, or “50 centimeters”.
5. Sometimes it can be helpful to use the word “about” to show that a measurement is not exact. For example, Luke 24:13 says that Emmaus was sixty stadia from Jerusalem. This can be translated as “about ten kilometers” from Jerusalem.
6. When God tells people how long something should be, and when people make things according to those lengths, do not use “about” in the translation. Otherwise it will give the impression that God did not care exactly how long something should be.

Translation Strategies

1. Use the measurements from the ULT. These are the same kinds of measurements that the original writers used. Spell them in a way that is similar to the way they sound or are spelled in the ULT. (See Copy or Borrow Words.)
2. Use the metric measurements given in the UST. The translators of the UST have already figured how to represent the amounts in the metric system.
3. Use measurements that are already used in your language. In order to do this you would need to know how your measurements relate to the metric system and figure out each measurement.
4. Use the measurements from the ULT and include measurements that your people know in the text or a note.
5. Use measurements that your people know, and include the measurements from the ULT in the text or in a note.

Translation Strategies Applied

The strategies are all applied to Exodus 25:10 below.

They are to make an ark of acacia wood. Its length must be two and a half cubits; its width will be one cubit and a half; and its height will be one cubit and a half. (Exodus 25:10 ULT)

(1) Use the measurements given in the ULT. These are the same kinds of measurements that the original writers used. Spell them in a way that is similar to the way they sound or are spelled in the ULT. (See Copy or Borrow Words.)

"They are to make an ark of acacia wood. Its length must be **two and a half kubits** ; its width will be **one kubit and a half** ; and its height will be **one kubit and a half**."

(2) Use the metric measurements given in the UST. The translators of the UST have already figured how to represent the amounts in the metric system.

"They are to make an ark of acacia wood. Its length must be **one meter** ; its width will be **two thirds of a meter** ; and its height will be **two thirds of a meter**."

(3) Use measurements that are already used in your language. In order to do this you would need to know how your measurements relate to the metric system and figure out each measurement. For example, if you measure things using the standard meter length, you could translate it as below.

"They are to make an ark of acacia wood. Its length must be **one meter**; its width will be **two thirds of a meter**; and its height will be **two thirds of a meter**."

(4) Use the measurements from the ULT and include measurements that your people know in the text or a note. The following shows both measurements in the text.

"They are to make an ark of acacia wood. Its length must be **two and a half cubits (one meter)**; its width will be **one cubit and a half (two thirds of a meter)** ; and its height will be **one cubit and a half (two thirds of a meter)**."

(5) Use measurements that your people know, and include the measurements from the ULT in the text or in a note. The following shows the ULT measurements in notes.

"They are to make an ark of acacia wood. Its length must be **one meter**¹; its width will be **two thirds of a meter**²; and its height will be **two thirds of a meter.**"

The footnotes would look like:

"They are to make an ark of acacia wood. Its length must be **one meter**¹; its width will be **two thirds of a meter**²; and its height will be **two thirds of a meter.**"

The footnotes would look like:

[1] two and a half cubits
[2] one cubit and a half

(Go back to: [1 Chronicles 11:23](#))

Biblical Money

Description:

This page answers the question: *How can I translate the values of money in the Bible?*

In early Old Testament times, people weighed their metals such as silver and gold and would give a certain weight of that metal in order to buy things. Later people started to make coins that each contained a standard amount of a certain metal. The daric is one such coin. In New Testament times, people used silver and copper coins.

The two tables below show some of the most well-known units of money found in the Old Testament (OT) and New Testament (NT). The table for Old Testament units shows what kind of metal was used and how much it weighed. The table for New Testament units shows what kind of metal was used and how much it was worth in terms of a day's wage.

Unit in OT	Metal	Weight
daric	gold coin	8.4 grams
shekel	various metals	11 grams
talent	various metals	33 kilograms

Unit in NT	Metal	Day's Wage
denarius/denarii	silver coin	1 day
drachma	silver coin	1 day
mite	copper coin	1/64 day
shekel	silver coin	4 days
talent	silver	6,000 days

Translation Principle

Do not use modern money values since these change from year to year. Using them will cause the Bible translation to become outdated and inaccurate.

Translation Strategies

The value of most money in the Old Testament was based on its weight. So when translating these weights in the Old Testament, see Biblical Weight. The strategies below are for translating the value of money in the New Testament

1. Use the Bible term and spell it in a way that is similar to the way it sounds. (See Copy or Borrow Words.)
2. Describe the value of the money in terms of what kind of metal it was made of and how many coins were used.
3. Describe the value of the money in terms of what people in Bible times could earn in one day of work.
4. Use the Bible term and give the equivalent amount in the text or a note.
5. Use the Bible term and explain it in a note.

Translation Strategies

The translations strategies are all applied to Luke 7:41 below.

1 The one owed **five hundred denarii**, and the other owed **fifty denarii**. (Luke 7:41 ULT)

(1) Use the Bible term and spell it in a way that is similar to the way it sounds. (See Copy or Borrow Words.)

1 "The one owed **five hundred denali**, and the other owed **fifty denali**."

(2) Describe the value of the money in terms of what kind of metal it was made of and how many pieces or coins were used.

1 "The one owed **five hundred silver coins**, and the other owed **fifty silver coins**."

(3) Describe the value of the money in terms of what people in Bible times could earn in one day of work.

1 "The one owed **five hundred days' wages**, and the other owed **fifty days' wages**."

(4) Use the Bible term and give the equivalent amount in the text or a footnote.

1 "The one owed **five hundred denarii** ¹, and the other owed **fifty denarii**. ²"

The footnotes would look like:

1 [1] five hundred days's wages
2 [2] fifty day's wages

(5) Use the Bible term and explain it in a footnote.

1 "The one owed **five hundred denarii** ¹, and the other owed **fifty denarii**."
(Luke 7:41 ULT)

[1] A denarius was the amount of silver that people could earn in one day of work.

Next we recommend you learn about:

[\[\[rc://en/ta/man/translate/translate-transliterate\]\]](#)
[Translate Unknowns](#)

(Go back to: [1 Chronicles 19:6](#); [20:2](#); [21:25](#); [22:14](#); [29:4](#); [29:7](#))

Direct and Indirect Quotations

Description

There are two kinds of quotations: direct quotation and indirect quotation.

A **direct quotation** occurs when someone reports what another person said from the viewpoint of that original speaker. People usually expect that this kind of quotation will represent the original speaker's exact words. In the example below, John would have said "I" when referring to himself, so the narrator, who is reporting John's words, uses the word "I" in the quotation to refer to John. To show that these are John's exact words, many languages put the words between quotation marks: "".

- John said, "**I** do not know at what time **I** will arrive."

An **indirect quotation** occurs when a speaker reports what someone else said, but in this case, the speaker is reporting it from his own point of view instead of from the original person's point of view. This kind of quotation usually features changes in pronouns, and it often features changes in time, in word choices, and in length. In the example below, the narrator refers to John as "he" in the quotation and uses the word "would", to replace the future tense indicated by "will".

- John said that **he** did not know at what time **he** would arrive.

Why this is a translation issue

In some languages, reported speech can be expressed by either direct or indirect quotations. In other languages, it is more natural to use one rather than the other, or there is a certain meaning implied by using one rather than the other. So for each quotation, translators need to decide whether it is best to translate it as a direct quotation or an indirect quotation.

Examples from the Bible

The verses in the examples below contain both direct and indirect quotations. In the explanation below the verse, we have underlined the quotations.

He instructed him to tell no one, but told him, "Go on your way, and show yourself to the priest and offer a sacrifice for your cleansing, according to what Moses commanded, for a testimony to them." (Luke 5:14 ULT)

- Indirect quote: He instructed him **to tell no one**,
- Direct quote: but told him, "**Go on your way, and show yourself to the priest...**"

Being asked by the Pharisees when the kingdom of God would come, Jesus answered them and said, "The kingdom of God is not something that can be observed. Neither will they say, 'Look here!' or, 'Look there!' because the kingdom of God is among you." (Luke 17:20-21 ULT)

- Indirect quote: Being asked by the Pharisees **when the kingdom of God would come**,
- Direct quote: Jesus answered them and said, "**The kingdom of God is not something that can be observed. Neither will they say, 'Look here!' or, 'Look there!' because the kingdom of God is among you.**"
- Direct quotes: Neither will they say, '**Look here!**' or, '**Look there!**'

This page answers the question: *What are direct and indirect quotations?*

In order to understand this topic, it would be good to read:

[\[\[rc://en/ta/man/translate/figs-pronouns\]\]](#)

[\[\[rc://en/ta/man/translate/figs-verbs\]\]](#)

[\[\[rc://en/ta/man/translate/writing-quotations\]\]](#)

Translation Strategies

If the kind of quote used in the source text would work well in your language, consider using it. If the kind of quote used in that context is not natural for your language, follow these strategies.

1. If a direct quote would not work well in your language, change it to an indirect quote.
2. If an indirect quote would not work well in your language, change it to a direct quote.

Examples of Translation Strategies Applied

(1) If a direct quote would not work well in your language, change it to an indirect quote.

He instructed him to tell no one, but told him, “Go on your way, and show yourself to the priest and offer a sacrifice for your cleansing, according to what Moses commanded, for a testimony to them.

” (Luke 5:14 ULT)

He instructed him to tell no one, but ***to go on his way, and to show himself to the priest and to offer a sacrifice for his cleansing, according to what Moses commanded, for a testimony to them.***”

(2) If an indirect quote would not work well in your language, change it to a direct quote.

He instructed him, to tell no one

, but told him, “Go on your way, and show yourself to the priest and offer a sacrifice for your cleansing, according to what Moses commanded, for a testimony to them.” (Luke 5:14 ULT)

He instructed him, “***Tell no one.*** Just go on your way, and show yourself to the priest and offer a sacrifice for your cleansing, according to what Moses commanded, for a testimony to them.”

You may also want to watch the video at http://ufw.io/figs_quotations.

Next we recommend you learn about:

[Quotes within Quotes](#)

(Go back to: [1 Chronicles 17:4](#); [17:6](#))

Doublet

Description

We are using the word “doublet” to refer to two words or phrases that are used together and either mean the same thing or mean very close to the same thing. Often they are joined with the word “and.” Unlike Hendiadys, in which one of the words modifies the other, in a doublet the two words or phrases are equal and are used to emphasize or intensify the one idea that is expressed by the two words or phrases.

This page answers the question: *What are doublets and how can I translate them?*

In order to understand this topic, it would be good to read:

[\[\[rc://en/ta/man/translate/figs-intro\]\]](#)

Reason this is a translation issue

In some languages people do not use doublets. Or they may use doublets, but only in certain situations, so a doublet might not make sense in their language in some verses. People might think that the verse is describing two ideas or actions, when it is only describing one. In this case, translators may need to find some other way to express the meaning expressed by the doublet.

Examples from the Bible

King David was **old** and **advanced in years**. (1 Kings 1:1 ULT)

The underlined words mean the same thing. Together they mean that he was “very old.”

...he attacked two men **more righteous** and **better** than himself... (1 Kings 2:32 ULT)

This means that they were “much more righteous” than he was.

You have decided to prepare **false** and **deceptive** words (Daniel 2:9 ULT)

This means that they had decided to lie, which is another way of saying that they intended to deceive people.

...as of a lamb **without blemish** and **without spot**. (1 Peter 1:19 ULT)

This means that he was like a lamb that did not have any defect--not even one.

Translation Strategies

If a doublet would be natural and give the right meaning in your language, consider using it. If not, consider these strategies.

1. Translate only one of the words or phrases.
2. If the doublet is used to intensify the meaning, translate one of the words or phrases and add a word that intensifies it such as “very” or “great” or “many.”
3. If the doublet is used to intensify or emphasize the meaning, use one of your language’s ways of doing that.

Translation Strategies Applied

(1) Translate only one of the words.

You have decided to prepare false

and deceptive words (Daniel 2:9 ULT)

“You have decided to prepare **false** things to say.”

(2) If the doublet is used to intensify the meaning, translate one of the words and add a word that intensifies it such as “very” or “great” or “many.”

■ **King David was** old

and advanced in years. (1 Kings 1:1 ULT)

■ “King David was **very old**.”

(3) If the doublet is used to intensify or emphasize the meaning, use one of your language’s ways of doing that.

■ **...a lamb** without blemish

and without spot... (1 Peter 1:19 ULT) - English can emphasize this with “any” and “at all.”

■ “...a lamb **without any blemish at all**...”

(Go back to: [1 Chronicles 11:17](#); [11:18](#); [12:18](#); [17:5](#); [28:1](#); [28:2](#); [28:7](#); [28:8](#); [28:20](#); [29:12](#))

Ellipsis

Description

Ellipsis is what happens when a speaker or writer leaves out one or more words from a sentence that it normally should have to be a complete sentence. The speaker or writer does this because he knows that the hearer or reader will understand the meaning of the sentence and supply the words in his mind when he hears or reads the words that are there. For example:

...the wicked will not stand in the judgment, ***nor sinners in the assembly of the righteous.***
(Psalm 1:5)

There is ellipsis in the second part because “nor sinners in the assembly of the righteous” is not a complete sentence. The speaker assumes that the hearer will understand what it is that sinners will not do in the assembly of the righteous by filling in the action from the previous clause. With the action filled in, the complete sentence would be:

...nor ***will*** sinners ***stand*** in the assembly of the righteous.

There are two types of ellipsis.

1. A Relative Ellipsis happens when the reader has to supply the omitted word or words from the context. Usually the word is in the previous sentence, as in the example above.
2. An Absolute Ellipsis happens when the omitted word or words are not in the context, but the phrases are common enough in the language that the reader is expected to supply what is missing from this common usage, or from the nature of the situation.

Reason this is a translation issue

Readers who see incomplete sentences or phrases may not know that there is information missing that the writer expects them to fill in. Or readers may understand that there is information missing, but they may not know what information is missing because they do not know the original biblical language, culture, or situation as the original readers did. In this case, they may fill in the wrong information. Or readers may misunderstand the ellipsis if they do not use ellipsis in the same way in their language.

Examples from the Bible

Relative Ellipsis

He makes Lebanon skip like a calf ***and Sirion like a young ox.*** (Psalm 29:6 ULT)

The writer wants his words to be few and to make good poetry. The full sentence with the information filled in would be:

He makes Lebanon skip like a calf and ***he makes*** Sirion ***skip*** like a young ox.

But if we are afflicted, ***for your comfort and salvation;*** if we are comforted, ***for your comfort...***
(2 Corinthians 1:6)

The information that the reader must understand in the second parts of these sentences can be filled in from the first parts:

This page answers the question: *What is ellipsis?*

In order to understand this topic, it would be good to read:

[\[\[rc://en/ta/man/translate/figs-intro\]\]](#)

[\[\[rc://en/ta/man/translate/figs-sentences\]\]](#)

But if we are afflicted, **we are afflicted** for your comfort and salvation; if we are comforted, **we are comforted** for your comfort,...

Absolute Ellipsis

...when the blind man was near, Jesus asked him, "What do you want me to do for you?" He said, "Lord, **that I might receive my sight.**" (Luke 18:40-41 ULT)

It seems that the man answered in an incomplete sentence because he wanted to be polite and not directly ask Jesus for healing. He knew that Jesus would understand that the only way he could receive his sight would be for Jesus to heal him. The complete sentence would be:

"Lord, **I want you to heal me so** that I might receive my sight."

To Titus...**Grace and peace from God the Father and Christ Jesus our Savior.** (Titus 1:4 ULT)

The writer assumes that the reader will recognize this common form of a blessing or wish, so he does not need to include the full sentence, which would be:

To Titus...**May you receive** grace and peace from God the Father and Christ Jesus our savior.

Translation Strategies

If ellipsis would be natural and give the right meaning in your language, consider using it. If not, here is another option:

1. Add the missing words to the incomplete phrase or sentence.

Examples of Translation Strategies Applied

- (1) Add the missing words to the incomplete phrase or sentence.

...**the wicked will not stand in the judgment, nor** sinners in the assembly

of the righteous. (Psalm 1:5)

...the wicked will not stand in the judgment, and **sinners will not stand in the assembly** of the righteous

...when the blind man was near, Jesus asked him, "What do you want me to do for you?" He said, "Lord, that I might receive my sight

." (Luke 18:40-41)

...when the blind man was near, Jesus asked him, "What do you want me to do for you?" He said, "Lord, **I want you to heal me** that I might receive my sight."

He makes Lebanon skip like a calf and Sirion like a young ox

. (Psalm 29:6)

He makes Lebanon skip like a calf, and **he makes** Sirion **skip** like a young ox.

(Go back to: 1 Chronicles 2:13; 2:14; 2:15; 5:18; 9:6; 9:9; 9:13; 10:6; 16:12; 16:16; 23:11; 23:19; 23:20; 24:7; 24:8; 24:9; 24:10; 24:11; 24:12; 24:13; 24:14; 24:15; 24:16; 24:17; 24:18; 25:9; 25:10; 25:11; 25:12; 25:13; 25:14; 25:15; 25:16; 25:17; 25:18; 25:19; 25:20; 25:21; 25:22; 25:23; 25:24; 25:25; 25:26; 25:27; 25:28; 25:29; 25:30; 25:31; 26:2; 26:3; 26:4; 26:5; 26:11; 26:17; 26:18; 28:7; 28:16; 28:18)

Euphemism

Description

A euphemism is a mild or polite way of referring to something that is unpleasant, embarrassing, or socially unacceptable, such as death or activities usually done in private.

This page answers the question: *What is a Euphemism?*

In order to understand this topic, it would be good to read:

[[rc://en/ta/man/translate/figs-intro]]

Definition

...they found Saul and his sons **fallen** on Mount Gilboa. (1 Chronicles 10:8 ULT)

This means that Saul and his sons “were dead”. It is a euphemism because the important thing was not that Saul and his sons had fallen but that they were dead. Sometimes people do not like to speak directly about death because it is unpleasant.

Reason this is a translation issue

Different languages use different euphemisms. If the target language does not use the same euphemism as in the source language, readers may not understand what it means and they may think that the writer means only what the words literally say.

Examples from the Bible

...where there was a cave. Saul went inside to relieve himself...(1 Samuel 24:3 ULT)

The original hearers would have understood that Saul went into the cave to use it as a toilet, but the writer wanted to avoid offending or distracting them, so **he did not say specifically** what Saul did or what he left in the cave.

Mary said to the angel, “How will this happen, since I have not slept with any man?” (Luke 1:34 ULT)

In order **to be polite**, Mary uses a euphemism to say that she has never had sexual intercourse with a man.

Translation Strategies

If euphemism would be natural and give the right meaning in your language, consider using it. If not, here are other options:

1. Use a euphemism from your own culture.
2. State the information plainly without a euphemism if it would not be offensive.

Examples of Translation Strategies Applied

(1) Use a euphemism from your own culture.

...where there was a cave. Saul went inside to relieve himself

. (1 Samuel 24:3 ULT) - Some languages might use euphemisms like these:

“...where there was a cave. Saul went into the cave **to dig a hole**”
 “...where there was a cave. Saul went into the cave **to have some time alone**”

Mary said to the angel, “How will this happen, since I have not slept with any man?” (Luke 1:34 ULT)

Mary said to the angel, "How will this happen, since ***I do not know a man?***" - (This is the euphemism used in the original Greek)

(2) State the information plainly without a euphemism if it would not be offensive.

they found Saul and his sons fallen

on Mount Gilboa. (1 Chronicles 10:8 ULT)

"they found Saul and his sons ***dead*** on Mount Gilboa."

(Go back to: [1 Chronicles 2:24](#); [5:1](#); [7:23](#); [10:8](#); [11:14](#); [17:11](#); [28:3](#))

Exclamations

Description

Exclamations are words or sentences that show strong feeling such as surprise, joy, fear, or anger. In the ULT and UST, they usually have an exclamation mark (!) at the end. The mark shows that it is an exclamation. The situation and the meaning of what the people say helps us understand what feelings they were expressing. In the example below from Matthew 8, the speakers were terribly afraid. In the example from Matthew 9, the speakers were amazed, because something happened that they had never seen before.

This page answers the question: *What are ways of translating exclamations?*

In order to understand this topic, it would be good to read:

[\[\[rc://en/ta/man/translate/figs-sentencetypes\]\]](#)

Save us, Lord; we are about to die! (Matthew 8:25 ULT)

When the demon had been driven out, the mute man spoke. The crowds were astonished and said, "This has never been seen before in Israel!" (Matthew 9:33 ULT)

Reason this is a translation issue

Languages have different ways of showing that a sentence communicates strong emotion.

Examples from the Bible

Some exclamations have a word that shows feeling. The sentences below have "Oh" and "Ah". The word "oh" here shows the speaker's amazement.

Oh, the depth of the riches both of the wisdom and the knowledge of God! (Romans 11:33 ULT)

The word "Ah" below shows that Gideon was very frightened.

Gideon understood that this was the angel of Yahweh. Gideon said, "**Ah**, Lord Yahweh! For I have seen the angel of Yahweh face to face!" (Judges 6:22 ULT)

Some exclamations start with a question word such as "how" or "why", even though they are not questions. The sentence below shows that the speaker is amazed at how unsearchable God's judgments are.

How unsearchable are his judgments, and his ways beyond discovering! (Romans 11:33 ULT)

Some exclamations in the Bible do not have a main verb. The exclamation below shows that the speaker is disgusted with the person he is speaking to.

You worthless person! (Matthew 5:22 ULT)

Translation Strategies

1. If an exclamation in your language needs a verb, add one. Often a good verb is "is" or "are".
2. Use an exclamation word from your language that shows the strong feeling.
3. Translate the exclamation word with a sentence that shows the feeling.
4. Use a word that emphasizes the part of the sentence that brings about the strong feeling.
5. If the strong feeling is not clear in the target language, then tell how the person felt.

Examples of Translation Strategies Applied

(1) If an exclamation in your language needs a verb, add one. Often a good verb is "is" or "are".

You worthless person! (Matthew 5:22 ULT)

"You **are** such a worthless person!"

Oh, the depth of the riches both of the wisdom and the knowledge of God! (Romans 11:33 ULT)

"Oh, the riches of the wisdom and the knowledge of God **are** so deep!"

(2) Use an exclamation word from your language that shows the strong feeling. The word "wow" below shows that they were astonished. The expression "Oh no" shows that something terrible or frightening has happened.

They were absolutely astonished, saying, "He has done everything well. He even makes the deaf to hear and the mute to speak." (Mark 7:36 ULT)

"They were absolutely astonished, saying, '**Wow!** He has done everything well. He even makes the deaf to hear and the mute to speak.'"

Ah, Lord Yahweh! For I have seen the angel of Yahweh face to face! (Judges 6:22 ULT)

"**Oh no**, Lord Yahweh! I have seen the angel of Yahweh face to face!"

(3) Translate the exclamation word with a sentence that shows the feeling.

Ah

, Lord Yahweh! For I have seen the angel of Yahweh face to face! (Judges 6:22 ULT)

Lord Yahweh, **what will happen to me?** For I have seen the angel of Yahweh face to face!"

Help, Lord Yahweh! For I have seen the angel of Yahweh face to face!

(4) Use a word that emphasizes the part of the sentence that brings about the strong feeling.

How unsearchable are his judgments, and his ways beyond discovering! (Romans 11:33 ULT)

"His judgments are **so** unsearchable and his ways are **far** beyond discovering!"

(5) If the strong feeling is not clear in the target language, then tell how the person felt.

Gideon understood that this was the angel of Yahweh. Gideon said, "Ah

, Lord Yahweh! For I have seen the angel of Yahweh face to face!" (Judges 6:22 ULT)

"Gideon understood that this was the angel of Yahweh. **He was terrified** and said, "**Ah**, Lord Yahweh! I have seen the angel of Yahweh face to face!" (Judges 6:22 ULT)

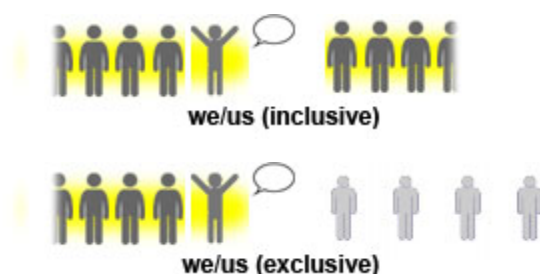
(Go back to: [1 Chronicles 21:15](#))

Exclusive and Inclusive 'We'

Description

Some languages have more than one form of “we”: an **inclusive** form that means “I and you” and an **exclusive** form that means “I and someone else but **not you**”. The exclusive form excludes the person being spoken to. The inclusive form includes the person being spoken to and possibly others. This is also true for “us”, “our”, “ours”, and “ourselves”. Some languages have inclusive forms and exclusive forms for each of these. Translators whose language has separate exclusive and inclusive forms for these words will need to understand what the speaker meant so that they can decide which form to use.

See the pictures. The people on the right are the people that the speaker is talking to. The yellow highlight shows who the inclusive “we” and the exclusive “we” refer to.



Reason this is a translation issue

The Bible was first written in the Hebrew, Aramaic, and Greek languages. Like English, these languages do not have separate exclusive and inclusive forms for “we.” If your language has separate exclusive and inclusive forms of “we”, then you will need to understand what the speaker meant so that you can decide which form of “we” to use.

Examples from the Bible

They said, “**We** have no more than five loaves of bread and two fish, unless **we** went and bought food for all this crowd of people.” (Luke 9:13 ULT)

In the first clause, the disciples are telling Jesus how much food they have among them, so this “we” could be the inclusive form or the exclusive form. In the second clause, the disciples are talking about some of them going to buy food, so that “we” would be the exclusive form, since Jesus would not go to buy food.

we have seen, and bear witness, and declare to you the eternal life, which was with the Father, and was manifested to **us** (1 John 1:2 ULT)

John is telling people who have not seen Jesus what he and the other apostles have seen. So languages that have exclusive forms of “we” and “us” would use the exclusive forms in this verse.

...the shepherds said one to each other, “Let **us** now go to Bethlehem, and see this thing that has happened, which the Lord has made known to **us**.” (Luke 2:15 ULT)

The shepherds were speaking to one another. When they said “us”, they were **including** the people they were speaking to - one another.

Now it happened on one of those days that Jesus and his disciples entered into a boat, and he said to them, “Let **us** go over to the other side of the lake.” Then they set sail. (Luke 8:22 ULT)

When Jesus said “us”, he was referring to himself and to the disciples he was speaking to, so this would be the inclusive form.

Next we recommend you learn about:

[\[\[rc://en/ta/man/translate/figs-gendernotations\]\]](#)

(Go back to: [1 Chronicles 17:20](#))

First, Second or Third Person

Normally a speaker refers to himself as “I” and the person he is speaking to as “you”. Sometimes in the Bible a speaker refers to himself or to the person he is speaking to with terms other than “I” or “you”.

Description

- **First person** - This is how a speaker normally refers to himself. English uses the pronouns “I” and “we”. (Also: me, my, mine; us, our, ours)
- **Second person** - This is how a speaker normally refers to the person or people he is speaking to. English uses the pronoun “you”. (Also: your, yours)
- **Third person** - This is how a speaker refers to someone else. English uses the pronouns “he”, “she”, “it” and “they”. (Also: him, his, her, hers, its; them, their, theirs) Noun phrases like “the man” or “the woman” are also third person.

This page answers the question: *What are first, second, and third person, and how do I translate when a third person form does not refer to the third person?*

In order to understand this topic, it would be good to read:

[[rc://en/ta/man/translate/figs-explicitinfo]]

[[rc://en/ta/man/translate/figs-pronouns]]

Reason this is a Translation Issue

Sometimes in the Bible a speaker uses the third person to refer to himself or to the people he is speaking to. Readers might think that the speaker was referring to someone else. They might not understand that he meant “I” or “you”.

Examples from the Bible

Sometimes people used the third person instead of “I” or “me” to refer to themselves.

But David said to Saul, “**Your servant** used to keep **his** father’s sheep.” (1 Samuel 17:34 ULT)

David referred to himself in the third person as “your servant” and “his”. He was calling himself Saul’s servant in order to show his humility before Saul.

Then Yahweh answered Job out of a fierce storm and said,
“...Do you have an arm like **God’s**? Can you thunder with a voice like **him**? (Job 40:6, 9 ULT)

God referred to himself in the third person with the words “God’s” and “him”. He did this to emphasize that he is God, and he is powerful.

Sometimes people use the third person instead of “you” or “your” to refer to the person or people they are speaking to.

Abraham answered and said, “Look what I have done, taking it upon myself to speak to **my Lord**, even though I am only dust and ashes! (Genesis 18:27 ULT)

Abraham was speaking to the Lord, and referred to the Lord as “My Lord” rather than as “you”. He did this to show his humility before God.

So also my heavenly Father will do to you, if **each of you** does not forgive **his** brother from your heart. (Matthew 18:35 ULT)

After saying “each of you,” Jesus used the third person “his” instead of “your”.

Translation Strategies

If using the third person to mean “I” or “you” would be natural and give the right meaning in your language, consider using it. If not, here are some other options.

1. Use the third person phrase along with the pronoun “I” or “you”.
2. Simply use the first person (“I”) or second person (“you”) instead of the third person.

Examples of Translation Strategies Applied

(1) Use the third person phrase along with the pronoun “I” or “you”.

But David said to Saul, “Your servant

used to keep his father’s sheep.” (1 Samuel 17:34)

But David said to Saul, “**I, your servant**, used to keep **my** father’s sheep.”

(2) Simply use the first person (“I”) or second person (“you”) instead of the third person.

Then Yahweh answered Job out of a fierce storm and said, “... Do you have an arm like God’s

? Can you thunder with a voice like him? (Job 40:6, 9 ULT)

Then Yahweh answered Job out of a fierce storm and said, “... Do you have an arm like **mine**? Can you thunder with a voice like **me**?”

So also my heavenly Father will do to you, if each of you

does not forgive his brother from your heart. (Matthew 18:35 ULT)

So also my heavenly Father will do to you, if **each of you** does not forgive **your** brother from your heart.

Next we recommend you learn about:

[Forms of You](#)

(Go back to: [1 Chronicles 17:17](#); [17:19](#); [17:23](#); [17:25](#); [17:27](#); [21:8](#); [28:9](#))

Forms of You

Singular, Dual, and Plural

Some languages have more than one word for “you” based on how many people the word “you” refers to. The **singular** form refers to one person, and the **plural** form refers to more than one person. Some languages also have a **dual** form which refers to two people, and some languages have other forms that refer to three or four people.

This page answers the question: *What are the different forms of you?*

In order to understand this topic, it would be good to read:

[[rc://en/ta/man/translate/figs-yousingular]]

[[rc://en/ta/man/translate/figs-youdual]]

You may also want to watch the video at http://ufw.io/figs_younum.

Sometimes in the Bible a speaker uses a singular form of “you” even though he is speaking to a crowd.

- Singular Pronouns that Refer to Groups

Formal and Informal

Some languages have more than one form of “you” based on the relationship between the speaker and the person he is talking to. People use the **formal** form of “you” when speaking to someone who is older, or has higher authority, or is someone they do not know very well. People use the **informal** form when speaking to someone who is not older, or does not have higher authority, or is a family member or close friend.

You may also want to watch the video at http://ufw.io/figs_youform.

For help with translating these, we suggest you read:

- Forms of “You” - Formal or Informal

(Go back to: [1 Chronicles 22:18](#); [22:19](#))

Hebrew Months

Description

This page answers the question: *What are the Hebrew months?*

The Hebrew calendar used in the Bible has twelve months. Unlike the western calendar, its first month begins in the spring of the northern hemisphere. Sometimes a month is called by its name (Abib, Ziv, Sivan), and sometimes it is called by its order in the Hebrew calendar year (first month, second month, third month).

Reasons this is a translation issue

- Readers may be surprised to read of months that they have never heard of, and they may wonder how those months correspond to the months that they use.
- Readers may not realize that phrases such as “the first month” or “the second month” refer to the first or second month of the Hebrew calendar, not some other calendar.
- Readers may not know when the first month of the Hebrew calendar begins.
- The Bible may tell about something happening in a certain month, but readers will not be able to fully understand what is said about it if they do not know what season of the year that was.

List of Hebrew Months

This is a list of the Hebrew months with information about them that may be helpful in the translation.

Abib - (This month is called **Nisan** after the Babylonian exile.) This is the first month of the Hebrew calendar. It marks when God brought the people of Israel out of Egypt. It is at the beginning of the spring season when the late rains come and people begin to harvest their crops. It is during the last part of March and the first part of April on western calendars. The Passover celebration started on Abib 10, the Festival of Unleavened Bread was right after that, and the Festival of Harvest was a few weeks after that.

Ziv - This is the second month of the Hebrew calendar. This is during the harvest season. It is during the last part of April and the first part of May on western calendars.

Sivan - This is the third month of the Hebrew calendar. It is at the end of the harvest season and the beginning of the dry season. It is during the last part of May and the first part of June on western calendars. The Feast of Weeks is celebrated on Sivan 6.

Tammuz - This is the fourth month of the Hebrew calendar. It is during the dry season. It is during the last part of June and the first part of July on western calendars.

Ab - This is the fifth month of the Hebrew calendar. It is during the dry season. It is during the last part of July and the first part of August on western calendars.

Elul - This is the sixth month of the Hebrew calendar. It is at the end of the dry season and the beginning of the rainy season. It is during the last part of August and the first part of September on western calendars.

Ethanim - This is the seventh month of the Hebrew calendar. This is during the early rain season which would soften the land for sowing. It is during the last part of September and the first part of October on western calendars. The Feast of Ingathering and the Day of Atonement are celebrated in this month.

Bul - This is the eighth month of the Hebrew calendar. It is during the rainy season when people plough their fields and sow seed. It is during the last part of October and the first part of November on western calendars.

Kislev - This is the ninth month of the Hebrew calendar. This is at the end of the sowing season and the beginning of the cold season. It is during the last part of November and the first part of December on western calendars.

Tebeth - This is the tenth month of the Hebrew calendar. It is during the cold season when there may be rain and snow. It is during the last part of December and the first part of January on western calendars.

Shebat - This is the eleventh month of the Hebrew calendar. This is the coldest month of the year, and it has heavy rain fall. It is during the last part of January and the first part of February on western calendars.

Adar - This is the twelfth and last month of the Hebrew calendar. This is during the cold season. It is during the last part of February and the first part of March on western calendars. The feast called Purim is celebrated in Adar.

Examples from the Bible

You are going out of Egypt on this day, in **the month of Abib**. (Exodus 13:4 ULT)

You must eat unleavened bread from twilight of the fourteenth day **in the first month of the year**, until twilight of the twenty-first day of the month. (Exodus 12:18 ULT)

Translation Strategies

You may need to make some information about the months explicit. (See [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#).)

1. Tell the number of the Hebrew month.
2. Use the months that people know.
3. State clearly what season the month occurred in.
4. Refer to the time in terms of the season rather than in terms of the month. (If possible, use a footnote to show the Hebrew month and day.)

Examples of Translation Strategies Applied

The examples below use these two verses.

At that time, you will appear before me in the month of Abib

, which is fixed for this purpose. It was in this month that you came out from Egypt. (Exodus 23:15 ULT)

It will always be a statute for you that in the seventh month, on the tenth day of the month,
you must humble yourselves and do no work. (Leviticus 16:29 ULT)

- (1) Tell the number of the Hebrew month.

At that time, you will appear before me in **the first month of the year**, which is fixed for this purpose. It was in this month that you came out from Egypt.

- (2) Use the months that people know.

At that time, you will appear before me in **the month of March**, which is fixed for this purpose. It was in this month that you came out from Egypt.

It will always be a statute for you that **on the day I choose in late September** you must humble yourselves and do no work."

- (3) State clearly what season the month occurred in.

It will always be a statute for you that **in the autumn, on the tenth day of the seventh month**, you must humble yourselves and do no work.

- (4) Refer to the time in terms of the season rather than in terms of the month.

It will always be a statute for you that in ***the day I choose in early autumn***
¹ you must humble yourselves and do no work.

The footnote would look like:

^[1] The Hebrew says, “the seventh month, on the tenth day of the month.”

Next we recommend you learn about:

[Ordinal Numbers](#)

(Go back to: [1 Chronicles 12:15](#); [27:2](#); [27:4](#); [27:5](#); [27:7](#); [27:8](#); [27:9](#); [27:10](#); [27:11](#); [27:12](#); [27:13](#); [27:14](#); [27:15](#))

How to Translate Names

Description

The Bible has names of many people, groups of people, and places. Some of these names may sound strange and be hard to say. Sometimes readers may not know what a name refers to, and sometimes they may need to understand what a name means. This page will help you see how you can translate these names and how you can help people understand what they need to know about them.

This page answers the question: *How can I translate names that are new to my culture?*

In order to understand this topic, it would be good to read:

[Translate Unknowns](#)

Meaning of names

Most names in the Bible have meaning. Most of the time, names in the Bible are used simply to identify the people and places they refer to. But sometimes the meaning of a name is especially important.

It was this **Melchizedek**, king of Salem, priest of God Most High, who met Abraham returning from the slaughter of the kings and blessed him. (Hebrews 7:1 ULT)

Here the writer uses the name “Melchizedek” primarily to refer to a man who had that name, and the title “king of Salem” tells us that he ruled over a certain city.

His name “Melchizedek” means “king of righteousness,” and also “king of Salem,” that is, “king of peace.” (Hebrews 7:2 ULT)

Here the writer explains the meanings of Melchizedek’s name and title, because those things tell us more about the person. Other times, the writer does not explain the meaning of a name because he expects the reader to already know the meaning. If the meaning of the name is important to understand the passage, you can include the meaning in the text or in a footnote.

Reasons this is a translation issue

- Readers may not know some of the names in the Bible. They may not know whether a name refers to a person or place or something else.
- Readers may need to understand the meaning of a name in order to understand the passage.
- Some names may have different sounds or combinations of sounds that are not used in your language or are unpleasant to say in your language. For strategies to address this problem, see Borrow Words.
- Some people and places in the Bible have two names. Readers may not realize that two names refer to the same person or place.

Examples from the Bible

You went over the **Jordan** and came to **Jericho**. The leaders of Jericho fought against you, along with the **Amorites** (Joshua 24:11 ULT)

Readers might not know that “Jordan” is the name of a river, “Jericho” is the name of a city, and “Amorites” is the name of a group of people.

she said, “Do I really continue to see, even after he has seen me?” Therefore the well was called **Beerlahairoi**; (Genesis 16:13-14 ULT)

Readers may not understand the second sentence if they do not know that “Beerlahairoi” means “Well of the Living One who sees me”.

She named him **Moses** and said, “Because I drew him from the water.” (Exodus 2:11 ULT)

Readers may not understand why she said this if they do not know that the name Moses sounds like the Hebrew words “pull out”.

Saul was in agreement with his death (Acts 8:1 ULT)

It came about in Iconium that **Paul** and Barnabas entered together into the synagogue (Acts 14:1 ULT)

Readers may not know that the names Saul and Paul refer to the same person.

Translation Strategies

1. If readers cannot easily understand from the context what kind of a thing a name refers to, you can add a word to clarify it.
2. If readers need to understand the meaning of a name in order to understand what is said about it, copy the name and tell about its meaning either in the text or in a footnote.
3. Or if readers need to understand the meaning of a name in order to understand what is said about it, and that name is used only once, translate the meaning of the name instead of copying the name.
4. If a person or place has two different names, use one name most of the time and the other name only when the text tells about the person or place having more than one name or when it says something about why the person or place was given that name. Write a footnote when the source text uses the name that is used less frequently.
5. Or if a person or place has two different names, then use whatever name is given in the source text, and add a footnote that gives the other name.

Examples of Translation Strategies Applied

(1) If readers cannot easily understand from the context what kind of a thing a name refers to, you can add a word to clarify it.

You went over the Jordan

and came to Jericho. The leaders of Jericho fought against you, along with the Amorites (Joshua 24:11 ULT)

You went over the **Jordan River** and came to the **city of Jericho**. The leaders of Jericho fought against you, along with **the tribe of the Amorites**

Shortly after, some Pharisees came and said to him, “Go and leave here because Herod wants to kill you.” (Luke 13:31 ULT)

Shortly after, some Pharisees came and said to him, “Go and leave here because **King Herod** wants to kill you.

(2) If readers need to understand the meaning of a name in order to understand what is said about it, copy the name and tell about its meaning either in the text or in a footnote.

She named him Moses

and said, “Because I drew him from the water.” (Exodus 2:11 ULT)

She named him **Moses (which sounds like ‘drawn out’)**, and said, “Because I drew him from the water.”

(3) Or if readers need to understand the meaning of a name in order to understand what is said about it, and that name is used only once, translate the meaning of the name instead of copying the name.

...she said, “Do I really continue to see, even after he has seen me?” Therefore the well was called Beerlahairoi

; (Genesis 16:13-14 ULT)

...she said, "Do I really continue to see, even after he has seen me?" Therefore the well was called **Well of the Living One who sees me**;

(4) If a person or place has two different names, use one name most of the time and the other name only when the text tells about the person or place having more than one name or when it says something about why the person or place was given that name. Write a footnote when the source text uses the name that is used less frequently. For example, Paul is called "Saul" before Acts 13 and "Paul" after Acts 13. You could translate his name as "Paul" all of the time, except in Acts 13:9 where it talks about him having both names.

...a young man named Saul

(Acts 7:58 ULT)

...a young man named **Paul**¹

The footnote would look like:

^[1] Most versions say Saul here, but most of the time in the Bible he is called Paul.

Then later in the story, you could translate this way:

But Saul

, who is also called Paul, was filled with the Holy Spirit; (Acts 13:9)

But **Saul**, who is also called **Paul**, was filled with the Holy Spirit;

(5) Or if a person or place has two names, use whatever name is given in the source text, and add a footnote that gives the other name. For example, you could write "Saul" where the source text has "Saul" and "Paul" where the source text has "Paul."

a young man named Saul

(Acts 7:58 ULT)

a young man named **Saul**

The footnote would look like:

^[1] This is the same man who is called Paul beginning in Acts 13.

Then later in the story, you could translate this way:

But Saul

, who is also called Paul, was filled with the Holy Spirit; (Acts 13:9)

But **Saul**, who is also called **Paul**, was filled with the Holy Spirit;

Then after the story has explained the name change, you could translate this way.

It came about in Iconium that Paul

and Barnabas entered together into the synagogue (Acts 14:1 ULT)

It came about in Iconium that **Paul**¹ and Barnabas entered together into the synagogue

The footnote would look like:

[¹] This is the same man who was called Saul before Acts 13.

Next we recommend you learn about:

[\[\[rc://en/ta/man/translate/translate-transliterate\]\]](#)

(Go back to: 1 Chronicles 1:1; 1:2; 1:3; 1:5; 1:6; 1:7; 1:8; 1:11; 1:12; 1:13; 1:14; 1:15; 1:16; 1:17; 1:20; 1:24; 1:28; 1:32; 1:33; 1:34; 1:38; 1:39; 1:40; 1:41; 1:43; 1:44; 1:45; 1:46; 1:47; 1:48; 1:49; 1:50; 1:51; 1:52; 1:53; 1:54; 2:1; 2:2; 2:3; 2:4; 2:5; 2:6; 2:7; 2:8; 2:9; 2:10; 2:11; 2:12; 2:13; 2:14; 2:15; 2:16; 2:17; 2:18; 2:19; 2:20; 2:21; 2:22; 2:23; 2:24; 2:25; 2:26; 2:27; 2:28; 2:29; 2:30; 2:31; 2:32; 2:33; 2:34; 2:35; 2:36; 2:37; 2:38; 2:39; 2:40; 2:41; 2:42; 2:43; 2:44; 2:45; 2:46; 2:47; 2:48; 2:49; 2:50; 2:51; 2:52; 2:54; 2:55; 3:1; 3:2; 3:3; 3:5; 3:6; 3:7; 3:8; 3:9; 3:10; 3:17; 3:18; 3:19; 3:20; 3:21; 3:22; 3:23; 3:24; 4:1; 4:2; 4:3; 4:4; 4:5; 4:6; 4:7; 4:8; 4:9; 4:11; 4:12; 4:13; 4:14; 4:15; 4:16; 4:17; 4:18; 4:19; 4:20; 4:21; 4:22; 4:23; 4:24; 4:25; 4:26; 4:28; 4:29; 4:30; 4:31; 4:32; 4:33; 4:34; 4:35; 4:36; 4:37; 4:39; 4:41; 4:42; 5:3; 5:4; 5:5; 5:6; 5:7; 5:8; 5:10; 5:11; 5:14; 5:15; 5:18; 5:23; 5:24; 5:26; 6:1; 6:2; 6:3; 6:4; 6:5; 6:6; 6:7; 6:8; 6:9; 6:11; 6:12; 6:13; 6:14; 6:17; 6:19; 6:20; 6:21; 6:22; 6:23; 6:24; 6:25; 6:26; 6:27; 6:28; 6:29; 6:30; 6:33; 6:34; 6:35; 6:36; 6:37; 6:38; 6:39; 6:40; 6:41; 6:42; 6:43; 6:44; 6:45; 6:46; 6:50; 6:51; 6:52; 6:53; 6:57; 6:58; 6:59; 6:60; 6:67; 6:68; 6:69; 6:70; 6:71; 6:72; 6:73; 6:74; 6:75; 6:76; 6:77; 6:78; 6:79; 6:80; 6:81; 7:1; 7:2; 7:3; 7:6; 7:7; 7:8; 7:10; 7:11; 7:12; 7:13; 7:14; 7:15; 7:16; 7:17; 7:18; 7:19; 7:20; 7:21; 7:23; 7:24; 7:25; 7:26; 7:27; 7:28; 7:29; 7:30; 7:31; 7:32; 7:33; 7:34; 7:35; 7:36; 7:37; 7:38; 7:39; 7:40; 8:1; 8:2; 8:3; 8:4; 8:5; 8:6; 8:7; 8:8; 8:9; 8:10; 8:11; 8:12; 8:13; 8:14; 8:15; 8:16; 8:17; 8:18; 8:19; 8:20; 8:21; 8:22; 8:23; 8:24; 8:25; 8:26; 8:27; 8:29; 8:30; 8:31; 8:32; 8:33; 8:34; 8:35; 8:36; 8:37; 8:38; 8:39; 8:40; 9:4; 9:5; 9:6; 9:7; 9:8; 9:10; 9:11; 9:12; 9:14; 9:15; 9:16; 9:17; 9:19; 9:20; 9:21; 9:31; 9:32; 9:35; 9:36; 9:37; 9:38; 9:39; 9:40; 9:41; 9:42; 9:43; 9:44; 10:2; 10:10; 10:11; 11:6; 11:11; 11:12; 11:13; 11:15; 11:22; 11:26; 11:27; 11:28; 11:29; 11:30; 11:31; 11:32; 11:33; 11:34; 11:35; 11:36; 11:37; 11:38; 11:39; 11:40; 11:41; 11:42; 11:43; 11:44; 11:45; 11:46; 11:47; 12:3; 12:4; 12:5; 12:6; 12:7; 12:8; 12:9; 12:10; 12:11; 12:12; 12:13; 12:18; 12:20; 12:27; 13:5; 13:6; 13:7; 13:9; 13:11; 13:13; 14:1; 14:4; 14:5; 14:6; 14:7; 14:9; 14:11; 14:14; 14:16; 15:4; 15:6; 15:7; 15:8; 15:9; 15:10; 15:11; 15:17; 15:18; 15:19; 15:20; 15:21; 15:22; 15:23; 15:24; 15:25; 15:27; 15:29; 16:5; 16:6; 16:38; 16:41; 18:3; 18:8; 18:9; 18:10; 18:12; 18:15; 18:16; 18:17; 19:1; 19:2; 19:6; 19:7; 19:11; 19:16; 20:4; 20:5; 20:6; 21:15; 23:6; 23:7; 23:8; 23:9; 23:10; 23:11; 23:12; 23:13; 23:15; 23:16; 23:17; 23:18; 23:19; 23:20; 23:21; 23:22; 23:23; 24:3; 24:6; 24:7; 24:8; 24:9; 24:10; 24:11; 24:12; 24:13; 24:14; 24:15; 24:16; 24:17; 24:18; 24:20; 24:24; 24:25; 24:26; 24:27; 24:29; 24:30; 25:1; 25:2; 25:3; 25:4; 25:6; 25:9; 25:10; 25:11; 25:12; 25:13; 25:14; 25:15; 25:16; 25:17; 25:18; 25:19; 25:20; 25:21; 25:22; 25:23; 25:24; 25:29; 25:30; 25:31; 26:1; 26:2; 26:3; 26:4; 26:5; 26:7; 26:8; 26:9; 26:10; 26:11; 26:14; 26:15; 26:16; 26:19; 26:21; 26:22; 26:23; 26:24; 26:25; 26:28; 26:29; 26:30; 26:31; 27:2; 27:3; 27:4; 27:5; 27:6; 27:7; 27:8; 27:9; 27:10; 27:11; 27:12; 27:13; 27:14; 27:15; 27:16; 27:17; 27:18; 27:19; 27:20; 27:21; 27:22; 27:24; 27:25; 27:26; 27:27; 27:28; 27:29; 27:30; 27:31; 27:32; 27:33; 27:34; 29:8)

Hyperbole

Description

A speaker or writer can use exactly the same words to say something that he means as completely true, or as generally true, or as a hyperbole. This is why it can be hard to decide how to understand a statement. For example, the sentence below could mean three different things.

- It rains here every night.
1. The speaker means this as literally true if he means that it really does rain here every night.
 2. The speaker means this as a **generalization** if he means that it rains here most nights.
 3. The speaker means this as a **hyperbole** if he wants to say that it rains more than it actually does, usually in order to express a strong attitude toward the amount of rain, such as being annoyed or being happy about it.

Hyperbole: This is a figure of speech that uses **exaggeration**. A speaker deliberately describes something by an extreme or even unreal statement, usually to show his strong feeling or opinion about it. He expects people to understand that he is exaggerating.

They will not leave **one stone upon another** (Luke 19:44 ULT)

- This is an exaggeration. It means that the enemies will completely destroy Jerusalem.

Moses was educated in **all the learning of the Egyptians** (Acts 7:22 ULT)

- This hyperbole means that he had learned much of what the Egyptians knew and taught, and thus was as educated as any Egyptian.

Generalization: This is a statement that is true most of the time or in most situations that it could apply to.

The one who ignores instruction **will have poverty and shame**, but **honor will come** to him who learns from correction. (Proverbs 13:18)

- These generalizations tell about what normally happens to people who ignore instruction and what normally happens to people who learn from correction. There may be some exceptions to these statements, but they are generally true.

And when you pray, do not make useless repetitions as **the Gentiles do, for they think that they will be heard because of their many words**. (Matthew 6:7)

- This generalization tells about what Gentiles were known for doing. Many Gentiles did this. It does not matter if a few did not. The point was that the hearers should not join in this well-known practice.

Even though a hyperbole or a generalization may have a strong-sounding word like "all," "always," "none," or "never," it does not necessarily mean **exactly** "all," "always," "none," or "never." It simply means "most," "most of the time," "hardly any," or "rarely."

Reason this is a translation issue

1. Readers need to be able to understand whether or not a statement is literally true.
2. If readers realize that a statement is not literally true, they need to be able to understand whether it is a hyperbole, a generalization, or a lie. (Though the Bible is completely true, it tells about people who did not always tell the truth.)

This page answers the question: *What are hyperboles? What are generalizations? How can I translate them?*

In order to understand this topic, it would be good to read:

[[rc://en/ta/man/translate/figs-intro]]

Examples from the Bible

Examples of Hyperbole

If your hand causes you to stumble, **cut it off**. It is better for you to enter into life maimed... (Mark 9:43 ULT)

When Jesus said to cut off your hand, he meant that we should **do whatever extreme things** we need to do in order not to sin. He used this hyperbole to show how extremely important it is to try to stop sinning.

The Philistines gathered together to fight against Israel: thirty thousand chariots, six thousand men to drive the chariots, and troops **as numerous as the sand on the seashore**. (1 Samuel 13:5 ULT)

The underlined phrase is an exaggeration for the purpose of expression the emotion that the Philistine army was overwhelming in number. It means that there were **many, many** soldiers in the Philistine army.

But as his anointing teaches you about **all things** and is true and is not a lie, and even as it has taught you, remain in him. (1 John 2:27 ULT)

This is a hyperbole. It expresses the assurance that God's Spirit teaches us about **all things that we need to know**. God's Spirit does not teach us about everything that it is possible to know.

They found him, and they said to him, "**Everyone** is looking for you." (Mark 1:37 ULT)

The disciples probably did not mean that everyone in the city was looking for Jesus, but that **many people** were looking for him, or that all of Jesus' closest friends there were looking for him. This is an exaggeration for the purpose of expressing the emotion that they and many others were worried about him.

Examples of Generalization

Can anything good come out of Nazareth? (John 1:46 ULT)

This rhetorical question is meant to express the generalization that there is nothing good in Nazareth. The people there had a reputation for being uneducated and not strictly religious. Of course, there were exceptions.

One of them, of their own prophets, has said, "**Cretans are always liars, evil beasts, lazy bellies**." (Titus 1:12 ULT)

This is a generalization that means that Cretans had a reputation to be like this because, in general, this is how Cretans behaved. It is possible that there were exceptions.

A lazy hand causes poverty, but the hand of the diligent makes him rich. (Proverbs 10:4 ULT)

This is generally true, and reflects the experience of most people. It is possible that there are exceptions in some circumstances.

Caution

Do not assume that something is an exaggeration just because it seems to be impossible. God does miraculous things.

...they saw Jesus **walking on the sea** and coming near the boat... (John 6:19 ULT)

This is not hyperbole. Jesus really walked on the water. It is a literal statement.

Do not assume that the word "all" is always a generalization that means "most."

Yahweh is righteous in **all** his ways
and gracious in **all** he does. (Psalms 145:17 ULT)

Yahweh is always righteous. This is a completely true statement.

Translation Strategies

If the hyperbole or generalization would be natural and people would understand it and not think that it is a lie, consider using it. If not, here are other options.

1. Express the meaning without the exaggeration.
2. For a generalization, show that it is a generalization by using a phrase like “in general” or “in most cases.”
3. For a hyperbole or a generalization, add a word like “many” or “almost” to show that the hyperbole or generalization is not meant to be exact.
4. For a hyperbole or a generalization that has a word like “all,” “always,” “none,” or “never,” consider deleting that word.

Examples of Translation Strategies Applied

- (1) Express the meaning without the exaggeration.

The Philistines gathered together to fight against Israel: thirty thousand chariots, six thousand men to drive the chariots, and troops as numerous as the sand on the seashore

. (1 Samuel 13:5 ULT)

The Philistines gathered together to fight against Israel: thirty thousand chariots, six thousand men to drive the chariots, and **a great number of troops**.

- (2) For a generalization, show that it is a generalization by using a phrase like “in general” or “in most cases”.

The one who ignores instruction will have poverty and shame... (Proverbs 13:18 ULT)

In general, the one who ignores instruction will have poverty and shame

And when you pray, do not make useless repetitions as the Gentiles do, for they think that they will be heard because of their many words. (Matthew 6:7)

“And when you pray, do not make useless repetitions as the Gentiles **generally** do, for they think that they will be heard because of their many words.”

- (3) For a hyperbole or a generalization, add a word like “many” or “almost” to show that the hyperbole or generalization is not meant to be exact.

The whole

country of Judea and all the people of Jerusalem went out to him. (Mark 1:5 ULT)

Almost all the country of Judea and **almost all** the people of Jerusalem went out to him.”
or:
Many of the country of Judea and **many** of the people of Jerusalem went out to him.”

- (4) For a hyperbole or a generalization that has a word like “all,” “always,” “none,” or “never,” consider deleting that word.

The whole

country of Judea and all the people of Jerusalem went out to him. (Mark 1:5 ULT)

■ The country of Judea and the people of Jerusalem went out to him.

(Go back to: [1 Chronicles 10:1](#); [10:7](#); [10:11](#); [11:1](#); [12:8](#); [13:5](#); [13:8](#); [15:3](#); [15:28](#); [16:22](#); [16:36](#); [19:17](#); [21:3](#); [22:3](#); [22:4](#); [22:15](#))

Idiom

An idiom is a figure of speech made up of a group of words that, as a whole, has a meaning that is different from what one would understand from the meanings of the individual words. Someone from outside of the culture usually cannot understand an idiom without someone inside the culture explaining its true meaning. Every language uses idioms. Some English examples are:

- You are pulling my leg. (This means, “You are telling me a lie.”)
- Do not push the envelope. (This means, “Do not take a matter to its extreme.”)
- This house is under water. (This means, “The debt owed for this house is greater than its actual value.”)
- We are painting the town red. (This means, “We are going around town tonight celebrating very intensely.”)

This page answers the question: *What are idioms and how can I translate them?*

In order to understand this topic, it would be good to read:

[\[\[rc://en/ta/man/translate/figs-intro\]\]](#)

Description

An idiom is a phrase that has a special meaning to the people of the language or culture who use it. Its meaning is different than what a person would understand from the meanings of the individual words that form the phrase.

he resolutely **set his face** to go to Jerusalem. (Luke 9:51 ULT)

The words “set his face” is an idiom that means “decided”.

Sometimes people may be able to understand an idiom from another culture, but it might sound like a strange way to express the meaning.

I am not worthy that you should **enter under my roof**. (Luke 7:6 ULT)

The phrase “enter under my roof” is an idiom that means “enter my house”.

Let these words **go deeply into your ears**. (Luke 9:44 ULT)

This idiom means “Listen carefully and remember what I say”.

Purpose: An idiom is created in a culture probably somewhat by accident when someone describes something in an unusual way. But, when that unusual way communicates the message powerfully and people understand it clearly, other people start to use it. After a while, it becomes a normal way of talking in that language.

Reasons this is a translation issue

- People can easily misunderstand idioms in the original languages of the Bible if they do not know the cultures that produced the Bible.
- People can easily misunderstand idioms that are in the source language Bibles if they do not know the cultures that made those translations.
- It is useless to translate idioms literally (according to the meaning of each word) when the target language audience will not understand what they mean.

Examples from the Bible

Then all Israel came to David at Hebron and said, “Look, we are your **flesh and bone**.” (1 Chronicles 11:1 ULT)

This means, “We and you belong to the same race, the same family.”

the children of Israel went out **with a high hand**. (Exodus 14:8 ASV)

This means, "The Israelites went out defiantly."

the one who **lifts up my head** (Psalm 3:3 ULT)

This means, "the one who helps me."

Translation Strategies

If the idiom would be clearly understood in your language, consider using it. If not, here are some other options.

1. Translate the meaning plainly without using an idiom.
2. Use a different idiom that people use in your own language that has the same meaning.

Examples of Translation Strategies Applied

(1) Translate the meaning plainly without using an idiom.

Then all Israel came to David at Hebron and said, "Look, we are your flesh and bone."
(1 Chronicles 11:1 ULT)

...Look, we all **belong to the same nation**.

he resolutely set his face

to go to Jerusalem. (Luke 9:51 ULT)

He started to travel to Jerusalem, **determined to reach it**.

I am not worthy that you should enter under my roof

. (Luke 7:6 ULT)

I am not worthy that you should enter **my house**.

(2) Use an idiom that people use in your own language that has the same meaning.

Let these words go deeply into your ears

(Luke 9:44 ULT)

Be all ears when I say these words to you.

"My eyes grow dim

from grief (Psalm 6:7 ULT)

I am crying my **eyes out**

(Go back to: 1 Chronicles 8:29; 10:14; 11:1; 11:5; 11:23; 12:18; 12:22; 13:2; 13:6; 14:2; 14:10; 15:13; 15:16; 16:11; 16:15; 16:16; 17:2; 17:3; 17:8; 17:10; 17:17; 19:5; 21:8; 21:15; 22:16; 22:18; 26:26; 27:2; 27:6; 27:25; 27:28; 27:30; 28:1; 28:2; 28:8; 28:9; 28:19; 28:20; 29:6; 29:22)

Introduction of a New Event

Description

When people tell a story, they tell about an event or a series of events. Often they put certain information at the beginning of the story, such as who the story is about, when it happened, and where it happened. This information that the writer gives before the events of the story begin is called the setting of the story. Some new events in a story also have a setting because they might involve new people, new times, and new places. In some languages people also tell if they saw the event or heard about it from someone else.

When your people tell about events, what information do they give at the beginning? Is there a certain order that they put it in? In your translation, you will need to follow the way your language introduces new information at the beginning of a story or a new event rather than the way the source language did that. In this way your translation will sound natural and communicate clearly in your language.

This page answers the question: *How do we introduce a new event in a story?*

In order to understand this topic, it would be good to read:

[\[\[rc://en/ta/man/translate/writing-intro\]\]](#)

[\[\[rc://en/ta/man/translate/figs-events\]\]](#)

Examples from the Bible

In the days of Herod, king of Judea, ***there was a certain priest named Zechariah***, from the division of Abijah. ***His wife was*** from the daughters of Aaron, and her name was Elizabeth. (Luke 1:5 ULT)

The verses above introduce a story about Zechariah. The first underlined phrase tells when it happened, and the next two underlined phrases introduce the main people. The next two verses go on to explain that Zechariah and Elizabeth were old and did not have any children. All of this is the setting. Then the phrase “One day” in Luke 1:8 helps to introduce the first event in this story:

One day while Zechariah was performing his duties as a priest before God in the order of his division, the priests followed their custom and chose him by lot to enter the temple of the Lord and burn incense. (Luke 1:8-9 ULT)

The birth of Jesus Christ happened in the following way. His mother Mary was engaged to marry Joseph, but before they came together, she was found to be pregnant by the Holy Spirit. (Matthew 1:18 ULT)

The underlined sentence above makes it explicit that a story about Jesus is being introduced. The story will tell about how the birth of Jesus happened.

After Jesus was born in Bethlehem of Judea in the days of Herod the king, learned men from the east arrived in Jerusalem saying,... (Matthew 2:1 ULT)

The underlined phrase above shows that the events concerning the learned men happened ***after*** Jesus was born.

In those days John the Baptist came preaching in the wilderness of Judea saying,... (Matthew 3:1-22 ULT)

The underlined phrase above shows that John the Baptist came preaching around the time of the previous events. It is probably very general and refers to when Jesus lived in Nazareth.

Then Jesus came from Galilee to the Jordan River to be baptized by John. (Matthew 3:13 ULT)

The word “then” shows that Jesus came to the Jordan River some time after the events in the previous verses.

Now there was a ***Pharisee whose name was Nicodemus, a member of the Jewish Council***. This man came to Jesus at night time (John 3:1-2 ULT)

The author first introduced the new person and then told about what he did and when he did it. In some languages it might be more natural to tell about the time first.

⁶ Noah was six hundred years old when the flood came upon the earth. ⁷ Noah, his sons, his wife, and his sons' wives went into the ark together because of the waters of the flood.
(Genesis 7:6-7 ULT)

Verse 6 is a summary of the events that happen in the rest of chapter 7. Chapter 6 already told about how God told Noah that there would be a flood, and how Noah prepared for it. Chapter 7 verse 6 introduces the part of the story that tells about Noah and his family and the animals going into the ship, the rain starting, and the rain flooding the earth. Some languages might need to make it clear that this verse simply introduces the event, or move this verse after verse 7. Verse 6 is not one of the events of the story. The people went into the ship before the flood came.

Translation Strategies

If the information given at the beginning of a new event is clear and natural to your readers, consider translating it as it is in the ULT or UST. If not, consider one of these strategies.

1. Put the information that introduces the event in the order that your people put it.
2. If readers would expect certain information but it is not in the Bible, consider using an indefinite word or phrase to fill in that information, such as: "another time" or "someone."
3. If the introduction is a summary of the whole event, use your language's way of showing that it is a summary.
4. If it would be strange in the target language to give a summary of the event at the beginning, show that the event would actually happen later in the story.

Examples of Translation Strategies Applied

- (1) Put the information that introduces the event in the order that your people put it.

Now there was a Pharisee whose name was Nicodemus, a member of the Jewish Council

. This man came to Jesus at night time and said to him... (John 3:1,2)

There was a **man whose name was Nicodemus. He was a Pharisee and a member of the Jewish Council.** One night he came to Jesus and said...

One night **a man named Nicodemus, who was a Pharisee and a member of the Jewish Council,** came to Jesus and said...

As he passed by, he saw Levi the son of Alpheus, who was sitting

at the tax collecting place, and he said to him... (Mark 2:14 ULT)

As he passed by, **Levi the son of Alpheus was sitting** at the tax collecting place. Jesus saw him and said to him...

As he passed by, **there was a man sitting** at the tax collecting place. His name was Levi, and he was the son of Alpheus. Jesus saw him and said to him...

As he passed by, **there was a tax collector** sitting at the tax collecting place. His name was Levi, and he was the son of Alpheus. Jesus saw him and said to him...

- (2) If readers would expect certain information but it is not in the Bible, consider using an indefinite word or phrase such as: another time, someone.

Noah was six hundred years old when the flood came upon the earth. (Genesis 7:6 ULT) - If people expect to be told something about when the new event happened, the phrase "after that" can help them see that it happened after the events already mentioned.

After that, when Noah was six hundred years old, the flood came upon the earth.

Again he began

to teach beside the lake. (Mark 4:1 ULT) - In chapter 3 Jesus was teaching at someone's house. Readers may need to be told that this new event happened at another time, or that Jesus actually went to the lake.

Another time Jesus began to teach people again beside the lake.

Jesus went to the lake and **began to teach people again** there.

(3) If the introduction is a summary of the whole event, use your language's way of showing that it is a summary.

Noah was six hundred years old when the flood came upon the earth. (Genesis 7:6 ULT)

Now this is what happened when Noah was six hundred years old and the flood came upon the earth.

This part tells about what happened when the flood came upon the earth.
It happened when Noah was six hundred years old.

(4) If it would be strange in the target language to give a summary of the event at the beginning, show that the event will actually happen later in the story.

Noah was six hundred years old when the flood came upon the earth. Noah, his sons, his wife, and his sons' wives went into the ark together because of the waters of the flood.
(Genesis 7:6-7 ULT)

Now this is what happened when Noah was six hundred years old. Noah, his sons, his wife, and his sons' wives went into the ark together because **God had said that the waters of the flood would come.**

Next we recommend you learn about:

[Background Information](#)

[[rc://en/ta/man/translate/writing-participants]]

(Go back to: [1 Chronicles 17:1](#))

Merism

Definition

Merism is a figure of speech in which a person refers to something by speaking of two extreme parts of it. By referring to the extreme parts, the speaker intends to include also everything in between those parts.

"I am the Alpha and the Omega," says the Lord God, "the one who is, and who was, and who is to come, the Almighty." (Revelation 1:8, ULT)

I am the **Alpha and the Omega, the First and the Last, the Beginning and the End**. (Revelation 22:13, ULT)

This page answers the question: *What does the word merism mean and how can I translate phrases that have it?*

In order to understand this topic, it would be good to read:

[\[\[rc://en/ta/man/translate/figs-intro\]\]](#)

Alpha and Omega are the first and last letters of the Greek alphabet. This is a merism that includes everything from the beginning to the end. It means eternal.

I praise you, Father, Lord of **heaven and earth...**, (Matthew 11:25 ULT)

Heaven and earth is a merism that includes everything that exists.

Reason this is a translation issue

Some languages do not use merism. The readers of those languages may think that the phrase only applies to the items mentioned. They may not realize that it refers to those two things and everything in between.

Examples from the Bible

From the rising of the sun to its setting, Yahweh's name should be praised. (Psalm 113:3 ULT)

This underlined phrase is a merism because it speaks of the east and the west and everywhere in between. It means "everywhere".

He will bless those who honor him, both **young and old**. (Psalm 115:13)

The underlined phrase is merism because it speaks of, old people and young people and everyone in between. It means "everyone".

Translation Strategies

If the merism would be natural and give the right meaning in your language, consider using it. If not, here are other options:

1. Identify what the merism refers to without mentioning the parts.
2. Identify what the merism refers to and include the parts.

Examples of Translation Strategies Applied

(1) Identify what the merism refers to without mentioning the parts.

I praise you, Father, Lord of heaven and earth

... (Matthew 11:25 ULT)

I praise you, Father, Lord of **everything...**

From the rising of the sun to its setting

, Yahweh's name should be praised. (Psalm 113:3 ULT)

■ ***In all places***, people should praise Yahweh's name.

(2) Identify what the merism refers to and include the parts.

■ **I praise you, Father, Lord of** heaven and earth

. (Matthew 11:25 ULT)

■ I praise you, Father, Lord of ***everything, including both what is in heaven and what is on earth.***

He will bless those who honor him, both young and old

. (Psalm 115:13 ULT)

■ He will bless ***all those*** who honor him, regardless of whether they are ***young or old.***

(Go back to: [1 Chronicles 9:33](#); [16:36](#); [21:2](#); [25:8](#); [26:13](#))

Metaphor

Description

A **metaphor** is a figure of speech in which someone speaks of one thing as if it were a different thing because he wants people to think about how those two things are alike.

For example, someone might say:

- The girl I love is a red rose.

A girl and a rose are very different things, but the speaker considers that they are alike in some way. The hearer's task is to understand in what way they are alike.

The Parts of a Metaphor

The example above shows us that a metaphor has three parts. In this metaphor, the speaker is talking about "the girl I love". This is the **Topic**. The speaker wants the hearer to think about what is similar between her and "a red rose." The red rose is the **Image** to which he compares the girl. Most probably, he wants the hearer to consider that they are both *beautiful*. This is the **Idea** that the girl and the rose both share, and so we may also call it the **Point of Comparison**.

Every metaphor has three parts:

- The **Topic**, the item being immediately discussed by the writer/speaker.
- The **Image**, the physical item (object, event, action, etc.) which the speaker uses to describe the topic.
- The **Idea**, the abstract concept or quality that the physical **Image** brings to the mind of the hearer when he thinks of how the **Image** and the **Topic** are similar. Often, the **Idea** of a metaphor is not explicitly stated in the Bible, but it is only implied from the context. The hearer or reader usually needs to think of the **Idea** himself.

Using these terms, we can say that a **metaphor** is a figure of speech that uses a physical **Image** to apply an abstract **Idea** to the speaker's **Topic**.

Usually, a writer or speaker uses a metaphor in order to express something about a **Topic**, with at least one **Point of Comparison (Idea)** between the **Topic** and the **Image**. Often in metaphors, the **Topic** and the **Image** are explicitly stated, but the **Idea** is only implied. The writer/speaker often uses a metaphor in order to invite the readers/listeners to think about the similarity between the **Topic** and the **Image** and to figure out for themselves the **Idea** that is being communicated.

Speakers often use metaphors in order to strengthen their message, to make their language more vivid, to express their feelings better, to say something that is hard to say in any other way, or to help people remember their message.

Sometimes speakers use metaphors that are very common in their language. However, sometimes speakers use metaphors that are uncommon, and even some metaphors that are unique. When a metaphor has become very common in a language, often it becomes a "passive" metaphor, in contrast to uncommon metaphors, which we describe as being "active." Passive metaphors and active metaphors each present a different kind of translation problem, which we will discuss below.

Passive Metaphors

A passive metaphor is a metaphor that has been used so much in the language that its speakers no longer regard it as one concept standing for another. Linguists often call these "dead metaphors." Passive metaphors are extremely common. Examples in English include the terms "table **leg**", "family **tree**", "book **leaf**" (meaning a page in

This page answers the question: *What is a metaphor and how can I translate a Bible passage that has one?*

In order to understand this topic, it would be good to read:

[\[\[rc://en/ta/man/translate/figs-intro\]\]](#)

[Simile](#)

a book), or the word “crane” (meaning a large machine for lifting heavy loads). English speakers simply think of these words as having more than one meaning. Examples of passive metaphors in Biblical Hebrew include using the word “hand” to represent “power,” using the word “face” to represent “presence,” and speaking of emotions or moral qualities as if they were “clothing.”

Patterned Pairs of Concepts acting as Metaphors

Many ways of metaphorical speaking depend on pairs of concepts, where one underlying concept frequently stands for a different underlying concept. For example, in English, the direction UP (the Image) often represents the concepts of MORE or BETTER (the Idea). Because of this pair of underlying concepts, we can make sentences such as “The price of gasoline is going *up*,” “A *highly* intelligent man,” and also the opposite kind of idea: “The temperature is going *down*,” and “I am feeling very *low*.”

Patterned pairs of concepts are constantly used for metaphorical purposes in the world’s languages, because they serve as convenient ways to organize thought. In general, people like to speak of abstract qualities (such as power, presence, emotions, and moral qualities) as if they were body parts, or as if they were objects that could be seen or held, or as if they were events that could be watched as they happened.

When these metaphors are used in normal ways, it is rare that the speaker and audience regard them as figurative speech. Examples of metaphors in English that go unrecognized are:

- “Turn the heat *up*.” MORE is spoken of as UP.
- “Let us *go ahead* with our debate.” DOING WHAT WAS PLANNED is spoken of as WALKING or ADVANCING.
- “You *defend* your theory well.” ARGUMENT is spoken of as WAR.
- “A *flow* of words” WORDS are spoken of as LIQUIDS.

English speakers do not view these as metaphorical expressions or figures of speech, so it would be wrong to translate them into other languages in a way that would lead people to pay special attention to them as figurative speech. For a description of important patterns of this kind of metaphor in biblical languages, please see Biblical Imagery - Common Patterns and the pages it will direct you to.

When translating something that is a passive metaphor into another language, do not treat it as a metaphor. Instead, just use the best expression for that thing or concept in the target language.

Active Metaphors

These are metaphors that people recognize as one concept standing for another concept, or one thing for another thing. They make people think about how the one thing is like the other thing, because in most ways the two things are very different. People also easily recognize these metaphors as giving strength and unusual qualities to the message. For this reason, people pay attention to these metaphors. For example,

For you who fear my name, the sun of righteousness will rise with healing in its wings.
(Malachi 4:2 ULT)

Here God speaks about his salvation as if it were the sun rising in order to shine its rays on the people whom he loves. He also speaks of the sun’s rays as if they were wings. Also, he speaks of these wings as if they were bringing medicine that would heal his people. Here is another example:

Jesus said, “Go and tell that fox...,” (Luke 13:32 ULT)

Here, “that fox” refers to King Herod. The people listening to Jesus certainly understood that Jesus was intending for them to apply certain characteristics of a fox to Herod. They probably understood that Jesus intended to communicate that Herod was evil, either in a cunning way or as someone who was destructive, murderous, or who took things that did not belong to him, or all of these.

Active metaphors are the metaphors that need special care to translate correctly. To do so, you need to understand the parts of a metaphor and how they work together to produce meaning.

Jesus said to them, "I am the bread of life; he who comes to me will not be hungry, and he who believes in me will never be thirsty." (John 6:35 ULT)

In this metaphor, Jesus called himself the bread of life. The **Topic** is "I" (meaning Jesus himself) and the **Image** is "bread." Bread was the primary food that people ate in that place and time. The similarity between bread and Jesus is that people need both to live. Just as people need to eat food in order to have physical life, people need to trust in Jesus in order to have eternal life. The **Idea** of the metaphor is "life." In this case, Jesus stated the central Idea of the metaphor, but often the Idea is only implied.

Purposes of Metaphor

- One purpose of metaphor is to teach people about something that they do not know (the **Topic**) by showing that it is like something that they already do know (the **Image**).
- Another purpose is to emphasize that something (the **Topic**) has a particular quality (the **Idea**) or to show that it has that quality in an extreme way.
- Another purpose is to lead people to feel the same way about the **Topic** as they would feel about the **Image**.

Reasons this is a translation issue

- People may not recognize that something is a metaphor. In other words, they may mistake a metaphor for a literal statement, and thus misunderstand it.
- People may not be familiar with the thing that is used as an image, and so not be able to understand the metaphor.
- If the topic is not stated, people may not know what the topic is.
- People may not know the points of comparison that the speaker wants them to understand. If they fail to think of these points of comparison, they will not understand the metaphor.
- People may think that they understand the metaphor, but they do not. This can happen when they apply points of comparison from their own culture, rather than from the biblical culture.

Translation Principles

- Make the meaning of a metaphor as clear to the target audience as it was to the original audience.
- Do not make the meaning of a metaphor more clear to the target audience than you think it was to the original audience.

Examples from the Bible

Listen to this word, **you cows of Bashan**, (Amos 4:1 ULT)

In this metaphor Amos speaks to the upper-class women of Samaria ("you", the Topic) as if they were cows (the Image). Amos does not say what similarity(s) he intends between these women and cows. He wants the reader to think of them, and he fully expects that readers from his culture will easily do so. From the context, we can see that he means that the women are like cows in that they are fat and interested only in feeding themselves. If we were to apply similarities from a different culture, such as that cows are sacred and should be worshipped, we would get the wrong meaning from this verse.

NOTE: Amos does not actually mean that the women are cows. He speaks to them as human beings.

And yet, Yahweh, you are our father; **we are the clay**. **You are our potter**; and we all are the work of your hand. (Isaiah 64:8 ULT)

The example above has two related metaphors. The Topic(s) are "we" and "you," and the Image(s) are "clay" and "potter." The similarity between a potter and God is the fact that both make what they wish out of their material. The potter makes what he wishes out of the clay, and God makes what he wishes out of his people. The Idea being expressed by the comparison between the potter's clay and "us" is that **neither the clay nor God's people have a right to complain about what they are becoming**.

Jesus said to them, "Take heed and beware of **the yeast of the Pharisees and Sadducees**." The disciples reasoned among themselves and said, "It is because we took no bread." (Matthew 16:6-7 ULT)

Jesus used a metaphor here, but his disciples did not realize it. When he said "yeast," they thought he was talking about bread, but "yeast" was the Image in his metaphor, and the Topic was the teaching of the Pharisees and Sadducees. Since the disciples (the original audience) did not understand what Jesus meant, it would not be good to state clearly here what Jesus meant.

Translation Strategies

If people would understand the metaphor in the same way that the original readers would have understood it, go ahead and use it. Be sure to test the translation to make sure that people do understand it in the right way.

If people do not or would not understand it, here are some other strategies.

1. If the metaphor is a common expression in the source language or expresses a patterned pair of concepts in a biblical language (that is, it is a passive metaphor), then express the **Idea** in the simplest way preferred by your language.
2. If the metaphor seems to be an active metaphor, you can translate it literally **if you think that the target language also uses this metaphor in the same way to mean the same thing as in the Bible**. If you do this, be sure to test it to make sure that the language community understands it correctly.
3. If the target audience does not realize that it is a metaphor, then change the metaphor to a simile. Some languages do this by adding words such as "like" or "as." See [Simile](#).
4. If the target audience would not know the **Image**, see [Translate Unknowns](#) for ideas on how to translate that image.
5. If the target audience would not use that **Image** for that meaning, use an image from your own culture instead. Be sure that it is an image that could have been possible in Bible times.
6. If the target audience would not know what the **Topic** is, then state the topic clearly. (However, do not do this if the original audience did not know what the Topic was.)
7. If the target audience would not know the intended similarity (the **Idea**) between the topic and the image, then state it clearly.
8. If none of these strategies is satisfactory, then simply state the **Idea** plainly without using a metaphor.

Examples of Translation Strategies Applied

(1) If the metaphor is a common expression in the source language or expresses a patterned pair of concepts in a biblical language (that is, a passive metaphor), then express the Idea in the simplest way preferred by your language.

Then one of the leaders of the synagogue, named Jairus, came, and when he saw him, fell at his feet

. (Mark 5:22 ULT)

Then one of the leaders of the synagogue, named Jairus, came, and when he saw him, **immediately bowed down in front of him**.

(2) If the metaphor seems to be an active metaphor, you can translate it literally **if you think that the target language also uses this metaphor in the same way to mean the same thing as in the Bible**. If you do this, be sure to test it to make sure that the language community understands it correctly.

It was because of your hard hearts

that he wrote you this law, (Mark 10:5 ULT)

It was because of your **hard hearts** that he wrote you this law,

We made no change to this one, but it must be tested to make sure that the target audience correctly understands this metaphor.

(3) If the target audience does not realize that it is a metaphor, then change the metaphor to a simile. Some languages do this by adding words such as “like” or “as.”

■ **And yet, Yahweh, you are our father; we are the clay**

. You are our potter; and we all are the work of your hand. (Isaiah 64:8 ULT)

■ And yet, Yahweh, you are our father; we are **like** clay. You are **like** a potter; and we all are the work of your hand.

(4) If the target audience would not know the **Image**, see [Translate Unknowns](#) for ideas on how to translate that image.

■ **Saul, Saul, why do you persecute me? It is hard for you** to kick a goad

. (Acts 26:14 ULT)

■ Saul, Saul, why do you persecute me? It is hard for you to **kick against a pointed stick**.

(5) If the target audience would not use that **Image** for that meaning, use an image from your own culture instead. Be sure that it is an image that could have been possible in Bible times.

■ **And yet, Yahweh, you are our father; we are the clay**

. You are our potter; and we all are the work of your hand. (Isaiah 64:8 ULT)

■ “And yet, Yahweh, you are our father; we are the **wood**. You are our **carver**; and we all are the work of your hand.”

■ “And yet, Yahweh, you are our father; we are the **string**. You are the **weaver**; and we all are the work of your hand.”

(6) If the target audience would not know what the **Topic** is, then state the topic clearly. (However, do not do this if the original audience did not know what the topic was.)

■ **Yahweh lives; may** my rock

be praised. May the God of my salvation be exalted. (Psalm 18:46 ULT)

■ Yahweh lives; **He is my rock**. May he be praised. May the God of my salvation be exalted.

(7) If the target audience would not know the intended similarity between the Topic and the Image, then state it clearly.

■ **Yahweh lives; may** my rock

be praised. May the God of my salvation be exalted. (Psalm 18:46 ULT)

■ Yahweh lives; may he be praised because he is the rock **under which I can hide from my enemies**. May the God of my salvation be exalted.

Saul, Saul, why do you persecute me? It is hard for you to kick a goad

. (Acts 26:14 ULT)

■ Saul, Saul, why do you persecute me? You **fight against me and hurt yourself like an ox that kicks against its owner's pointed stick**.

(8) If none of these strategies are satisfactory, then simply state the idea plainly without using a metaphor.

I will make you become fishers of men

. (Mark 1:17 ULT)

I will make you become **people who gather men**.
Now you gather fish. I will make you **gather people**.

To learn more about specific metaphors, see Biblical Imagery - Common Patterns.

(Go back to: [Introduction to 1 Chronicles](#); [1 Chronicles 2:3](#); [10:9](#); [11:2](#); [11:19](#); [12:18](#); [12:23](#); [13:4](#); [13:10](#); [14:15](#); [17:6](#); [17:8](#); [17:9](#); [17:11](#); [17:17](#); [19:6](#); [19:13](#); [21:17](#); [22:10](#); [22:19](#); [24:4](#); [25:5](#); [28:2](#); [28:6](#); [28:9](#); [29:12](#); [29:15](#))

Metonymy

Description

Metonymy is a figure of speech in which an item (either physical or abstract) is called not by its own name, but by the name of something closely associated with it. A **metonym** is a word or phrase used as a substitute for something that it is associated with.

This page answers the question: *What is a metonymy?*

In order to understand this topic, it would be good to read:

[[rc://en/ta/man/translate/figs-intro]]

and **the blood** of Jesus his Son cleanses us from all sin. (1 John 1:7 ULT)

The blood represents Christ's death.

He took **the cup** in the same way after supper, saying, "**This cup** is the new covenant in my blood, which is poured out for you. (Luke 22:20 ULT)

The cup represents the wine that is in the cup.

Metonymy can be used

- as a shorter way of referring to something
- to make an abstract idea more meaningful by referring to it with the name of a physical object associated with it

Reason this is a translation issue

The Bible uses metonymy very often. Speakers of some languages are not used to metonymy and they may not recognize it when they read it in the Bible. If they do not recognize the metonymy, they will not understand the passage or, worse yet, they will get a wrong understanding of the passage. Whenever a metonym is used, people need to be able to understand what it represents.

Examples from the Bible

The Lord God will give him **the throne** of his father, David. (Luke 1:32 ULT)

A throne represents the authority of a king. "Throne" is a metonym for "kingly authority," "kingship," or "reign." This means that God would make him become a king who would follow King David.

Immediately his **mouth** was opened (Luke 1:64 ULT)

The mouth here represents the power to speak. This means that he was able to talk again.

...who warned you to flee from **the wrath** that is coming? (Luke 3:7 ULT)

The word "wrath" or "anger" is a metonym for "punishment." God was extremely angry with the people, and as a result, he would punish them.

Translation Strategies

If people would easily understand the metonym, consider using it. Otherwise, here are some options.

1. Use the metonym along with the name of the thing it represents.
2. Use only the name of the thing the metonym represents.

Examples of Translation Strategies Applied

(1) Use the metonym along with the name of the thing it represents.

He took the cup in the same way after supper, saying, "***This cup*** is the new covenant in my blood, which is poured out for you. (Luke 22:20 ULT)

"He took the cup in the same way after supper, saying, "***The wine in this cup*** is the new covenant in my blood, which is poured out for you."

(2) Use the name of the thing the metonym represents.

The Lord God will give him ***the throne*** of his father, David. (Luke 1:32 ULT)

"The Lord God will give him ***the kingly authority*** of his father, David."

or:

"The Lord God will ***make him king*** like his ancestor, King David."

who warned you to flee from ***the wrath*** to come? (Luke 3:7 ULT)

"who warned you to flee from God's coming ***punishment?***"

To learn about some common metonymies, see Biblical Imagery - Common Metonymies.

(Go back to: [1 Chronicles 2:3](#); [4:10](#); [4:38](#); [5:1](#); [5:18](#); [6:10](#); [6:39](#); [9:19](#); [10:4](#); [10:5](#); [10:11](#); [11:4](#); [11:8](#); [13:14](#); [14:11](#); [15:1](#); [15:13](#); [15:29](#); [16:2](#); [16:3](#); [16:8](#); [16:10](#); [16:12](#); [16:14](#); [16:15](#); [16:23](#); [16:29](#); [16:30](#); [16:31](#); [16:35](#); [17:2](#); [17:7](#); [17:8](#); [17:10](#); [17:12](#); [17:14](#); [17:15](#); [17:21](#); [17:24](#); [17:25](#); [18:3](#); [19:4](#); [19:16](#); [20:1](#); [20:3](#); [21:5](#); [21:12](#); [21:13](#); [21:14](#); [21:15](#); [21:17](#); [21:19](#); [21:23](#); [21:30](#); [22:5](#); [22:6](#); [22:7](#); [22:8](#); [22:10](#); [22:11](#); [22:18](#); [22:19](#); [23:13](#); [27:23](#); [27:24](#); [28:3](#); [28:4](#); [28:5](#); [28:9](#); [29:13](#); [29:17](#); [29:18](#); [29:21](#); [29:23](#))

Nominal Adjectives

Description

In some languages an adjective can be used to refer to a class of things that the adjective describes. When it does, it acts like a noun. For example, the word “rich” is an adjective. Here are two sentences that show that “rich” is an adjective.

...**The rich man** had huge numbers of flocks and herds...(2 Samuel 12:2 ULT)

The adjective “rich” comes before the word “man” and describes “man”.

He will not be rich; his wealth will not last... (Job 15:29 ULT)

The adjective “rich” comes after the verb “be” and describes “He”.

Here is a sentence that shows that “rich” can also function as a noun.

...**the rich** must not give more than the half shekel, and **the poor** must not give less. (Exodus 30:15 ULT)

In Exodus 30:15, the word “rich” acts as a noun in the phrase “the rich”, and it refers to rich people. The word “poor” also acts as a noun and refers to poor people.

Reason this is a translation issue

- Many times in the Bible adjectives are used as nouns to describe a group of people.
- Some languages do not use adjectives in this way.
- Readers of these languages may think that the text is talking about one particular person when it is really talking about the group of people whom the adjective describes.

Examples from the Bible

The scepter of wickedness must not rule in the land of **the righteous**. (Psalms 125:3 ULT)

“The righteous” here are people who are righteous, not one particular righteous person.

Blessed are **the meek** (Matthew 5:5 ULT)

“The meek” here are all people who are meek, not one particular meek person.

Translation Strategies

If your language uses adjectives as nouns to refer to a class of people, consider using the adjectives in this way. If it would sound strange, or if the meaning would be unclear or wrong, here is another option:

1. Use the adjective with a plural form of the noun that the adjective describes.

Examples of Translation Strategies Applied

(1) Use the adjective with a plural form of the noun that the adjective describes.

The scepter of wickedness must not rule in the land of the righteous

. (Psalms 125:3 ULT)

This page answers the question: *How do I translate adjectives that act like nouns?*

In order to understand this topic, it would be good to read:

[[rc://en/ta/man/translate/figs-partsofspeech]]

█ The scepter of wickedness must not rule in the land of **righteous people**.

Blessed are the meek

... (Matthew 5:5 ULT)

█ Blessed are **people who are meek**...

(Go back to: [1 Chronicles 10:4](#))

Numbers

Description

There are many numbers in the Bible. They can be written as words ("five") or as numerals ("5"). Some numbers are very large, such as "two hundred" (200), "twenty-two thousand" (22,000), or "one hundred million" (100,000,000). Some languages do not have words for all of these numbers. Translators need to decide how to translate numbers and whether to write them as words or numerals.

This page answers the question: *How do I translate numbers?*

In order to understand this topic, it would be good to read:

[Translate Unknowns](#)

Some numbers are exact and others are rounded.

Abram was **eighty-six** years old when Hagar bore Ishmael to Abram. (Genesis 16:16 ULT)

Eighty-six (86) is an exact number.

That day about **three thousand** men out of the people died. (Exodus 32:28 ULT)

Here the number three thousand is a round number. It may have been a little more than that or a little less than that. The word "about" shows that it is not an exact number.

Reason this is a translation issue

Some languages do not have words for some of these numbers.

Translation Principles

- Exact numbers should be translated as closely and specifically as they can be.
- Rounded numbers can be translated more generally.

Examples from the Bible

When Jared had lived **162** years, he became the father of Enoch. After he became the father of Enoch, Jared lived **eight hundred** years. He became the father of more sons and daughters. Jared lived **962** years, and then he died. (Genesis 5:18-20 ULT)

The numbers 162, eight hundred, and 962 are exact numbers and should be translated with something as close to those numbers as possible.

Our sister, may you be the mother of **thousands of ten thousands** (Genesis 24:60 ULT)

This is a rounded number. It does not say exactly how many descendants she should have, but it was a huge number of them.

Translation Strategies

1. Write numbers using numerals.
2. Write numbers using your language's words or the gateway language words for those numbers.
3. Write numbers using words, and put the numerals in parentheses after them.
4. Combine words for large numbers.
5. Use a very general expression for very large rounded numbers and write the numeral in parentheses afterward.

Examples of Translation Strategies Applied

We will use the following verse in our examples:

Now, see, at great effort I have prepared for Yahweh's house **100,000** talents of gold, **one million** talents of silver, and bronze and iron in large quantities. (1 Chronicles 22:14 ULT)

(1) Write numbers using numerals.

I have prepared for Yahweh's house **100,000** talents of gold, **1,000,000** talents of silver, and bronze and iron in large quantities.

(2) Write numbers using your language's words or the gateway language words for those numbers.

I have prepared for Yahweh's house **one hundred thousand** talents of gold, **one million** talents of silver, and bronze and iron in large quantities.

(3) Write numbers using words, and put the numerals in parenthesis after them.

I have prepared for Yahweh's house one **hundred thousand (100,000)** talents of gold, **one million (1,000,000)** talents of silver, and bronze and iron in large quantities.

(4) Combine words for large numbers.

I have prepared for Yahweh's house **one hundred thousand** talents of gold, **a thousand thousand** talents of silver, and bronze and iron in large quantities.

(5) Use a very general expression for very large rounded numbers and write the numeral in parentheses afterward.

I have prepared for Yahweh's house **a great amount of gold (100,000 talents), ten times that amount of silver (1,000,000 talents)**, and bronze and iron in large quantities.

Consistency

Be consistent in your translations. Decide how the numbers will be translated, using numbers or numerals. There are different ways of being consistent.

- Use words to represent numbers all of the time. (You might have very long words.)
- Use numerals to represent numbers all of the time.
- Use words to represent the numbers that your language has words for and use numerals for the numbers that your language does not have words for.
- Use words for low numbers and numerals for high numbers.
- Use words for numbers that require few words and numerals for numbers that require more than a few words.
- Use words to represent numbers, and write the numerals in parentheses after them.

Consistency in the ULT and UST

The *unfoldingWord® Literal Text* (ULT) and the *unfoldingWord® Simplified Text* (UST) use words for numbers that have only one or two words (nine, sixteen, three hundred). They use numerals for numbers that have more than two words (the numerals "130" instead of "one hundred thirty").

When Adam had lived **130** years, he became the father of a son in his own likeness, after his image, and he called his name Seth. After Adam became the father of Seth, he lived **eight hundred** years. He became the father of more sons and daughters. Adam lived **930** years, and then he died. (Genesis 5:3-5 ULT)

Next we recommend you learn about:

[Ordinal Numbers](#)

[[rc://en/ta/man/translate/translate-fraction]]

(Go back to: 1 Chronicles 2:4; 3:4; 4:27; 4:42; 5:18; 5:21; 6:62; 7:2; 7:4; 7:5; 7:7; 7:9; 7:11; 7:40; 8:40; 9:6; 9:9; 9:13; 9:22; 9:25; 10:6; 10:12; 11:15; 11:18; 11:20; 11:42; 12:4; 12:14; 12:18; 12:20; 12:23; 12:24; 12:25; 12:26; 12:27; 12:28; 12:29; 12:30; 12:31; 12:32; 12:33; 12:34; 12:35; 12:36; 12:37; 12:39; 13:1; 13:14; 15:4; 15:5; 15:6; 15:7; 15:8; 15:9; 15:10; 15:25; 16:15; 16:38; 18:4; 18:5; 18:12; 19:6; 19:7; 19:18; 21:5; 21:14; 21:25; 22:14; 23:3; 23:4; 23:24; 23:27; 24:4; 25:5; 25:7; 25:9; 25:10; 25:11; 25:12; 25:13; 25:14; 25:15; 25:16; 25:17; 25:18; 25:19; 25:20; 25:21; 25:22; 25:23; 25:24; 25:25; 25:26; 25:27; 25:28; 25:29; 25:30; 25:31; 26:8; 26:9; 26:11; 26:17; 26:26; 26:30; 26:31; 26:32; 27:1; 27:2; 27:4; 27:5; 27:6; 27:7; 27:8; 27:9; 27:10; 27:11; 27:12; 27:13; 27:14; 27:15; 27:23; 28:1; 29:4; 29:6; 29:7; 29:21; 29:27)

Ordinal Numbers

Description

Ordinal numbers are used in the Bible mainly to tell the position of something in a list.

He gave to the church **first** apostles, **second** prophets, **third** teachers, then those who do powerful deeds (1 Corinthians 12:28 ULT)

This page answers the question: *What are ordinal numbers and how can I translate them?*

In order to understand this topic, it would be good to read:

[Numbers](#)

This is a list of workers that God gave to the church in their order.

Ordinal Numbers in English

Most ordinal numbers in English simply have “-th” added to the end.

Numeral	Number	Ordinal Number
4	four	fourth
10	ten	tenth
100	one hundred	one hundredth
1,000	one thousand	one thousandth

Some ordinal numbers in English do not follow that pattern.

Numeral	Number	Ordinal Number
1	one	first
2	two	second
3	three	third
5	five	fifth
12	twelve	twelfth

Reason this is a translation issue:

Some languages do not have special numbers for showing the order of items in a list. There are different ways to deal with this.

Examples from the Bible

The **first** lot went to Jehoiarib, the **second** to Jedaiah, the **third** to Harim, the **fourth** to Seorim, ... the **twenty-third** to Delaiah, and the **twenty-fourth** to Maaziah. (1 Chronicles 24:7-18 ULT)

The people cast lots and one went to each of these people in the order given.

You must place in it four rows of precious stones. The **first** row must have a ruby, a topaz, and a garnet. The **second** row must have an emerald, a sapphire, and a diamond. The **third** row

must have a jacinth, an agate, and an amethyst. The **fourth** row must have a beryl, and an onyx, and a jasper. They must be mounted in gold settings. (Exodus 28:17-20 ULT)

This describes four rows of stones. The first row is probably the top row, and the fourth row is probably the bottom row.

Translation Strategies

If your language has ordinal numbers and using them would give the right meaning, consider using them. If not, here are some strategies to consider:

1. Use “one” with the first item and “another” or “the next” with the rest.
2. Tell the total number of items and then list them or the things associated with them.

Examples of Translation Strategies Applied

- (1) Tell the total number of items, and use “one” with the first item and “another” or “the next” with the rest.

The first lot went to Jehoiarib, the second to Jedaiah, the third to Harim, the fourth to Seorim,...the twenty-third to Delaiah, and the twenty-fourth to Maaziah. (1 Chronicles 24:7-18 ULT)

There were **twenty-four** lots. **One lot** went to Jehoiarib, **another** to Jedaiah, **another** to Harim,...**another** to Delaiah, **and the last** went to Maaziah.
There were **twenty-four** lots. **One lot** went to Jehoiarib, **the next** to Jedaiah, **the next** to Harim,...**the next** to Delaiah, **and the last** went to Maaziah.

A river went out of Eden to water the garden. From there it divided and became four

rivers. The name of the first is Pishon. It is the one which flows throughout the whole land of Havilah, where there is gold. The gold of that land is good. There is also bdellium and the onyx stone there. The name of the second river is Gihon. This one flows throughout the whole land of Cush. The name of the third river is Tigris, which flows east of Asshur. The fourth river is the Euphrates. (Genesis 2:10-14 ULT)

A river went out of Eden to water the garden. From there it divided and became **four** rivers. The name of **one** is Pishon. It is the one which flows throughout the whole land of Havilah, where there is gold. The gold of that land is good. There is also bdellium and the onyx stone there. The name of **the next** river is Gihon. This one flows throughout the whole land of Cush. The name of **the next** river is Tigris, which flows east of Asshur. The **last** river is the Euphrates.

- (2) Tell the total number of items and then list them or the things associated with them.

The first lot went to Jehoiarib, the second to Jedaiah, the third to Harim, the fourth to Seorim,...the twenty-third to Delaiah, and the twenty-fourth to Maaziah. (1 Chronicles 24:7-18 ULT)

They cast **twenty-four** lots. The lots went to Jerhoiarib, Jedaiah, Harim, Seorim,...Delaiah, and Maaziah.

Next we recommend you learn about:

[[rc://en/ta/man/translate/translate-fraction]]

(Go back to: [1 Chronicles 2:13](#); [2:14](#); [2:15](#); [8:39](#); [12:9](#); [12:10](#); [12:15](#); [15:18](#); [16:5](#); [23:11](#); [23:19](#); [23:20](#); [24:7](#); [24:8](#); [24:9](#); [24:10](#); [24:11](#); [24:12](#); [24:13](#); [24:14](#); [24:15](#); [24:16](#); [24:17](#); [24:18](#); [24:23](#); [25:9](#); [25:10](#); [25:11](#); [25:12](#); [25:13](#); [25:14](#); [25:15](#);

25:16; 25:17; 25:18; 25:19; 25:20; 25:21; 25:22; 25:23; 25:24; 25:25; 25:26; 25:27; 25:28; 25:29; 25:30; 25:31; 26:2;
26:3; 26:4; 26:5; 26:11; 26:31; 27:2; 27:4; 27:5; 27:7; 27:8; 27:9; 27:10; 27:11; 27:12; 27:13; 27:14; 27:15)

Parallelism

Description

In **parallelism** two phrases or clauses that are similar in structure or idea are used together. There are different kinds of parallelism. Some of them are the following:

1. The second clause or phrase means the same as the first.
This is also called synonymous parallelism.
2. The second clarifies or strengthens the meaning of the first.
3. The second completes what is said in the first.
4. The second says something that contrasts with the first, but adds to the same idea.

Parallelism is most commonly found in Old Testament poetry, such as in the books of Psalms and Proverbs. It also occurs in Greek in the New Testament, both in the four gospels and in the apostles' letters.

Synonymous parallelism (the kind in which the two phrases mean the same thing) in the poetry of the original languages has several effects:

- It shows that something is very important by saying it more than once and in more than one way.
- It helps the hearer to think more deeply about the idea by saying it in different ways.
- It makes the language more beautiful and above the ordinary way of speaking.

Reason this is a translation issue

Some languages would not use synonymous parallelism. They would either think it odd that someone said the same thing twice, or they would think that the two phrases must have some difference in meaning. For them it is confusing, rather than beautiful.

Note: We use the term "synonymous parallelism" for long phrases or clauses that have the same meaning. We use the term **Doublet** for words or very short phrases that mean basically the same thing and are used together.

Examples from the Bible

(1) The second clause or phrase means the same as the first.

Your word is a lamp to my feet
and a light for my path. (Psalm 119:105 ULT)

Both parts of the sentence are metaphors saying that God's word teaches people how to live.

You make him to rule over the works of your hands;
you have put all things under his feet (Psalm 8:6 ULT)

Both lines say that God made man the ruler of everything.

(2) The second clarifies or strengthens the meaning of the first.

The eyes of Yahweh are everywhere,
keeping watch over the evil and the good. (Proverbs 15:3 ULT)

The second line tells more specifically what Yahweh watches.

(3) The second completes what is said in the first.

This page answers the question: *What is parallelism?*

In order to understand this topic, it would be good to read:

[[rc://en/ta/man/translate/figs-intro]]

I lift up my voice to Yahweh,
and he answers me from his holy hill. (Psalm 3:4 ULT)

The second line tells what Yahweh does in response to what the person does in the first clause.

(4) The second says something that contrasts with the first, but adds to the same idea.

For Yahweh approves of the way of the righteous,
but the way of the wicked will perish. (Psalm 1:6 ULT)

This contrasts what happens to righteous people with what happens to wicked people.

A gentle answer turns away wrath,
but a harsh word stirs up anger. (Proverbs 15:1 ULT)

This contrasts what happens when someone gives a gentle answer with what happens when someone says something harsh.

Translation Strategies

For most kinds of parallelism, it is good to translate both of the clauses or phrases. For synonymous parallelism, it is good to translate both clauses if people in your language understand that the purpose of saying something twice is to strengthen a single idea. But if your language does not use parallelism in this way, then consider using one of the following translation strategies.

1. Combine the ideas of both clauses into one.
2. If it appears that the clauses are used together to show that what they say is really true, you could include words that emphasize the truth such as “truly” or “certainly.”
3. If it appears that the clauses are used together to intensify an idea in them, you could use words like “very,” “completely” or “all.”

Examples of Translation Strategies Applied

- (1) Combine the ideas of both clauses into one.

Until now you have deceived me and told me lies. (Judges 16:13, ULT) - Delilah expressed this idea twice to emphasize that she was very upset.

“Until now you have deceived me with your lies.”

Yahweh sees everything a person does and watches all the paths he takes. (Proverbs 5:21 ULT) - The phrase “all the paths he takes” is a metaphor for “all he does.”

“Yahweh pays attention to everything a person does.”

For Yahweh has a lawsuit with his people, and he will fight in court against Israel. (Micah 6:2 ULT) - This parallelism describes one serious disagreement that Yahweh had with one group of people. If this is unclear, the phrases can be combined:

“For Yahweh has a lawsuit with his people, Israel.”

- (2) If it appears that the clauses are used together to show that what they say is really true, you could include words that emphasize the truth such as “truly” or “certainly.”

Yahweh sees everything a person does and watches all the paths he takes. (Proverbs 5:21 ULT)

“Yahweh truly sees everything a person does.”

(3) If it appears that the clauses are used together to intensify an idea in them, you could use words like “very,” “completely” or “all.”

you have deceived me and told me lies. (Judges 16:13 ULT)

“All you have done is lie to me.”

Yahweh sees everything a person does and watches all the paths he takes. (Proverbs 5:21 ULT)

“Yahweh sees absolutely everything that a person does.”

Next we recommend you learn about:

[Personification](#)

(Go back to: [1 Chronicles 11:2](#); [12:18](#); [16:13](#); [16:15](#); [16:16](#); [16:20](#); [16:23](#); [17:11](#); [17:14](#); [17:18](#); [17:20](#); [17:27](#); [22:13](#); [28:2](#); [28:3](#); [28:8](#); [28:9](#); [28:20](#); [29:25](#))

Personification

Description

Personification is a figure of speech in which someone speaks of something as if it could do things that animals or people can do. People often do this because it makes it easier to talk about things that we cannot see:

Such as wisdom:

Does not Wisdom call out? (Proverbs 8:1 ULT)

Or sin:

sin crouches at the door (Genesis 4:7 ULT)

People also do this because it is sometimes easier to talk about people's relationships with non-human things, such as wealth, as if they were relationships between people.

You cannot serve God and wealth. (Matthew 6:24 ULT)

In each case, the purpose of the personification is to highlight a certain characteristic of the non-human thing. As in metaphor, the reader needs to think of the way that the thing is like a certain kind of person.

Reasons this is a translation issue

- Some languages do not use personification.
- Some languages use personification only in certain situations.

Examples from the Bible

You cannot serve God and wealth. (Matthew 6:24 ULT)

Jesus speaks of wealth as if it were a master whom people might serve. Loving money and basing one's decisions on it is like serving it as a slave would serve his master.

Does not Wisdom call out? Does not Understanding raise her voice? (Proverbs 8:1 ULT)

The author speaks of wisdom and understanding as if they are a woman who calls out to teach people. This means that they are not something hidden, but something obvious that people should pay attention to.

Translation Strategies

If the personification would be understood clearly, consider using it. If it would not be understood, here are some other ways for translating it.

1. Add words or phrases to make the human (or animal) characteristic clear.
2. In addition to Strategy (1), use words such as "like" or "as" to show that the sentence is not to be understood literally.
3. Find a way to translate it without the personification.

Examples of Translation Strategies Applied

(1) Add words or phrases to make the human (or animal) characteristic clear.

...sin crouches

This page answers the question: *What is personification?*

In order to understand this topic, it would be good to read:

[[rc://en/ta/man/translate/figs-intro]]

at the door (Genesis 4:7 ULT) - God speaks of sin as if it were a wild animal that is waiting for the chance to attack. This shows how dangerous sin is. An additional phrase can be added to make this danger clear.

...**sin** is at your door, **waiting to attack you**

(2) In addition to Strategy (1), use words such as “like” or “as” to show that the sentence is not to be understood literally.

...**sin crouches at the door** (Genesis 4:7 ULT) - This can be translated with the word “as.”

...sin is crouching at the door, **just as a wild animal does waiting to attack a person**.

(3) Find a way to translate it without the personification.

...**even the** winds and the sea obey him

(Matthew 8:27 ULT) - The men speak of the “wind and the sea” as if they are able to hear and obey Jesus, just as people can. This could also be translated without the idea of obedience by speaking of Jesus controlling them.

He even **controls the winds and the sea**.

NOTE: We have broadened our definition of “personification” to include “zoomorphism” (speaking of other things as if they had animal characteristics) and “anthropomorphism” (speaking of non-human things as if they had human characteristics) because the translation strategies for them are the same.

Next we recommend you learn about:

[[rc://en/ta/man/translate/figs-apostrophe]]
[[rc://en/ta/man/translate/bita-part1]]

(Go back to: [1 Chronicles 14:17](#); [16:27](#); [16:31](#); [16:32](#); [16:33](#))

Poetry

Description

Poetry is one of the ways that people use the words and sounds of their language to make their speech and writing more beautiful and to express strong emotion. Through poetry, people can communicate deeper emotion than they can through simple non-poetic forms. Poetry gives more weight and elegance to statements of truth, such as proverbs, and is also easier to remember than ordinary speech.

This page answers the question: *What is poetry and how do I translate it into my language?*

In order to understand this topic, it would be good to read:

[[rc://en/ta/man/translate/figs-intro]]

[[rc://en/ta/man/translate/writing-intro]]

Some things commonly found in poetry

- Many figures of speech such as Apostrophe
- Parallel lines (See [Parallelism](#) and Parallelism with the Same Meaning.)
- Repetition of some or all of a line

Praise him, all his angels; praise him, all his angel armies. Praise him, sun and moon; praise him, all you shining stars. (Psalm 148:2-3 ULT)

- Lines of similar length.

Love is patient and kind; love does not envy or boast; it is not arrogant or rude. (1 Corinthians 13:4 ULT)

- The same sound used at the end or at the beginning of two or more lines

“Twinkle, twinkle little **star**. How I wonder what you **are**.” (from an English rhyme)

- The same sound repeated many times > “Peter, Peter, pumpkin eater” (from an English rhyme)
- Old words and expressions
- Dramatic imagery
- Different use of grammar - including:
 - incomplete sentences
 - lack of connective words

Some places to look for poetry in your language

1. Songs, particularly old songs or songs used in children's games
2. Religious ceremony or chants of priests or witch doctors
3. Prayers, blessings, and curses
4. Old legends

Elegant or fancy speech

Elegant or fancy speech is similar to poetry in that it uses beautiful language, but it does not use all of the language's features of poetry, and it does not use them as much as poetry does. Popular speakers in the language often use elegant speech, and this is probably the easiest source of text to study to find out what makes speech elegant in your language.

Reasons this is a translation issue:

- Different languages use poetry for different things. If a poetic form would not communicate the same meaning in your language you may need to write it without the poetry.

- In some languages, using poetry for a particular part of the Bible would make it much more powerful.

Examples from the Bible

The Bible uses poetry for songs, teaching, and prophecy. Almost all of the books of the Old Testament have poetry in them and many of the books are completely poetry.

for you saw my affliction;
you knew the distress of my soul. (Psalm 31:7 ULT)

This example of Parallelism with the Same Meaning has two lines that mean the same thing.

Yahweh, judge the nations;
vindicate me, Yahweh, because I am righteous and innocent, Most High.

This example of parallelism shows the contrast between what David wants God to do to him and what he wants God to do to the unrighteous nations. (See [Parallelism](#).)

Keep your servant also from arrogant sins;
let them not rule over me. (Psalm 19:13 ULT)

This example of personification speaks of sins as if they could rule over a person. (See [Personification](#).)

Oh, give thanks to Yahweh; for he is good, for his covenant faithfulness endures forever.
Oh, give thanks to the God of gods, for his covenant faithfulness endures forever.
Oh, give thanks to the Lord of lords, for his covenant faithfulness endures forever. (Psalm 136:1-3 ULT)

This example repeats the phrases “give thanks” and “his covenant faithfulness endures forever.”

Translation Strategies

If the style of poetry that is used in the source text would be natural and give the right meaning in your language, consider using it. If not, here are some other ways of translating it.

1. Translate the poetry using one of your styles of poetry.
2. Translate the poetry using your style of elegant speech.
3. Translate the poetry using your style of ordinary speech.

If you use poetry it may be more beautiful.

If you use ordinary speech it may be more clear.

Examples of Translation Strategies Applied

**Blessed is the man who does not walk in the advice of the wicked,
or stand in the pathway with sinners,
or sit in the assembly of mockers.
But his delight is in the law of Yahweh,
and on his law he meditates day and night.** (Psalm 1:1,2 ULT)

The following are examples of how people might translate Psalm 1:1,2.

(1) Translate the poetry using one of your styles of poetry. (The style in this example has words that sound similar at the end of each line.)

“Happy is the person not encouraged *to sin*
Disrespect for God he will not *begin*
To those who laugh at God, he is *no kin*.

God is his constant **delight**
 He does what God says **is right**
 He thinks of it all day **and night**

(2) Translate the poetry using your style of elegant speech.

This is the kind of person who is truly blessed: the one who does not follow the advice of wicked people, or stop along the road to speak with sinners, or join the gathering of those who mock God. Rather he takes great joy in Yahweh's law, and he meditates on it day and night.

(3) Translate the poetry using your style of ordinary speech.

The people who do not listen to the advice of bad people are really happy. They do not spend time with people who continually do evil things or with those who do not respect God. They love to obey Yahweh's law, and they think about it all the time.

Next we recommend you learn about:

[Symbolic Language](#)

(Go back to: [1 Chronicles 16:23](#))

Quotes within Quotes

Description

A quotation may have a quote within it, and quotes that are inside of other quotes can also have quotes within them. When a quote has quotes within it, we say there are "layers" of quotation, and each of the quotes is a layer. When there are many layers of quotes inside of quotes, it can be hard for listeners and readers to know who is saying what. Some languages use a combination of direct quotes and indirect quotes to make it easier.

This page answers the question: *What is a quote within a quote, and how can I help the readers understand who is saying what?*

In order to understand this topic, it would be good to read:

[Direct and Indirect Quotations](#)

Reasons this is a translation issue

1. When there is a quote within a quote, the listener needs to know who the pronouns refer to. For example: if a quote that is inside a quote has the word "I", the listener needs to know whether "I" refers to the speaker of the inner quote or the outer quote.
2. Some languages make this clear by using different kinds of quotes when there are quotes within quotes. They may use direct quotes for some and indirect quotes for others.
3. Some languages do not use indirect quotes.

Examples from the Bible

A quotation with only one layer

But Paul said, "I was born a Roman citizen." (Acts 22:28 ULT)

Quotations with two layers

Jesus answered and said to them, "Be careful that no one leads you astray. For many will come in my name. They will say, 'I am the Christ,' and will lead many astray." Matthew 24:4-5 ULT

The outermost layer is what Jesus said to his disciples. The second layer is what other people will say.

Jesus answered, "You say that I am a king." (John 18:37 ULT)

The outermost layer is what Jesus said to Pilate. The second layer is what Pilate said about Jesus.

A quotation with three layers

Abraham said, "...I said to her, 'You must show me this faithfulness as my wife: At every place where we go, say about me, ***"He is my brother."***'" (Genesis 20:10-13 ULT)

The outermost layer is what Abraham said to Abimelech. The second layer is what Abraham had told his wife. The third layer is what he wanted his wife to say. (We have underlined the third layer.)

A quotation with four layers

They said to him, "A man came to meet us who said to us, 'Go back to the king who sent you, and say to him, "Yahweh says this: ***'Is it because there is no God in Israel that you sent men to consult with Baal Zebub, the god of Ekron? Therefore you will not come down from the bed to which you have gone up; instead, you will certainly die.'***"'" (2 Kings 1:6 ULT)

The outermost layer is what the messengers said to the king. The second layer is what the man who had met the messengers told them. The third is what that man wanted the messengers to say to the king. The fourth is what Yahweh said. (We have underlined the fourth layer.)

Translation Strategies

Some languages use only direct quotes. Other languages use a combination of direct quotes and indirect quotes. In those languages it might sound strange and perhaps even be confusing if there are many layers of direct quotes.

1. Translate all of the quotes as direct quotes.
2. Translate one or some of the quotes as indirect quotes. (See [Direct and Indirect Quotations](#).)

Examples of Translation Strategies Applied

(1) Translate all of the quotes as direct quotes. In the example below we have underlined the indirect quotes in the ULT and the quotes that we have changed to direct quotes below it.

Festus presented Paul's case to the king; he said, "A certain man was left behind here by Felix as a prisoner....I was puzzled about how to investigate this matter, and I asked him if he would go to Jerusalem to be judged there about these things

. But when Paul called to be kept under guard for the Emperor's decision, I ordered him to be kept until I send him to Caesar." (Acts 25:14-21 ULT)

Festus presented Paul's case to the king; he said, "A certain man was left behind here by Felix as a prisoner....I was puzzled about how to investigate this matter, and I asked him, **'Will you go to Jerusalem to be judged there about these things?'** But when Paul said, **'I want to be kept under guard for the Emperor's decision,'** I told the guard, **'Keep him under guard until I send him to Caesar.'**

(2) Translate one or some of the quotes as indirect quotes. In English the word "that" can come before indirect quotes. It is underlined in the examples below. The pronouns that changed because of the indirect quote are also underlined.

Then Yahweh spoke to Moses and said, "I have heard the grumbling of the Israelites. Tell them, 'At twilight you will eat meat, and in the morning you will be filled with bread. Then you will know that I am Yahweh your God.' " (Exodus 16:11-12 ULT)

Then Yahweh spoke to Moses and said, "I have heard the grumbling of the Israelites. Tell them **that** at twilight **they** will eat meat, and in the morning **they** will be filled with bread. Then **they** will know that I am Yahweh **their** God."

They said to him, "A man came to meet us who said to us, 'Go back to the king who sent you, and say to him, "Yahweh says this: 'Is it because there is no God in Israel that you sent men to consult with Baal Zebub, the god of Ekron? Therefore you will not come down from the bed to which you have gone up; instead, you will certainly die.'" (2 Kings 1:6 ULT)

They told him **that** a man had come to meet **them** who said to **them**, "Go back to the king who sent you, and tell him **that** Yahweh says this: 'Is it because there is no God in Israel that you sent men to consult with Baal Zebub, the god of Ekron? Therefore you will not come down from the bed to which you have gone up; instead, you will certainly die.'"

Next we recommend you learn about:

[[rc://en/ta/man/translate/figs-quotemarks]]

(Go back to: [1 Chronicles 17:4](#); [17:6](#))

Reflexive Pronouns

Description

All languages have ways of showing that the same person fills two different roles in a sentence. English does this by using **reflexive pronouns**. These are pronouns that refer to someone or something that has already been mentioned in a sentence. In English the reflexive pronouns are: "myself", "yourself", "himself", "herself", "itself", "ourselves", "yourselves", and "themselves". Other languages may have other ways to show this.

This page answers the question: *What are reflexive pronouns?*

In order to understand this topic, it would be good to read:

[\[\[rc://en/ta/man/translate/figs-pronouns\]\]](#)

[\[\[rc://en/ta/man/translate/figs-sentences\]\]](#)

Reason this is a translation issue

- Languages have different ways of showing that the same person fills two different roles in a sentence. For those languages, translators will need to know how to translate the English reflexive pronouns.
- The reflexive pronouns in English also have other functions.

Uses of Reflexive Pronouns

- To show that the same person or things fills two different roles in a sentence
- To emphasize a person or thing in the sentence
- To show that someone did something alone
- To show that someone or something was alone

Examples from the Bible

Reflexive pronouns are used to show the same person or thing fills two different roles in a sentence.

If **I** should testify about **myself** alone, my testimony would not be true. (John 5:31 ULT)

Now the Passover of the Jews was near, and **many** went up to Jerusalem out of the country before the Passover in order to purify **themselves**. (John 11:55 ULT)

Reflexive pronouns are used to emphasize a person or thing in the sentence.

Jesus himself was not baptizing, but his disciples were (John 4:2 ULT)

So they left the crowd, taking Jesus with them, since he was already in the boat. Other boats were also with him. And a violent windstorm arose and the waves were breaking into the boat so that the boat was already full. But **Jesus himself** was in the stern, asleep on a cushion. (Mark 4:36-38 ULT)

Reflexive pronouns are used to show that someone did something alone.

When Jesus realized that they were about to come and seize him by force to make him king, he withdrew again up the mountain **by himself**. (John 6:15 ULT)

Reflexive pronouns are used to show that someone or something was alone.

He saw the linen cloths lying there and the cloth that had been on his head. **It** was not lying with the linen cloths but was rolled up in its place **by itself**. (John 20:6-7 ULT)

Translation Strategies

If a reflexive pronoun would have the same function in your language, consider using it. If not, here are some other strategies.

1. In some languages people put something on the verb to show that the object of the verb is the same as the subject.
2. In some languages people emphasize a certain person or thing by referring to it in a special place in the sentence.
3. In some languages people emphasize a certain person or thing by adding something to that word or putting another word with it.
4. In some languages people show that someone did something alone by using a word like “alone”.
5. In some languages people show that something was alone by using a phrase that tells about where it was.

Examples of Translation Strategies Applied

(1) In some languages people put something on the verb to show that the object of the verb is the same as the subject.

■ **If I should testify about** myself

alone, my testimony would not be true. (John 5:31)

■ “If I should **self-testify** alone, my testimony would not be true.”

Now the Passover of the Jews was near, and many went up to Jerusalem out of the country before the Passover in order to purify themselves

. (John 11:55)

■ “Now the Passover of the Jews was near, and many went up to Jerusalem out of the country before the Passover in order to **self-purify**.”

(2) In some languages people emphasize a certain person or thing by referring to it in a special place in the sentence.

■ He himself

took our sickness and bore our diseases. (Matthew 8:17 ULT)

■ “**It was he who** took our sickness and bore our diseases.”

Jesus himself

was not baptizing, but his disciples were. (John 4:2)

■ “**It was not Jesus who** was baptizing, but his disciples were.”

(3) In some languages people emphasize a certain person or thing by adding something to that word or putting another word with it. English adds the reflexive pronoun.

■ **Now Jesus said this to test Philip, for he** himself

knew what he was going to do. (John 6:6)

(4) In some languages people show that someone did something alone by using a word like “alone”.

■ **When Jesus realized that they were about to come and seize him by force to make him king, he withdrew again up the mountain** by himself

. (John 6:15)

“When Jesus realized that they were about to come and seize him by force to make him king, he withdrew again **alone** up the mountain.”

(5) In some languages people show that something was alone by using a phrase that tells about where it was.

He saw the linen cloths lying there and the cloth that had been on his head. It was not lying with the linen cloths but was rolled up in its place by itself

. (John 20:6-7 ULT)

“He saw the linen cloths lying there and the cloth that had been on his head. It was not lying with the linen cloths but was rolled up and lying **in its own place.**”

(Go back to: [1 Chronicles 22:7](#))

Rhetorical Question

A rhetorical question is a question that a speaker asks when he is more interested in expressing his attitude about something than in getting information about it. Speakers use rhetorical questions to express deep emotion or to encourage hearers to think deeply about something. The Bible contains many rhetorical questions, often to express surprise, to rebuke or scold the hearer, or to teach. Speakers of some languages use rhetorical questions for other purposes as well.

This page answers the question: *What are rhetorical questions and how can I translate them?*

In order to understand this topic, it would be good to read:

[[rc://en/ta/man/translate/figs-intro]]

[[rc://en/ta/man/translate/figs-sentencetypes]]

Description

A rhetorical question is a question that strongly expresses the speaker's attitude toward something. Often the speaker is not looking for information at all. Or, if he is asking for information, it is not usually the information that the question appears to ask for. The speaker is more interested in expressing his attitude than in getting information.

Those who stood by said, ***"Is this how you insult God's high priest?"*** (Acts 23:4 ULT)

The people who asked Paul this question were not asking about his way of insulting God's high priest. Rather they used this question to accuse Paul of insulting the high priest.

The Bible contains many rhetorical questions. These rhetorical questions might be used for the purpose of expressing attitudes or feelings, rebuking people, teaching something by reminding people of something they know and encouraging them to apply it to something new, or introducing something they want to talk about.

Reasons this is a translation issue

- Some languages do not use rhetorical questions; for them a question is always a request for information.
- Some languages use rhetorical questions, but for purposes that are different or more limited than in the Bible.
- Because of these differences between languages, some readers might misunderstand the purpose of a rhetorical question in the Bible.

Examples from the Bible

Do you not still rule the kingdom of Israel? (1 Kings 21:7 ULT)

Jezebel used the question above to remind King Ahab of something he already knew: he still ruled the kingdom of Israel. The rhetorical question made her point more strongly than if she had merely stated it, because it forced Ahab to admit the point himself. She did this in order to rebuke him for being unwilling to take over a poor man's property. She was implying that since he was the king of Israel, he had the power to take the man's property.

Will a virgin forget her jewelry, a bride her veils? Yet my people have forgotten me for days without number! (Jeremiah 2:32 ULT)

God used the question above to remind his people of something they already knew: a young woman would never forget her jewelry or a bride forget her veils. He then rebuked his people for forgetting him, who is so much greater than those things.

Why did I not die when I came out from the womb? (Job 3:11 ULT)

Job used the question above to show deep emotion. This rhetorical question expresses how sad he was that he did not die as soon as he was born. He wished that he had not lived.

And why has it happened to me that the mother of my Lord should come to me? (Luke 1:43 ULT)

Elizabeth used the question above to show how surprised and happy she was that the mother of her Lord came to her.

Or what man among you is there who, if his son asks him for a loaf of bread, will give him a stone? (Matthew 7:9 ULT)

Jesus used the question above to remind the people of something they already knew: a good father would never give his son something bad to eat. By introducing this point, Jesus could go on to teach them about God with his next rhetorical question:

Therefore, if you who are evil know how to give good gifts to your children, how much more will your Father from heaven give good things to those who ask him? (Matthew 7:11 ULT)

Jesus used this question to teach the people in an emphatic way that God gives good things to those who ask him.

What is the kingdom of God like, and what can I compare it to? It is like a mustard seed that a man took and threw into his garden...(Luke 13:18-19 ULT)

Jesus used the question above to introduce what he was going to talk about. He was about to compare the kingdom of God to something. In this case, he compared the kingdom of God to a mustard seed.

Translation Strategies

In order to translate a rhetorical question accurately, first be sure that the question you are translating truly is a rhetorical question and is not an information question. Ask yourself, "Does the person asking the question already know the answer to the question?" If so, it is a rhetorical question. Or, if no one answers the question, did the person who asked it expect to receive an answer? If not, it is a rhetorical question.

When you are sure that the question is rhetorical, then be sure that you understand the purpose for the rhetorical question. Is it to encourage or rebuke or shame the hearer? Is it to bring up a new topic? Is it to do something else?

When you know the purpose of the rhetorical question, then think of the most natural way to express that purpose in the target language. It might be as a question, or a statement, or an exclamation.

If using the rhetorical question would be natural and give the right meaning in your language, consider doing so. If not, here are other options:

1. Add the answer after the question.
2. Change the rhetorical question to a statement or exclamation.
3. Change the rhetorical question to a statement, and then follow it with a short question.
4. Change the form of the question so that it communicates in your language what the original speaker communicated in his.

Examples of Translation Strategies Applied

(1) Add the answer after the question.

Will a virgin forget her jewelry, a bride her veils?

Yet my people have forgotten me for days without number! (Jeremiah 2:32 ULT)

Will a virgin forget her jewelry, a bride her veils? ***Of course not!*** Yet my people have forgotten me for days without number!

Or what man among you is there who, if his son asks him for a loaf of bread, will give him a stone? (Matthew 7:9 ULT)

Or what man among you is there who, if his son asks him for a loaf of bread, will give him a stone? ***None of you would do that!***

(2) Change the rhetorical question to a statement or exclamation.

What is the kingdom of God like, and what can I compare it to?

It is like a mustard seed... (Luke 13:18-19 ULT)

This is what the kingdom of God is like. It is like a mustard seed..."

Is this how you insult God's high priest?

(Acts 23:4 ULT)

You should not insult God's high priest!

Why did I not die when I came out from the womb?

(Job 3:11 ULT)

I wish I had died when I came out from the womb!

And why has it happened to me that the mother of my Lord should come to me?

(Luke 1:43 ULT)

How wonderful it is that the mother of my Lord has come to me!

(3) Change the rhetorical question to a statement, and then follow it with a short question.

Do you not still rule

the kingdom of Israel? (1 Kings 21:7 ULT)

You still rule the kingdom of Israel, ***do you not?***

(4) Change the form of the question so that it communicates in your language what the original speaker communicated in his.

Or what man among you is there who

, if his son asks him for a loaf of bread, will give him a stone? (Matthew 7:9 ULT)

If your son asks you for a loaf of bread, ***would you give him a stone?***

Will a virgin forget her jewelry, a bride her veils

? Yet my people have forgotten me for days without number! (Jeremiah 2:32 ULT)

What virgin would forget her jewelry, and what bride would forget her veils? Yet my people have forgotten me for days without number

(Go back to: [1 Chronicles 11:19](#); [13:12](#); [17:6](#); [17:16](#); [17:18](#); [17:21](#); [19:3](#); [21:3](#); [21:17](#); [29:14](#))

Simile

A simile is an explicit comparison of two things that are not normally thought to be similar. One is said to be “like” the other. It focuses on a particular trait the two items have in common, and it includes the words “like,” “as,” or “than”.

This page answers the question: *What is a simile?*

In order to understand this topic, it would be good to read:

[[rc://en/ta/man/translate/figs-intro]]

Description

A simile is a comparison of two things that are not normally thought to be similar. It focuses on a particular trait the two items have in common, and it includes the words “like,” “as,” or “than”.

When he saw the crowds, he had compassion for them, because they were worried and confused, because they were **like sheep without a shepherd**. (Matthew 9:36)

Jesus compared the crowds of people to sheep without a shepherd. Sheep grow frightened when they do not have a good shepherd to lead them in safe places. The crowds were like that because they did not have good religious leaders.

See, I send you out **as sheep in the midst of wolves**, so be as wise **as serpents** and harmless **as doves**. (Matthew 10:16 ULT)

Jesus compared his disciples to sheep and their enemies to wolves. Wolves attack sheep. Jesus’ enemies would attack his disciples.

For the word of God is living and active and sharper **than any two-edged sword**. (Hebrews 4:12 ULT)

God’s word is compared to a two-edged sword. A two-edged sword is a weapon that can easily cut through a person’s flesh. God’s word is very effective in showing what is in a person’s heart and thoughts.

Purposes of Simile

- A simile can teach about something that is unknown by showing how it is similar to something that is known.
- A simile can emphasize a particular trait, sometimes in a way that gets people’s attention.
- Similes help form a picture in the mind or help the reader experience what he is reading about more fully.

Reasons this is a translation issue

- People may not know how the two items are similar.
- People may not be familiar with the item that something is compared to.

Examples from the Bible

Suffer hardship with me, **as a good soldier of Christ Jesus**. (2 Timothy 2:3 ULT)

In this simile, Paul compares suffering with what soldiers endure, and he encourages Timothy to follow their example.

for **as the lightning appears when it flashes from one part of the sky to another part of the sky**, so will the Son of Man be in his day. (Luke 17:24 ULT)

This verse does not tell how the Son of Man will be like the lightning. But from the context we can understand from the verses before it that just as lighting flashes suddenly and everyone can see it, the Son of Man will come suddenly and everyone will be able to see him. No one will have to be told about it.

Translation Strategies

If people would understand the correct meaning of a simile, consider using it. If they would not, here are some strategies you can use:

1. If people do not know how the two items are alike, tell how they are alike. However, do not do this if the meaning was not clear to the original audience.
2. If people are not familiar with the item that something is compared to, use an item from your own culture. Be sure that it is one that could have been used in the cultures of the Bible. If you use this strategy, you may want to put the original item in a footnote.
3. Simply describe the item without comparing it to another.

Examples of Translation Strategies Applied

(1) If people do not know how the two items are alike, tell how they are alike. However, do not do this if the meaning was not clear to the original audience.

See, I send **you out** as sheep in the midst of wolves

(Matthew 10:16 ULT) - This compares the danger that Jesus' disciples would be in with the danger that sheep are in when they are surrounded by wolves.

See, I send **you out among wicked people** and you will be in danger from them **as sheep are in danger when they are among wolves**.

For the word of God is living and active and sharper than any two-edged sword

. (Hebrews 4:12 ULT)

For the word of God is living and active and **more powerful than a very sharp two-edged sword**

(2) If people are not familiar with the item that something is compared to, use an item from your own culture. Be sure that it is one that could have been used in the cultures of the Bible. If you use this strategy, you may want to put the original item in a footnote.

See, I send **you out** as sheep in the midst of wolves

, (Matthew 10:16 ULT) - If people do not know what sheep and wolves are, or that wolves kill and eat sheep, you could use some other animal that kills another.

See, I send you out **as chickens in the midst of wild dogs**,

How often did I long to gather your children together, just as a hen gathers her chickens under her wings

, but you did not agree! (Matthew 23:37 ULT)

How often I wanted to gather your children together, **as a mother closely watches over her infants**, but you refused!

If you have faith even as small as a grain of mustard

, (Matthew 17:20)

If you have faith even as small **as a tiny seed**,

(3) Simply describe the item without comparing it to another.

See, I send **you out** as sheep in the midst of wolves

, (Matthew 10:16 ULT)

See, I send you out among **people who will want to harm you**.

How often did I long to gather your children together, just as a hen gathers her chickens under her wings
, but you did not agree! (Matthew 23:37 ULT)

How often I wanted to **protect you**, but you refused!

Next we recommend you learn about:

[Metaphor](#)

[[rc://en/ta/man/translate/bita-part1]]

(Go back to: [1 Chronicles 14:11](#); [27:23](#); [29:15](#))

Symbolic Action

Description

A symbolic action is something that someone does in order to express a certain idea. For example, in some cultures people nod their head up and down to mean “Yes” or turn their head from side to side to mean “No”. Symbolic actions do not mean the same things in all cultures. In the Bible, sometimes people perform symbolic actions and sometimes they only refer to the symbolic action.

This page answers the question: *What is a symbolic action and how do I translate it?*

In order to understand this topic, it would be good to read:

[Translate Unknowns](#)

Examples of symbolic actions

- In some cultures people shake hands when they meet to show that they are willing to be friendly.
- In some cultures people bow when they meet to show respect to each other.

Reason this is a translation issue

An action may have a meaning in one culture, and a different meaning or no meaning at all in another culture. For example, in some cultures raising the eyebrows means “I am surprised” or “What did you say?” In others cultures it means “Yes”.

In the Bible people did things that had certain meanings in their culture. When we read the Bible we might not understand what someone meant if we interpret the action based on what it means in our own culture.

You (the translator) need to understand what people in the Bible meant when they used symbolic actions. If an action does not mean the same thing in your own culture, then you need to figure out how to translate what the action meant.

Examples from the Bible

Jairus fell down at Jesus’ feet. (Luke 8:41 ULT)

Meaning of symbolic action: He did this to show great respect to Jesus.

Look, I stand at the door and **knock**. If anyone hears my voice and opens the door, I will come in to his home, and have a meal with him, and he with me. (Revelation 3:20 ULT)

Meaning of symbolic action: When people wanted someone to welcome them into their home, they stood at the door and knocked on it.

Translation Strategies

If people would correctly understand what a symbolic action meant to the people in the Bible, consider using it. If not, here are some strategies for translating it.

1. Tell what the person did and why he did it.
2. Do not tell what the person did, but tell what he meant.
3. Use an action from your own culture that has the same meaning. Do this only in poetry, parables, and sermons. Do not do this when there actually was a person who did a specific action.

Examples of Translation Strategies Applied

(1) Tell what the person did and why he did it.

Jairus fell down at Jesus' feet. (Luke 8:41 ULT)

Jairus fell down at Jesus' feet in order to show that he greatly respected him.

Look, I stand at the door and knock. (Revelation 3:20 ULT)

Look, I stand at the door and knock on it, asking you to let me in.

(2) Do not tell what the person did, but tell what he meant.

Jairus fell down at Jesus' feet. (Luke 8:41)

Jairus showed Jesus great respect.

Look, I stand at the door and knock. (Revelation 3:20)

Look, I stand at the door and ask you to let me in.

(3) Use an action from your own culture that has the same meaning.

Jairus fell down at Jesus' feet. (Luke 8:41 ULT) - Since Jairus actually did this, you should not substitute an action from your own culture.

Look, I stand at the door and knock. (Revelation 3:20 ULT) - Jesus was not standing at a real door. Rather he was speaking about wanting to have a relationship with people. So in cultures where it is polite to clear one's throat when wanting to be let into a house, you could use that.

Look, I stand at the door and clear my throat.

(Go back to: [1 Chronicles 11:3](#); [16:29](#); [21:16](#); [21:21](#); [21:27](#); [29:20](#))

Symbolic Language

Description

Symbolic language in speech and writing is the use of symbols to represent other things, other events, etc. In the Bible it occurs most in prophecy and poetry, especially in visions and dreams about things that will happen in the future. Though people may not immediately know the meaning of a symbol, it is important to keep the symbol in the translation.

This page answers the question: *What is symbolic language and how do I translate it?*

In order to understand this topic, it would be good to read:

[[rc://en/ta/man/translate/writing-intro]]

Eat this scroll, then go speak to the house of Israel." (Ezekiel 3:1 ULT)

This was in a dream. Eating the scroll is a symbol of reading and understanding well what was written on the scroll, and accepting these words from God into himself.

Purposes of symbolism

- One purpose of symbolism is to help people understand the importance or severity of an event by putting it in other, very dramatic terms.
- Another purpose of symbolism is to tell some people about something while hiding the true meaning from others who do not understand the symbolism.

Reason this is a translation issue

People who read the Bible today may find it hard to recognize that the language is symbolic, and they may not know what the symbol stands for.

Translation Principles

- When symbolic language is used, it is important to keep the symbol in the translation.
- It is also important not to explain the symbol more than the original speaker or writer did, since he may not have wanted everyone living then to be able to understand it easily.

Examples from the Bible

After this I saw in my dream at night **a fourth animal**, terrifying, frightening, and very strong. It had **large iron teeth**; it devoured, broke in pieces, and trampled underfoot what was left. It was different from the other animals, and it had **ten horns**. (Daniel 7:7 ULT)

The meaning of the underlined symbols is explained in Daniel 7:23-24 as shown below. The animals represent kingdoms, iron teeth represent a powerful army, and the horns represent powerful leaders.

This is what that person said, 'As for the fourth animal, it will be **a fourth kingdom** on earth that will be different from all the other kingdoms. It will devour the whole earth, and it will trample it down and break it into pieces. As for the ten horns, out of this kingdom **ten kings** will arise, and another will arise after them. He will be different from the previous ones, and he will conquer the three kings. (Daniel 7:23-24 ULT)

I turned around to see whose voice was speaking to me, and as I turned I saw **seven golden lampstands**. In the middle of the lampstands there was one like a Son of Man,...He had in his right hand **seven stars**, and coming out of his mouth was **a sharp two-edged sword**...As for the hidden meaning about the seven stars you saw in my right hand, and the seven golden lampstands: **the seven stars are the angels of the seven churches**, and **the seven lampstands are the seven churches**. (Revelation 1:12, 16, 20 ULT)

This passage explains the meaning of the seven lampstands and the seven stars. The two-edged sword represents God's word and judgment.

Translation Strategies

1. Translate the text with the symbols. Often the speaker or author explains the meaning later in the passage.
2. Translate the text with the symbols. Then explain the symbols in footnotes.

Examples of Translation Strategies Applied

(1) Translate the text with the symbols. Often the speaker or author explains the meaning later in the passage.

After this I saw in my dream at night a fourth animal

, terrifying, frightening, and very strong. It had large iron teeth; it devoured, broke in pieces, and trampled underfoot what was left. It was different from the other animals, and it had ten horns. (Daniel 7:7 ULT) - People will be able to understand what the symbols mean when they read the explanation in Daniel 7:23-24.

(2) Translate the text with the symbols. Then explain the symbols in footnotes.

After this I saw in my dream at night a fourth animal

, terrifying, frightening, and very strong. It had large iron teeth; it devoured, broke in pieces, and trampled underfoot what was left. It was different from the other animals, and it had ten horns. (Daniel 7:7 ULT)

After this I saw in my dream at night a fourth animal, ¹ terrifying, frightening, and very strong. It had large iron teeth; ² it devoured, broke in pieces, and trampled underfoot what was left. It was different from the other animals, and it had ten horns. ³

The footnotes would look like:

^[1] The animal is a symbol for a kingdom.

^[2] The iron teeth is a symbol for the kingdom's powerful army.

^[3] The horns are a symbol of powerful kings.

(Go back to: [1 Chronicles 21:16](#))

Synecdoche

Description

Synecdoche is a figure of speech in which a speaker uses a part of something to refer to the whole thing, or uses the whole to refer to a part.

■ **My soul** exalts the Lord. (Luke 1:46 ULT)

Mary was very happy about what the Lord was doing, so she said “my soul,” which means the inner, emotional part of herself, to refer to her whole self.

■ **the Pharisees** said to him, “Look, why are they doing something that is not lawful...” (Mark 2:24 ULT)

The Pharisees who were standing there did not all say the same words at the same time. Instead, it is more likely that one man representing the group said those words.

Reasons this is a translation issue

- Some readers may not recognize the synecdoche and thus misunderstand the words as a literal statement.
- Some readers may realize that they are not to understand the words literally, but they may not know what the meaning is.

Example from the Bible

■ I looked on all the deeds that **my hands** had accomplished (Ecclesiastes 2:11 ULT)

“My hands” is a synecdoche for the whole person, because clearly the arms and the rest of the body and the mind were also involved in the person’s accomplishments. The hands are chosen to represent the person because they are the parts of the body most directly involved in the work.

Translation Strategies

If the synecdoche would be natural and give the right meaning in your language, consider using it. If not, here is another option:

1. State specifically what the synecdoche refers to.

Examples of Translation Strategies Applied

(1) State specifically what the synecdoche refers to.

■ “My soul

exalts the Lord.” (Luke 1:46 ULT)

■ “I exalt the Lord.”

...the Pharisees

said to him (Mark 2:24 ULT)

■ ...**a representative of the Pharisees** said to him...

...**I looked on all the deeds that** my hands

This page answers the question: *What is a synecdoche, and how can I translate such a thing into my language?*

In order to understand this topic, it would be good to read:

[[rc://en/ta/man/translate/figs-intro]]

had accomplished... (Ecclesiastes 2:11 ULT)

I looked on all the deeds that *I* had accomplished

Next we recommend you learn about:

[Metonymy](#)

[[rc://en/ta/man/translate/bita-part2]]

(Go back to: [1 Chronicles 4:10](#); [5:10](#); [6:15](#); [10:12](#); [11:5](#); [12:8](#); [12:40](#); [16:10](#); [19:17](#); [20:2](#); [20:3](#); [20:8](#); [22:19](#); [28:8](#); [28:9](#); [29:15](#))

Textual Variants

Description

Thousands of years ago, people wrote the books of the Bible. Other people then copied them by hand and translated them. They did this work very carefully, and over the years many people made thousands of copies. However, people who looked at them later saw that there were small differences between them. Some copiers accidentally left out some words, or some mistook a word for another that looked like it. Occasionally they added words or even whole sentences, either by accident, or because they wanted to explain something. Modern Bibles are translations of the old copies. Some modern Bibles have some of these sentences that were added. In the ULT, these added sentences are usually written in footnotes.

This page answers the question: *Why does the ULT have missing or added verses, and should I translate them?*

In order to understand this topic, it would be good to read:

[\[\[rc://en/ta/man/translate/translate-source-text\]\]](#)

[\[\[rc://en/ta/man/translate/translate-manuscripts\]\]](#)

Bible scholars have read many old copies and compared them with each other. For each place in the Bible where there was a difference, they have figured out which wordings are most likely correct. The translators of the ULT based the ULT on wordings that scholars say are most likely correct. Because people who use the ULT may have access to Bibles that are based on other copies, the ULT translators have sometimes included information about some of the differences between them, either in the ULT footnotes in the unfoldingWord® Translation Notes.

Translators are encouraged to translate the text in the ULT and to write about added sentences in footnotes, as is done in the ULT. However, if the local church really wants those sentences to be included in the main text, translators may put them in the text and include a footnote about them.

Examples from the Bible

Matthew 18:10-11 ULT has a footnote about verse 11.

¹⁰ See that you do not despise any of these little ones. For I say to you that in heaven their angels always look on the face of my Father who is in heaven. ¹¹ ^[1]

^[1] Many authorities, some ancient, insert v. 11. *For the Son of Man came to save that which was lost.*

John 7:53-8:11 is not in the best earliest manuscripts. It has been included in the ULT, but it is marked off with square brackets ([]) at the beginning and end, and there is a footnote after verse 11.

⁵³ [Then every man went to his own house.... ¹¹ She said, "No one, Lord." Jesus said, "Neither do I condemn you. Go your way; from now on sin no more."] ^[2]

^[2] The best earliest manuscripts do not have John 7:53-8:11

Translation Strategies

When there is a textual variant, you may choose to follow the ULT or another version that you have access to.

1. Translate the verses that the ULT does and include the footnote that the ULT provides.
2. Translate the verses as another version does, and change the footnote so that it fits this situation.

Examples of Translation Strategies Applied

The translation strategies are applied to Mark 7:14-16 ULT, which has a footnote about verse 16.

¹⁴ He called the crowd again and said to them, “Listen to me, all of you, and understand.

¹⁵ There is nothing from outside of a person that can defile him when it enters into him.

It is what comes out of the person that defiles him.” ¹⁶[¹]

[¹] The best ancient copies omit v. 16. *If any man has ears to hear, let him hear.*

(1) Translate the verses that the ULT does and include the footnote that the ULT provides.

¹⁴ He called the crowd again and said to them, “Listen to me, all of you, and understand. ¹⁵

There is nothing from outside of a person that can defile him when it enters into him. It is what comes out of the person that defiles him.” ¹⁶[¹]

[¹] The best ancient copies omit verse 16. *If any man has ears to hear, let him hear.*

(2) Translate the verses as another version does, and change the footnote so that it fits this situation.

¹⁴ He called the crowd again and said to them, “Listen to me, all of you, and understand. ¹⁵

There is nothing from outside of a person that can defile him when it enters into him. It is what comes out of the person that defiles him. ¹⁶ If any man has ears to hear, let him hear.” [¹]

[¹] Some ancient copies do not have verse 16.

Next we recommend you learn about:

[\[\[rc://en/ta/man/translate/translate-chapverse\]\]](#)

[\[\[rc://en/ta/man/translate/translate-manuscripts\]\]](#)

[\[\[rc://en/ta/man/translate/translate-terms\]\]](#)

[\[\[rc://en/ta/man/translate/translate-original\]\]](#)

(Go back to: [1 Chronicles 1:7](#))

Translate Unknowns

While working to translate the Bible, you (the translator) might find yourself asking: "How do I translate words like lion, fig tree, mountain, priest, or temple when people in my culture have never seen these things and we do not have a word for them?"

Description

Unknowns are things that occur in the source text that are not known to the people of your culture. The unfoldingWord® Translation Words pages and the unfoldingWord® Translation Notes will help you understand what they are. After you understand them, you will need to find ways to refer to those things so that people who read your translation will understand what they are.

This page answers the question: *How can I translate ideas that my readers are not familiar with?*

In order to understand this topic, it would be good to read:

[\[\[rc://en/ta/man/translate/figs-sentences\]\]](#)

We have here only five loaves of **bread** and two fish (Matthew 14:17 ULT)

Bread is a particular food made by mixing finely crushed grains with oil, and then cooking the mixture so that it is dry. (Grains are the seeds of a kind of grass.) In some cultures people do not have bread and do not know what it is.

Reason this is a translation issue

- Readers may not know some of the things that are in the Bible because those things are not part of their own culture.
- Readers may have difficulty understanding a text if they do not know some of the things that are mentioned in it.

Translation Principles

- Use words that are already part of your language if possible.
- Keep expressions short if possible.
- Represent God's commands and historical facts accurately.

Examples from the Bible

I will turn Jerusalem into piles of ruins, a hideout for **jackals** (Jeremiah 9:11 ULT)

Jackals are wild animals like dogs that live in only a few parts of the world. So they are not known in many places.

Beware of false prophets, those who come to you in sheep's clothing, but are truly ravenous **wolves**. (Matthew 7:15 ULT)

If wolves do not live where the translation will be read, the readers may not understand that they are fierce, wild animals like dogs that attack and eat sheep.

Then they tried to give Jesus wine that was mixed with **myrrh**. But he refused to drink it. (Mark 15:23 ULT)

People may not know what myrrh is and that it was used as a medicine.

to him who made **great lights** (Psalm 136:7 ULT)

Some languages have terms for things that give light, like the sun and fire, but they have no general term for lights.

your sins...will be white like **snow** (Isaiah 1:18 ULT)

People in many parts of the world have not seen snow, but they may have seen it in pictures.

Translation Strategies

Here are ways you might translate a term that is not known in your language:

1. Use a phrase that describes what the unknown item is, or what is important about the unknown item for the verse being translated.
2. Substitute something similar from your language if doing so does not falsely represent a historical fact.
3. Copy the word from another language, and add a general word or descriptive phrase to help people understand it.
4. Use a word that is more general in meaning.
5. Use a word or phrase that is more specific in meaning.

Examples of Translation Strategies Applied

(1) Use a phrase that describes what the unknown item is, or what is important about the unknown item for the verse being translated.

Beware of false prophets, those who come to you in sheep's clothing, but are truly ravenous wolves

. (Matthew 7:15 ULT)

Beware of false prophets, those who come to you in sheep's clothing, but **are truly hungry and dangerous animals**.

"Ravenous wolves" is part of a metaphor here, so the reader needs to know that they are very dangerous to sheep in order to understand this metaphor. (If sheep are also unknown, then you will need to also use one of the translation strategies to translate sheep, or change the metaphor to something else, using a translation strategy for metaphors. See [Translating Metaphors](#).)

We have here only five loaves of bread

and two fish (Matthew 14:17 ULT)

We have here only five **loaves of baked grain seeds** and two fish

(2) Substitute something similar from your language if doing so does not falsely represent a historical fact.

your sins...will be white like snow

(Isaiah 1:18 ULT) This verse is not about snow. It uses snow in a figure of speech to help people understand how white something will be.

your sins...will be white like **milk** your sins...will be white like **the moon**

(3) Copy the word from another language, and add a general word or descriptive phrase to help people understand it.

Then they tried to give Jesus wine that was mixed with myrrh

. But he refused to drink it. (Mark 15:23 ULT) - People may understand better what myrrh is if it is used with the general word "medicine."

Then they tried to give Jesus wine that was mixed with **a medicine called myrrh**. But he refused to drink it.

We have here only five loaves of bread

and two fish (Matthew 14:17 ULT) - People may understand better what bread is if it is used with a phrase that tells what it is made of (seeds) and how it is prepared (crushed and baked).

■ We have here only five loaves of ***baked crushed seed bread*** and two fish

(4) Use a word that is more general in meaning.

■ **I will turn Jerusalem into piles of ruins, a hideout for** jackals

(Jeremiah 9:11 ULT)

■ I will turn Jerusalem into piles of ruins, a hideout for ***wild dogs***

We have here only five loaves of bread

and two fish (Matthew 14:17 ULT)

■ We have here only five ***loaves of baked food*** and two fish

(5) Use a word or phrase that is more specific in meaning.

■ **to him who made** great lights

(Psalm 136:7 ULT)

■ to him who made ***the sun and the moon***

Next we recommend you learn about:

[[rc://en/ta/man/translate/translate-transliterate]]

[How to Translate Names](#)

(Go back to: [1 Chronicles 4:21](#); [11:8](#); [13:8](#); [15:16](#); [15:19](#); [15:20](#); [15:21](#); [15:28](#); [16:5](#); [16:42](#); [21:23](#); [25:1](#); [25:6](#); [27:28](#))

Verse Bridges

Description

In some cases, you will see in the unfoldingWord® Simplified Text (UST) that two or more verse numbers are combined, such as 17-18. This is called a verse bridge. This means that the information in the verses was rearranged so that the story or message could be more easily understood.

This page answers the question: *Why are some verse numbers combined in the UST, such as "3-5" or "17-18"?*

In order to understand this topic, it would be good to read:

[\[\[rc://en/ta/man/translate/translate-bibleorg\]\]](https://en.ta/man/translate/translate-bibleorg)

²⁹ These were the clans of the Horites: Lotan, Shobal, Zibeon, and Anah, ³⁰ Dishon, Ezer, Dishan: these are clans of the Horites, according to their clan lists in the land of Seir. (Genesis 36:29-30 ULT)

²⁹⁻³⁰ The people groups who were descendants of Hor lived in Seir land. The names of the people groups are Lotan, Shobal, Zibeon, Anah, Dishon, Ezer, and Dishan. (Genesis 36:29-30 UST)

In the ULT text, verses 29 and 30 are separate, and the information about the people living in Seir is at the end of verse 30. In the UST text, the verses are joined, and the information about them living in Seir is at the beginning. For many languages, this is a more logical order of information.

Examples from the Bible

Where the UST has a verse bridge, the ULT will have separate verses.

⁴⁻⁵ Yahweh our God will bless you in the land that he is giving to you. If you obey Yahweh our God and obey all the commandments that I am giving to you today, there will not be any poor people among you. (Deuteronomy 15:4-5 UST)

⁴ However, there should be no poor among you (for Yahweh will surely bless you in the land that he gives you as an inheritance to possess), ⁵ if only you diligently listen to the voice of Yahweh your God, to keep all these commandments that I am commanding you today. (Deuteronomy 15:4-5 ULT)

¹⁶⁻¹⁷ But Yahweh said to him, "You must not eat the fruit of the tree that will enable you to know what actions are evil to do as well as what actions are good to do. If you eat any fruit from that tree, on that day your relationship with me will end. But I will permit you to eat the fruit of any of the other trees in the garden." (Genesis 2:16-17 UST)

¹⁶ Yahweh God commanded the man, saying, "From every tree in the garden you may freely eat. ¹⁷ But from the tree of the knowledge of good and evil you may not eat, for on the day that you eat from it, you will surely die." (Genesis 2:16-17 ULT)

Translation Strategies

Order the information in a way that will be clear to your readers. If the order of information is clear as it is in the ULT, then use that order. But if the order is confusing or gives the wrong meaning, then change the order so that it is more clear.

1. If you put information from one verse before information from an earlier verse, then combine the verses and put a hyphen between the two verse numbers.

See how to mark verses in [translationStudio](#).

Examples of Translation Strategies Applied

(1) If information from one verse is put before information from an earlier verse, then combine the verses and put the verse numbers before the first verse with a hyphen between them.

² you must select three cities for yourself in the middle of your land that Yahweh your God is giving you to possess. ³ You must build a road and divide the borders of your land into three parts, the land that Yahweh your God is causing you to inherit, so that everyone who kills another person may flee there. (Deuteronomy 19:2-3)

²⁻³ you must divide into three parts the land that he is giving to you. Then select a city in each part. You must make good roads in order that people can get to those cities easily. Someone who kills another person can escape to one of those cities to be safe. (Deuteronomy 19:2-3 UST)

Next we recommend you learn about:

[\[\[rc://en/ta/man/translate/translate-chapverse\]\]](#)

(Go back to: [1 Chronicles 4:13](#); [4:17](#); [6:78](#); [6:79](#); [8:17](#); [8:19](#); [8:20](#); [8:22](#); [8:26](#))



unfoldingWord® Translation Words

Version 14

Aaron

Facts:

Aaron was Moses' older brother. God chose Aaron to be the first high priest for the people of Israel.

- Aaron helped Moses speak to Pharaoh about letting the Israelites go free.
- While the Israelites were traveling through the desert, Aaron sinned by making an idol for the people to worship.
- God also appointed Aaron and his descendants to be the [priest](#) priests for the people of Israel.

(Translation suggestions: [How to Translate Names](#))

(See also: [priest](#), [Moses](#), [Israel](#))

Bible References:

- 1 Chronicles 23:14
- Acts 07:38-40
- Exodus 28:1-3
- Luke 01:05
- Numbers 16:45

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **09:15** God warned Moses and **Aaron** that Pharaoh would be stubborn.
- **10:05** Pharaoh called Moses and **Aaron** and told them that if they stopped the plague, the Israelites could leave Egypt.
- **13:09** God chose Moses' brother, **Aaron**, and Aaron's descendants to be his priests.
- **13:11** So they (the Israelites) brought gold to **Aaron** and asked him to form it into an idol for them!
- **14:07** They (the Israelites) became angry with Moses and **Aaron** and said, "Oh, why did you bring us to this horrible place?"

Word Data:

- Strong's: H175, G2

(Go back to: [1 Chronicles 6:3](#); [6:50](#); [6:54](#); [6:57](#); [15:4](#); [23:13](#); [23:28](#); [23:32](#); [24:1](#); [24:19](#); [24:31](#))

Abraham, Abram

Facts:

Abram was a Chaldean man from the city of Ur who was chosen by God to be the forefather of the Israelites. God changed his name to "Abraham."

- The name "Abram" means "exalted father."
- "Abraham" means "father of many."
- God promised Abraham that he would have many descendants, who would become a great nation.
- Abraham believed God and obeyed him. God led Abraham to move from Chaldea to the land of Canaan.
- Abraham and his wife Sarah, when they were very old and living in the land of Canaan, had a son, Isaac.

(Translation suggestions: [Translate Names](#))

(See also: [Canaan](#), Chaldea, Sarah, Isaac)

Bible References:

- Galatians 03:08
- Genesis 11:29-30
- Genesis 21:04
- Genesis 22:02
- James 02:23
- Matthew 01:02

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **04:06** When **Abram** arrived in Canaan, God said, "Look all around you. I will give to you and your descendants all the land that you can see as an inheritance."
- **05:04** Then God changed **Abram's** name to **Abraham**, which means "father of many."
- **05:05** About a year later, when **Abraham** was 100 years old and Sarah was 90, Sarah gave birth to Abraham's son.
- **05:06** When Isaac was a young man, God tested **Abraham's** faith by saying, "Take Isaac, your only son, and kill him as a sacrifice to me."
- **06:01** When **Abraham** was very old and his son, Isaac, had grown to be a man, **Abraham** sent one of his servants back to the land where his relatives lived to find a wife for his son, Isaac.
- **06:04** After a long time, **Abraham** died and all of the promises that God had made to him in the covenant were passed on to Isaac.
- **21:02** God promised **Abraham** that through him all people groups of the world would receive a blessing.

Word Data:

- Strong's: H87, H85, G11

(Go back to: [1 Chronicles 1:27](#); [1:28](#); [1:32](#); [1:34](#); [16:16](#); [29:18](#))

adversary, enemy

Definition:

An "adversary" is a person (or group of people) who is opposed to someone else. The term "enemy" has a similar meaning.

- Your adversary can be a person who tries to oppose or harm another person.
- When two nations fight, each can be called an "adversary" of the other.
- In the Bible, the devil is referred to as an "adversary" and an "enemy."
- The term "adversary" may be translated as "opponent" or "enemy," but it suggests a stronger form of opposition.

(See also: Satan)

Bible References:

- 1 Timothy 05:14
- Isaiah 09:11
- Job 06:23
- Lamentations 04:12
- Luke 12:59
- Matthew 13:25

Word Data:

- Strong's: H341, H6146, H6887, H6862, H6965, H7790, H7854, H8130, H8324, G476, G480, G2189, G2190, G5227

(Go back to: [1 Chronicles 14:11](#); [17:8](#); [17:10](#); [21:12](#); [21:13](#); [22:9](#))

advice, advise, advisor, counsel, counselor, counsels

Definition:

The terms “counsel” and “advice” have the same meaning and refer to helping someone decide wisely about what to do in a certain situation. A wise “counselor” or “advisor” is someone who gives advice or counsel that will help a person make right choices.

- Kings often have official advisors or counselors to help them decide important matters that affect the people they are ruling.
- Sometimes the advice or counsel that is given is not good. Evil advisors may urge a king to take action or make a decree that will harm him or his people.
- Depending on the context, “advice” or “counsel” could also be translated as “help in deciding” or “warnings” or “exhortations” or “guidance.”
- The action, to “counsel” could be translated as to “advise” or to “make suggestions” or to “exhort.”
- Note that “counsel” is a different word than “council,” which refers to a group of people.

(See also: exhort, Holy Spirit, wise)

Bible References:

Word Data:

- Strong's: H1697, H1847, H1875, H1884, H1907, H3272, H3289, H3982, H4156, H4431, H5475, H5779, H6440, H6963, H6098, H7592, H8458, G1011, G1012, G1106, G4823, G4825

(Go back to: [1 Chronicles 13:1](#); [26:14](#); [27:32](#); [27:33](#))

afflict, affliction, distress

Definition:

The term "afflict" means to cause someone distress or suffering. An "affliction" is the disease, emotional grief, or other disaster that results from this.

- Sometimes God afflicted his people with sickness or other hardships with the intention for them to repent of their sins and turn back to him.
- God caused afflictions or plagues to come on the people of Egypt because their king refused to obey God.
- To "be afflicted with" means to suffer from some kind of distress, such as a disease, persecution, or emotional grief.

Translation Suggestions:

- To "afflict" someone could be translated as "cause someone to experience troubles" or "cause someone to suffer" or "cause suffering to come."
- A phrase like "afflict someone with leprosy" could be translated as "cause someone to be sick with leprosy."
- When a disease or disaster is sent to "afflict" people or animals, this could be translated as "cause suffering to."
- Depending on the context, the term "affliction" could be translated as "calamity" or "sickness" or "suffering" or "great distress."
- The phrase "afflicted with" could also be translated as "suffering from" or "sick with."

(See also: leprosy, plague, suffer)

Bible References:

- 2 Thessalonians 01:06
- Amos 05:12
- Colossians 01:24
- Exodus 22:22-24
- Genesis 12:17-20
- Genesis 15:12-13
- Genesis 29:32

Word Data:

- Strong's: H205, H3013, H3905, H3906, H6031, H6039, H6040, H6041, H6862, H6869, H6887, H7451, H7489, G2346, G2347, G3804

(Go back to: [1 Chronicles 16:22](#); [21:17](#))

altar

Definition:

An altar was a raised structure on which the Israelites burned animals and grains as offerings to God.

- During Bible times, simple altars were often made by forming a mound of packed-down dirt or by carefully placing large stones to form a stable pile.
- Some special box-shaped altars were made of wood overlaid with metals such as gold, brass, or bronze.
- Other people groups living near the Israelites also built altars to offer sacrifices to their gods.

(See also: altar of incense, false god, [grain offering](#), [sacrifice](#))

Bible References:

- Genesis 08:20
- Genesis 22:09
- James 02:21
- Luke 11:49-51
- Matthew 05:23
- Matthew 23:19

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **03:14** After Noah got off the boat, he built an **altar** and sacrificed some of each kind of animal which could be used for a sacrifice.
- **05:08** When they reached the place of sacrifice, Abraham tied up his son Isaac and laid him on an **altar**.
- **13:09** A priest would kill the animal and burn it on the **altar**.
- **16:06** He (Gideon) built a new altar dedicated to God near where the **altar** to the idol used to be and made a sacrifice to God on it.

Word Data:

- Strong's: H741, H2025, H4056, H4196, G1041, G2379

(Go back to: [1 Chronicles 6:49](#); [16:40](#); [21:18](#); [21:22](#); [21:26](#); [22:1](#); [28:18](#))

amen, truly

Definition:

The term “amen” is a word used to emphasize or call attention to what a person has said. It is often used at the end of a prayer. Sometimes it is translated as “truly.”

- When used at the end of a prayer, “amen” communicates agreement with the prayer or expresses a desire that the prayer be fulfilled.
- In his teaching, Jesus used “amen” to emphasize the truth of what he said. He often followed that by “and I say to you” to introduce another teaching that related to the previous teaching.
- When Jesus uses “amen” this way, some English versions (and the ULT) translate this as “verily” or “truly.”
- Another word meaning “truly” is sometimes translated as “surely” or “certainly” and is also used to emphasize what the speaker is saying.

Translation Suggestions:

- Consider whether the target language has a special word or phrase that is used to emphasize something that has been said.
- When used at the end of a prayer or to confirm something, “amen” could be translated as “let it be so” or “may this happen” or “that is true.”
- When Jesus says, “truly I tell you,” this could also be translated as “Yes, I tell you sincerely” or “That is true, and I also tell you.”
- The phrase “truly, truly I tell you” could be translated as “I tell you this very sincerely” or “I tell you this very earnestly” or “what I am telling you is true.”

(See also: [fulfill](#), [true](#))

Bible References:

- Deuteronomy 27:15
- John 05:19
- Jude 01:24-25
- Matthew 26:33-35
- Philemon 01:23-25
- Revelation 22:20-21

Word Data:

- Strong's: H543, G281

(Go back to: [1 Chronicles 16:36](#))

Ammon, Ammonite

Facts:

The “people of Ammon” or the “Ammonites” were a people group in Canaan. They were descended from Ben-ammi, who was the son of Lot by his younger daughter.

- The term “Ammonitess” refers specifically to a female Ammonite. This could also be translated as “Ammonite woman.”
- The Ammonites lived east of the Jordan River and were enemies of the Israelites.
- At one point, the Ammonites hired a prophet named Balaam to curse Israel, but God did not allow him to do it.

(Translation suggestions: [How to Translate Names](#))

(See also: curse, Jordan River, Lot)

Bible References:

- 1 Chronicles 19:1-3
- Ezekiel 25:02
- Genesis 19:38
- Joshua 12:1-2
- Judges 11:27
- Zephaniah 02:08

Word Data:

- Strong's: H5983, H5984, H5985

(Go back to: [1 Chronicles 11:39](#))

Amorite

Facts:

The Amorites were a powerful group of people who were descended from Noah's grandson Canaan.

- Their name means "high one," which may refer to the mountainous regions where they lived or to the fact that they were known to be very tall.
- The Amorites lived in regions on both sides of the Jordan River. The city of Ai was inhabited by Amorites.
- God refers to the "sin of the Amorites," which included their worship of false gods and the sinful practices associated.
- Joshua led the Israelites in destroying the Amorites, as God had commanded them to do.

Bible References:

- Amos 02:09
- Ezekiel 16:03
- Genesis 10:16
- Genesis 15:14-16
- Joshua 09:10

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **15:07** Sometime later, the kings of another people group in Canaan, the **Amorites**, heard that the Gibeonites had made a peace treaty with the Israelites, so they combined their armies into one large army and attacked Gibeon.
- **15:08** In the early morning they surprised the **Amorite** armies and attacked them.
- **15:09** God fought for Israel that day. He caused the **Amorites** to be confused and he sent large hailstones that killed many of the **Amorites**.
- **15:10** God also caused the sun to stay in one place in the sky so that Israel would have enough time to completely defeat the **Amorites**.

Word Data:

- Strong's: H567,

(Go back to: [1 Chronicles 1:14](#))

ancestor, father, fathered, forefather, grandfather

Definition:

The term “father” refers to a person’s male parent.

- The terms “father” and “forefather” are often used to refer to a male ancestor(s) of a certain person or people group. This could also be translated a “ancestor” or “ancestral father.”
- The expression “the father of” can figuratively refer to a person who is the leader a group of related people or the source of something. For example, in Genesis 4 “the father of all who live in tents” could mean, “the first clan leader of the first people who ever lived in tents.”
- The apostle Paul figuratively called himself the “father” of those he had helped to become Christians through sharing the gospel with them.

Translation Suggestions

- When talking about a father and his literal son, this term should be translated using the usual term to refer to a father in the language.
- “God the Father” should also be translated using the usual, common word for “father.”
- When referring to forefathers, this term could be translated as “ancestors” or “ancestral fathers.”
- When Paul refers to himself figuratively as a father to believers in Christ, this could be translated as “spiritual father” or “father in Christ.”
- Sometimes the word “father” can be translated as “clan leader,” depending on the context.
- The phrase “father of all lies” could be translated as “source of all lies” or “the one from whom all lies come.”

(See also: God the Father, [son](#), Son of God)

Bible References:

- Acts 07:02
- Acts 07:32
- Acts 07:45
- Acts 22:03
- Genesis 31:30
- Genesis 31:42
- Genesis 31:53
- Hebrews 07:4-6
- John 04:12
- Joshua 24:3-4
- Malachi 03:07
- Mark 10:7-9
- Matthew 01:07
- Matthew 03:09
- Matthew 10:21
- Matthew 18:14
- Romans 04:12

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H1, H2, H25, H369, H539, H1121, H1730, H1733, H2524, H3205, H3490, H4940, H5971, H7223, G540, G1080, G3737, G3962, G3964, G3966, G3967, G3970, G3971, G3995, G4245, G4269, G4613

(Go back to: [1 Chronicles 2:17](#); [2:21](#); [2:23](#); [2:24](#); [2:42](#); [2:44](#); [2:45](#); [2:49](#); [2:50](#); [2:51](#); [2:52](#); [2:55](#); [4:3](#); [4:4](#); [4:5](#); [4:11](#); [4:12](#); [4:14](#); [4:17](#); [4:18](#); [4:19](#); [4:21](#); [4:38](#); [5:1](#); [5:13](#); [5:15](#); [5:24](#); [5:25](#); [6:19](#); [7:2](#); [7:4](#); [7:7](#); [7:9](#); [7:11](#); [7:14](#); [7:22](#); [7:31](#); [7:40](#); [8:6](#); [8:10](#);

8:13; 8:28; 8:29; 9:9; 9:13; 9:19; 9:33; 9:34; 9:35; 12:17; 12:28; 12:30; 15:12; 17:11; 17:13; 19:2; 19:3; 21:17; 22:10; 23:9; 23:11; 23:24; 24:2; 24:4; 24:6; 24:19; 24:30; 24:31; 25:3; 25:6; 26:6; 26:10; 26:13; 26:21; 26:26; 26:31; 26:32; 27:1; 28:4; 28:6; 28:9; 29:6; 29:10; 29:15; 29:18; 29:20; 29:23)

appoint, appointed

Definition:

The terms “appoint” and “appointed” refer to choosing someone to fulfill a specific task or role.

- To “be appointed” can also refer to being “chosen” to receive something, as in “appointed to eternal life.” That people were “appointed to eternal life” means they were chosen to receive eternal life.
- The phrase “appointed time” refers to God’s “chosen time” or “planned time” for something to happen.
- The word “appoint” may also mean to “command” or “assign” someone to do something.

Translation Suggestions:

- Depending on the context, ways to translate “appoint” could include “choose” or “assign” or “formally choose” or “designate.”
- The term “appointed” could be translated as “assigned” or “planned” or “specifically chose.”
- The phrase “be appointed” could also be translated as “be chosen.”

Bible References:

- 1 Samuel 08:11
- Acts 03:20
- Acts 06:02
- Acts 13:48
- Genesis 41:33-34
- Numbers 03:9-10

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H561, H977, H2163, H2296, H2706, H2708, H2710, H3198, H3245, H3259, H3677, H3983, H4150, H4151, H4152, H4483, H4487, H4662, H5324, H5344, H5414, H5567, H5975, H6310, H6485, H6565, H6635, H6680, H6923, H6942, H6966, H7760, H7896, G322, G606, G1299, G1303, G1935, G2525, G2749, G4287, G4296, G4384, G4929, G5021, G5087

(Go back to: [1 Chronicles 6:31](#); [10:10](#); [11:25](#); [17:9](#); [18:6](#); [18:13](#); [21:15](#); [21:16](#); [26:10](#); [26:32](#))

Asaph

Facts:

Asaph was a Levite priest and gifted musician who composed the music for the psalms of King David. He also wrote his own psalms.

- Asaph was appointed by King David to be one of three musicians who were responsible for providing songs for worship in the temple. Some of these songs were also prophecies.
- Asaph trained his sons and they carried on this responsibility, playing musical instruments and prophesying in the temple.
- Some of the musical instruments included the lute, harp, trumpet, and cymbals.
- Psalms 50 and 73-83 are said to be from Asaph. It may be that some of these psalms were written by his family members.

(Translation suggestions: [Translate Names](#))

(See also: descendant, [harp](#), lute, [prophet](#), psalm, [trumpet](#))

Bible References:

- 1 Chronicles 06:39-43
- 2 Chronicles 35:15
- Nehemiah 02:08
- Psalm 050:1-2

Word Data:

- Strong's: H623

(Go back to: [1 Chronicles 6:39](#); [9:15](#); [15:17](#); [15:19](#); [16:5](#); [16:7](#); [25:1](#); [25:2](#); [25:6](#); [26:1](#))

assembly, assemble, congregation, meeting

Definition:

The term “assembly” usually refers to a group of people who come together for some reason, often to discuss problems, give advice, or make decisions. An assembly can be a group that is organized in an official and somewhat permanent way, or it can be a group of people who come together temporarily for a specific purpose or occasion.

Old Testament

- In the Old Testament there was a special kind of assembly called a “sacred assembly” in which the people of Israel would gather to worship Yahweh.
- Sometimes the term “assembly” referred to the Israelites in general, as a group.

New Testament

- In the New Testament, an assembly of 70 Jewish leaders in major cities such as Jerusalem would meet to judge legal matters and to settle disputes between people. This assembly was known as the “Sanhedrin” or the “Council.”

Translation Suggestions

- Depending on the context, “assembly” could also be translated as “special gathering” or “congregation” or “council” or “army” or “large group.”
- When the term “assembly” refers generally to the Israelites as a whole, it could also be translated as “community” or “people of Israel.”
- The phrase, “all the assembly” could be translated as “all the people” or “the whole group of Israelites” or “everyone.” (See: [hyperbole](#))
- A large gathering of enemy soldiers was sometimes also referred to as an “assembly.” This could be translated as “army.”

(See also: council)

Bible References:

- 1 Kings 08:14
- Acts 07:38
- Ezra 10:12-13
- Hebrews 12:22-24
- Leviticus 04:20-21
- Nehemiah 08:1-3

Word Data:

- Strong's: H622, H1481, H2199, H3259, H4150, H4186, H4744, H5475, H5712, H6116, H6908, H6950, H6951, H6952, G1577, G3831, G4863, G4864, G4871, G4905

(Go back to: [1 Chronicles 11:13](#); [13:2](#); [13:4](#); [19:7](#); [28:8](#); [29:1](#); [29:10](#); [29:20](#))

Assyria, Assyrian, Assyrian Empire

Facts:

Assyria was a powerful nation during the time the Israelites were living in the land of Canaan. The Assyrian Empire was a group of nations ruled by an Assyrian king.

- The nation of Assyria was located in a region that is now the northern part of Iraq.
- The Assyrians fought against Israel at different times in their history.
- In the year 722 BC, the Assyrians completely conquered the kingdom of Israel and forced many of the Israelites to move to Assyria.
- The remaining Israelites intermarried with foreigners that the Assyrians had brought into Israel from Samaria. The descendants of those people who intermarried were later called the Samaritans.

(See also: Samaria)

Bible References:

- Genesis 10:11
- Genesis 25:17-18
- Isaiah 07:16-17
- Jeremiah 50:17
- Micah 07:11-13

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **20:02** So God punished both kingdoms by allowing their enemies to destroy them. The kingdom of Israel was destroyed by the **Assyrian Empire**, a powerful, cruel nation. The **Assyrians** killed many people in the kingdom of Israel, took away everything of value, and burned much of the country.
- **20:03** The **Assyrians** gathered all the leaders, the rich people, and the people with skills and took them to **Assyria**.
- **20:04** Then the **Assyrians** brought foreigners to live in the land where the kingdom of Israel had been.

Word Data:

- Strong's: H804, H1121

(Go back to: [1 Chronicles 5:6](#); [5:26](#))

Babylon, Babylonia, Babylonian

Facts:

The city of Babylon was the capital of the ancient region of Babylonia, which was also part of the Babylonian Empire.

- Babylon was located along the Euphrates River, in the same region where the Tower of Babel had been built hundreds of years before.
- Sometimes the word “Babylon” refers to the entire Babylonian Empire. For example, the “king of Babylon” ruled the entire empire, not just the city.
- The Babylonians were a powerful people group who attacked the kingdom of Judah and kept the people in exile in Babylonia for 70 years.
- Part of this region was called “Chaldea” and the people living there were the “Chaldeans.” As a result, the term “Chaldea” was often used to refer to Babylonia. (See: [synecdoche](#))

(See also: Babel, Chaldea, Judah, [Nebuchadnezzar](#))

Bible References:

- 1 Chronicles 09:01
- 2 Kings 17:24-26
- Acts 07:43
- Daniel 01:02
- Ezekiel 12:13
- Matthew 01:11
- Matthew 01:17

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **20:06** About 100 years after the Assyrians destroyed the kingdom of Israel, God sent Nebuchadnezzar, king of the **Babylonians**, to attack the kingdom of Judah. **Babylon** was a powerful empire.
- **20:07** But after a few years, the king of Judah rebelled against **Babylon**. So, the **Babylonians** came back and attacked the kingdom of Judah. They captured the city of Jerusalem, destroyed the Temple, and took away all the treasures of the city and the Temple.
- **20:09** Nebuchadnezzar and his army took almost all of the people of the kingdom of Judah to **Babylon**, leaving only the poorest people behind to plant the fields.
- **20:11** About seventy years later, Cyrus, the king of the Persians, defeated **Babylon**.

Word Data:

- Strong's: H3778, H3779, H8152, H894, H895, H896, G897

(Go back to: [1 Chronicles 9:1](#))

barley

Definition:

The term “barley” refers to a kind of grain that is used to make bread.

- The barley plant has a long stalk with a head at the top where the seeds or grains grow.
- Barley does well in warmer weather so it is often harvested in spring or summer.
- When barley is threshed, the edible seeds are separated from the worthless chaff.
- Barley grain is ground up into flour, which is then mixed with water or oil to make bread.
- If barley is not known, this could be translated as “grain called barley” or “barley grain.”

(See also: [How to Translate Unknowns](#))

(See also: grain, [thresh](#), [wheat](#))

Bible References:

- 1 Chronicles 11:12-14
- Job 31:40
- Judges 07:14
- Numbers 05:15
- Revelation 06:06

Word Data:

- Strong's: H8184, G2915, G2916

([Go back to: 1 Chronicles 11:13](#))

Bashan

Facts:

Bashan was a region of land east of the Sea of Galilee. It covered an area that is now part of Syria and the Golan Heights.

- An Old Testament city of refuge called “Golan” was located in the region of Bashan.
- Bashan was a very fertile region known for its oak trees and pasturing animals.
- Genesis 14 records that Bashan was the site of a war between several kings and their nations.
- During Israel's wanderings in the desert after their escape from Egypt, they took possession of part of the region of Bashan.
- Years later, King Solomon obtained supplies from that region.

(Translation suggestions: [How to Translate Names](#))

(See also: [Egypt](#), oak, Sea of Galilee, Syria)

Bible References:

- 1 Kings 04:13
- Amos 04:01
- Jeremiah 22:20-21
- Joshua 09:10

Word Data:

- Strong's: H1316

([Go back to: 1 Chronicles 5:11](#))

Benjamin, Benjamite

Facts:

Benjamin was the youngest son born to Jacob and his wife Rachel. His name means, “son of my right hand.”

- He and his older brother Joseph were the only children of Rachel, who died after Benjamin was born.
- The descendants of Benjamin became one of the twelve tribes of Israel.
- King Saul was from the Israelite tribe of Benjamin.
- The apostle Paul was also from the tribe of Benjamin.

(Translation suggestions: [How to Translate Names](#))

(See also: [Israel](#), [Jacob](#), [Joseph \(OT\)](#), Paul, Rachel, twelve tribes of Israel)

Bible References:

- 1 Chronicles 02:1-2
- 1 Kings 02:08
- Acts 13:21-22
- Genesis 35:18
- Genesis 42:04
- Genesis 42:35-36
- Philippians 03:4-5

Word Data:

- Strong's: H1144, G958

(Go back to: [1 Chronicles 2:2](#); [6:60](#); [6:65](#); [7:6](#); [7:10](#); [8:1](#); [8:40](#); [9:3](#); [9:4](#); [9:7](#); [11:31](#); [12:16](#); [12:29](#); [21:6](#); [27:21](#))

bless, blessed, blessing

Definition:

To “bless” someone or something means to cause good and beneficial things to happen to the person or thing that is being blessed.

- Blessing someone also means expressing a desire for positive and beneficial things to happen to that person.
- In Bible times, a father would often pronounce a formal blessing on his children.
- When people “bless” God or express a desire that God be blessed, this means they are praising him.
- The term “bless” is sometimes used for consecrating food before it is eaten, or for thanking and praising God for the food.

Translation Suggestions:

- To “bless” could also be translated as to “provide abundantly for” or to “be very kind and favorable toward.”
- “God has brought great blessing to” could be translated as “God has given many good things to” or “God has provided abundantly for” or “God has caused many good things to happen to”.
- “He is blessed” could be translated as “he will greatly benefit” or “he will experience good things” or “God will cause him to flourish.”
- “Blessed is the person who” could be translated as “How good it is for the person who.”
- Expressions like “blessed be the Lord” could be translated as “May the Lord be praised” or “Praise the Lord” or “I praise the Lord.”
- In the context of blessing food, this could be translated as “thanked God for the food” or “praised God for giving them food” or “consecrated the food by praising God for it.”

(See also: [praise](#))

Bible References:

- 1 Corinthians 10:16
- Acts 13:34
- Ephesians 01:03
- Genesis 14:20
- Isaiah 44:03
- James 01:25
- Luke 06:20
- Matthew 26:26
- Nehemiah 09:05
- Romans 04:09

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **01:07** God saw that it was good and he **blessed** them.
- **01:15** God made Adam and Eve in his own image. He **blessed** them and told them, “Have many children and grandchildren and fill the earth.”
- **01:16** So God rested from all he had been doing. He **blessed** the seventh day and made it holy, because on this day he rested from his work.
- **04:04** “I will make your name great. I will **bless** those who **bless** you and curse those who curse you. All families on earth will be **blessed** because of you.”
- **04:07** Melchizedek **blessed** Abram and said, “May God Most High who owns heaven and earth **bless** Abram.”
- **07:03** Isaac wanted to give his **blessing** to Esau.

- **08:05** Even in prison, Joseph remained faithful to God, and God **blessed** him.

Word Data:

- Strong's: H833, H835, H1288, H1289, H1293, G1757, G2127, G2128, G2129, G3106, G3107, G3108, G6050

(Go back to: [1 Chronicles 4:10](#); [13:14](#); [16:2](#); [16:36](#); [17:27](#); [26:5](#); [29:10](#); [29:20](#))

blood

Definition:

The term “blood” refers to the red liquid that comes out of a person’s skin when there is an injury or wound. Blood brings life-giving nutrients to a person’s entire body.

- Blood is a metaphor for life, and when it is shed or poured out, it is a metaphor for the loss of life, or death.
- When people made sacrifices to God, they killed an animal and poured its blood on the altar. This symbolized the sacrifice of the animal’s life to pay for people’s sins.
- The expression “flesh and blood” refers to human beings.
- The expression “own flesh and blood” refers to people who are biologically related.

Translation Suggestions:

- This term should be translated with the term that is used for blood in the target language.
- The expression “flesh and blood” could be translated as “people” or “human beings.”
- Depending on the context, the expression “my own flesh and blood” could be translated as “my own family” or “my own relatives” or “my own people.”
- If there is an expression in the target language that is used with this meaning, that expression could be used to translate “flesh and blood.”

(See also: flesh)

Bible References:

- 1 John 01:07
- 1 Samuel 14:32
- Acts 02:20
- Acts 05:28
- Colossians 01:20
- Galatians 01:16
- Genesis 04:11
- Psalms 016:4
- Psalms 105:28-30

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **08:03** Before Joseph’s brothers returned home, they tore Joseph’s robe and dipped it in goat’s **blood**.
- **10:03** God turned the Nile River into **blood**, but Pharaoh still would not let the Israelites go.
- **11:05** All the houses of the Israelites had **blood** around the doors, so God passed over those houses and everyone inside was safe. They were saved because of the lamb’s **blood**.
- **13:09** The **blood** of the animal that was sacrificed covered the person’s sin and made that person clean in God’s sight.
- **38:05** Then Jesus took a cup and said, “Drink this. It is my **blood** of the New Covenant that is poured out for the forgiveness of sins.
- **48:10** When anyone believes in Jesus, the **blood** of Jesus takes away that person’s sin, and God’s punishment passes over him.

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H1818, H5332, G129, G130, G131

(Go back to: [1 Chronicles 22:8](#))

Boaz

Facts:

Boaz was an Israelite man who lived during the time when there were judges ruled Israel. He married a Moabite woman named Ruth and became both the great grandfather of King David and an ancestor of Jesus Christ.

- He was a relative of an Israelite woman named Naomi who had returned to Israel after her husband and sons died in Moab.
- Boaz “redeemed” Naomi’s widowed daughter-in-law Ruth by marrying her and giving her a future with a husband and children.

(Translation suggestions: [How to Translate Names](#))

(See also: [Moab](#), [redeem](#), Ruth)

Bible References:

- 1 Chronicles 02:12
- 2 Chronicles 03:17
- Luke 03:30-32
- Matthew 01:05
- Ruth 02:04

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H1162

(Go back to: [1 Chronicles 2:11](#); [2:12](#))

bow, bow down, knelt, bend, bend the knee

Definition:

To bow means to bend over to humbly express respect and honor toward someone. To “bow down” means to bend over or kneel down very low, often with face and hands toward the ground.

- Other expressions include “bow the knee” (meaning to kneel) and “bow the head” (meaning to bend the head forward in humble respect or in sorrow).
- Bowing down can also be a sign of distress or mourning. Someone who is “bowed down” has been brought to a low position of humility.
- Often a person will bow in the presence of someone who is of higher status or greater importance, such as kings and other rulers.
- Bowing down before God is an expression of worship to him.
- In the Bible, people bowed down to Jesus when they realized from his miracles and teaching that he had come from God.
- The Bible says that when Jesus comes back someday, everyone will bow the knee to worship him.

Translation Suggestions:

- Depending on the context, this term could be translated with a word or phrase that means “bend forward” or “bend the head” or “kneel.”
- The term “bow down” could be translated as “kneel down” or “prostrate oneself.”
- Some languages will have more than one way of translating this term, depending on the context.

(See also: [humble](#), [worship](#))

Bible References:

- 2 Kings 05:18
- Exodus 20:05
- Genesis 24:26
- Genesis 44:14
- Isaiah 44:19
- Luke 24:05
- Matthew 02:11
- Revelation 03:09

Word Data:

- Strong's: H86, H3721, H3766, H5753, H5791, H6915, H7743, H7812, H7817, G1120, G2578, G2827, G4098

(Go back to: [1 Chronicles 5:10](#); [10:1](#); [10:4](#); [10:5](#); [20:8](#); [21:14](#); [21:16](#); [24:31](#); [25:8](#); [26:13](#); [26:14](#); [29:20](#))

bread

Definition:

Bread is a food made from flour mixed with water and oil to form a dough. The dough is then shaped into a loaf and baked.

- When the term “loaf” occurs by itself, it means “loaf of bread.”
- Bread dough is usually made with something that makes it rise, such as yeast. However, bread can also be made without yeast so that it does not rise. This is called “unleavened bread” in the Bible. The ancient Israelites ate “unleavened bread” during the passover meal.
- Since bread was the main food for many people in biblical times, this term is also used in the Bible to refer to food in general. (See: [Synecdoche](#)) Many times the term “bread” can be translated more generally as “food.”
- The phrase “bread of the presence” refers to twelve loaves of bread that were placed on a golden table in the tabernacle or temple building as a sacrifice to God. These loaves represented the twelve tribes of Israel and were only for the priests to eat. This could be translated as “bread showing that God lived among them.”
- The term “bread from heaven” refers to the special white food called “manna” that God provided for the Israelites when they were wandering through the desert. Jesus also called himself the “bread that came down from heaven” and the “bread of life.”

(See also: Passover, tabernacle, [temple](#), unleavened bread, yeast)

Bible References:

- Acts 02:46
- Acts 27:35
- Exodus 16:15
- Luke 09:13
- Mark 06:38
- Matthew 04:04
- Matthew 11:18

Word Data:

- Strong's: H2557, H3899, H4635, H4682, G106, G740, G4286

(Go back to: [1 Chronicles 9:32](#); [12:40](#); [16:3](#))

bronze

Definition:

The term “bronze” refers to a kind of metal that is made from melting together the metals, copper and tin. It has a dark brown color, slightly red.

- Bronze resists water corrosion and is a good conductor of heat.
- In ancient times, bronze was used for making tools, weapons, artwork, altars, cooking pots, and soldiers’ armor, among other things.
- Many building materials for the tabernacle and temple were made of bronze.
- Idols of false gods were also often made of bronze metal.
- Bronze objects were made by first melting the bronze metal into a liquid and then pouring it into molds. This process was called “casting.”

(See also: [How to Translate Unknowns](#))

(See also: armor, tabernacle, [temple](#))

Bible References:

- 1 Kings 07:16
- 1 Samuel 17:37-38
- Daniel 02:44-45
- Exodus 25:3-7
- Revelation 01:15

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H5153, H5154, H5174, H5178, G5470, G5474, G5475

(Go back to: [1 Chronicles 15:19](#); [18:8](#))

brother

Definition:

The term “brother” refers to a male sibling who shares at least one biological parent.

- In the Old Testament, the term “brothers” is also used as a general reference to relatives or associates, such as members of the same tribe, clan, occupation, or people group. When used in this way, the term can refer to both men and women.
- In the New Testament, the apostles often use the term “brothers” to refer to fellow Christians, including both men and women.
- A few times in the New Testament, the apostles used the term “sister” when referring specifically to a fellow Christian who was a woman, or to emphasize that both men and women are being included. For example, James emphasizes that he is talking about all believers when he refers to “a brother or sister who is in need of food or clothing.”

Translation Suggestions:

- It is best to translate this term with the literal word that is used in the target language to refer to a natural or biological brother, unless this would give wrong meaning.
- In the Old Testament especially, when “brothers” is used very generally to refer to members of the same family, clan, or people group, possible translations could include “relatives” or “clan members” or “fellow Israelites.”
- In the context of referring to a fellow believer in Christ, this term could be translated as “brother in Christ” or “spiritual brother.”
- If both males and females are being referred to and “brother” would give a wrong meaning, then a more general kinship term could be used that would include both males and females.
- Other ways to translate this term so that it refers to both male and female believers could be “fellow believers” or “Christian brothers and sisters.”
- Make sure to check the context to determine whether only men are being referred to, or whether both men and women are included.

(See also: [apostle](#), [God the Father](#), [sister](#), [spirit](#))

Bible References:

- Acts 07:26
- Genesis 29:10
- Leviticus 19:17
- Nehemiah 03:01
- Philippians 04:21
- Revelation 01:09

Word Data:

- Strong's: H251, H252, H264, H1730, H2992, H2993, H2994, H7453, G80, G81, G2385, G2455, G2500, G4613, G5360, G5569

(Go back to: [1 Chronicles 1:19; 2:32; 2:42; 4:9; 4:11; 4:27; 5:2; 5:7; 5:13; 6:39; 6:44; 6:48; 7:5; 7:16; 7:22; 7:35; 8:32; 8:39; 9:6; 9:9; 9:13; 9:17; 9:19; 9:25; 9:32; 9:38; 11:20; 11:26; 11:38; 11:45; 12:2; 12:29; 12:32; 12:39; 13:2; 15:5; 15:6; 15:7; 15:8; 15:9; 15:10; 15:12; 15:16; 15:17; 15:18; 16:7; 16:37; 16:38; 16:39; 19:11; 19:15; 20:5; 20:7; 23:22; 23:32; 24:25; 24:31; 25:7; 25:9; 25:10; 25:11; 25:12; 25:13; 25:14; 25:15; 25:16; 25:17; 25:18; 25:19; 25:20; 25:21; 25:22; 25:23; 25:24; 25:25; 25:26; 25:27; 25:28; 25:29; 25:30; 25:31; 26:7; 26:8; 26:9; 26:11; 26:12; 26:22; 26:25; 26:26; 26:28; 26:30; 26:32; 27:7; 27:18; 28:2\)](#)

burden, burdened, burdensome, heavy, hard work, hard labor, utterances

Definition:

A burden is a heavy load. It literally refers to a physical load such as a work animal would carry. The term “burden” also has several figurative meanings:

- A burden can refer to a difficult duty or important responsibility that a person has to do. He is said to be “bearing” or “carrying” a “heavy burden.”
- A cruel leader may put difficult burdens on the people he is ruling, for example by forcing them to pay large amounts of taxes.
- A person who does not want to be a burden to someone does not want to cause that other person any trouble.
- The guilt of a person’s sin is a burden to him.
- The “burden of the Lord” is a figurative way of referring to a “message from God” that a prophet must deliver to God’s people.
- The term “burden” can be translated by “responsibility” or “duty” or “heavy load” or “message,” depending on the context.

Bible References:

- 2 Thessalonians 03:6-9
- Galatians 06:1-2
- Galatians 06:03
- Genesis 49:15
- Matthew 11:30
- Matthew 23:04

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H2960, H3053, H4614, H4853, H4864, H5445, H5447, H5448, H5449, H6006, G4, G916, G922, G2347, G2599, G2655, G5413

(Go back to: [1 Chronicles 4:9](#); [11:21](#); [11:25](#))

burnt offering, offering by fire

Definition:

A “burnt offering” was a type of sacrifice to God that was burnt up by fire on an altar. It was offered to make atonement for the sins of the people. This was also called an “offering by fire.”

- Animals used for this offering were usually sheep or goats, but oxen and birds were also used.
- Except for the skin, the entire animal was burned up in this offering. The skin or hide was given to the priest.
- God commanded the Jewish people to offer burnt offerings two times every day.

(See also: [altar](#), atonement, [ox](#), [priest](#), [sacrifice](#))

Bible References:

- Exodus 40:5-7
- Genesis 08:20
- Genesis 22:1-3
- Leviticus 03:05
- Mark 12:33

Word Data:

- Strong's: H801, H5930, H7133, H8548, G3646

(Go back to: [1 Chronicles 16:1](#); [16:40](#); [21:24](#); [21:26](#); [23:31](#); [29:21](#))

call, call out

Definition:

The terms “call” and “call out” usually mean to speak loudly, but the term “call” can also mean to name or summon a person. There are also some other meanings.

- To “call out” to someone means to shout, to announce, or to proclaim. It can also mean to ask someone for help, especially God.
- Often in the Bible, “call” has a meaning of “summon” or “command to come” or “request to come.”
- God calls people to come to him and be his people. This is their “calling.”
- When God “calls” people, it means that God has appointed or chosen people to be his children, to be his servants and proclaimers of his message of salvation through Jesus.
- This term is also used in the context of naming someone. For example, “His name is called John,” means, “He is named John” or “His name is John.”
- To be “called by the name of” means that someone is given the name of someone else. God says that he has called his people by his name.
- A different expression, “I have called you by name” means that God has specifically chosen that person.

Translation Suggestions:

- The term “call” could be translated by a word that means “summon,” which includes the idea of being intentional or purposeful in calling.
- The expression “call out to you” could be translated as “ask you for help” or “pray to you urgently.”
- When the Bible says that God has “called” us to be his servants, this could be translated as, “specially chose us” or “appointed us” to be his servants.
- “You must call his name” can also be translated as, “you must name him.”
- “His name is called” could also be translated as, “his name is” or “he is named.”
- To “call out” could be translated as, “say loudly” or “shout” or “say with a loud voice.” Make sure the translation of this does not sound like the person is angry.
- The expression “your calling” could be translated as “your purpose” or “God’s purpose for you” or “God’s special work for you.”
- To “call on the name of the Lord” could be translated as “seek the Lord and depend on him” or “trust in the Lord and obey him.”
- To “call for” something could be translated by “demand” or “ask for” or “command.”
- The expression “you are called by my name” could be translated as, “I have given you my name, showing that you belong to me.”
- When God says, “I have called you by name,” this could be translated as, “I know you and have chosen you.”

(See also: [pray](#), cry)

Bible References:

- 1 Kings 18:24
- 1 Thessalonians 04:07
- 2 Timothy 01:09
- Ephesians 04:01
- Galatians 01:15
- Matthew 02:15
- Philippians 03:14

Word Data:

- Strong's: H559, H2199, H4744, H6817, H7121, H7123, H7769, H7773, G154, G363, G1458, G1528, G1941, G1951, G2028, G2046, G2564, G2821, G2822, G2840, G2919, G3004, G3106, G3333, G3343, G3603, G3686, G3687, G4316, G4341, G4377, G4779, G4867, G5455, G5537, G5581

(Go back to: [1 Chronicles 4:9](#); [6:65](#); [11:7](#); [13:6](#); [14:11](#); [16:8](#); [23:14](#))

camel

Definition:

A camel is a large, four legged animal with one or two humps on its back. (See also: [How to Translate Unknowns](#))

- In Bible times, the camel was the largest animal found in Israel and the surrounding regions.
- The camel was used mainly for carrying people and burdens.
- Some people groups also used camels for food but not the Israelites because God said that camels were unclean and were not to be eaten.
- Camels were valuable because they could move swiftly in the sand and could live without food and water for several weeks at a time.

(See also: [burden](#), [clean](#))

Bible References:

- 1 Chronicles 05:21
- 2 Chronicles 09:1-2
- Exodus 09:1-4
- Mark 10:25
- Matthew 03:04
- Matthew 19:23-24

Word Data:

- Strong's: H1581, G2574

(Go back to: [1 Chronicles 5:21](#))

Canaan, Canaanite

Facts:

Canaan was the son of Ham, who was one of Noah's sons. The Canaanites were the descendants of Canaan.

- The term "Canaan" or the "land of Canaan" also referred to an area of land between the Jordan River and the Mediterranean Sea. It extended south to the border of Egypt and north to the border of Syria.
- This land was inhabited by the Canaanites, as well as several other people groups.
- God promised to give the land of Canaan to Abraham and his descendants, the Israelites.

(Translation suggestions: [How to Translate Names](#))

(See also: Ham, Promised Land)

Bible References:

- Acts 13:19-20
- Exodus 03:7-8
- Genesis 09:18
- Genesis 10:19-20
- Genesis 13:07
- Genesis 47:02

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **04:05** He (Abram) took his wife, Sarai, together with all his servants and everything he owned and went to the land God showed him, the land of **Canaan**.
- **04:06** When Abram arrived in **Canaan** God said, "Look all around you. I will give to you and your descendants all the land that you can see as an inheritance."
- **04:09** "I give the land of **Canaan** to your descendants."
- **05:03** "I will give you and your descendants the land of **Canaan** as their possession and I will be their God forever."
- **07:08** After twenty years away from his home in **Canaan**, Jacob returned there with his family, his servants, and all his herds of animals.

Word Data:

- Strong's: H3667, H3669, G5478

(Go back to: [1 Chronicles 2:3](#))

captive, captivate, captivity, catch, captured

Definition:

The terms “captive” and “captivity” refer to capturing people and forcing them to live somewhere they do not want to live, such as in a foreign country.

- The Israelites from the kingdom of Judah were held captive in the kingdom of Babylonia for 70 years.
- Captives are often required to work for the people or nation that captured them.
- Daniel and Nehemiah were Israelite captives who worked for the Babylonian king.
- The expression to “take captive” is another way of talking about capturing someone.
- The expression, “carry you away captive” could also be translated as, “force you to live as captives” or “take you away to another country as prisoners.”
- In a figurative sense, the apostle Paul tells Christians to “take captive” every thought and make it obedient to Christ.
- He also talks about how a person can be “taken captive” by sin, which means he is “controlled by” sin.

Translation Suggestions

- Depending on the context, to be “held captive” could also be translated by, “not allowed to be free” or “kept in prison” or “forced to live in a foreign country.”
- The expression, “led captive” or “taken captive” could be translated as, “captured” or “imprisoned” or “forced to go to a foreign land.”
- The term “captives” could also be translated as, “people who were captured” or “enslaved people.”
- Depending on the context, “captivity” could also be translated as, “imprisonment” or “exile” or “forced stay in a foreign country.”

(See also: [Babylon](#), [exile](#), prison, seize)

Bible References:

- 2 Corinthians 10:05
- Isaiah 20:04
- Jeremiah 43:03
- Luke 04:18

Word Data:

- Strong's: H1123, H1473, H1540, H1546, H1547, H7617, H7622, H7628, H7633, H7686, G161, G162, G163, G164, G2221

(Go back to: [1 Chronicles 5:22](#))

cedar, cedarwood

Definition:

The term "cedar" refers to a large fir tree which normally has reddish-brown wood. Like other firs, it has cones and needle-like leaves.

- The Old Testament often mentions cedar trees in connection with Lebanon, where they grew plentifully.
- Cedar wood was used in the construction of the Jerusalem temple.
- It was also used for sacrifices and purification offerings.

(See also: fir, pure, [sacrifice](#), [temple](#))

Bible References:

- 1 Chronicles 14:1-2
- 1 Kings 07:1-2
- Isaiah 02:13
- Zechariah 11:02

Word Data:

- Strong's: H730

(Go back to: [1 Chronicles 14:1](#); [17:6](#); [22:4](#))

chief

Definition:

The term "chief" refers to the most powerful or most important leader of a particular group.

- Examples of this include, "chief musician," "chief priest," and "chief tax collector." and "chief ruler."
- It can also be used for the head of a specific family, as in Genesis 36 where certain men are named as "chiefs" of their family clans. In this context, the term "chief" could also be translated as "leader" or "head father."
- When used to describe a noun, this term could be translated as "leading" or "ruling," as in "leading musician" or "ruling priest."

(See also: chief priests, [priest](#), tax collector)

Bible References:

- Daniel 01:11-13
- Ezekiel 26:15-16
- Luke 19:02
- Psalm 004:1

Word Data:

- Strong's: H47, H441, H5057, H5387, H5632, H6496, H7218, H7225, H7227, H7229, H7262, H8269, H8334, G749, G750, G754, G4410, G4413, G5506

(Go back to: [1 Chronicles 5:7](#); [5:12](#); [9:17](#); [11:21](#); [12:3](#); [12:9](#); [15:5](#); [15:6](#); [15:7](#); [15:8](#); [15:9](#); [15:10](#); [15:16](#); [15:27](#); [16:5](#); [23:8](#); [23:11](#); [23:16](#); [23:17](#); [23:18](#); [23:19](#); [23:20](#); [24:21](#); [24:31](#); [26:10](#); [26:26](#); [26:31](#); [27:3](#); [27:8](#); [29:24](#))

clean, wash

Definition:

The term "clean" generally refers either to removing dirt or stains from something or to not having any dirt or stain in the first place. The term "wash" refers specifically to action of removing dirt or stains from something.

- "Cleanse" is the process of making something "clean." It could also be translated as "wash" or "purify."
- In the Old Testament, God told the Israelites which animals he had specified as ritually "clean" and which ones were "unclean." Only the clean animals were permitted to be used for eating or for sacrifice. In this context, the term "clean" means that the animal was acceptable to God for use as a sacrifice.
- A person who had certain skin diseases would be unclean until the skin was healed enough to no longer be contagious. Instructions for cleansing the skin had to be obeyed in order for that person to be declared "clean" again.
- Sometimes "clean" is used figuratively to refer to moral purity, meaning to be "clean" from sin.

In the Bible, the term "unclean" is used figuratively to refer to things that God declared to be unfit for his people to touch, eat, or sacrifice.

- God gave the Israelites instructions about which animals were "clean" and which ones were "unclean." The unclean animals were not permitted to be used for eating or for sacrifice.
- People with certain skin diseases were said to be "unclean" until they were healed.
- If the Israelites touched something "unclean," they themselves would be considered unclean for a certain period of time.
- Obeying God's commands about not touching or eating unclean things kept the Israelites set apart for God's service.
- This physical and ritual uncleanness was also symbolic of moral uncleanness.
- In another figurative sense, an "unclean spirit" refers to an evil spirit.

Translation Suggestions:

- This term could be translated with the common word for "clean" or "pure" (in the sense of being not dirty).
- Other ways to translate this could include, "ritually clean" or "acceptable to God."
- "Cleanse" could be translated by "wash" or "purify."
- Make sure that the words used for "clean" and "cleanse" can also be understood in a figurative sense.
- The term "unclean" could also be translated as "not clean" or "unfit in God's eyes" or "physically unclean" or "defiled."
- When referring to a demon as an unclean spirit, "unclean" could be translated as "evil" or "defiled."
- The translation of this term should allow for spiritual uncleanness. It should be able to refer to anything that God declared as unfit for touching, eating, or sacrifice.

(See also: defile, demon, [holy](#), [sacrifice](#))

Bible References:

- Genesis 07:02
- Genesis 07:08
- Deuteronomy 12:15
- Psalms 051:07
- Proverbs 20:30
- Ezekiel 24:13
- Matthew 23:27
- Luke 05:13
- Acts 08:07
- Acts 10:27-29

- Colossians 03:05
- 1 Thessalonians 04:07
- James 04:08

Word Data:

- Strong's: H1249, H1252, H1305, H2134, H2135, H2141, H2398, H2548, H2834, H2889, H2890, H2891, H2893, H2930, H2931, H2932, H3001, H3722, H5079, H5352, H5355, H5356, H6172, H6565, H6663, H6945, H7137, H8552, H8562, G167, G169, G2511, G2512, G2513, G2839, G2840, G3394, G3689

(Go back to: [1 Chronicles 28:17](#))

comfort, comforts, comforter, uncomforted

Definition:

The terms “comfort” and “comforter” refer to helping someone who is suffering physical or emotional pain.

- A person who comforts someone is called a “comforter.”
- In the Old Testament, the term “comfort” is used to describe how God is kind and loving to his people and helps them when they are suffering.
- In the New Testament, it says that God will comfort his people through the Holy Spirit. Those who receive the comfort are then enabled to give the same comfort to others who are suffering.
- The expression “comforter of Israel” referred to the Messiah who would come to rescue his people.
- Jesus referred to the Holy Spirit as the “Comforter” who helps believers in Jesus.

Translation Suggestions:

- Depending on the context, “comfort” could also be translated as, “ease the pain of” or “help (someone) overcome grief” or “encourage” or “console.”
- A phrase such as “our comfort” could be translated as “our encouragement” or “our consoling of (someone)” or “our help in times of grieving.”
- The term “comforter” could be translated as “person who comforts” or “someone who helps ease pain” or “person who encourages.”
- When the Holy Spirit is called “the Comforter” this could also be translated as “the Encourager” or “the Helper” or “the One who helps and guides.”
- The phrase “comforter of Israel” could be translated as, “the Messiah, who comforts Israel.”
- An expression like, “they have no comforter” could also be translated as, “No one has comforted them” or “There is no one to encourage or help them.”

(See also: encourage, Holy Spirit)

Bible References:

- 1 Thessalonians 05:8-11
- 2 Corinthians 01:04
- 2 Samuel 10:1-3
- Acts 20:11-12

Word Data:

- Strong's: H2505, H5150, H5162, H5165, H5564, H8575, G302, G3870, G3874, G3875, G3888, G3890, G3931

(Go back to: [1 Chronicles 19:3](#))

command, commandment

Definition:

The term “command” means to order someone to do something. The term “commandment” refers to the thing that a person is commanded to do.

- The term “commandment” sometimes refers to certain commands of God which are more formal and permanent, such as the “Ten Commandments.”
- A command can be positive (“Honor your parents”) or negative (“Do not steal”).
- To “take command” means to “take control” or “take charge” of something or someone.

Translation Suggestions

- It is best to translate this term differently from the term, “law.” Also compare with the definitions of “decree” and “statute.”
- Some translators may prefer to translate “command” and “commandment” with the same word in their language.
- Others may prefer to use a special word for commandment that refers to lasting, formal commands that God has made.

(See [decree](#), [statute](#), law, Ten Commandments)

Bible References:

- Luke 01:06
- Matthew 01:24
- Matthew 22:38
- Matthew 28:20
- Numbers 01:17-19
- Romans 07:7-8

Word Data:

- Strong's: H559, H560, H565, H1296, H1696, H1697, H1881, H2706, H2708, H2710, H2941, H2942, H2951, H3027, H3982, H3983, H4406, H4662, H4687, H4929, H4931, H4941, H5057, H5713, H5749, H6213, H6310, H6346, H6490, H6673, H6680, H7101, H7218, H7227, H7262, H7761, H7970, H8269, G1263, G1291, G1296, G1297, G1299, G1690, G1778, G1781, G1785, G2003, G2004, G2008, G2036, G2753, G3056, G3726, G3852, G3853, G4367, G4483, G4487, G5506

(Go back to: [1 Chronicles 6:49](#); [12:17](#); [14:8](#); [14:16](#); [14:17](#); [15:15](#); [16:15](#); [16:40](#); [17:6](#); [17:10](#); [19:9](#); [19:16](#); [21:4](#); [21:6](#); [21:21](#); [22:6](#); [22:12](#); [22:13](#); [22:17](#); [24:7](#); [24:19](#); [25:9](#); [26:14](#); [28:7](#); [28:8](#); [29:19](#))

confirm, confirmation, legal

Definition:

The term "confirm" refers to verifying that something is true or legally certifying that a transaction has occurred.

- When a king is "confirmed" it means that the decision to make him king has been agreed upon and supported by the people.
- To confirm what someone wrote means to verify that what was written is true.
- The "confirmation" of the gospel means teaching people about the good news of Jesus in such a way that it shows that it is true.
- To give an oath "as confirmation" means to solemnly state or swear that something is true or trustworthy.
- Ways to translate "confirm" could include, "state as true" or "prove to be trustworthy" or "agree with" or "assure" or "promise," depending on the context.

(See also: [covenant](#), oath, [trust](#))

Bible References:

- 1 Chronicles 16:15-18
- 2 Corinthians 01:21
- 2 Kings 23:3
- Hebrews 06:16-18

Word Data:

- Strong's: H559, H1396, H3045, H3559, H4390, H4672, H5414, H5975, H6213, H6965, G950, G951, G3315, G4972

(Go back to: [1 Chronicles 21:18](#))

consecrate, consecrated, consecration

Definition:

To consecrate means to dedicate something or someone to serve God. The person or object that is consecrated is considered holy and set apart for God.

- The meaning of this term is similar to “sanctify” or to “make holy,” but with the added meaning of formally setting apart someone for service to God.
- Things that were consecrated to God included animals to be sacrificed, the altar of burnt offering, and the tabernacle.
- People who were consecrated to God included the priests, the people of Israel, and the oldest male child.
- Sometimes the word “consecrate” has a meaning that is similar to “purify,” especially when it pertains to preparing people or things for God’s service so that they will be cleansed and acceptable to him.

Translation Suggestions:

- Ways to translate “consecrate” could include, “set apart for God’s service” or “purify for service to God.”
- Also consider how the terms “holy” and “sanctify” are translated.

(See also: [holy](#), pure, sanctify)

Bible References:

- 1 Timothy 04:3-5
- 2 Chronicles 13:8-9
- Ezekiel 44:19

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H2763, H3027, H4390, H4394, H5144, H5145, H6942, H6944, G1457, G5048

(Go back to: [1 Chronicles 15:12](#); [18:11](#); [26:26](#); [26:27](#); [26:28](#))

consume, devour

Definition:

The term “consume” literally means to use up something. It has several figurative meanings.

- In the Bible, the word “consume” often refers to destroying things or people.
- A fire is said to consume things, which means it destroys them by burning them up.
- God is described as a “consuming fire,” which is a description of his anger against sin. His anger results in terrible punishment for sinners who do not repent.
- To consume food means to eat or drink something.
- The phrase, “consume the land” could be translated as “destroy the land.”

Translation Suggestions

- In the context of consuming the land or people, this term could be translated as “destroy.”
- When fire is referred to, “consume” could be translated as “burn up.”
- The burning bush that Moses saw “was not consumed” which could be translated as, “did not get burned up” or “did not burn up.”
- When referring to eating, “consume” could be translated as “eat” or “devour.”
- If someone’s strength is “consumed,” it means his strength is “used up” or “gone.”
- The expression, “God is a consuming fire” could be translated as, “God is like a fire that burns things up” or “God is angry against sin and will destroy sinners like a fire.”

(See also: [devour](#), wrath)

Bible References:

- 1 Kings 18:38-40
- Deuteronomy 07:16
- Jeremiah 03:23-25
- Job 07:09
- Numbers 11:1-3

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H398, H402, H1086, H1104, H1197, H2628, H3615, H3617, H3857, H4529, H5595, H8046, H8552, G355, G2618, G2654, G2719, G5315

(Go back to: [1 Chronicles 27:24](#))

court, courtyard

Definition:

The terms “courtyard” and “court” refer to an enclosed area that is open to the sky and surrounded by walls. The term “court” also refers to a place where judges decide legal and criminal matters.

- The tabernacle was surrounded by one courtyard which was enclosed by walls made of thick, cloth curtains.
- The temple complex had three inner courtyards: one for the priests, one for Jewish men, and one for Jewish women.
- These inner courtyards were surrounded by a low stone wall that separated them from an outer courtyard where Gentiles were permitted to worship.
- The courtyard of a house was an open area in the middle of the house.
- The phrase “king’s court” can refer to his palace or to a place in his palace where he makes judgments.
- The expression, “courts of Yahweh” is a figurative way of referring to Yahweh’s dwelling place or to the place where people go to worship Yahweh.

Translation Suggestions:

- The term “courtyard” could be translated as “enclosed space” or “walled-in land” or “temple grounds” or “temple enclosure.”
- Sometimes the term “temple” may need to be translated as “temple courtyards” or “temple complex” so that it is clear that the courtyards are being referred to, not the temple building.
- The expression, “courts of Yahweh” could be translated as, “place where Yahweh lives” or “place where Yahweh is worshiped.”
- The term used for a king’s court could also be used to refer to Yahweh’s court.

(See also: Gentile, judge, [king](#), tabernacle, [temple](#))

Bible References:

- 2 Kings 20:4-5
- Exodus 27:09
- Jeremiah 19:14-15
- Luke 22:55
- Matthew 26:69-70
- Numbers 03:26
- Psalms 065:4

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H1004, H1508, H2691, H5835, H7339, H8651, G833, G4259

(Go back to: [1 Chronicles 28:12](#))

covenant

Definition:

In the Bible, the term "covenant" refers to a formal, binding agreement between two parties that one or both parties must fulfill.

- This agreement can be between individuals, between groups of people, or between God and people.
- When people make a covenant with each other, they promise that they will do something, and they must do it.
- Examples of human covenants include marriage covenants, business agreements, and treaties between countries.
- Throughout the Bible, God made several different covenants with his people.
- In some of the covenants, God promised to fulfill his part without conditions. For example, when God established his covenant with mankind promising to never destroy the earth again with a worldwide flood, this promise had no conditions for people to fulfill.
- In other covenants, God promised to fulfill his part only if the people obeyed him and fulfilled their part of the covenant.

The term "new covenant" refers to the commitment or agreement God made with his people through the sacrifice of his Son, Jesus.

- God's "new covenant" was explained in the part of the Bible called the "New Testament."
- This new covenant is in contrast to the "old" or "former" covenant that God had made with the Israelites in Old Testament times.
- The new covenant is better than the old one because it is based on the sacrifice of Jesus, which completely atoned for people's sins forever. The sacrifices made under the old covenant did not do this.
- God writes the new covenant on the hearts those who become believers in Jesus. This causes them to want to obey God and to begin to live holy lives.
- The new covenant will be completely fulfilled in the end times when God establishes his reign on earth. Everything will once again be very good, as it was when God first created the world.

Translation Suggestions:

- Depending on the context, ways to translate this term could include, "binding agreement" or "formal commitment" or "pledge" or "contract."
- Some languages may have different words for covenant depending on whether one party or both parties have made a promise they must keep. If the covenant is one-sided, it could be translated as "promise" or "pledge."
- Make sure the translation of this term does not sound like people proposed the covenant. In all cases of covenants between God and people, it was God who initiated the covenant.
- The term "new covenant" could be translated as "new formal agreement" or "new pact" or "new contract."
- The word "new" in these expressions has the meaning of "fresh" or "new kind of" or "another."

(See also: [covenant](#), [promise](#))

Bible References:

- Genesis 09:12
- Genesis 17:07
- Genesis 31:44
- Exodus 34:10-11
- Joshua 24:24-26
- 2 Samuel 23:5
- 2 Kings 18:11-12

- Mark 14:24
- Luke 01:73
- Luke 22:20
- Acts 07:08
- 1 Corinthians 11:25-26
- 2 Corinthians 03:06
- Galatians 03:17-18
- Hebrews 12:24

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **04:09** Then God made a **covenant** with Abram. A **covenant** is an agreement between two parties.
- **05:04** "I will make Ishmael a great nation, too, but my **covenant** will be with Isaac."
- **06:04** After a long time, Abraham died and all of the promises that God had made to him in the **covenant** were passed on to Isaac.
- **07:10** The **covenant** promises God had promised to Abraham and then to Isaac now passed on to Jacob."
- **13:02** God said to Moses and the people of Israel, "If you will obey my voice and keep my **covenant**, you will be my prized possession, a kingdom of priests, and a holy nation."
- **13:04** Then God gave them the **covenant** and said, "I am Yahweh, your God, who saved you from slavery in Egypt. Do not worship other gods."
- **15:13** Then Joshua reminded the people of their obligation to obey the **covenant** that God had made with the Israelites at Sinai.
- **21:05** Through the prophet Jeremiah, God promised that he would make a **New Covenant**, but not like the covenant God made with Israel at Sinai. In the **New Covenant**, God would write his law on the people's hearts, the people would know God personally, they would be his people, and God would forgive their sins. The Messiah would start the **New Covenant**.
- **21:14** Through the Messiah's death and resurrection, God would accomplish his plan to save sinners and start the **New Covenant**.
- **38:05** Then Jesus took a cup and said, "Drink this. It is my blood of the **New Covenant** that is poured out for the forgiveness of sins. Do this to remember me every time you drink it."
- **48:11** But God has now made a **New Covenant** that is available to everyone. Because of this **New Covenant**, anyone from any people group can become part of God's people by believing in Jesus.

Word Data:

- Strong's: H1285, H2319, H3772, G802, G1242, G4934

(Go back to: [Introduction to 1 Chronicles](#); [1 Chronicles 11:3](#); [Notes](#); [15:25](#); [15:26](#); [15:28](#); [15:29](#); [16:6](#); [16:15](#); [16:17](#); [16:37](#); [17:1](#); [22:19](#); [28:2](#); [28:18](#))

covenant faithfulness, covenant loyalty, covenant love

Definition:

In biblical times, the term translated as "covenant faithfulness" was used to describe the kind of faithfulness, loyalty, kindness, and love that was both expected and demonstrated between people who were closely related to one another, either by marriage or by blood. This same term is used often in the Bible to describe the way God relates to his people, especially his commitment to fulfill the promises that he made to them.

- The way this term is translated can depend on how each of the individual terms "covenant" and "faithfulness" are translated.
- Other ways to translate this term might include: "faithful love;" "loyal, committed love;" or "loving dependability."

(See also: [covenant](#), [faithful](#), [grace](#), [Israel](#), [people of God](#), [promise](#))

Bible References:

- Ezra 03:11
- Numbers 14:18

Word Data:

- Strong's: H2617

(Go back to: [1 Chronicles 16:34](#); [16:41](#); [17:13](#); [19:2](#))

cow, bull, calf, cattle, heifer, ox

Definition:

The terms “cow,” “bull,” “heifer,” “ox,” and “cattle” all refer to a kind of large, four-legged bovine animal that eats grass.

- The female of this kind of animal is called a “cow,” the male is a “bull,” and their offspring is a “calf.”
- In the Bible, cattle were among the “clean” animals that the people could eat and use for sacrifice. They were primarily raised for their meat and milk.

A “heifer” is an adult female cow that has not yet given birth to a calf.

An “ox” is a type of cattle that is specifically trained to do agricultural work. The plural of this term is “oxen.” Usually oxen are male and have been castrated.

- Throughout the Bible, oxen were depicted as animals tied together by a yoke to pull a cart or a plow.
- Having oxen work together under a yoke was such a common occurrence in the Bible that the phrase to “be under a yoke” became a metaphor for hard work and labor.
- A bull is also a male type of cattle, but it has not been castrated and has not been trained as a work animal.

(See also: [How to Translate Unknowns](#))

(See also: [yoke](#))

Bible References:

- Genesis 15:9-11
- Exodus 24:5-6
- Numbers 19:1-2
- Deuteronomy 21:3-4
- 1 Samuel 01:24-25
- 1 Samuel 15:03
- 1 Samuel 16:2-3
- 1 Kings 01:09
- 2 Chronicles 11:15
- 2 Chronicles 15:10-11
- Matthew 22:4
- Luke 13:15
- Luke 14:05
- Hebrews 09:13

Word Data:

- Strong's: H47, H441, H504, H929, H1165, H1241, H1241, H1241, H4399, H4735, H4806, H5695, H5697, H5697, H6499, H6499, H6510, H6510, H6629, H7214, H7716, H7794, H7794, H7921, H8377, H8377, H8450, H8450, G1016, G1151, G2353, G2934, G3447, G3448, G4165, G5022, G5022

(Go back to: [1 Chronicles 15:26](#); [29:21](#))

cut off

Definition:

The expression “be cut off” is an expression that means to be excluded, banished or isolated from the main group. It can also refer to being killed as an act of divine judgment for sin.

- In the Old Testament, disobeying God’s commands resulted in being cut off, or separated, from God’s people and from his presence.
- God also said he would “cut off” or destroy the non-Israelite nations, because they did not worship or obey him and were enemies of Israel.
- The expression “cut off” is also used to refer to God causing a river to stop flowing.

Translation Suggestions:

- The expression “be cut off” could be translated as “be banished” or “be sent away” or “be separated from” or “be killed” or “be destroyed.”
- Depending on the context, to “cut off” could be translated as, to “destroy” or to “send away” or to “separate from” or to “destroy.”
- In the context of flowing waters being cut off, this could be translated as “were stopped” or “were caused to stop flowing” or “were divided.”
- The literal meaning of cutting something with a knife should be distinguished from the figurative uses of this term.

Bible References:

- Genesis 17:14
- Judges 21:06
- Proverbs 23:18

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H1214, H1219, H1438, H1494, H1504, H1629, H1820, H2686, H3582, H3772, H5243, H5352, H6789, H7088, H7096, H7112, H7113, G609, G851, G1581

(Go back to: [1 Chronicles 11:3](#); [16:16](#); [17:8](#); [19:4](#))

David

Facts:

David was the second king of Israel and he loved and served God. He was the main writer of the book of Psalms.

- When David was still a young boy caring for his family's sheep, God chose him to become the next king of Israel.
- David became a great fighter and led the Israelite army in battles against their enemies. His defeat of Goliath the Philistine is well known.
- King Saul tried to kill David, but God protected him, and made him king after Saul's death.
- David committed a terrible sin, but he repented and God forgave him.
- Jesus, the Messiah, is called the "Son of David" because he is a descendant of King David.

(Translation suggestions: [How to Translate Names](#))

(See also: Goliath, [Philistines](#), Saul (OT))

Bible References:

- 1 Samuel 17:12-13
- 1 Samuel 20:34
- 2 Samuel 05:02
- 2 Timothy 02:08
- Acts 02:25
- Acts 13:22
- Luke 01:32
- Mark 02:26

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **17:02** God chose a young Israelite named **David** to be king after Saul. **David** was a shepherd from the town of Bethlehem. ... **David** was a humble and righteous man who trusted and obeyed God.
- **17:03** **David** was also a great soldier and leader. When **David** was still a young man, he fought against a giant named Goliath.
- **17:04** Saul became jealous of the people's love for **David**. Saul tried many times to kill him, so **David** hid from Saul.
- **17:05** God blessed **David** and made him successful. **David** fought many battles and God helped him defeat Israel's enemies.
- **17:06** **David** wanted to build a temple where all the Israelites could worship God and offer him sacrifices.
- **17:09** **David** ruled with justice and faithfulness for many years, and God blessed him. However, toward the end of his life he sinned terribly against God.
- **17:13** God was very angry about what **David** had done, so he sent the prophet Nathan to tell **David** how evil his sin was. **David** repented of his sin and God forgave him. For the rest of his life, **David** followed and obeyed God, even in difficult times.

Word Data:

- Strong's: H1732, G1138

(Go back to: [1 Chronicles 2:15](#); [3:1](#); [3:9](#); [4:31](#); [6:31](#); [7:2](#); [9:22](#); [11:1](#); [11:3](#); [11:4](#); [11:5](#); [11:6](#); [11:7](#); [11:9](#); [11:13](#); [11:15](#); [11:17](#); [11:18](#); [11:25](#); [12:1](#); [12:8](#); [12:17](#); [12:18](#); [12:19](#); [12:21](#); [12:22](#); [12:23](#); [12:31](#); [12:38](#); [12:39](#); [13:1](#); [13:2](#); [13:5](#); [13:6](#); [13:12](#); [13:13](#); [14:1](#); [14:2](#); [14:3](#); [14:8](#); [14:10](#); [14:11](#); [14:12](#); [14:14](#); [14:16](#); [14:17](#); [15:1](#); [15:2](#); [15:3](#); [15:4](#); [15:11](#); [15:16](#); [15:25](#); [15:27](#); [15:29](#); [16:1](#); [16:2](#); [16:7](#); [16:43](#); [17:1](#); [17:2](#); [17:4](#); [17:15](#); [17:16](#); [17:18](#); [17:24](#); [18:1](#); [18:3](#); [18:4](#); [18:5](#); [18:6](#); [18:7](#); [18:8](#);

18:9; 18:10; 18:11; 18:13; 18:14; 18:17; 19:2; 19:3; 19:4; 19:6; 19:8; 19:17; 19:18; 19:19; 20:2; 20:3; 20:7; 20:8; 21:1;
21:2; 21:5; 21:8; 21:9; 21:10; 21:11; 21:13; 21:16; 21:17; 21:18; 21:19; 21:21; 21:22; 21:23; 21:24; 21:25; 21:26; 21:28;
21:30; 22:1; 22:2; 22:3; 22:5; 22:7; 22:17; 23:6; 23:25; 23:27; 24:3; 24:31; 25:1; 26:26; 26:31; 26:32; 27:18; 27:23; 27:24;
27:31; 27:32; 28:1; 28:2; 28:11; 28:20; 29:1; 29:9; 29:10; 29:20; 29:22; 29:23; 29:24; 29:29)

declare, proclaim, announce

Definition:

The terms “declare” and “declaration” refer to making a formal or public statement, often to emphasize something. Other terms with similar meaning include “proclaim,” “proclamation,” “announce,” and “announcement.”

- A “declaration” not only emphasizes the importance of what is being proclaimed, but it also calls attention to the one making the declaration.
- For example, in the Old Testament, a message from God is often preceded by “the declaration of Yahweh” or “this is what Yahweh declares.” This expression emphasizes that it is Yahweh himself who is saying this. The fact that the message comes from Yahweh shows how important that message is.

Translation Suggestions:

- Depending on the context, “declare” could also be translated as “proclaim” or “publicly state” or “strongly say” or “emphatically state.”
- The term “declaration” could also be translated as “statement” or “proclamation.”
- The phrase “this is Yahweh’s declaration” could be translated as “this is what Yahweh declares” or “this is what Yahweh says.”

(See also: [preach](#), [decree](#))

Bible References:

- 1 Chronicles 16:24
- 1 Corinthians 15:31-32
- 1 Samuel 24:17-18
- Amos 02:16
- Ezekiel 05:11-12
- Matthew 07:21-23

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H262, H559, H816, H874, H1696, H3045, H4853, H5002, H5042, H5046, H5608, H6567, H7121, H7561, H7878, H8085, G312, G518, G669, G1229, G1344, G1555, G1718, G1834, G2097, G2511, G2605, G2607, G3140, G3670, G3724, G3822, G3870, G3955, G4296

(Go back to: [1 Chronicles 4:10](#); [7:16](#); [7:23](#); [13:11](#); [15:11](#); [21:26](#); [22:6](#))

decree, decreed

Definition:

The term "decree" means to give an order that must be obeyed. The order itself can also be called a "decree."

- A "decree" is similar to a "law," but is generally used more often to refer to something spoken rather than written.
- The term "decree" could be translated as to "order" or to "command" or to "formally require" or to "publicly make a law."
- God's laws are also called decrees, statutes, or commandments.
- An example of a decree by a human ruler was the proclamation by Caesar Augustus that everyone living in the Roman Empire must go back to their hometown in order to be counted in a census.

(See also: [command](#), [declare](#), law)

Bible References:

- 1 Chronicles 15:13-15
- 1 Kings 08:57-58
- Acts 17:5-7
- Daniel 02:13
- Esther 01:22
- Luke 02:01

Word Data:

- Strong's: H559, H633, H1697, H5715, H1504, H1510, H1881, H1882, H1696, H2706, H2708, H2710, H2711, H2782, H2852, H2940, H2941, H2942, H3791, H3982, H4055, H4406, H4687, H4941, H5407, H5713, H6599, H6680, H7010, H8421, G1378

(Go back to: [1 Chronicles 22:16](#))

deliver, deliverer, deliverance, hand over, turn over, released, rescue

Definition:

To “deliver” someone means to rescue that person. The term “deliverer” refers to someone who rescues or frees people from slavery, oppression, or other dangers. The term “deliverance” refers to what happens when someone rescues or frees people from slavery, oppression, or other dangers.

- In the Old Testament, God appointed deliverers to protect the Israelites by leading them in battle against other people groups who came to attack them.
- These deliverers were also called “judges” and the Old Testament book of Judges records the time in history when these judges were governing Israel.
- God is also called a “deliverer.” Throughout the history of Israel, he delivered or rescued his people from their enemies.
- The term “deliver over to” or “deliver up to” has a very different meaning of handing or turning someone over to an enemy, such as when Judas delivered Jesus over to the Jewish leaders.

Translation Suggestions:

- In the context of helping people escape from their enemies, the term “deliver” can be translated as “rescue” or “liberate” or “save.”
- When it means to deliver someone over to the enemy, “deliver over” can be translated as “betray to” or “hand over” or “give over.”
- The word “deliverer” can also be translated as “rescuer” or “liberator.”
- When the term “deliverer” refers to the judges who led Israel, it could also be translated as “governor” or “judge” or “leader.”

(See also: [judge](#), save)

Bible References:

- 2 Corinthians 01:10
- Acts 07:35
- Galatians 01:04
- Judges 10:12

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **16:03** Then God provided a **deliverer** who rescued them from their enemies and brought peace to the land.
- **16:16** They (Israel) finally asked God for help again, and God sent them another **deliverer**.
- **16:17** Over many years, God sent many **deliverers** who saved the Israelites from their enemies.

Word Data:

- Strong's: H1350, H2020, H2502, H3205, H3444, H3467, H4042, H4422, H4672, H5337, H5414, H5462, H6299, H6403, H6413, H6475, H6561, H7725, H7804, H8199, G325, G525, G629, G1080, G1325, G1560, G1659, G1807, G1929, G2673, G3086, G3860, G4506, G4991, G5088, G5483

(Go back to: [1 Chronicles 11:14](#); [16:35](#); [18:6](#); [18:13](#); [19:12](#))

devour

Definition:

The term “devour” means to eat or consume in an aggressive manner.

- Using this word in a figurative sense, Paul warned believers to not devour one another, meaning to not attack or destroy each other with words or actions (Galatians 5:15).
- Also in a figurative sense, the term “devour” is often used with a meaning of “completely destroy” as when talking about nations devouring each other or a fire devouring buildings and people.
- This term could also be translated as “completely consume” or “totally destroy.”

Bible References:

- 1 Peter 05:08
- Amos 01:10
- Exodus 24:17
- Ezekiel 16:20
- Luke 15:30
- Matthew 23:13-15
- Psalms 021:09

Word Data:

- Strong's: H398, H399, H400, H402, H1104, H1105, H3216, H3615, H3857, H3898, H7462, H7602, G2068, G2666, G2719, G5315

(Go back to: [1 Chronicles 12:39](#); [29:22](#))

die, dead, deadly, death,

Definition:

The term "death" refers to being physically dead instead of alive.

1. Physical death

- To "die" means to stop living. Death is the end of physical life.
- The expression "put to death" refers to killing or murdering someone, especially when a king or other ruler gives an order for someone to be killed.

2. Eternal death

- Eternal death is the separation of a person from God.
- This is the kind of death that happened to Adam when he sinned and disobeyed God. His relationship with God was broken. He became ashamed and tried to hide from God.
- This same kind of death happens to every person, because we sin. But God gives us eternal life when we have faith in Jesus Christ.

Translation Suggestions:

- To translate this term, it is best to use the everyday, natural word or expression in the target language that refers to death.
- In some languages, to "die" may be expressed as to "not live." The term "dead" may be translated as "not alive" or "not having any life" or "not living."
- Many languages use figurative expressions to describe death, such as to "pass away" in English. However, in the Bible it is best to use the most direct term for death that is used in everyday language.
- In the Bible, eternal life and eternal death are often compared to physical life and physical death. It is important in a translation to use the same word or phrase for both physical death and eternal death.
- In some languages it may be more clear to say "eternal death" when the context requires that meaning. Some translators may also feel it is best to say "physical death" in contexts where it is being contrasted to spiritual death.
- The expression "the dead" is a nominal adjective that refers to people who have died. Some languages will translate this as "dead people" or "people who have died." (See: [nominal adjective](#))
- The expression "put to death" could also be translated as "kill" or "murder" or "execute."

(See also: believe, faith, [life](#))

Bible References:

- 1 Corinthians 15:21
- 1 Thessalonians 04:17
- Acts 10:42
- Acts 14:19
- Colossians 02:15
- Colossians 02:20
- Genesis 02:15-17
- Genesis 34:27
- Matthew 16:28
- Romans 05:10
- Romans 05:12
- Romans 06:10

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **01:11** God told Adam that he could eat from any tree in the garden except from the tree of the knowledge of good and evil. If he ate from this tree, he would **die**.
- **02:11** "Then you will **die**, and your body will return to dirt."
- **07:10** Then Isaac **died**, and Jacob and Esau buried him.
- **37:05** "Jesus replied, "I am the Resurrection and the Life. Whoever believes in me will live, even though he **dies**. Everyone who believes in me will never **die**."
- **40:08** Through his **death**, Jesus opened a way for people to come to God.
- **43:07** "Although Jesus **died**, God raised him from the dead."
- **48:02** Because they sinned, everyone on earth gets sick and everyone **dies**.
- **50:17** He (Jesus) will wipe away every tear and there will be no more suffering, sadness, crying, evil, pain, or **death**.

Word Data:

- Strong's: H6, H1478, H1826, H1934, H2491, H4191, H4192, H4193, H4194, H4463, H5038, H5315, H6297, H6757, H7496, H7523, H8045, H8546, H8552, G336, G337, G520, G599, G615, G622, G1634, G1935, G2079, G2253, G2286, G2287, G2288, G2289, G2348, G2837, G2966, G3498, G3499, G3500, G4430, G4880, G4881, G5053, G5054

(Go back to: [1 Chronicles 1:44](#); [1:45](#); [1:46](#); [1:47](#); [1:48](#); [1:49](#); [1:50](#); [1:51](#); [2:3](#); [2:19](#); [2:30](#); [2:32](#); [10:5](#); [10:6](#); [10:13](#); [10:14](#); [13:10](#); [19:1](#); [23:22](#); [24:2](#); [29:28](#))

dominion

Definition:

The term "dominion" refers to power, control, or authority over people, animals, or land.

- Jesus Christ is said to have dominion over all the earth, as prophet, priest, and king.
- Satan's dominion has been defeated forever by Jesus Christ's death on the cross.
- At creation, God said that man is to have dominion over fish, birds, and all creatures on the earth.

Translation Suggestions:

- Depending on the context, other ways to translate this term could include "authority" or "power" or "control."
- The phrase "have dominion over" could be translated as "rule over" or "manage."

(See also: authority, [power](#))

Bible References:

- 1 Peter 05:10-11
- Colossians 01:13
- Jude 01:25

Word Data:

- Strong's: H1166, H4474, H4475, H4896, H4910, H4915, H7287, H7300, H7980, H7985, G2634, G2904, G2961, G2963

(Go back to: [1 Chronicles 29:12](#))

drink offering

Definition:

A drink offering was a sacrifice to God that involved pouring wine on an altar. It was often offered together with a burnt offering and a grain offering.

- Paul refers to his life as being poured out like a drink offering. This means that he was totally dedicated to serving God and telling people about Jesus, even though he knew he would suffer and probably be killed because of that.
- Jesus' death on the cross was the ultimate drink offering, as his blood was poured out on the cross for our sins.

Translation Suggestions:

- Another way to translate this term could be "offering of grape wine."
- When Paul says he is being "poured out like an offering" this could also be translated as "I am completely committed to teaching God's message to people, just like an offering of wine is poured out completely on the altar."

(See also: [burnt offering](#), [grain offering](#))

Bible References:

- Exodus 25:29
- Ezekiel 45:16-17
- Genesis 35:14
- Jeremiah 07:16-18
- Numbers 05:15

Word Data:

- Strong's: H5257, H5261, H5262

(Go back to: [1 Chronicles 29:21](#))

earth, earthen, earthly

Definition:

The term “earth” refers to the world that human beings live on, along with all other forms of life.

- “Earth” can also refer to the ground or soil that covers the land.
- This term is often used figuratively to refer to the people who live on the earth. (See: [metonymy](#))
- The expressions “let the earth be glad” and “he will judge the earth” are examples of figurative uses of this term.
- The term “earthly” usually refers to physical things in contrast to spiritual things.

Translation Suggestions:

- This term can be translated by the word or phrase that the local language or nearby national languages use to refer to the planet earth on which we live.
- Depending on the context, “earth” could also be translated as “world” or “land” or “dirt” or “soil.”
- When used figuratively, “earth” could be translated as “people on the earth” or “people living on earth” or “everything on earth.”
- Ways to translate “earthly” could include “physical” or “things of this earth” or “visible.”

(See also: [spirit](#), world)

Bible References:

- 1 Kings 01:38-40
- 2 Chronicles 02:11-12
- Daniel 04:35
- Luke 12:51
- Matthew 06:10
- Matthew 11:25
- Zechariah 06:05

Word Data:

- Strong's: H127, H772, H776, H778, H2789, H3007, H3335, H6083, H7494, G1093, G1919, G2709, G2886, G3625, G4578, G5517

(Go back to: [1 Chronicles 13:2](#); [16:18](#); [19:2](#); [20:1](#); [21:21](#); [22:8](#); [29:11](#))

Edom, Edomite, Idumea

Facts:

Edom was another name for Esau. The region where he lived also became known as “Edom” and later, “Idumea.” The “Edomites” were his descendants.

- The region of Edom changed locations over time. It was mostly located to the south of Israel and eventually extended into southern Judah.
- During New Testament times, Edom covered the southern half of the province of Judea. The Greeks called it “Idumea.”
- The name “Edom” means “red,” which may refer to the fact that Esau was covered with red hair when he was born. Or it may refer to the red lentil stew that Esau traded his birthright for.
- In the Old Testament, the country of Edom is often mentioned as an enemy of Israel.
- The entire book of Obadiah is about the destruction of Edom. Other Old Testament prophets also spoke negative prophecies against Edom.

(Translation suggestions: [How to Translate Names](#))

(See also: [adversary](#), birthright, [Esau](#), Obadiah, [prophet](#))

Bible References:

- Genesis 25:30
- Genesis 32:03
- Genesis 36:01
- Isaiah 11:14-15
- Joshua 11:16-17
- Obadiah 01:02

Word Data:

- Strong's: H123, H130, H8165, G2401

([Go back to: 1 Chronicles 18:11](#))

Egypt, Egyptian

Facts:

Egypt is a country in the northeast part of Africa, to the southwest of the land of Canaan. An Egyptian is a person who is from the country of Egypt.

- In ancient times, Egypt was a powerful and wealthy country.
- Ancient Egypt was divided into two parts, Lower Egypt (northern part where the Nile River flowed downward into the sea) and Upper Egypt (southern part). In the Old Testament, these parts are referred to as "Egypt" and "Pathros" in the original language text.
- Several times when there was little food in Canaan, Israel's patriarchs traveled to Egypt to buy food for their families.
- For several hundred years, the Israelites were slaves in Egypt.
- Joseph and Mary went down to Egypt with the young child Jesus, to escape from Herod the Great.

(Translation suggestions: [How to Translate Names](#))

(See also: Herod the Great, Joseph (NT), Nile River, patriarchs)

Bible References:

- 1 Samuel 04:7-9
- Acts 07:10
- Exodus 03:07
- Genesis 41:29
- Genesis 41:57
- Matthew 02:15

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **08:04** The slave traders took Joseph to **Egypt**. **Egypt** was a large, powerful country located along the Nile River.
- **08:08** Pharaoh was so impressed with Joseph that he appointed him to be the second most powerful man in all of **Egypt**!
- **08:11** So Jacob sent his older sons to *_Egypt_* to buy food.
- **08:14** Even though Jacob was an old man, he moved to **Egypt** with all of his family, and they all lived there.
- **09:01** After Joseph died, all of his relatives stayed in **Egypt**.

Word Data:

- Strong's: H4713, H4714, G124, G125

(Go back to: [1 Chronicles 11:23](#); [13:5](#); [17:21](#))

Elam, Elamites

Facts:

Elam was a son of Shem and a grandson of Noah.

- The descendants of Elam were called “Elamites,” and they lived in a region that was also called “Elam.”
- The region of Elam was located southeast of the Tigris River in what is now western Iran.

(Translation suggestions: [How to Translate Names](#))

(See also: Noah, Shem)

Bible References:

- 1 Chronicles 01:17-19
- Acts 02:09
- Ezra 08:4-7
- Isaiah 22:06

Word Data:

- Strong's: H5867, H5962, G1639

([Go back to: 1 Chronicles 26:3](#))

elder, older, old

Definition:

The term "elder" or "older" refers to people (in the Bible, usually men) who have grown old enough to become mature adults and leaders within a community. For example, elders might have gray hair, have adult children, or perhaps even have grandchildren or great-grandchildren.

- The term "elder" came from the fact that elders were originally older men who, because of their age and experience, had greater wisdom.
- In the Old Testament, the elders helped lead the Israelites in matters of social justice and the Law of Moses.
- In the New Testament, Jewish "elders" continued to be leaders in their communities and also were judges for the people.
- In the early Christian churches, Christian "elders" gave spiritual leadership to the local assemblies of believers. Elders in these churches sometimes included young men who were spiritually mature.
- This term could be translated as "older men" or "spiritually mature men leading the church."

Bible References:

- 1 Chronicles 11:1-3
- 1 Timothy 03:1-3
- 1 Timothy 04:14
- Acts 05:19-21
- Acts 14:23
- Mark 11:28
- Matthew 21:23-24

Word Data:

- Strong's: H1419, H2205, H7868, G1087, G3187, G4244, G4245, G4850

(Go back to: [1 Chronicles 4:33](#); [6:56](#); [6:64](#); [6:65](#); [11:3](#); [11:8](#); [19:9](#); [19:15](#); [20:2](#); [21:16](#))

Ephraim, Ephraimite

Facts:

Ephraim was the second son of Joseph. His descendants, the Ephraimites, formed one of the twelve tribes of Israel.

- The tribe of Ephraim was one of the ten tribes that were located in the northern part of Israel.
- Sometimes the name Ephraim is used in the Bible to refer to the whole northern kingdom of Israel. (See: [synecdoche](#))
- Ephraim was apparently a very mountainous or hilly area, based on references to “the hill country of Ephraim” or “the mountains of Ephraim.”

(Translation suggestions: [How to Translate Names](#))

(See also: kingdom of Israel, twelve tribes of Israel)

Bible References:

- 1 Chronicles 06:66-69
- 2 Chronicles 13:4-5
- Ezekiel 37:16
- Genesis 41:52
- Genesis 48:1-2
- John 11:54

Word Data:

- Strong's: H669, H673, G2187

(Go back to: [1 Chronicles 6:66](#); [6:67](#); [7:20](#); [7:22](#); [9:3](#); [12:30](#); [27:10](#); [27:14](#); [27:20](#))

Esau

Facts:

Esau was one of the twin sons of Isaac and Rebekah. He was the first baby born to them. His twin brother was Jacob.

- Esau sold his birthright to his brother Jacob in exchange for a bowl of food.
- Since Esau was born first, his father Isaac was supposed to give him a special blessing. But Jacob tricked Isaac into giving him that blessing instead. At first Esau was so angry that he wanted to kill Jacob, but later he forgave him.
- Esau had many children and grandchildren, and these descendants formed a large people group living in the land of Canaan.

(Translation suggestions: [How to Translate Names](#))

(See also: [Edom](#), Isaac, [Jacob](#), Rebekah)

Bible References:

- Genesis 25:26
- Genesis 25:29-30
- Genesis 26:34
- Genesis 27:11-12
- Genesis 32:05
- Hebrews 12:17
- Romans 09:13

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **06:07** When Rebekah's babies were born, the older son came out red and hairy, and they named him **Esau**.
- **07:02** So *Esau* gave Jacob his rights as the oldest son.
- **07:04** When Isaac felt the goat hair and smelled the clothes, he thought it was **Esau** and blessed him.
- **07:05** **Esau** hated Jacob because Jacob had stolen his rights as oldest son and also his blessing.
- **07:10** But *Esau* had already forgiven Jacob, and they were happy to see each other again.

Word Data:

- Strong's: H6215, G2269

(Go back to: [1 Chronicles 1:34](#); [1:35](#))

eternity, everlasting, eternal, forever

Definition:

The terms “everlasting” and “eternal” have very similar meanings and refer to something that will always exist or that lasts forever.

- The term “eternity” refers to a state of being that has no beginning or end. It can also refer to life that never ends.
- After this present life on earth, humans will spend eternity either in heaven with God or in hell apart from God.
- The terms “eternal life” and “everlasting life” are used in the New Testament to refer to living forever with God in heaven.

The term “forever” refers to never-ending time.

- The phrase “forever and ever” has the idea of time that never ends and expresses what eternity or eternal life is like. It emphasizes that something will always happen or exist. It refers to time that never ends.
- God said that David’s throne would last “forever.” This is referred to the fact that David’s descendant Jesus will reign as king forever.

Translation Suggestions:

- Other ways to translate “eternal” or “everlasting” could include “unending” or “never stopping” or “always continuing.”
- The terms “eternal life” and “everlasting life” could also be translated as “life that never ends” or “life that continues without stopping” or “the raising up of our bodies to live forever.”
- Depending on the context, different ways to translate “eternity” could include “existing outside of time” or “unending life” or “life in heaven.”
- Also consider how this word is translated in a Bible translation in a local or national language. (See: [How to Translate Unknowns](#))
- “Forever” could also be translated by “always” or “never ending.”
- The phrase “will last forever” could also be translated as “always exist” or “will never stop” or “will always continue.”
- The emphatic phrase “forever and ever” could also be translated as “for always and always” or “not ever ending” or “which never, ever ends.”
- David’s throne lasting forever could be translated as “David’s descendant will reign forever” or “a descendant of David will always be reigning.”

(See also: [David](#), [reign](#), [life](#))

Bible References:

- Genesis 17:08
- Genesis 48:04
- Exodus 15:17
- 2 Samuel 03:28-30
- 1 Kings 02:32-33
- Job 04:20-21
- Psalms 021:04
- Isaiah 09:6-7
- Isaiah 40:27-28
- Daniel 07:18
- Luke 18:18
- Acts 13:46

- Romans 05:21
- Hebrews 06:19-20
- Hebrews 10:11-14
- 1 John 01:02
- 1 John 05:12
- Revelation 01:4-6
- Revelation 22:3-5

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **27:01** One day, an expert in the Jewish law came to Jesus to test him, saying, "Teacher, what must I do to inherit **eternal life**?"
- **28:01** One day, a rich young ruler came up to Jesus and asked him, "Good Teacher, what must I do to have **eternal life**?" Jesus said to him, "Why do you ask me about what is good? There is only One who is good, and that is God. But if you want to have **eternal life**, obey God's laws."
- **28:10** Jesus answered, "Everyone who has left houses, brothers, sisters, father, mother, children, or property for my name's sake, will receive 100 times more and will also receive **eternal life**."

Word Data:

- Strong's: H3117, H4481, H5331, H5703, H5705, H5769, H5865, H5957, H6924, G126, G165, G166, G1336

(Go back to: [1 Chronicles 17 General Notes](#))

Ethiopia, Ethiopian

Facts:

Ethiopia is a country in Africa located just south of Egypt, bordered by the Nile River to the west and by the Red Sea to the east. A person from Ethiopia is an "Ethiopian."

- Ancient Ethiopia was located south of Egypt and included land that is now part of several modern-day African countries, such as Sudan, modern Ethiopia, Somalia, Kenya, Uganda, Central African Republic, and Chad.
- In the Bible, Ethiopia is sometimes called "Cush" or "Nubia."
- The countries of Ethiopia ("Cush") and Egypt are often mentioned together in the Bible, perhaps because they were located next to each other and their people may have had some of the same ancestors.
- God sent Philip the evangelist to a desert where he shared the good news about Jesus with an Ethiopian eunuch.

(Translation suggestions: [How to Translate Names](#))

(See also: Cush, [Egypt](#), eunuch, Philip)

Bible References:

- Acts 08:27
- Acts 08:30
- Acts 08:32-33
- Acts 08:36-38
- Isaiah 18:1-2
- Nahum 03:09
- Zephaniah 03:9-11

Word Data:

- Strong's: G128

(Go back to: [1 Chronicles 1:8](#); [1:9](#))

evil, wicked, unpleasant

Definition:

In the Bible, the term “evil” can refer either to the concept of moral wickedness or emotional unpleasantness. The context will usually make it clear which meaning is intended in the specific instance of the term.

- While “evil” may describe a person’s character, “wicked” may refer more to a person’s behavior. However, both terms are very similar in meaning.
- The term “wickedness” refers to the state of being that exists when people do wicked things.
- The results of evil are clearly shown in how people mistreat others by killing, stealing, slandering and being cruel and unkind.

Translation Suggestions:

- Depending on the context, the terms “evil” and “wicked” can be translated as “bad” or “sinful” or “immoral.”
- Other ways to translate these could include “not good” or “not righteous” or “not moral.”
- Make sure the words or phrases that are used to translate these terms fit the context that is natural in the target language.

(See also: disobey, [sin](#), [good](#), righteous, demon)

Bible References:

- 1 Samuel 24:11
- 1 Timothy 06:10
- 3 John 01:10
- Genesis 02:17
- Genesis 06:5-6
- Job 01:01
- Job 08:20
- Judges 09:57
- Luke 06:22-23
- Matthew 07:11-12
- Proverbs 03:07
- Psalms 022:16-17

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **02:04** “God just knows that as soon as you eat it, you will be like God and will understand good and **evil** like he does.”
- **03:01** After a long time, many people were living in the world. They had become very **wicked** and violent.
- **03:02** But Noah found favor with God. He was a righteous man living among **wicked** people.
- **04:02** God saw that if they all kept working together to do **evil**, they could do many more sinful things.
- **08:12** “You tried to do **evil** when you sold me as a slave, but God used the **evil** for good!”
- **14:02** They (Canaanites) worshiped false gods and did many **evil** things.
- **17:01** But then he (Saul) became a **wicked** man who did not obey God, so God chose a different man who would one day be king in his place.
- **18:11** In the new kingdom of Israel, all the kings were **evil**.
- **29:08** The king was so angry that he threw the **wicked** servant into prison until he could pay back all of his debt.
- **45:02** They said, “We heard him (Stephen) speak **evil** things about Moses and God!”
- **50:17** He (Jesus) will wipe away every tear and there will be no more suffering, sadness, crying, **evil**, pain, or death.

Word Data:

- Strong's: H205, H605, H1100, H1681, H1942, H2154, H2162, H2254, H2617, H3399, H3415, H4209, H4849, H5753, H5766, H5767, H5999, H6001, H6090, H7451, H7455, H7489, H7561, H7562, H7563, H7564, G92, G113, G459, G932, G987, G988, G1426, G2549, G2551, G2554, G2555, G2556, G2557, G2559, G2560, G2635, G2636, G4151, G4189, G4190, G4191, G5337

(Go back to: [1 Chronicles 2:3](#); [7:23](#); [21:15](#))

ewe, ram, sheep, sheepfold, sheepshearers, sheepskins

Definition:

A “sheep” is a medium-sized animal with four legs that has wool all over its body. A male sheep is called a “ram.” A female sheep is called a “ewe.” The plural of “sheep” is also “sheep.”

- A baby sheep is called a “lamb.”
- The Israelites often used sheep for sacrifices, especially male sheep and young sheep.
- People eat meat from sheep and use their wool to make clothing and other things.
- Sheep are very trusting, weak, and timid. They are easily influenced to wander away. They need a shepherd to lead them, protect them, and provide them with food, water, and shelter.
- In the Bible, people are compared to sheep who have God as their shepherd.

(Translation suggestions: [How to Translate Unknowns](#))

(See also: [Israel](#), [lamb](#), [sacrifice](#), shepherd)

Bible References:

- Acts 08:32
- Genesis 30:32
- John 02:14
- Luke 15:05
- Mark 06:34
- Matthew 09:36
- Matthew 10:06
- Matthew 12:12
- Matthew 25:33

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **09:12** One day while Moses was taking care of his **sheep**, he saw a bush that was on fire.
- **17:02** David was a shepherd from the town of Bethlehem. At different times while he was watching his father’s **sheep**, David had killed both a lion and a bear that had attacked the **sheep**.
- **30:03** To Jesus, these people were like **sheep** without a shepherd.
- **38:08** Jesus said, “All of you will all abandon me tonight. It is written, ‘I will strike the shepherd and all the **sheep** will be scattered.’”

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H352, H1494, H1798, H2169, H3104, H3532, H3535, H3733, H3775, H5739, H5763, H6260, H6629, H6792, H7353, H7462, H7716, G4165, G4262, G4263

(Go back to: [1 Chronicles 15:26](#); [17:7](#); [21:17](#); [27:31](#); [29:21](#))

exile, exiled

Definition:

The term “exile” refers to people being forced to live somewhere away from their home country.

- People are usually sent into exile for punishment or for political reasons.
- A conquered people may be taken into exile to the country of the conquering army, in order to work for them.
- The “Babylonian exile” (or “the exile”) is a period in Bible history when many Jewish citizens of the region of Judah were taken from their homes and forced to live in Babylon. It lasted 70 years.
- The phrase “the exiles” refers to people who are living in exile, away from their home country.

Translation Suggestions:

- The term to “exile” could also be translated as to “send away” or to “force out” or to “banish.”
- The term “the exile” could be translated with a word or phrase that means “the sent away time” or “the time of banishment” or “the time of forced absence” or “banishment.”
- Ways to translate “the exiles” could include “the exiled people” or “the people who were banished” or “the people exiled to Babylon.”

(See also: [Babylon](#), Judah)

Bible References:

- 2 Kings 24:14
- Daniel 02:25-26
- Ezekiel 01:1-3
- Isaiah 20:04
- Jeremiah 29:1-3

Word Data:

- Strong's: H1123, H1473, H1540, H1541, H1546, H1547, H3212, H3318, H5080, H6808, H7617, H7622, H8689, G3927

(Go back to: [1 Chronicles 5:6](#); [8:7](#); [9:1](#); [17:25](#))

face, facial

Definition:

The word “face” literally refers to the front part of a person’s head. This term also has several figurative meanings.

- The expression “your face” is often a figurative way of saying “you.” Similarly, the expression “my face” often means “I” or “me.”
- In a physical sense, to “face” someone or something means to look in the direction of that person or thing.
- To “face each other” means to “look directly at each other.”
- Being “face to face” means that two people are seeing each other in person, at a close distance.
- When Jesus “steadfastly set his face to go to Jerusalem,” it means that he very firmly decided to go.
- To “set one’s face against” people or a city means to firmly decide to no longer support, or to reject that city or person.
- The expression “face of the land” refers to the surface of the earth and often is a general reference to the whole earth. For example, a “famine covering the face of the earth” refers to a widespread famine affecting many people living on earth.
- The figurative expression “do not hide your face from your people” means “do not reject your people” or “do not desert your people” or “do not stop taking care of your people.”

Translation Suggestions:

- If possible, it is best to keep the expression or use an expression in the project language that has a similar meaning.
- The term to “face” could be translated as to “turn toward” or to “look at directly” or to “look at the face of.”
- The expression “face to face” could be translated as “up close” or “right in front of” or “in the presence of.”
- Depending on the context, the expression “before his face” could be translated as “ahead of him” or “in front of him” or “before him” or “in his presence.”
- The expression “set his face toward” could be translated as “began traveling toward” or “firmly made up his mind to go to.”
- The expression “hide his face from” could be translated as “turn away from” or “stop helping or protecting” or “reject.”
- To “set his face against” a city or people could be translated as “look at with anger and condemn” or “refuse to accept” or “decide to reject” or “condemn and reject” or “pass judgment on.”
- The expression “say it to their face” could be translated as “say it to them directly” or “say it to them in their presence” or “say it to them in person.”
- The expression “on the face of the land” could also be translated as “throughout the land” or “over the whole earth” or “living throughout the earth.”

Bible References:

- Deuteronomy 05:04
- Genesis 33:10

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H600, H639, H5869, H6440, H8389, G3799, G4383, G4750

(Go back to: [1 Chronicles 5:10](#); [12:8](#); [16:11](#); [19:10](#); [21:16](#))

faithful, faithfulness, unfaithful, unfaithfulness, trustworthy

Definition:

To be “faithful” to God means to consistently live according to God’s teachings. It means to be loyal to him by obeying him. The state or condition of being faithful is “faithfulness.”

- A person who is faithful can be trusted to always keep his promises and to always fulfill his responsibilities to other people.
- A faithful person perseveres in doing a task, even when it is long and difficult.
- Faithfulness to God is the consistent practice of doing what God wants us to do.

The term “unfaithful” describes people who do not do what God has commanded them to do. The condition or practice of being unfaithful is “unfaithfulness.”

- The people of Israel were called “unfaithful” when they began to worship idols and when they disobeyed God in other ways.
- In marriage, someone who commits adultery is “unfaithful” to his or her spouse.
- God used the term “unfaithfulness” to describe Israel’s disobedient behavior. They were not obeying God or honoring him.

Translation Suggestions:

- In many contexts, “faithful” can be translated as “loyal” or “dedicated” or “dependable.”
- In other contexts, “faithful” can be translated by a word or phrase that means “continuing to believe” or “persevering in believing and obeying God.”
- Ways that “faithfulness” could be translated could include “persevering in believing” or “loyalty” or “trustworthiness” or “believing and obeying God.”
- Depending on the context, “unfaithful” could be translated as “not faithful” or “unbelieving” or “not obedient” or “not loyal.”
- The phrase “the unfaithful” could be translated as “people who are not faithful (to God)” or “unfaithful people” or “those who disobey God” or “people who rebel against God.”
- The term “unfaithfulness” could be translated as “disobedience” or “disloyalty” or “not believing or obeying.”
- In some languages, the term “unfaithful” is related to the word for “unbelief.”

(See also: adultery, believe, disobey, faith, believe)

Bible References:

- Genesis 24:49
- Leviticus 26:40
- Numbers 12:07
- Joshua 02:14
- Judges 02:16-17
- 1 Samuel 02:9
- Psalm 012:1
- Proverbs 11:12-13
- Isaiah 01:26
- Jeremiah 09:7-9
- Hosea 05:07
- Luke 12:46
- Luke 16:10
- Colossians 01:07
- 1 Thessalonians 05:24
- 3 John 01:05

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **08:05** Even in prison, Joseph remained **faithful** to God, and God blessed him.
- **14:12** Even so, God was still **faithful** to His promises to Abraham, Isaac, and Jacob.
- **15:13** The people promised to remain **faithful** to God and follow his laws.
- **17:09** David ruled with justice and **faithfulness** for many years, and God blessed him. However, toward the end of his life he sinned terribly against God.
- **18:04** God was angry with Solomon and, as a punishment for Solomon's **unfaithfulness**, he promised to divide the nation of Israel into two kingdoms after Solomon's death.
- **35:12** "The older son said to his father, 'All these years I have worked **faithfully** for you!'"
- **49:17** But God is **faithful** and says that if you confess your sins, he will forgive you.
- **50:04** If you remain **faithful** to me to the end, then God will save you."

Word Data:

- Strong's: H529, H530, H539, H540, H571, H898, H2181, H4603, H4604, H4820, G569, G571, G4103

(Go back to: [1 Chronicles 2:7](#); [10:13](#); [17:23](#))

family, household

Definition:

The term “family” refers to a group of people who are related by blood and usually includes a father, mother, and their children. In the Bible, this term sometimes includes other close relatives such as grandparents, grandchildren, uncles and aunts.

- In biblical times, usually the oldest man was the major authority of a family.
- Family could also include servants, concubines, and even foreigners.
- Some languages may have a broader word such as “clan” or “household” that would fit better in contexts where more than just parents and children are being referred to.
- The New Testament often uses terms related to the concept of “family” to refer to the Church, meaning people who believe in Jesus.

(See also: clan, [ancestor](#), [house](#))

Bible References:

- 1 Kings 08:1-2
- 1 Samuel 18:18
- Exodus 01:21
- Joshua 02:12-13
- Luke 02:04

Word Data:

- Strong's: H1, H251, H272, H504, H1004, H1121, H2233, H2859, H2945, H3187, H4138, H4940, H5387, H5712, G1085, G3614, G3624, G3965

(Go back to: [1 Chronicles 2:53](#); [2:55](#); [4:2](#); [4:8](#); [4:21](#); [4:27](#); [6:19](#); [6:61](#); [6:71](#); [7:5](#); [16:28](#))

famine

Definition:

The term “famine” refers to an extreme lack of food throughout a country or region, usually due to not enough rain.

- Food crops can fail from natural causes such as lack of rain, crop disease, or insects.
- Food shortages can also be caused by people, such as enemies who destroy crops.
- In the Bible, God sometimes caused famine as a way to punish nations when they sinned against him.
- In Amos 8:11 the term “famine” is used figuratively to refer to a time when God punished his people by not speaking to them. This could be translated with the word for “famine” in your language, or with a phrase such as “extreme lack” or “severe deprivation.”

Bible References:

- 1 Chronicles 21:11-12
- Acts 07:11
- Genesis 12:10
- Genesis 45:06
- Jeremiah 11:21-23
- Luke 04:25
- Matthew 24:08

Word Data:

- Strong's: H3720, H7458, H7459, G3042

(Go back to: [1 Chronicles 21:12](#))

fast, fasting

Definition:

The term to “fast” means to stop eating food for a period of time, such as for a day or more. Sometimes it also includes not drinking.

- Fasting can help people to focus on God and pray without being distracted by preparing food and eating.
- Jesus condemned the Jewish religious leaders for fasting for the wrong reasons. They fasted so that others would think they were righteous.
- Sometimes people fast because they are very sad or grieved about something.
- The verb to “fast” can also be translated as to “refrain from eating” or to “not eat.”
- The noun “fast” could be translated as “time of not eating” or “time of abstaining from food.”

(See also: Jewish leaders)

Bible References:

- 1 Kings 21:8-10
- 2 Chronicles 20:03
- Acts 13:1-3
- Jonah 03:4-5
- Luke 05:34
- Mark 02:19
- Matthew 06:18
- Matthew 09:15

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **25:01** Immediately after Jesus was baptized, the Holy Spirit led him out into the wilderness, where he **fasted** for forty days and forty nights.
- **34:08** “For example, I **fast** two times every week and I give you ten percent of all the money and goods that I receive.”
- **46:10** One day, while the Christians at Antioch were **fasting** and praying, the Holy Spirit said to them, “Set apart for me Barnabas and Saul to do the work I have called them to do.”

Word Data:

- Strong's: H2908, H5144, H6684, H6685, G3521, G3522

(Go back to: [1 Chronicles 10:12](#))

fear, afraid, dread

Definition:

The terms "fear" refers to the unpleasant emotion a person feels when experiencing a potential threat to their safety or well-being. In the Bible, however, the term "fear" can also mean an attitude of worship, respect, awe, or obedience toward another person, usually someone powerful such as God or a king. The term "dread" refers to extreme or intense fear.

Translation Suggestions:

- Depending on the context, the term "fear" can be translated in various ways, depending on the context. Some possibilities include: "be afraid;" "deeply respect;" or "deep respect;" "revere;" or "reverence;" or perhaps "be in awe of."
- The phrase "fear not" could also be translated as "do not be afraid" or "stop being afraid."
- The sentence "The fear of God fell on all of them" might be translated in various ways. Some possibilities include: "Suddenly they all felt a deep awe and respect for God;" or, "Immediately, they all felt very amazed and revered God deeply;" or, "Right then, they all felt very afraid of God (because of his great power)."

(See also: marvel, awe, [Lord](#), [power](#), [Yahweh](#))

Bible References:

- 1 John 04:18
- Acts 02:43
- Acts 19:15-17
- Genesis 50:21
- Isaiah 11:3-5
- Job 06:14
- Jonah 01:09
- Luke 12:05
- Matthew 10:28
- Proverbs 10:24-25

Word Data:

- Strong's: H367, H926, H1204, H1481, H1672, H1674, H1763, H2119, H2296, H2727, H2729, H2730, H2731, H2844, H2849, H2865, H3016, H3025, H3068, H3372, H3373, H3374, H4032, H4034, H4035, H4116, H4172, H6206, H6342, H6343, H6345, H6427, H7264, H7267, H7297, H7374, H7461, H7493, H8175, G870, G1167, G1168, G1169, G1630, G1719, G2124, G2125, G2962, G5398, G5399, G5400, G5401

(Go back to: [1 Chronicles 10:4](#); [13:12](#); [14:17](#); [16:25](#); [17:21](#); [22:13](#); [28:20](#))

feast, feasting

Definition:

The term “feast” is a very general term that refers to an event where people gather to celebrate something by eating a large meal together. In biblical times, a feast sometimes lasted for several days or more.

- Often there are special kinds of food that are eaten at a certain feast.
- The religious festivals that God commanded the Jews to celebrate usually included having a feast together. For this reason the festivals are often called “feasts.”
- In biblical times, kings and other rich and powerful people often gave feasts to entertain their family or friends.
- In the story about the lost son, the father had a special feast prepared to celebrate the return of his son.
- The term to “feast” could also be translated as to “eat lavishly” or to “celebrate by eating lots of food” or to “eat a special, large meal.”
- Depending on the context, “feast” could be translated as “celebrating together with a large meal” or “a meal with a lot of food” or “a celebration meal.”

(See also: festival, banquet)

Bible References:

- 2 Peter 02:12-14
- Genesis 26:30
- Genesis 29:22
- Genesis 40:20
- Jude 01:12-13
- Luke 02:43
- Luke 14:7-9
- Matthew 22:01

Word Data:

- Strong's: H398, H2077, H2282, H3899, H3900, H4150, H4797, H4960, H7646, H8057, H8354, G26, G1062, G1173, G1859, G2165, G4910

(Go back to: [1 Chronicles 6:32](#); [9:21](#); [23:32](#))

fire, firebrands, firepans, fireplace, firepot

Definition:

Fire is the heat, light, and flames that are produced when something is burned.

- Burning wood by fire turns the wood into ashes.
- The term “fire” is also used figuratively, usually referring to judgment or purification.
- The final judgment of unbelievers is in the fire of hell.
- Fire is used to refine gold and other metals. In the Bible, this process is used to explain how God refines people through difficult things that happen in their lives.
- The phrase “baptize with fire” could also be translated as “cause to experience suffering in order to be purified.”

(See also: pure)

Bible References:

- 1 Kings 16:18-20
- 2 Kings 01:10
- 2 Thessalonians 01:08
- Acts 07:29-30
- John 15:06
- Luke 03:16
- Matthew 03:12
- Nehemiah 01:3

Word Data:

- Strong's: H215, H217, H398, H784, H800, H801, H1197, H1200, H1513, H2734, H3341, H3857, H4071, H4168, H5135, H6315, H8316, G439, G440, G1067, G2741, G4442, G4443, G4447, G4448, G4451, G5394, G5457

(Go back to: [1 Chronicles 14:12](#); [21:26](#))

firstborn

Definition:

The term “firstborn” refers to an offspring of people or animals that is born first, before the other offspring are born.

- In the Bible, “firstborn” usually refers to the first male offspring that is born.
- In Bible times, the firstborn son was given a place of prominence and twice as much of his family inheritance as the other sons.
- Often it was the firstborn male of an animal that was sacrificed to God.
- This concept can also be used figuratively. For example, the nation of Israel is called God’s firstborn son because God gave it special privileges over other nations.
- Jesus, the Son of God is called God’s firstborn because of his importance and authority over everyone else.

Translation Suggestions:

- When “first-born” occurs in the text alone, it could also be translated as “firstborn male” or “firstborn son,” since that is what is implied. (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))
- Other ways to translate this term could include “the son who was born first” or “the eldest son” or “the number one son.”
- When used figuratively to refer to Jesus, this could be translated with a word or phrase that means “the son who has authority over everything” or “the Son who is first in honor.”
- Caution: Make sure the translation of this term in reference to Jesus does not imply that he was created.

(See also: [inherit](#), [sacrifice](#), [son](#))

Bible References:

- Colossians 01:15
- Genesis 04:3-5
- Genesis 29:26-27
- Genesis 43:33
- Luke 02:6-7
- Revelation 01:05

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H1060, H1062, H1067, H1069, G4416, G5207

(Go back to: [1 Chronicles 1:13](#); [1:29](#); [2:3](#); [2:13](#); [2:25](#); [2:27](#); [2:42](#); [2:50](#); [4:4](#); [5:1](#); [5:3](#); [8:1](#); [8:39](#); [26:10](#))

flock, herd

Definition:

In the Bible, “flock” refers to a group of sheep or goats and “herd” refers to a group of cattle or pigs.

- Different languages may have different ways of naming groups of animals or birds.
- Consider what terms are used in your language to refer to different groups of animals, and use the appropriate term for each kind of animal.
- If your language uses the same word to refer to both sheep and cattle, then you may need to say "groups of sheep" where the Bible says only “flocks,” and "groups of cattle" where the Bible says only “herds.”

(See also: goat, [cow](#), pig, [sheep](#))

Bible References:

- 1 Kings 10:28-29
- 2 Chronicles 17:11
- Deuteronomy 14:22-23
- Luke 02:8-9
- Matthew 08:30
- Matthew 26:31

Word Data:

- Strong's: H951, H1241, H2835, H4029, H4735, H4830, H5349, H5739, H6251, H6629, H7399, H7462, G34, G4167, G4168

(Go back to: [1 Chronicles 5:21](#); [12:40](#))

forsake, forsaken, leave

Definition:

The term “forsake” means to abandon someone or to give up something. Someone who has been “forsaken” has been deserted or abandoned by someone else.

- When people “forsake” God, they are being unfaithful to him by disobeying him.
- When God “forsakes” people, he has stopped helping them and allowed them to experience suffering in order to cause them to turn back to him.
- This term can also mean to forsake things, such as forsaking, or not following, God’s teachings.
- The term “forsaken” can be used in the past tense, as in “he has forsaken you” or as in referring to someone who has “been forsaken.”

Translation Suggestions:

- Other ways to translate this term could include “abandon” or “neglect” or “give up” or “go away from” or “leave behind,” depending on the context.
- To “forsake” God’s law could be translated “disobey God’s law.” This could also be translated as “abandon” or “give up on” or “stop obeying” his teachings or his laws.
- The phrase “be forsaken” can be translated as “be abandoned” or “be deserted.”
- It more clearer to use different words to translate this term, depending on whether the text describes forsaking a thing or a person.

Bible References:

- 1 Kings 06:11-13
- Daniel 11:29-30
- Genesis 24:27
- Joshua 24:16-18
- Matthew 27:45-47
- Proverbs 27:9-10
- Psalms 071:18

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H488, H2308, H5203, H5428, H5800, H5805, H7503, G646, G657, G863, G1459, G2641,

(Go back to: [1 Chronicles 28:9](#); [28:20](#))

found, founder, foundation

Definition:

The verb “found” means build, create, or lay a base for. The phrase “founded on” means supported by or based on. A “foundation” is the base of support on which something is built or created.

- The foundation of a house or building must be strong and dependable in order to support the entire structure.
- The term “foundation” can also refer to the beginning of something or to the time when something was first created.
- In a figurative sense, believers in Christ are compared to a building that is founded on the teachings of the apostles and prophets, with Christ himself being the cornerstone of the building.
- A “foundation stone” was a stone that was laid as part of the foundation. These stones were tested to make sure they were strong enough to support an entire building.

Translation Suggestions:

- The phrase “before the foundation of the world” could be translated as “before the creation of the world” or “before the time when the world first existed” or “before everything was first created.”
- The term “founded on” could be translated as “securely built on” or “firmly based on.”
- Depending on the context, “foundation” could be translated as “strong base” or “solid support” or “beginning” or “creation.”

(See also: cornerstone, create)

Bible References:

- 1 Kings 06:37-38
- 2 Chronicles 03:1-3
- Ezekiel 13:13-14
- Luke 14:29
- Matthew 13:35
- Matthew 25:34

Word Data:

- Strong's: H134, H787, H2713, H3245, H3247, H3248, H4143, H4144, H4146, H4328, H4349, H4527, H8356, G2310, G2311, G2602

(Go back to: [1 Chronicles 9:22](#))

frankincense

Definition:

Frankincense is a fragrant spice made from tree resin. It is used to make perfumes and incense.

- In Bible times, frankincense was an important spice used to prepare dead bodies for burial.
- This spice is also valuable for its healing and calming qualities.
- When learned men came from an eastern country to visit baby Jesus in Bethlehem, frankincense was one of the three gifts they brought him.

(See also: Bethlehem, learned men)

Bible References:

- 1 Chronicles 09:28-29
- Exodus 30:34-36
- Matthew 02:11-12
- Numbers 05:15

Word Data:

- Strong's: H3828, G3030

(Go back to: [1 Chronicles 9:29](#))

freewill offering

Definition:

A freewill offering was a type of sacrifice to God that was not required by the Law of Moses. It was a person's own choice to give this offering.

- If the freewill offering was an animal to be sacrificed, the animal was permitted to have slight defects since it was a voluntary offering.
- The Israelites ate the sacrificed animal as part of a celebration feast.
- When a freewill offering could be given, this was a cause of rejoicing for Israel since it showed that the harvest had been good so that the people had plenty of food.
- The book of Ezra describes a different type of freewill offering that was brought for rebuilding the temple. This offering consisted of gold and silver money, as well as bowls and other objects made of gold and silver.

(See also: [burnt offering](#), Ezra, [feast](#), [grain offering](#), guilt offering, [law](#), sin offering)

Bible References:

- 1 Chronicles 29:06
- 2 Chronicles 35:7-9
- Deuteronomy 12:17
- Exodus 36:2-4
- Leviticus 07:15-16

Word Data:

- Strong's: H5068, H5071

(Go back to: [1 Chronicles 29:5](#); [29:9](#); [29:17](#))

fulfill, fulfilled, carried out

Definition:

The term “fulfill” means to complete or accomplish something that was expected.

- When a prophecy is fulfilled, it means that God causes to happen what was predicted in the prophecy.
- If a person fulfills a promise or a vow, it means that he does what he has promised to do.
- To fulfill a responsibility means to do the task that was assigned or required.

Translation Suggestions:

- Depending on the context, “fulfill” could be translated as “accomplish” or “complete” or “cause to happen” or “obey” or “perform.”
- The phrase “has been fulfilled” could also be translated as “has come true” or “has happened” or “has taken place.”
- Ways to translate “fulfill,” as in “fulfill your ministry,” could include “complete” or “perform” or “practice” or “serve other people as God has called you to do.”

(See also: [prophet](#), Christ, [minister](#), [call](#))

Bible References:

- 1 Kings 02:27
- Acts 03:17-18
- Leviticus 22:17-19
- Luke 04:21
- Matthew 01:22-23
- Matthew 05:17
- Psalms 116:12-15

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **24:04** John **fulfilled** what the prophets said, “See I send my messenger ahead of you, who will prepare your way.”
- **40:03** The soldiers gambled for Jesus’ clothing. When they did this, they **fulfilled** a prophecy that said, “They divided my garments among them, and gambled for my clothing.”
- **42:07** Jesus said, “I told you that everything written about me in God’s word must be **fulfilled**.”
- **43:05** “This **fulfills** the prophecy made by the prophet Joel in which God said, ‘In the last days, I will pour out my Spirit.’”
- **43:07** “This **fulfills** the prophecy which says, ‘You will not let your Holy One rot in the grave.’”
- **44:05** “Although you did not understand what you were doing, God used your actions to **fulfill** the prophecies that the Messiah would suffer and die.”

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H1214, H5487, G1096, G4138

(Go back to: [1 Chronicles 28:20](#))

gate, gate bars, gatekeeper, gateposts, gateway

Definition:

A “gate” is a hinged barrier at an access point in a fence or wall that surrounds a house or city. The “gate bar” refers to a wooden or metal bar that can be moved into place so that the gate cannot be opened from the outside.

- A city gate could be opened to allow people, animals, and cargo to travel in and out of the city.
- To protect the city, its walls and gates were thick and strong. Gates were closed and locked with a metal or wooden bar to prevent enemy soldiers from entering the city.
- A city gate was often the news and social center of a village. It was also where business transactions occurred and judgments were made.

Translation Suggestions:

- Depending on the context, other ways to translate “gate” could be “door” or “wall opening” or “barrier” or “entranceway.”
- The phrase “bars of the gate” could be translated as “gate bolts” or “wooden beams to lock the gate” or “metal locking rods of the gate.”

Bible References:

- Acts 09:24
- Acts 10:18
- Deuteronomy 21:18-19
- Genesis 19:01
- Genesis 24:60
- Matthew 07:13

Word Data:

- Strong's: H1817, H5592, H6607, H8179, G2374, G4439, G4440

(Go back to: [1 Chronicles 9:17](#); [9:18](#); [9:23](#); [9:24](#); [9:26](#); [11:17](#); [11:18](#); [15:18](#); [22:3](#); [26:12](#); [26:13](#); [26:16](#); [26:19](#))

generation

Definition:

The term “generation” generally refers to a group of people who are all alive at the same time. They are all born in the same general time period and are therefore about the same age.

- A generation can also refer to a span of time. In Bible times, a generation was usually considered to be about 40 years.
- Parents and their children are from two different generations.
- In the Bible, the term “generation” is also used figuratively to refer generally to people who share common characteristics.

Translation Suggestions

- The phrase “this generation” or “people of this generation” could be translated as “the people living now” or “you people.”
- “This wicked generation” could also be translated as “these wicked people living now.”
- The expression “from generation to generation” or “from one generation to the next” could be translated as “people living now, as well as their children and grandchildren” or “people in every time period” or “people in this time period and future time periods” or “all people and their descendants.”
- “A generation to come will serve him; they will tell the next generation about Yahweh” could also be translated as “Many people in the future will serve Yahweh and will tell their children and grandchildren about him.”

(See also: descendant, [evil](#), [ancestor](#))

Bible References:

- Acts 15:19-21
- Exodus 03:13-15
- Genesis 15:16
- Genesis 17:07
- Mark 08:12
- Matthew 11:16
- Matthew 23:34-36
- Matthew 24:34

Word Data:

- Strong's: H1755, H1859, H8435, G1074

(Go back to: [1 Chronicles 1:29](#); [16:15](#))

Gibeon, Gibeonite

Facts:

Gibeon was a city that was located about 13 kilometers northwest of Jerusalem. The people living in Gibeon were the Gibeonites.

- When the Gibeonites heard about how the Israelites had destroyed the cities of Jericho and Ai, they were afraid.
- So the Gibeonites came to the leaders of Israel at Gilgal and pretended to be people from a far-away country.
- The Israelite leaders were deceived and made an agreement with the Gibeonites that they would protect them and not destroy them.

(See also: Gilgal, [Jericho](#), [Jerusalem](#))

Bible References:

- 1 Chronicles 08:29
- 1 Kings 03:4-5
- 2 Samuel 02:12-13
- Joshua 09:3-5

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **15:06** But one of the Canaanite people groups, called the **Gibeonites**, lied to Joshua and said they were from a place far from Canaan.
- **15:07** Sometime later, the kings of another people group in Canaan, the Amorites, heard that the **Gibeonites** had made a peace treaty with the Israelites, so they combined their armies into one large army and attacked **Gibeon**.
- **15:08** So Joshua gathered the Israelite army and they marched all night to reach the **Gibeonites**.

Word Data:

- Strong's: H1391, H1393

(Go back to: [1 Chronicles 8:29](#); [9:35](#); [12:4](#))

Gilead, Gileadite

Definition:

Gilead was the name of a mountainous region east of the Jordan river where the Israelite tribes of Gad, Reuben, and Manasseh lived.

- This region was also referred to as the “hill country of Gilead” or “Mount Gilead.”
- “Gilead” was also the name of several men in the Old Testament. One of these men was the grandson of Manasseh. Another Gilead was the father of Jephthah.

(Translation suggestions: [How to Translate Names](#))

(See also: Gad, Jephthah, Manasseh, Reuben, twelve tribes of Israel)

Bible References:

- 1 Chronicles 02:22
- 1 Samuel 11:01
- Amos 01:03
- Deuteronomy 02:36-37
- Genesis 31:21
- Genesis 37:25-26

Word Data:

- Strong's: H1568, H1569

(Go back to: [1 Chronicles 2:22](#))

glory, glorious, glorify

Definition:

The term “glory” is a general term for a family of concepts including value, worth, importance, honor, splendor, or majesty. The term “glorify” means to ascribe glory to someone or something, or to show or tell how glorious something or someone is.

- In the Bible, the term “glory” is especially used to describe God, who is more valuable, more worthy, more important, more honorable, more splendid, and more majestic than anyone or anything in the universe. Everything about his character reveals his glory.
- People can glorify God by telling about the wonderful things he has done. They can also glorify God by living in accordance with God's character, because doing so shows to others his value, worth, importance, honor, splendor, and majesty.
- The expression to “glory in” means to boast about or take pride in something.

Old Testament

- The specific phrase “the glory of Yahweh” in the Old Testament usually refers to some perceptible manifestation of Yahweh's presence in a particular location.

New Testament

- God the Father will glorify God the Son by revealing to all people the full extent of how glorious Jesus is.
- Everyone who believes in Christ will be glorified with him. This use of the term “glorify” carries a unique meaning. It means that when people who believe in Christ are raised to life, they will be changed physically to be like Jesus as he appeared after his resurrection.

Translation Suggestions:

- Depending on the context, different ways to translate “glory” could include “splendor” or “majesty” or “awesome greatness” or “extreme value.”
- The term “glorious” could be translated as “full of glory” or “extremely valuable” or “brightly shining” or “awesomely majestic.”
- The expression “give glory to God” could be translated as “honor God's greatness” or “praise God because of his splendor” or “tell others how great God is.”
- The expression “glory in” could also be translated as “praise” or “take pride in” or “boast about” or “take pleasure in.”
- “Glorify” could also be translated as “give glory to” or “bring glory to” or “cause to appear great.”
- The phrase “glorify God” could also be translated as “praise God” or “talk about God's greatness” or “show how great God is” or “honor God (by obeying him).”
- The term “be glorified” could also be translated as, “be shown to be very great” or “be praised” or “be exalted.”

(See also: honor, [majesty](#), exalt, obey, [praise](#))

Bible References:

- Exodus 24:17
- Numbers 14:9-10
- Isaiah 35:02
- Luke 18:43
- Luke 02:09
- John 12:28

- Acts 03:13-14
- Acts 07:1-3
- Romans 08:17
- 1 Corinthians 06:19-20
- Philippians 02:14-16
- Philippians 04:19
- Colossians 03:1-4
- 1 Thessalonians 02:05
- James 02:1-4
- 1 Peter 04:15-16
- Revelation 15:04

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **23:07** Suddenly, the skies were filled with angels praising God, saying, “**Glor**y to God in heaven and peace on earth to the people he favors!”
- **25:06** Then Satan showed Jesus all the kingdoms of the world and all their **glor**y and said, “I will give you all this if you bow down and worship me.”
- **37:01** When Jesus heard this news, he said, “This sickness will not end in death, but it is for the **glor**y of God.”
- **37:08** Jesus responded, “Did I not tell you that you would see God’s **glor**y if you believe in me?”

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H117, H142, H155, H215, H1342, H1921, H1926, H1935, H1984, H3367, H3513, H3519, H3520, H6286, H6643, H7623, H8597, G1391, G1392, G1740, G1741, G2744, G4888

(Go back to: [1 Chronicles 16:24](#); [16:28](#); [16:29](#))

God

Definition:

In the Bible, the term “God” refers to the eternal being who created the universe out of nothing. God exists as Father, Son, and Holy Spirit. God’s personal name is “Yahweh.”

- God has always existed; he existed before anything else existed, and he will continue to exist forever.
- He is the only true God and has authority over everything in the universe.
- God is perfectly righteous, infinitely wise, holy, sinless, just, merciful, and loving.
- He is a covenant-keeping God, who always fulfills his promises.
- People were created to worship God and he is the only one they should worship.
- God revealed his name as “Yahweh,” which means “he is” or “I am” or “the One who (always) exists.”
- The Bible also teaches about false “gods,” which are nonliving idols that people wrongly worship.

Translation Suggestions:

- Ways to translate “God” could include “Deity” or “Creator” or “Supreme Being” or “Supreme Creator” or “Infinite Sovereign Lord” or “Eternal Supreme Being.”
- Consider how God is referred to in a local or national language. There may also already be a word for “God” in the language being translated. If so, it is important to make sure that this word fits the characteristics of the one true God as described above.
- Many languages capitalize the first letter of the word for the one true God, to distinguish it from the word for a false god. Another way to make this distinction would be to use different terms for “God” and “god.”
NOTE: In the biblical text, when a person who does not worship Yahweh speaks about Yahweh and uses the word “god,” it is acceptable to render the term without a capital letter in reference to Yahweh (see Jonah 1:6, 3:9).
- The phrase “I will be their God and they will be my people” could also be translated as “I, God, will rule over these people and they will worship me.”

(Translation suggestions: [How to Translate Names](#))

(See also: create, false god, God the Father, Holy Spirit, false god, Son of God, [Yahweh](#))

Bible References:

- 1 John 01:07
- 1 Samuel 10:7-8
- 1 Timothy 04:10
- Colossians 01:16
- Deuteronomy 29:14-16
- Ezra 03:1-2
- Genesis 01:02
- Hosea 04:11-12
- Isaiah 36:6-7
- James 02:20
- Jeremiah 05:05
- John 01:03
- Joshua 03:9-11
- Lamentations 03:43
- Micah 04:05
- Philippians 02:06
- Proverbs 24:12
- Psalms 047:09

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **01:01 God** created the universe and everything in it in six days.
- **01:15 God** made man and woman in his own image.
- **05:03** "I am **God** Almighty. I will make a covenant with you."
- **09:14 God** said, "I AM WHO I AM. Tell them, 'I AM has sent me to you.' Also tell them, 'I am Yahweh, the **God** of your ancestors Abraham, Isaac, and Jacob. This is my name forever.'"
- **10:02** Through these plagues, **God** showed Pharaoh that he is more powerful than Pharaoh and all of Egypt's gods.
- **16:01** The Israelites began to worship the Canaanite gods instead of Yahweh, the true **God**.
- **22:07** You, my son, will be called the prophet of the **Most High God** who will prepare the people to receive the Messiah!"
- **24:09** There is only one **God**. But John heard **God** the Father speak, and saw Jesus the Son and the Holy Spirit when he baptized Jesus.
- **25:07** "Worship only the Lord your **God** and only serve him."
- **28:01** "There is only one who is good, and that is **God**."
- **49:09** But **God** loved everyone in the world so much that he gave his only Son so that whoever believes in Jesus will not be punished for his sins, but will live with **God** forever.
- **50:16** But some day **God** will create a new heaven and a new earth that will be perfect.

Word Data:

- Strong's: H136, H305, H410, H426, H430, H433, H2486, H2623, H3068, H3069, H3863, H4136, H6697, G112, G516, G932, G935, G1096, G1140, G2098, G2124, G2128, G2150, G2152, G2153, G2299, G2304, G2305, G2312, G2313, G2314, G2315, G2316, G2317, G2318, G2319, G2320, G3361, G3785, G4151, G5207, G5377, G5463, G5537, G5538

(Go back to: 1 Chronicles 4:10; 5:20; 5:25; 5:26; 6:48; 6:49; 9:11; 9:13; 9:26; 9:27; 10:10; 11:2; 11:19; 12:17; 12:18; 12:22; 13:2; 13:3; 13:5; 13:6; 13:7; 13:8; 13:10; 13:12; 13:14; 14:10; 14:11; 14:12; 14:14; 14:15; 14:16; 15:1; 15:2; 15:12; 15:13; 15:14; 15:15; 15:24; 15:26; 16:1; 16:4; 16:6; 16:14; 16:25; 16:26; 16:35; 16:36; 16:42; 17:2; 17:3; 17:16; 17:17; 17:20; 17:21; 17:22; 17:24; 17:25; 17:26; 19:13; 21:7; 21:8; 21:15; 21:17; 21:30; 22:1; 22:2; 22:6; 22:7; 22:11; 22:12; 22:18; 22:19; 23:14; 23:25; 23:28; 24:5; 24:19; 25:5; 25:6; 26:5; 26:20; 26:32; 28:2; 28:4; 28:8; 28:9; 28:12; 28:20; 28:21; 29:1; 29:2; 29:3; 29:7; 29:10; 29:13; 29:16; 29:17; 29:18; 29:20)

gold, golden

Definition:

Gold is a yellow, high quality metal that was used for making jewelry and religious objects. It was the most valuable metal in ancient times.

- In Bible times, many different kinds of objects were made out of solid gold or were covered with a thin layer of gold.
- These objects included earrings and other jewelry, and idols, altars, and other objects used in the tabernacle or temple, such as the ark of the covenant.
- In Old Testament times, gold was used as a means of exchange in buying and selling. It was weighed on a scale to determine its value.
- Later on, gold and other metals such as silver were used to make coins to use in buying and selling
- When referring to something that is not solid gold, but only has a thin covering of gold, the term “golden” or “gold-covered” or “gold-overlaid” could also be used.
- Sometimes an object is described as “gold-colored,” which means it has the yellow color of gold, but may not actually be made of gold.

(See also: [altar](#), ark of the covenant, false god, [silver](#), tabernacle, [temple](#))

Bible References:

- 1 Peter 01:07
- 1 Timothy 02:8-10
- 2 Chronicles 01:15
- Acts 03:06
- Daniel 02:32

Word Data:

- Strong's: H1220, H1722, H2091, H2742, H3800, H5458, H6884, H6885, G5552, G5553, G5554, G5557

(Go back to: [1 Chronicles 18:7](#); [18:10](#); [18:11](#); [20:2](#); [21:25](#); [22:14](#); [22:16](#); [28:14](#); [28:15](#); [28:16](#); [28:17](#); [28:18](#); [29:2](#); [29:3](#); [29:4](#); [29:5](#); [29:7](#))

good, right, pleasant, pleasing, better, best

Definition:

The word “good” has different meanings depending on the context. Many languages will use different words to translate these different meanings.

- In general, something is good if it fits with God’s character, purposes, and will.
- Something that is “good” could be pleasing, excellent, helpful, suitable, profitable, or morally right.
- Land that is “good” could be called “fertile” or “productive.”
- A “good” crop could be a “plentiful” crop.
- A person can be “good” at what they do if they are skillful at their task or profession, as in, the expression, “a good farmer.”
- In the Bible, the general meaning of “good” is often contrasted with “evil.”
- The term “goodness” usually refers to being morally good or righteous in thoughts and actions.
- The goodness of God refers to how he blesses people by giving them good and beneficial things. It also can refer to his moral perfection.

Translation Suggestions:

- The general term for “good” in the target language should be used wherever this general meaning is accurate and natural, especially in contexts where it is contrasted to evil.
- Depending on the context, other ways to translate this term could include “kind” or “excellent” or “pleasing to God” or “righteous” or “morally upright” or “profitable.”
- “Good land” could be translated as “fertile land” or “productive land”; a “good crop” could be translated as a “plentiful harvest” or “large amount of crops.”
- The phrase “do good to” means to do something that benefits others and could be translated as “be kind to” or “help” or “benefit” someone.
- To “do good on the Sabbath” means to “do things that help others on the Sabbath.”
- Depending on the context, ways to translate the term “goodness” could include “blessing” or “kindness” or “moral perfection” or “righteousness” or “purity.”

(See also: [evil](#), [holy](#), profit, righteous)

Bible References:

- Galatians 05:22-24
- Genesis 01:12
- Genesis 02:09
- Genesis 02:17
- James 03:13
- Romans 02:04

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **01:04** God saw that what he had created was **good**.
- **01:11** God planted the tree of the knowledge of **good** and evil.”
- **01:12** Then God said, “It is not **good** for man to be alone.”
- **02:04** “God just knows that as soon as you eat it, you will be like God and will understand **good** and evil like he does.”
- **08:12** “You tried to do evil when you sold me as a slave, but God used the evil for **good**!”
- **14:15** Joshua was a **good** leader because he trusted and obeyed God.
- **18:13** Some of these kings were **good** men who ruled justly and worshiped God.

- **28:01** “**Good** teacher, what must I do to have eternal life?” Jesus said to him, “Why do you call me ‘**good**?’ There is only one who is **good**, and that is God.”

Word Data:

- Strong's: H117, H145, H155, H202, H239, H410, H1580, H1926, H1935, H2532, H2617, H2623, H2869, H2895, H2896, H2898, H3190, H3191, H3276, H3474, H3788, H3966, H4261, H4399, H5232, H5750, H6287, H6643, H6743, H7075, H7368, H7399, H7443, H7999, H8231, H8232, H8233, H8389, H8458, G14, G15, G18, G19, G515, G744, G865, G979, G1380, G2095, G2097, G2106, G2107, G2108, G2109, G2114, G2115, G2133, G2140, G2162, G2163, G2174, G2293, G2565, G2567, G2570, G2573, G2887, G2986, G3140, G3617, G3776, G4147, G4632, G4674, G4851, G5223, G5224, G5358, G5542, G5543, G5544

(Go back to: [1 Chronicles 16:34](#); [19:13](#); [21:23](#); [28:8](#); [29:28](#))

grain offering

Definition:

A grain offering was a gift of wheat or barley flour offered to God, often after a burnt offering.

- The grain used for the grain offering had to be finely ground up. Sometimes it was cooked before being offered, but other times it was left uncooked.
- Oil and salt were added to the grain flour, but no yeast or honey was permitted.
- Part of the grain offering was burned up and part of it was eaten by the priests.

(See also: [burnt offering](#), guilt offering , [sacrifice](#), sin offering)

Bible References:

- 1 Chronicles 23:27-29
- Exodus 29:41-42
- Judges 13:19
- Leviticus 02:02

Word Data:

- Strong's: H4503, H8641

(Go back to: [1 Chronicles 16:29](#); [18:2](#); [18:6](#))

hand

Definition:

The word “hand” refers to the part of the body at the end of the arm. In the Bible, this term is associated with a person's power, control, or action, whether it be in reference to God or in reference to a human person.

Some of the various uses of the term “hand” include the following:

- To “lay a hand on” means to “harm.”
- To “save from the hand of” means to prevent someone from being harmed by another person.
- The position of being “on the right hand” means “on the right side” or “to the right.”
- The expression “by the hand of” someone means “by” or “through” the action of that person. For example, the phrase “by the hand of the Lord” means that God caused something to happen.
- Expressions such as “hand over to” or “deliver into the hands of” refer to causing someone to be under the control or power of someone else.
- The term “laying on of hands” can refer to placing a hand on a person in order to dedicate that person to God’s service, to pray for healing, or to ask God to bless that person.
- When Paul says “written by my hand,” it means that he himself wrote that part of the letter rather than speaking it to someone else to write down.

Translation Suggestions

- These expressions and other figures of speech could be translated using other figurative expressions that have the same meaning. Or the meaning could be translated using direct, literal language (see examples above).
- The expression “handed him the scroll” could also be translated as “gave him the scroll” or “put the scroll in his hand.” It was not given to him permanently, but just for the purpose of using it at that time.
- An expression such as “delivered them into the hands of their enemies” or “handed them over to their enemies,” could be translated as, “allowed their enemies to conquer them” or “caused them to be captured by their enemies” or “empowered their enemies to gain control over them.”
- To “die by the hand of” could be translated as “be killed by.”
- The expression “on the right hand of” could be translated as “on the right side of.”
- In regard to Jesus being “seated at the right hand of God,” if this does not communicate in the language that it refers to a position of high honor and equal authority, a different expression with that meaning could be used. Or a short explanation could be added: “on the right side of God, in the position of highest authority.”

(See also: [adversary](#), [bless](#), [captive](#), honor, [power](#))

Bible References:

- Acts 07:25
- Acts 08:17
- Acts 11:21
- Genesis 09:05
- Genesis 14:20
- John 03:35
- Mark 07:32
- Matthew 06:03

Word Data:

- Strong's: H2026, H2651, H2947, H2948, H3027, H3028, H3225, H3231, H3233, H3709, H7126, H7138, H8040, H8042, H8168, G710, G1188, G1448, G1451, G2176, G2902, G4084, G4474, G5495, G5496, G5497

(Go back to: 1 Chronicles 4:10; 4:40; 5:10; 5:20; 6:15; 6:31; 7:29; 11:3; 11:23; 13:9; 13:10; 14:10; 14:11; 16:7; 18:1; 18:3; 19:11; 20:8; 21:13; 21:15; 21:16; 21:17; 22:18; 24:19; 25:2; 25:3; 25:6; 26:28; 28:19; 29:5; 29:8; 29:12; 29:16; 29:24)

harp, harpist

Definition:

A harp is a stringed musical instrument, that usually consists of a large open frame with vertical strings.

- In Bible times, fir wood was used to make harps and other musical instruments.
- Harps were often held in the hands and played while walking.
- In many places in the Bible, harps are mentioned as instruments that were used to praise and worship God.
- David wrote several psalms which were set to harp music.
- He also played a harp for King Saul, to soothe the king's troubled spirit.

(See also: [David](#), fir, psalm, Saul (OT))

Bible References:

- 1 Chronicles 15:16-18
- Amos 05:23-24
- Daniel 03:05
- Psalm 033:1-3
- Revelation 05:8

Word Data:

- Strong's: H3658, H5035, H5059, H7030, G2788, G2789, G2790

(Go back to: [1 Chronicles 13:8](#); [16:5](#))

head

Definition:

The word "head" refers to the uppermost body part of a human body, above the neck. This term is often used figuratively to mean many different things, including "top," "first," "beginning," "source," and other concepts.

Some examples of various uses of the term "head" include:

- The expression "no razor will ever touch his head" means that he should never cut or shave his hair.
- The expression "let their blood be on his own head" means that the man is responsible for their deaths and will receive the punishment for that.
- The expression "heads of grain" refers to the top part of wheat or barley plants that contains the seeds. Similarly, the expression "head of a mountain" refers to the top part of the mountain.
- The term "head" can also refer to the beginning or source of something, or the first in a series of things (can be objects or people).
- Often the term "head" refers to the most important person in a group or to a person who is in authority over others. For example, the phrase "You have made me the head over nations" means "You have made me the ruler..." or "You have given me authority over...."

Translation Suggestions

- Depending on the context, the term "head" could be translated as "authority" or "ruler" or "the one who is responsible for."
- The expression "will be on his own head" could be translated as "will be on him" or "he will be punished for" or "he will be held responsible for" or "he will be considered guilty for."
- Depending on the context, some other ways to translate this term might include "top" or "beginning" or "source" or "leader."

(See also: grain)

Bible References:

- 1 Chronicles 01:51-54
- 1 Kings 08:1-2
- 1 Samuel 09:22
- Colossians 02:10
- Colossians 02:19
- Numbers 01:04

Word Data:

- Strong's: H441, H1270, H1538, H3852, H4425, H4761, H4763, H5110, H5324, H6285, H6287, H6797, H6915, H6936, H7139, H7144, H7146, H7217, H7226, H7218, H7541, H7636, H7641, H7872, G346, G755, G2775, G2776, G4719

(Go back to: [1 Chronicles 4:42](#); [5:15](#); [5:24](#); [7:2](#); [7:3](#); [7:7](#); [7:9](#); [7:40](#); [8:6](#); [8:10](#); [8:13](#); [8:28](#); [9:9](#); [9:13](#); [9:33](#); [9:34](#); [10:9](#); [11:10](#); [11:11](#); [11:15](#); [11:20](#); [11:42](#); [12:14](#); [12:18](#); [12:19](#); [12:20](#); [12:23](#); [12:32](#); [14:15](#); [15:12](#); [16:7](#); [20:2](#); [23:9](#); [23:24](#); [24:4](#); [24:6](#); [24:31](#); [26:21](#); [26:26](#); [26:32](#); [27:1](#); [27:5](#))

heart

Definition:

The term "heart" refers to the internal bodily organ that pumps blood throughout the body in people and animals. However, in the Bible the term "heart" is often used figuratively to refer to a person's thoughts, emotions, desires, or will.

- To have a "hard heart" is a common expression that means a person stubbornly refuses to obey God.
- The expressions "with all my heart" or "with my whole heart" mean to do something with complete sincerity, commitment, or willingness, holding nothing back.
- The expression "take it to heart" means to treat something seriously and apply it to one's life.
- The term "brokenhearted" describes a person who is very sad. That person has been deeply hurt emotionally.

Translation Suggestions

- Some languages use a different body part such as "stomach" or "liver" to refer to these ideas.
- Other languages may use one word to express some of these concepts and another word to express others.
- If "heart" or other body part does not have this meaning, some languages may need to express this literally with terms such as "thoughts" or "emotions" or "desires."
- Depending on the context, "with all my heart" or "with my whole heart" could be translated as "with all my energy" or "with complete dedication" or "completely" or "with total commitment."
- The expression "take it to heart" could be translated as "treat it seriously" or "carefully think about it."
- The expression "hard-hearted" could also be translated as "stubbornly rebellious" or "refusing to obey" or "continually disobeying God."
- Ways to translate "brokenhearted" could include "very sad" or "feeling deeply hurt."

(See also: hard)

Bible References:

- 1 John 03:17
- 1 Thessalonians 02:04
- 2 Thessalonians 03:13-15
- Acts 08:22
- Acts 15:09
- Luke 08:15
- Mark 02:06
- Matthew 05:08
- Matthew 22:37

Word Data:

- Strong's: H1079, H2436, H2504, H2910, H3519, H3629, H3820, H3821, H3823, H3824, H3825, H3826, H4578, H5315, H5640, H7130, H7307, H7356, H7907, G674, G1282, G1271, G2133, G2588, G2589, G4641, G4698, G5590

(Go back to: [1 Chronicles 11:19](#); [12:17](#); [12:33](#); [12:38](#); [15:29](#); [16:10](#); [22:7](#); [22:19](#); [28:2](#); [28:9](#); [29:9](#); [29:17](#); [29:18](#); [29:19](#))

heaven, sky, heavens, heavenly

Definition:

The term that is translated as “heaven” usually refers to where God lives. The same word can also mean “sky,” depending on the context.

- The term “heavens” refers to everything we see above the earth, including the sun, moon, and stars. It also includes the heavenly bodies, such as far-off planets, that we can’t directly see from the earth.
- The term “sky” refers to the blue expanse above the earth that has clouds and the air we breathe. Often the sun and moon are also said to be “up in the sky.”
- In some contexts in the Bible, the word “heaven” could refer to either the sky or the place where God lives.

Translation Suggestions:

- For “kingdom of heaven” in the book of Matthew, it is best to keep the word “heaven” since this is distinctive to Matthew’s gospel.
- The terms “heavens” or “heavenly bodies” could also be translated as, “sun, moon, and stars” or “all the stars in the universe.”
- The phrase, “stars of heaven” could be translated as “stars in the sky” or “stars in the galaxy” or “stars in the universe.”

(See also: kingdom of God)

Bible References:

- 1 Kings 08:22-24
- 1 Thessalonians 01:8-10
- 1 Thessalonians 04:17
- Deuteronomy 09:01
- Ephesians 06:9
- Genesis 01:01
- Genesis 07:11
- John 03:12
- John 03:27
- Matthew 05:18
- Matthew 05:46-48

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **04:02** They even began building a tall tower to reach **heaven**.
- **14:11** He (God) gave them bread from **heaven**, called “manna.”
- **23:07** Suddenly, the skies were filled with angels praising God, saying, “Glory to God in **heaven** and peace on earth to the people he favors!”
- **29:09** Then Jesus said, “This is what my **heavenly** Father will do to every one of you if you do not forgive your brother from your heart.”
- **37:09** Then Jesus looked up to **heaven** and said, “Father, thank you for hearing me.”
- **42:11** Then Jesus went up to **heaven**, and a cloud hid him from their sight.

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H1534, H6160, H6183, H7834, H8064, H8065, G932, G2032, G3321, G3770, G3771, G3772

(Go back to: [1 Chronicles 16:26](#); [16:31](#); [21:16](#); [21:26](#); [27:23](#); [29:11](#))

Hittite

Definition:

The Hittites were descendants of Ham through his son Canaan. They became a large empire located in what is now Turkey and northern Palestine.

- Abraham bought a piece of property from Ephron the Hittite so that he could bury his deceased wife Sarah in a cave there. Eventually Abraham and several of his descendants were also buried in that cave.
- Esau's parents were grieved when he married two Hittite women.
- One of David's mighty men was named Uriah the Hittite.
- Some of the foreign women that Solomon married were Hittites. These foreign women turned Solomon's heart away from God because of the false gods they worshiped.
- The Hittites were often a threat to the Israelites, both physically and spiritually.

(See also: descendant, [Esau](#), foreigner, Ham, [mighty](#), [Solomon](#), Uriah)

Bible References:

- 1 Kings 09:20-21
- Exodus 03:7-8
- Genesis 23:11
- Genesis 25:10
- Joshua 01:4-5
- Nehemiah 09:08
- Numbers 13:27-29

Word Data:

- Strong's: H2850

(**Go back to:** [1 Chronicles 11:41](#))

holy, holiness, unholy, sacred

Definition:

The terms “holy” and “holiness” refer to the character of God that is totally set apart and separated from everything that is sinful and imperfect.

- Only God is absolutely holy. He makes people and things holy.
- A person who is holy belongs to God and has been set apart for the purpose of serving God and bringing him glory.
- An object that God has declared to be holy is one that he has set apart for his glory and use, such as an altar that is for the purpose of offering sacrifices to him.
- People cannot approach him unless he allows them to, because he is holy and they are merely human beings, sinful and imperfect.
- In the Old Testament, God set apart the priests as holy for special service to him. They had to be ceremonially cleansed from sin in order to approach God.
- God also set apart as holy certain places and things that belonged to him or in which he revealed himself, such as his temple.

Literally, the term “unholy” means “not holy.” It describes someone or something that does not honor God.

- This word is used to describe someone who dishonors God by rebelling against him.
- A thing that is called “unholy” could be described as being common, profane or unclean. It does not belong to God.

The term “sacred” describes something that relates to worshiping God or to the pagan worship of false gods.

- In the Old Testament, the term “sacred” was often used to describe the stone pillars and other objects used in the worship of false gods. This could also be translated as “religious.”
- “Sacred songs” and “sacred music” refer to music that was sung or played for God’s glory. This could be translated as “music for worshiping Yahweh” or “songs that praise God.”
- The phrase “sacred duties” referred to the “religious duties” or “rituals” that a priest performed to lead people in worshiping God. It could also refer to the rituals performed by a pagan priest to worship a false god

Translation Suggestions:

- Ways to translate “holy” might include “set apart for God” or “belonging to God” or “completely pure” or “perfectly sinless” or “separated from sin.”
- To “make holy” is often translated as “sanctify” in English. It could also be translated as “set apart (someone) for God’s glory.”
- Ways to translate “unholy” could include “not holy” or “not belonging to God” or “not honoring to God” or “not godly.”
- In some contexts, “unholy” could be translated as “unclean.”

(See also: Holy Spirit, [consecrate](#), sanctify, [set apart](#))

Bible References:

- Genesis 28:22
- 2 Kings 03:02
- Lamentations 04:01
- Ezekiel 20:18-20
- Matthew 07:6
- Mark 08:38

- Acts 07:33
- Acts 11:08
- Romans 01:02
- 2 Corinthians 12:3-5
- Colossians 01:22
- 1 Thessalonians 03:13
- 1 Thessalonians 04:07
- 2 Timothy 03:15

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **01:16** He (God) blessed the seventh day and made it **holy**, because on this day he rested from his work.
- **09:12** "You are standing on **holy** ground."
- **13:01** "If you will obey me and keep my covenant, you will be my prized possession, a kingdom of priests, and a **holy** nation."
- **13:05** "Always be sure to keep the Sabbath day **holy**."
- **22:05** "So the baby will be **holy**, the Son of God."
- **50:02** As we wait for Jesus to return, God wants us to live in a way that is **holy** and that honors him.

Word Data:

- Strong's: H430, H2455, H2623, H4676, H4720, H6918, H6922, H6942, H6944, H6948, G37, G38, G39, G40, G41, G42, G462, G1859, G2150, G2412, G2413, G2839, G3741, G3742

(Go back to: [1 Chronicles 6:49](#); [9:29](#); [16:10](#); [16:29](#); [16:35](#); [22:19](#); [23:13](#); [23:28](#); [23:32](#); [24:5](#); [26:20](#); [26:26](#); [28:12](#); [29:3](#); [29:16](#))

hope, hoped

Definition:

Hope is strongly desiring something to happen. Hope can imply either certainty or uncertainty regarding a future event.

- In the Bible, the term “hope” also has the meaning of “trust,” as in “my hope is in the Lord.” It refers to a sure expectation of receiving what God has promised his people.
- Sometimes the ULT translates the term in the original language as “confidence.” This happens mostly in the New Testament in situations where people who believe in Jesus as their Savior have the assurance (or confidence or hope) of receiving what God has promised.
- To have “no hope” means to have no expectation of something good happening. It means that it is actually very certain that it will not happen.

Translation Suggestions:

- In some contexts, the term to “hope” could also be translated as to “wish” or to “desire” or to “expect.”
- The expression “nothing to hope for” could be translated as “nothing to trust in” or “no expectation of anything good”
- To “have no hope” could be translated as “have no expectation of anything good” or “have no security” or “be sure that nothing good will happen.”
- The expression “have set your hopes on” could also be translated as “have put your confidence in” or “have been trusting in.”
- The phrase “I find hope in your Word” could also be translated as “I am confident that your Word is true” or “Your Word helps me trust in you” or “When I obey your Word, I am certain to be blessed.”
- Phrases such as “hope in” God could also be translated as, “trust in God” or “know for sure that God will do what he has promised” or “be certain that God is faithful.”

(See also: [bless](#), confidence, [good](#), obey, [trust](#), word of God)

Bible References:

- 1 Chronicles 29:14-15
- 1 Thessalonians 02:19
- Acts 24:14-16
- Acts 26:06
- Acts 27:20
- Colossians 01:05
- Job 11:20

Word Data:

- Strong's: H982, H983, H986, H2620, H2976, H3175, H3176, H3689, H4009, H4268, H4723, H7663, H7664, H8431, H8615, G91, G560, G1679, G1680, G2070

(Go back to: [1 Chronicles 29:15](#))

horse, warhorse, horseback

Definition:

A horse is a large, four-legged animal that in Bible times was mostly used for doing farm work and for transporting people.

- Some horses were used to pull carts or chariots, while others were used to carry individual riders.
- Horses often wear a bit and bridle on their heads so they can be guided.
- In the Bible, horses were considered to be valuable possessions and a measure of wealth, mainly because of their use in war. For example, part of King Solomon's great wealth was the thousands of horses and chariots that he had.
- Animals that are similar to the horse are the donkey and the mule.

(See also: chariot, , donkey, [Solomon](#))

Bible References:

- 1 Chronicles 18:04
- 2 Kings 02:11
- Exodus 14:23-25
- Ezekiel 23:5-7
- Zechariah 06:08

Word Data:

- Strong's: H47, H5483, H5484, H6571, H7409, G2462

(Go back to: [1 Chronicles 13:7](#))

horseman

Definition:

In Bible times, the term “horsemen” referred to men who rode horses into battle.

- Warriors who rode in horse-pulled chariots may also have been called “horsemen,” though this term usually refers to men who were actually riding on horses.
- The Israelites believed that using horses in battle placed too much emphasis on their own strength rather than on Yahweh, so they did not have many horsemen.
- This term could also be translated as “horse riders” or “men on horses.”

(See also: chariot, [horse](#))

Bible References:

- 1 Kings 01:05
- Daniel 11:40-41
- Exodus 14:23-25
- Genesis 50:7-9

Word Data:

- Strong's: H6571, H7395, G2460

(**Go back to:** [1 Chronicles 19:6](#))

house

Definition:

The term "house" refers to a small building, shelter, or tent, usually the place where a family sleeps. The term is often used figuratively in the Bible to mean various concepts such as "household" or "descendants," etc.

- Sometimes the term "house" means "household," referring to the people who live together in one house.
- Sometimes the term "house" means "family" or "descendants," referring to all the people related to or descended from a particular person. For example, the phrase "house of David" refers to all the descendants of King David.
- The terms "house of God" and "house of Yahweh" refer to the tabernacle or temple. These expressions can also refer generally to a central place where Yahweh was worshipped.
- The phrase "house of Israel" can refer generally to the entire nation of Israel or more specifically to the tribes of the northern kingdom of Israel.

Translation Suggestions

- Depending on the context, "house" could be translated as "household" or "people" or "family" or "descendants" or "temple" or "dwelling place."
- The phrase "house of David" could be translated as "clan of David" or "family of David" or "descendants of David." Related expressions could be translated in a similar way.
- Different ways to translate "house of Israel" could include "people of Israel" or "Israel's descendants" or "Israelites."
- The phrase "house of Yahweh" could be translated as "Yahweh's temple" or "place where Yahweh is worshipped" or "place where Yahweh meets with his people" or "where Yahweh dwells." The phrase "house of God" could be translated in a similar way.

(See also: [David](#), descendant, house of God, household, kingdom of Israel, tabernacle, [temple](#), [Yahweh](#))

Bible References:

- Acts 07:42
- Acts 07:49
- Genesis 39:04
- Genesis 41:40
- Luke 08:39
- Matthew 10:06
- Matthew 15:24

Word Data:

- Strong's: H1004, H1005, G3609, G3613, G3614, G3624

(Go back to: [1 Chronicles 2:55; 4:21; 4:38; 5:13; 5:15; 5:24; 6:31; 6:32; 6:48; 7:2; 7:4; 7:7; 7:9; 7:40; 9:9; 9:11; 9:13; 9:19; 9:23; 9:26; 9:27; 10:6; 10:10; 12:28; 12:29; 12:30; 13:7; 13:13; 13:14; 14:1; 15:1; 15:25; 16:43; 17:4; 17:6; 17:10; 17:12; 17:16; 17:17; 17:23; 17:24; 17:25; 17:27; 22:1; 22:2; 22:6; 22:7; 22:8; 22:10; 22:11; 22:14; 22:19; 23:4; 23:11; 23:24; 23:28; 23:32; 24:4; 24:6; 24:19; 24:30; 25:6; 26:6; 26:13; 26:15; 26:20; 26:22; 26:27; 28:2; 28:3; 28:4; 28:6; 28:10; 28:11; 28:12; 28:13; 28:20; 28:21; 29:2; 29:3; 29:4; 29:7; 29:8; 29:16](#))

inherit, inheritance, heir

Definition:

The term "inherit" refers to receiving something valuable from a parent after the parent(s) die. The term can also refer to receiving something valuable from some other person because of a special relationship with that person. An "inheritance" is the thing(s) that is received, and an "heir" is a person who receives an inheritance.

- A physical inheritance that is received may be money, land, or other kinds of property.
- God promised Abraham and his descendants that they would inherit the land of Canaan, that it would belong to them forever.

Translation Suggestions:

- As always, consider first whether there are already terms in the target language for the concept of an heir or an inheritance, and use those terms.
- Depending on the context, other ways that the term "inherit" could be translated might include "receive" or "possess" or "come into possession of."
- Ways to translate "inheritance" could include "promised gift" or "secure possession."
- The term "heir" could be translated with a word or phrase that means "privileged child who receives the father's possessions."
- The term "heritage" could be translated as "inherited blessings."

(See also: heir, [Canaan](#), Promised Land)

Bible References:

- 1 Corinthians 06:09
- 1 Peter 01:04
- 2 Samuel 21:03
- Acts 07:4-5
- Deuteronomy 20:16
- Galatians 05:21
- Genesis 15:07
- Hebrews 09:15
- Jeremiah 02:07
- Luke 15:11
- Matthew 19:29
- Psalm 079:01

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **04:06** When Abram arrived in Canaan God said, "Look all around you. I will give to you and your descendants all the land that you can see as an **inheritance**."
- **27:01** One day, an expert in the Jewish law came to Jesus to test him, saying, "Teacher, what must I do to **inherit** eternal life?"
- **35:03** "There was a man who had two sons. The younger son told his father, 'Father, I want my **inheritance** now!' So the father divided his property between the two sons."

Word Data:

- Strong's: H2490, H2506, H3423, H3425, H4181, H5157, H5159, G2816, G2817, G2819, G2820

(Go back to: [1 Chronicles 16:18](#))

iniquity

Definition:

The term “iniquity” is a word that is very similar in meaning to the term “sin,” but may more specifically refer to conscious acts of wrongdoing or great wickedness.

- The word “iniquity” literally means a twisting or distorting (of the law). It refers to major injustice.
- Iniquity could be described as deliberate, harmful actions against other people.
- Other definitions of iniquity include “perversity” and “depravity,” which are both words that describe conditions of terrible sin.

Translation Suggestions:

- The term “iniquity” could be translated as “wickedness” or “perverse actions” or “harmful acts.”
- Often, “iniquity” occurs in the same text as the word “sin” and “transgression” so it is important to have different ways of translating these terms.

(See also: [sin](#), [transgress](#), [trespass](#))

Bible References:

- Daniel 09:13
- Exodus 34:5-7
- Genesis 15:14-16
- Genesis 44:16
- Habakkuk 02:12
- Matthew 13:41
- Matthew 23:27-28
- Micah 03:10

Word Data:

- Strong's: H205, H1942, H5753, H5758, H5766, H5771, H5932, H5999, H7562, G92, G93, G458, G3892, G4189

(Go back to: [1 Chronicles 21:8](#))

Israel, Israelite, Jacob

Facts:

Jacob was the younger twin son of Isaac and Rebekah.

- Jacob's name means "he grabs the heel" which is an expression meaning "he deceives." As Jacob was being born, he was holding onto the heel of his twin brother Esau.
- Many years later, God changed Jacob's name to "Israel," which means "he struggles with God."
- Jacob was clever and deceptive. He found ways to take the firstborn blessing and inheritance rights from his older brother, Esau.
- Esau was angry and planned to kill him so Jacob left his homeland. But years later Jacob returned with his wives and children to the land of Canaan where Esau was living, and their families lived peacefully near each other.
- Jacob had twelve sons. Their descendants became the twelve tribes of Israel.
- A different man named Jacob is listed as being Joseph's father in Matthew's genealogy.

(Translation suggestions: [How to Translate Names](#))

(See also: [Canaan](#), deceive, [Esau](#), Isaac, [Israel](#), Rebekah, twelve tribes of Israel)

Bible References:

- Acts 07:11
- Acts 07:46
- Genesis 25:26
- Genesis 29:1-3
- Genesis 32:1-2
- John 04:4-5
- Matthew 08:11-13
- Matthew 22:32

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **07:01** As the boys grew up, Rebekah loved **Jacob**, but Isaac loved Esau. **Jacob** loved to stay at home, but Esau loved to hunt.
- **07:07** **Jacob** lived there for many years, and during that time he married and had twelve sons and a daughter. God made him very wealthy.
- **07:08** After twenty years away from his home in Canaan, **Jacob** returned there with his family, his servants, and all his herds of animals.
- **07:10** The covenant promises God had promised to Abraham and then to Isaac now passed on to **Jacob**.
- **08:01** Many years later, when **Jacob** was an old man, he sent his favorite son, Joseph, to check on his brothers who were taking care of the herds.

Word Data:

- Strong's: H3290, G2384

(Go back to: [1 Chronicles 16:13](#))

Israel, Israelites

Facts:

The term "Israel" is the name that God gave to Jacob. The name means "he struggles with God."

- The descendants of Jacob became known as the "people of Israel" or the "nation of Israel" or the "Israelites."
- God formed his covenant with the people of Israel. They were his chosen people.
- The nation of Israel consisted of twelve tribes.
- Soon after King Solomon died, Israel was divided into two kingdoms: the southern kingdom, called "Judah," and the northern kingdom, called "Israel."
- Often the term "Israel" can be translated as "the people of Israel" or "the nation of Israel," depending on the context.

(See also: [Jacob](#), kingdom of Israel, Judah, [nation](#), twelve tribes of Israel)

Bible References:

- 1 Chronicles 10:01
- 1 Kings 08:02
- Acts 02:36
- Acts 07:24
- Acts 13:23
- John 01:49-51
- Luke 24:21
- Mark 12:29
- Matthew 02:06
- Matthew 27:09
- Philippians 03:4-5

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **08:15** The descendants of the twelve sons became the twelve tribes of **Israel**.
- **09:03** The Egyptians forced the **Israelites** to build many buildings and even whole cities.
- **09:05** A certain **Israelite** woman gave birth to a baby boy.
- **10:01** They said, "This is what the God of **Israel** says, 'Let my people go!'"
- **14:12** But despite all this, the people of *Israel* complained and grumbled against God and against Moses.
- **15:09** God fought for **Israel** that day. He caused the Amorites to be confused and he sent large hailstones that killed many of the Amorites.
- **15:12** After this battle, God gave each tribe of **Israel** *its own section of the Promised Land. Then God gave Israel* peace along all its borders.
- **16:16** So God punished *Israel* again for worshiping idols.
- **43:06** "Men of **Israel**, Jesus was a man who did many mighty signs and wonders by the power of God, as you have seen and already know."

Word Data:

- Strong's: H3478, H3479, H3481, H3482, G935, G2474, G2475

(Go back to: 1 Chronicles 1:43; 2:1; 2:7; 4:10; 5:1; 5:3; 5:17; 5:26; 6:38; 6:49; 6:64; 7:29; 9:1; 9:2; 10:1; 10:7; 11:1; 11:2; 11:3; 11:4; 11:10; 12:32; 12:38; 12:40; 13:2; 13:5; 13:6; 13:8; 14:2; 14:8; 15:3; 15:12; 15:14; 15:25; 15:28; 16:3; 16:4; 16:13; 16:17; 16:36; 16:40; 17:5; 17:6; 17:7; 17:9; 17:10; 17:21; 17:22; 17:24; 18:14; 19:10; 19:16; 19:17; 19:18; 19:19; 20:7; 21:1; 21:2; 21:3; 21:4; 21:5; 21:7; 21:12; 21:14; 22:1; 22:2; 22:6; 22:9; 22:10; 22:12; 22:13; 22:17; 23:1; 23:2; 23:25;

24:19; 26:29; 26:30; 27:1; 27:16; 27:22; 27:23; 27:24; 28:1; 28:4; 28:5; 28:8; 29:6; 29:10; 29:21; 29:23; 29:25; 29:26;
29:27; 29:30)

Jebus, Jebusite

Facts:

The Jebusites were a people group living in the land of Canaan. They were descended from Ham's son Canaan.

- The Jebusites lived in the city of Jebus, and its name was later changed to Jerusalem when King David conquered it.
- Melchizedek, the king of Salem, was probably of Jebusite origin.

(Translation suggestions: [How to Translate Names](#))

(See also: [Canaan](#), Ham, [Jerusalem](#), Melchizedek)

Bible References:

- 1 Chronicles 01:14
- 1 Kings 09:20-21
- Exodus 03:7-8
- Genesis 10:16
- Joshua 03:9-11
- Judges 01:20-21

Word Data:

- Strong's: H2982, H2983

(Go back to: [1 Chronicles 1:14](#); [11:4](#); [21:15](#); [21:18](#); [21:28](#))

Jehoshaphat

Facts:

Jehoshaphat was the name of at least two men in the Old Testament.

- The best known man by this name was King Jehoshaphat who was the fourth king to rule over the kingdom of Judah.
- He restored peace between Judah and Israel and destroyed the altars of false gods.
- Another Jehoshaphat was a "recorder" for David and Solomon. His job included writing documents for the king to sign and recording the history of the important events that happened in the kingdom.

(Translation suggestions: [How to Translate Names](#))

(See also: [altar](#), [David](#), false god, [Israel](#), [Judah](#), [priest](#), [Solomon](#))

Bible References:

- 1 Chronicles 03:10-12
- 1 Kings 04:17
- 2 Chronicles 17:01
- 2 Kings 01:17
- 2 Samuel 08:15-18
- Matthew 01:7-8

Word Data:

- Strong's: H3092, G2498

([Go back to: 1 Chronicles 3:10](#))

Jeremiah

Facts:

Jeremiah was a prophet of God in the kingdom of Judah. The Old Testament book of Jeremiah contains his prophecies.

- Like most of the prophets, Jeremiah often had to warn the people of Israel that God was going to punish them for their sins.
- Jeremiah prophesied that the Babylonians would capture Jerusalem, making some of the people of Judah angry. So they put him in a deep, dry well and left him there to die. But the king of Judah ordered his servants to rescue Jeremiah from the well.
- Jeremiah wrote that he wished his eyes could be a "fountain of tears," to express his deep sadness over the rebellion and sufferings of his people.

(Translation suggestions: [How to Translate Names](#))

(See also: [Babylon](#), Judah, [prophet](#), rebel, suffer, well)

Bible References:

- 2 Chronicles 35:25
- Jeremiah 01:02
- Jeremiah 11:01
- Matthew 02:18
- Matthew 16:13-16
- Matthew 27:10

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **19:17** Once, the prophet **Jeremiah** was put into a dry well and left there to die. He sank down into the mud that was in the bottom of the well, but then the king had mercy on him and ordered his servants to pull **Jeremiah** out of the well before he died.
- **21:05** Through the prophet **Jeremiah**, God promised that he would make a New Covenant, but not like the covenant God made with Israel at Sinai.

Word Data:

- Strong's: H3414, G2408

(Go back to: [1 Chronicles 12:10](#); [12:13](#))

Jericho

Facts:

Jericho was a powerful city in the land of Canaan. It was located just west of the Jordan River and just north of the Salt Sea.

- As all Canaanites did, the people of Jericho worshiped false gods.
- Jericho was the first city in the land of Canaan that God told the Israelites to conquer.
- When Joshua led the Israelites against Jericho, God did a great miracle to help them defeat the city.

(See also: [Canaan](#), Jordan River, Joshua, [miracle](#), Salt Sea)

Bible References:

- 1 Chronicles 06:78
- Joshua 02:1-3
- Joshua 07:2-3
- Luke 18:35
- Mark 10:46-48
- Matthew 20:29-31
- Numbers 22:1

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **15:01** Joshua sent two spies to the Canaanite city of **Jericho**.
- **15:03** After the people crossed the Jordan River, God told Joshua how to attack the powerful city of **Jericho**.
- **15:05** Then the walls around **Jericho** fell down! The Israelites destroyed everything in the city as God had commanded.

Word Data:

- Strong's: H3405, G2410

(Go back to: [1 Chronicles 6:78](#))

Jerusalem

Facts:

Jerusalem was originally an ancient Canaanite city that later became the most important city in Israel. It is located about 34 kilometers west of the Salt Sea and just north of Bethlehem. It is still the capital city of Israel today.

- The name "Jerusalem" is first mentioned in the book of Joshua. Other Old Testament names for this city include "Salem" "city of Jebus," and "Zion." Both "Jerusalem" and "Salem," have the root meaning of "peace."
- Jerusalem was originally a Jebusite fortress called "Zion" which King David captured and made into his capital city.
- It was in Jerusalem that David's son Solomon built the first temple in Jerusalem, on Mount Moriah, which was the mountain where Abraham had offered his son Isaac to God. The temple was rebuilt there after it was destroyed by the Babylonians.
- Because the temple was in Jerusalem, the major Jewish festivals were celebrated there.
- People normally referred to going "up" to Jerusalem since it is located in the mountains.

(See also: [Babylon](#), [Christ](#), [David](#), [Jebusites](#), [Jesus](#), [Solomon](#), [temple](#), [Zion](#))

Bible References:

- Galatians 04:26-27
- John 02:13
- Luke 04:9-11
- Luke 13:05
- Mark 03:7-8
- Mark 03:20-22
- Matthew 03:06
- Matthew 04:23-25
- Matthew 20:17

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **17:05** David conquered **Jerusalem** and made it his capital city.
- **18:02** In **Jerusalem**, Solomon built the Temple for which his father David had planned and gathered materials.
- **20:07** They (Babylonians) captured the city of **Jerusalem**, destroyed the Temple, and took away all the treasures of the city and the Temple.
- **20:12** So, after seventy years in exile, a small group of Jews returned to the city of **Jerusalem** in Judah.
- **38:01** About three years after Jesus first began preaching and teaching publicly, Jesus told his disciples that he wanted to celebrate this Passover with them in **Jerusalem**, and that he would be killed there.
- **38:02** After Jesus and the disciples arrived in **Jerusalem**, Judas went to the Jewish leaders and offered to betray Jesus to them in exchange for money.
- **42:08** "It was also written in the scriptures that my disciples will proclaim that everyone should repent in order to receive forgiveness for their sins. They will do this starting in **Jerusalem**, and then go to all people groups everywhere."
- **42:11** Forty days after Jesus rose from the dead, he told his disciples, "Stay in **Jerusalem** until you receive power when the Holy Spirit comes on you."

Word Data:

- Strong's: H3389, H3390, G2414, G2415, G2419

(Go back to: [1 Chronicles 3:4](#); [3:5](#); [6:10](#); [6:15](#); [6:32](#); [8:28](#); [8:32](#); [9:3](#); [9:34](#); [9:38](#); [11:4](#); [14:3](#); [14:4](#); [15:3](#); [18:7](#); [19:15](#); [20:1](#); [20:3](#); [21:4](#); [21:15](#); [21:16](#); [23:25](#); [28:1](#); [29:27](#))

Jesse

Facts:

Jesse was the father of King David and the grandson of Ruth and Boaz.

- Jesse was from the tribe of Judah.
- He was an "Ephrathite," which means he was from the region of Ephrathah. The town of Bethlehem was located in the region of Ephrathah.
- The prophet Isaiah prophesied about a "shoot" or "branch" that would come from the "root of Jesse" and bear fruit. This refers to Jesus, who was a descendant of Jesse.

(Translation suggestions: [How to Translate Names](#))

(See also: Bethlehem, [Boaz](#), descendant, Jesus, [king](#), [prophet](#), Ruth, twelve tribes of Israel)

Bible References:

- 1 Chronicles 02:12
- 1 Kings 12:16
- 1 Samuel 16:1
- Luke 03:32
- Matthew 01:4-6

Word Data:

- Strong's: H3448, G2421

(**Go back to:** [1 Chronicles 2:12](#); [2:13](#); [10:14](#); [12:18](#); [29:26](#))

Joel

Facts:

Joel was a prophet who probably lived during the reign of King Joash of Judah. There were also several other men in the Old Testament named Joel.

- The book of Joel is one of twelve short prophetic books in the last section of the Old Testament.
- The only personal information we have about the prophet Joel is that his father's name was Pethuel.
- In his sermon at Pentecost, the apostle Peter quoted from the book of Joel.

(Translation suggestions: [How to Translate Names](#))

(See also: Joash, Judah, Pentecost)

Bible References:

- 1 Chronicles 06:33-35
- 1 Samuel 08:1-3
- Acts 02:16
- Ezra 10:43
- Joel 01:02

Word Data:

- Strong's: H3100, G2493

(Go back to: [1 Chronicles 5:4](#); [5:8](#); [5:12](#); [6:33](#); [6:36](#); [11:38](#); [15:7](#); [15:17](#); [27:20](#))

Joseph (OT)

Facts:

Joseph was the eleventh son of Jacob and the first son of his mother Rachel.

- Joseph was his father's favorite son.
- His brothers were jealous of him and sold him into slavery.
- While in Egypt, Joseph was falsely accused and put into prison.
- In spite of his difficulties, Joseph remained faithful to God.
- God brought him to the second highest place of power in Egypt and used him to save people in a time when there was little food. The people of Egypt, as well as his own family, were kept from starving.

(Translation suggestions: [How to Translate Names](#))

(See also: [Egypt](#), [Jacob](#))

Bible References:

- Genesis 30:22-24
- Genesis 33:1-3
- Genesis 37:1-2
- Genesis 37:23-24
- Genesis 41:55-57
- John 04:4-5

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **08:02 Joseph's** brothers hated him because their father loved him most and because Joseph had dreamed that he would be their ruler.
- **08:04** The slave traders took **Joseph** to Egypt.
- **08:05** Even in prison, **Joseph** remained faithful to God, and God blessed him.
- **08:07** God had given **Joseph** the ability to interpret dreams, so Pharaoh had Joseph brought to him from the prison.
- **08:09 Joseph** told the people to store up large amounts of food during the seven years of good harvests.
- **09:02** The Egyptians no longer remembered **Joseph** and all he had done to help them.

Word Data:

- Strong's: H3084, H3130, G2500, G2501

(Go back to: [1 Chronicles 2:2](#); [5:1](#); [7:29](#))

joy, joyful, enjoy, rejoice, gladness, rejoicing

Definition:

joy

The term "joy" refers to a feeling of delight or deep satisfaction. The related term "joyful" describes a person who feels very glad and is full of deep happiness.

- A person feels joy when he has a deep sense that what he is experiencing is very good.
- God is the one who gives true joy to people.
- Having joy does not depend on pleasant circumstances. God can give people joy even when very difficult things are happening in their lives.
- Sometimes places are described as joyful, such as houses or cities. This means that the people who live there are joyful.

rejoice

The term "rejoice" means to be full of joy and gladness.

- This term often refers to being very happy about the good things that God has done.
- It could be translated as "be very happy" or "be very glad" or "be full of joy."
- When Mary said "my soul rejoices in God my Savior," she meant "God my Savior has made me very happy" or "I feel so joyful because of what God my Savior has done for me."

Translation Suggestions:

- The term "joy" could also be translated as "gladness" or "delight" or "great happiness."
- The phrase, "be joyful" could be translated as "rejoice" or "be very glad" or it could be translated "be very happy in God's goodness."
- A person who is joyful could be described as "very happy" or "delighted" or "deeply glad."
- A phrase such as "make a joyful shout" could be translated as "shout in a way that shows you are very happy."
- A "joyful city" or "joyful house" could be translated as "city where joyful people live" or "house full of joyful people" or "city whose people are very happy." (See: [metonymy](#))

Bible References:

- Nehemiah 08:10
- Psalm 048:02
- Isaiah 56:6-7
- Jeremiah 15:15-16
- Matthew 02:9-10
- Luke 15:07
- Luke 19:37-38
- John 03:29
- Acts 16:32-34
- Romans 05:1-2
- Romans 15:30-32
- Galatians 05:23
- Philippians 04:10-13
- 1 Thessalonians 01:6-7
- 1 Thessalonians 05:16
- Philemon 01:4-7

- James 01:02
- 3 John 01:1-4

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **33:07** "The rocky ground is a person who hears God's word and accepts it with **joy**."
- **34:04** "The kingdom of God is also like hidden treasure that someone hid in a field.. Another man found the treasure and then buried it again. He was so filled with **joy**, that he went and sold everything he had and used the money to buy that field."
- **41:07** The women were full of fear and great **joy**. They ran to tell the disciples the good news.

Word Data:

- Strong's: H1523, H1524, H1525, H2302, H2304, H2305, H2654, H2898, H4885, H5937, H5947, H5965, H5970, H6342, H6670, H7440, H7442, H7444, H7445, H7797, H7832, H8055, H8056, H8057, H8342, H8643, G20, G21, G2165, G2167, G2744, G4640, G4796, G4913, G5463, G5479

(Go back to: [1 Chronicles 12:40](#); [15:16](#); [15:25](#); [16:10](#); [16:31](#); [29:9](#); [29:17](#); [29:22](#))

Judah

Facts:

Judah was one of Jacob's older sons. His mother was Leah. His descendants were called the "tribe of Judah." When used as the name of a region of land, the term "Judah" refers to the land given to the tribe of Judah, which includes the mountainous area to the south of the city of Jerusalem.

- It was Judah who told his brothers to sell their younger brother Joseph as a slave instead of leaving him to die in a deep pit.
- King David and all the kings after him were descendants of Judah. Jesus, too, was a descendant of Judah.
- When Solomon's reign ended and the nation of Israel divided, the kingdom of Judah was the southern kingdom.
- In the New Testament book of Revelation, Jesus is called the "Lion of Judah."
- The words "Jew" and "Judea" come from the name "Judah."

(Translation suggestions: [How to Translate Names](#))

(See also: [Jacob](#), Jew, Judah, [Judea](#), twelve tribes of Israel)

Bible References:

- 1 Chronicles 02:1-2
- 1 Kings 01:09
- Genesis 29:35
- Genesis 38:02
- Luke 03:33
- Ruth 01:02

Word Data:

- Strong's: H3063

(Go back to: [1 Chronicles 2:1](#); [9:1](#); [12:16](#); [13:6](#); [21:5](#); [27:18](#); [28:4](#))

Judea

Facts:

The term “Judea” refers to an area of land in ancient Israel. It is sometimes used in a narrow sense and other times in a broad sense.

- Sometimes “Judea” is used in a narrow sense to refer only to the province located in the southern part of ancient Israel just west of the Dead Sea. Some translations call this province “Judah.”
- Other times “Judea” has a broad sense and refers to all the provinces of ancient Israel, including Galilee, Samaria, Perea, Idumea and Judea (Judah).
- If translators want to make the distinction clear, the broad sense of Judea could be translated as “Judea Country” and the narrow sense could be translated as “Judea Province,” or “Judah Province” since this is the part of ancient Israel where the tribe of Judah had originally lived.

(Translation suggestions: [How to Translate Names](#))

(See also: Galilee, [Edom](#), [Judah](#), Judah, Samaria)

Bible References:

- 1 Thessalonians 02:14
- Acts 02:09
- Acts 09:32
- Acts 12:19
- John 03:22-24
- Luke 01:05
- Luke 04:44
- Luke 05:17
- Mark 10:1-4
- Matthew 02:01
- Matthew 02:05
- Matthew 02:22-23
- Matthew 03:1-3
- Matthew 19:01

Word Data:

- Strong's: G2453

(Go back to: [1 Chronicles 2:3](#); [2:4](#); [2:10](#); [4:1](#); [4:21](#); [4:27](#); [4:41](#); [5:2](#); [5:17](#); [6:15](#); [6:55](#); [6:65](#); [9:3](#); [9:4](#); [12:24](#); [28:4](#))

judge, judgment

Definition:

The terms “judge” and “judgment” often refer to making a decision about whether or not something is good, wise, or right.

- The “judgment of God” often refers to his decision to condemn something or someone as sinful.
- God’s judgment usually includes punishing people for their sin.
- The term “judge” can also mean “condemn.” God instructs his people not to judge each other in this way.
- Another meaning is “arbitrate between” or “judge between,” as in deciding which person is right in a dispute between them.
- In some contexts, God’s “judgments” are what he has decided is right and just. They are similar to his decrees, laws, or precepts.
- “Judgment” can refer to wise decision-making ability. A person who lacks “judgment” does not have the wisdom to make wise decisions.

Translation Suggestions:

- Depending on the context, ways to translate to “judge” could include to “decide” or to “condemn” or to “punish” or to “decree.”
- The term “judgment” could be translated as “punishment” or “decision” or “verdict” or “decree” or “condemnation.”
- In some contexts, the phrase “in the judgment” could also be translated as “on judgment day” or “during the time when God judges people.”

(See also: [decree](#), judge, judgment day, just, law, [law](#))

Bible References:

- 1 John 04:17
- 1 Kings 03:09
- Acts 10:42-43
- Isaiah 03:14
- James 02:04
- Luke 06:37
- Micah 03:9-11
- Psalm 054:01

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **19:16** The prophets warned the people that if they did not stop doing evil and start obeying God, then God would **judge** them as guilty, and he would punish them.
- **21:08** A king is someone who rules over a kingdom and **judges** the people. The Messiah would come would be the perfect king who would sit on the throne of his ancestor David. He would reign over the whole world forever, and who would always **judge** honestly and make the right decisions.
- **39:04** The high priest tore his clothes in anger and shouted to the other religious leaders, “We do not need any more witnesses! You have heard him say that he is the Son of God. What is your **judgment**?”
- **50:14** But God will **judge** everyone who does not believe in Jesus. He will throw them into hell, where they will weep and grind their teeth in anguish forever.

Word Data:

- Strong's: H148, H430, H1777, H1778, H1779, H1780, H1781, H1782, H2940, H4055, H4941, H6414, H6415, H6416, H6417, H6419, H6485, H8196, H8199, H8201, G144, G350, G968, G1106, G1252, G1341, G1345, G1348, G1349, G2917, G2919, G2920, G2922, G2923, G4232

(Go back to: [1 Chronicles 16:14](#); [16:33](#); [18:14](#); [23:4](#))

king, kingdom, kingship

Definition:

In the Bible, the term “king” refers to a man who is the supreme ruler of a particular group of people or a particular region of land (or both).

- In biblical times, a king was usually chosen to rule on the basis of family relation to the previous king(s). When a king died, usually his oldest son became the next king.
- The Bible often refers to God as a king who rules over the entire universe (in a general sense) and over his people (in a specific sense).
- The New Testament refers to Jesus as a king in various ways, including: “king of the Jews;” “king of Israel;” and “king of kings.”
- Depending on the context, the term “king” might also be translated as “supreme chief” or “sovereign ruler.”
- The phrase “king of kings” might be translated as “king who rules over all other kings” or “supreme ruler who has authority over all other rulers.”

(See also: authority, Herod Antipas, [kingdom](#), kingdom of God)

Bible References:

- 1 Timothy 06:15-16
- 2 Kings 05:18
- 2 Samuel 05:03
- Acts 07:9-10
- Acts 13:22
- John 01:49-51
- Luke 01:05
- Luke 22:24-25
- Matthew 05:35
- Matthew 14:09

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **08:06** One night, the Pharaoh, which is what the Egyptians called their kings, had two dreams that disturbed him greatly.
- **16:01** The Israelites had no **king**, so everyone did what they thought was right for them.
- **16:18** Finally, the people asked God for a **king** like all the other nations had.
- **17:05** Eventually, Saul died in battle, and David became **king** of Israel. He was a good **king**, and the people loved him.
- **21:06** God's prophets also said that the Messiah would be a prophet, a priest, and a **king**.
- **48:14** David was the **king** of Israel, but Jesus is the **king** of the entire universe!

Word Data:

- Strong's: H4427, H4428, H4430, G935, G936

(Go back to: [1 Chronicles 1:43; 3:2; 4:23; 4:41; 5:6; 5:17; 5:26; 9:1; 9:18; 11:2; 11:3; 14:1; 14:2; 14:8; 15:29; 16:21; 17:16; 18:3; 18:5; 18:9; 18:10; 18:11; 18:17; 19:1; 19:5; 19:7; 19:9; 20:1; 20:2; 21:3; 21:4; 21:6; 21:23; 21:24; 24:6; 24:31; 25:2; 25:5; 25:6; 26:26; 26:30; 26:32; 27:1; 27:24; 27:25; 27:31; 27:32; 27:33; 27:34; 28:1; 28:2; 28:4; 29:1; 29:6; 29:9; 29:23; 29:24; 29:25; 29:29](#))

kingdom

Definition:

A kingdom is a group of people ruled by a king. It also refers to the realm or political regions over which a king or other ruler has control and authority.

- A kingdom can be of any geographical size. A king might govern a nation or country or only one city.
- The term “kingdom” can also refer to a spiritual reign or authority, as in the term “kingdom of God.”
- God is the ruler of all creation, but the term “kingdom of God” especially refers to his reign and authority over the people who have believed in Jesus and who have submitted to his authority.
- The Bible also talks about Satan having a “kingdom” in which he temporarily rules over many things on this earth. His kingdom is evil and is referred to as “darkness.”

Translation Suggestions:

- When referring to a physical region that is ruled over by a king, the term “kingdom” could be translated as “country (ruled by a king)” or “king’s territory” or “region ruled by a king.”
- In a spiritual sense, “kingdom” could be translated as “ruling” or “reigning” or “controlling” or “governing.”
- One way to translate “kingdom of priests” might be “spiritual priests who are ruled by God.”
- The phrase “kingdom of light” could be translated as “God’s reign that is good like light” or “when God, who is light, rules people” or “the light and goodness of God’s kingdom.” It is best to keep the word “light” in this expression since that is a very important term in the Bible.
- Note that the term “kingdom” is different from an empire, in which an emperor rules over several countries.

(See also: authority, [king](#), kingdom of God, kingdom of Israel, [Judah](#), Judah, [priest](#))

Bible References:

- 1 Thessalonians 02:12
- 2 Timothy 04:17-18
- Colossians 01:13-14
- John 18:36
- Mark 03:24
- Matthew 04:7-9
- Matthew 13:19
- Matthew 16:28
- Revelation 01:09

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **13:02** God said to Moses and the people of Israel, “If you will obey me and keep my covenant, you will be my prized possession, a **kingdom** of priests, and a holy nation.”
- **18:04** God was angry with Solomon and, as a punishment for Solomon’s unfaithfulness, he promised to divide the nation of Israel in two **kingdoms** after Solomon’s death.
- **18:07** Ten of the tribes of the nation of Israel rebelled against Rehoboam. Only two tribes remained faithful to him. These two tribes became the **kingdom** of Judah.
- **18:08** The other ten tribes of the nation of Israel that rebelled against Rehoboam appointed a man named Jeroboam to be their king. They set up their **kingdom** in the northern part of the land and were called the **kingdom** of Israel.
- **21:08** A king is someone who rules over a **kingdom** and judges the people.

Word Data:

- Strong's: H4410, H4437, H4438, H4467, H4468, H4474, H4475, G932

(Go back to: [1 Chronicles 12:23](#); [14:2](#); [17:11](#); [22:10](#); [26:31](#); [28:5](#); [28:7](#); [29:25](#); [29:30](#))

know, knowledge, unknown, distinguish

Definition:

The term "know" and "knowledge" means generally to understand something or someone. It can also mean to be aware of a fact or to be familiar with a person. The expression "to make known" means to tell information.

- The term "knowledge" refers to information that people know. It can apply to knowing physical concepts or abstract concepts.
- To "know about" God means to understand facts about him because of what he has revealed to us.
- To "know" God means to have a relationship with him. This also applies to knowing people.
- To know God's will means to be aware of what he has commanded, or to understand what he wants a person to do.
- To "know the Law" means to be aware of what God has commanded or to understand what God has instructed in the laws he gave to Moses.
- Sometimes "knowledge" is used as a synonym for "wisdom," which includes living in a way that is pleasing to God.
- The "knowledge of God" is sometimes used as a synonym for the "fear of Yahweh."

Translation Suggestions

- Depending on the context, ways to translate "know" could include "understand" or "be familiar with" or "be aware of" or "be acquainted with" or "be in relationship with."
- In the context of understanding the difference between two things, the term is usually translated as "distinguish." When used in this way, the term is often followed by the preposition "between."
- Some languages have two different words for "know," one for knowing facts and one for knowing a person and having a relationship with him.
- The term "make known" could be translated as "cause people to know" or "reveal" or "tell about" or "explain."
- To "know about" something could be translated as "be aware of" or "be familiar with."
- The expression "know how to" means to understand the process or method of getting something done. It could also be translated as "be able to" or "have the skill to."
- The term "knowledge" could also be translated as "what is known" or "wisdom" or "understanding," depending on the context.

(See also: [law](#), reveal, [understand](#), wise)

Bible References:

- 1 Corinthians 02:12-13
- 1 Samuel 17:46
- 2 Corinthians 02:15
- 2 Peter 01:3-4
- Deuteronomy 04:39-40
- Genesis 19:05
- Luke 01:77

Word Data:

- Strong's: H1843, H1844, H1847, H1875, H3045, H3046, H4093, H4486, H5046, H5234, H5475, H5869, G50, G56, G1097, G1107, G1108, G1492, G1921, G1922, G1987, G2467, G2589, G4267, G4894

(Go back to: [1 Chronicles 1:12](#); [2:53](#); [5:18](#); [7:11](#); [9:28](#); [12:32](#); [12:33](#); [12:36](#); [14:2](#); [14:15](#); [16:8](#); [17:18](#); [20:1](#); [20:2](#); [20:3](#); [21:2](#); [28:9](#); [29:17](#))

lamb, Lamb of God

Definition:

The term “lamb” refers to a young sheep. Sheep are four-legged animals with thick, woolly hair, used for sacrifices to God. Jesus is called the “Lamb of God” because he was sacrificed to pay for people’s sins.

- These animals are easily led astray and need protecting. God compares human beings to sheep.
- God instructed his people to sacrifice physically perfect sheep and lambs to him.
- Jesus is called the “Lamb of God” who was sacrificed to pay for people’s sins. He was a perfect, unblemished sacrifice because he was completely without sin.

Translation Suggestions:

- If sheep are known in the language area, the name for their young should be used to translate the terms “lamb” and “Lamb of God.”
- “Lamb of God” could be translated as “God’s (sacrificial) Lamb,” or “Lamb sacrificed to God” or “(sacrificial) Lamb from God.”
- If sheep are not known, this term could be translated as “a young sheep” with a footnote that describes what sheep are like. The note could also compare sheep and lambs to an animal from that area that lives in herds, that is timid and defenseless, and that often wanders away.
- Also consider how this term is translated in a Bible translation of a nearby local or national language.

(See: [How to Translate Unknowns](#))

(See also: [sheep](#), shepherd)

Bible References:

- 2 Samuel 12:03
- Ezra 08:35-36
- Isaiah 66:3
- Jeremiah 11:19
- John 01:29
- John 01:36
- Leviticus 14:21-23
- Leviticus 17:1-4
- Luke 10:03
- Revelation 15:3-4

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **05:07** As Abraham and Isaac walked to the place of the sacrifice Isaac asked, “Father, we have wood for the sacrifice, but where is the **lamb**?”
- **11:02** God provided a way to save the firstborn son of anyone who believed in him. Each family had to choose a perfect **lamb** or goat and kill it.
- **24:06** The next day, Jesus came to be baptized by John. When John saw him, he said, “Look! There is the **Lamb of God** who will take away the sin of the world.”
- **45:08** He read, “They led him like a **lamb** to be killed, and as a **lamb** is silent, he did not say a word.
- **48:08** When God told Abraham to offer his son, Isaac, as a sacrifice, God provided a **lamb** for the sacrifice instead of his son, Isaac. We all deserve to die for our sins! But God provided Jesus, the **Lamb** of God, as a sacrifice to die in our place.
- **48:09** When God sent the last plague on Egypt, he told each Israelite family to kill a perfect **lamb** and spread its blood around the tops and sides of their door frames.

Word Data:

- Strong's: H7716, G721, G2316

(Go back to: [1 Chronicles 29:21](#))

law of Moses, God's law, law of Yahweh, the law

Definition:

All these terms refer to the commandments and instructions that God gave Moses for the Israelites to obey. The terms "law" and "God's law" are also used more generally to refer to everything God wants his people to obey.

- Depending on the context, the "law" can refer to:
 - the Ten Commandments that God wrote on stone tablets for the Israelites
 - all the laws given to Moses
 - the first five books of the Old Testament
 - the entire Old Testament (also referred to as "scriptures" in the New Testament).
 - all of God's instructions and will
- The phrase "the law and the prophets" is used in the New Testament to refer to the Hebrew scriptures (or "Old Testament")

Translation Suggestions:

- These terms could be translated using the plural, "laws," since they refer to many instructions.
- The "law of Moses" could be translated as "the laws that God told Moses to give to the Israelites."
- Depending on the context, "the law of Moses" could also be translated as "the law that God told to Moses" or "God's laws that Moses wrote down" or "the laws that God told Moses to give to the Israelites."
- Ways to translate "the law" or "law of God" or "God's laws" could include "laws from God" or "God's commands" or "laws that God gave" or "everything that God commands" or "all of God's instructions."
- The phrase "law of Yahweh" could also be translated as "Yahweh's laws" or "laws that Yahweh said to obey" or "laws from Yahweh" or "things Yahweh commanded."

(See also: instruct, [Moses](#), Ten Commandments, lawful, [Yahweh](#))

Bible References:

- Acts 15:06
- Daniel 09:13
- Exodus 28:42-43
- Ezra 07:25-26
- Galatians 02:15
- Luke 24:44
- Matthew 05:18
- Nehemiah 10:29
- Romans 03:20

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **13:07** God also gave many other **laws** and rules to follow. If the people obeyed these **laws**, God promised that he would bless and protect them. If they disobeyed them, God would punish them.\
- **13:09** Anyone who disobeyed **God's law** could bring an animal to the altar in front of the Tent of Meeting as a sacrifice to God.\
- **15:13** Then Joshua reminded the people of their obligation to obey the covenant that God had made with the Israelites at Sinai. The people promised to remain faithful to God and follow **his laws**.\
- **16:01** After Joshua died, the Israelites disobeyed God and did not drive out the rest of the Canaanites or obey **God's laws**.\
- **21:05** In the New Covenant, God would write **his law** on the people's hearts, the people would know God personally, they would be his people, and God would forgive their sins.\
- **27:01** Jesus answered, "What is written in **God's law**?"\

- **28:01** Jesus said to him, "Why do you call me 'good?' There is only one who is good, and that is God. But if you want to have eternal life, obey **God's laws.**"\

Word Data:

- Strong's: H430, H1881, H1882, H2706, H2710, H3068, H4687, H4872, H4941, H8451, G2316, G3551, G3565

(Go back to: [1 Chronicles 13 General Notes](#); [16:40](#); [22:12](#))

Levi, Levite, Levitical

Definition:

Levi was one of the twelve sons of Jacob, or Israel. The term “Levite” refers to a person who is a member of the Israelite tribe whose ancestor was Levi.

- The Levites were responsible for taking care of the temple and conducting religious rituals, including offering sacrifices and prayers.
- All Jewish priests were Levites, descended from Levi and part of the tribe of Levi. (Not all Levites were priests, however.)
- The Levite priests were set apart and dedicated for the special work of serving God in the temple.
- Two other men named “Levi” were ancestors of Jesus, and their names are in the genealogy in the gospel of Luke.
- Jesus’ disciple Matthew was also called Levi.

(See also: Matthew, [priest](#), [sacrifice](#), [temple](#), twelve tribes of Israel)

Bible References:

- 1 Chronicles 02:1-2
- 1 Kings 08:3-5
- Acts 04:36-37
- Genesis 29:34
- John 01:19-21
- Luke 10:32

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H3878, H3879, H3881, G3017, G3018, G3019, G3020

(Go back to: [1 Chronicles 2:1](#); [6:1](#); [6:16](#); [6:19](#); [6:38](#); [6:43](#); [6:47](#); [6:48](#); [6:64](#); [9:2](#); [9:14](#); [9:18](#); [9:26](#); [9:31](#); [9:33](#); [9:34](#); [12:26](#); [13:2](#); [15:2](#); [15:4](#); [15:12](#); [15:14](#); [15:15](#); [15:16](#); [15:17](#); [15:22](#); [15:26](#); [15:27](#); [16:4](#); [23:2](#); [23:3](#); [23:6](#); [23:14](#); [23:24](#); [23:26](#); [23:27](#); [24:6](#); [24:20](#); [24:30](#); [26:17](#); [26:20](#); [27:17](#); [28:13](#); [28:21](#))

life, live, living, alive

Definition:

The term "life" refers to being physically alive as opposed to being physically dead.

1. Physical life

- A "life" can also refer to an individual person as in "a life was saved".
- Sometimes the word "life" refers to the experience of living as in, "his life was enjoyable."
- It can also refer to a person's lifespan, as in the expression, "the end of his life."
- The term "living" may refer to being physically alive, as in "my mother is still living." It may also refer to dwelling somewhere as in, "they were living in the city."
- In the Bible, the concept of "life" is often contrasted with the concept of "death."

2. Eternal life

- A person has eternal life when he believes in Jesus. God gives that person a transformed life with the Holy Spirit living in him.
- The opposite of eternal life is eternal death, which means being separated from God and experiencing eternal punishment.

Translation Suggestions:

- Depending on the context, "life" can be translated as "existence" or "person" or "soul" or "being" or "experience."
- The term "live" could be translated by "dwell" or "reside" or "exist."
- The expression "end of his life" could be translated as "when he stopped living."
- The expression "spared their lives" could be translated as "allowed them to live" or "did not kill them."
- The expression "they risked their lives" could be translated as "they put themselves in danger" or "they did something that could have killed them."
- When the Bible text talks about eternal life, the term "life" could be translated in the following ways: "eternal life" or "God making us alive in our spirits" or "new life by God's Spirit" or "being made alive in our inner self."
- Depending on the context, the expression "give life" could also be translated as "cause to live" or "give eternal life" or "cause to live eternally."

(See also: [death](#), [everlasting](#))

Bible References:

- 2 Peter 01:03
- Acts 10:42
- Genesis 02:07
- Genesis 07:22
- Hebrews 10:20
- Jeremiah 44:02
- John 01:04
- Judges 02:18
- Luke 12:23
- Matthew 07:14

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **01:10** So God took some dirt, formed it into a man, and breathed **life** into him.
- **03:01** After a long time, many people were *_living_* in the world.
- **08:13** When Joseph's brothers returned home and told their father, Jacob, that Joseph was still **alive**, he was very happy.
- **17:09** However, toward the end of his [David's] **life** he sinned terribly before God.
- **27:01** One day, an expert in the Jewish law came to Jesus to test him, saying, "Teacher, what must I do to inherit eternal **life**?"
- **35:05** Jesus replied, "I am the Resurrection and the **Life**."
- **44:05** "You are the ones who told the Roman governor to kill Jesus. You killed the author of **life**, but God raised him from the dead."

Word Data:

- Strong's: H1934, H2416, H2417, H2421, H2425, H5315, G198, G222, G227, G806, G590

(Go back to: [1 Chronicles 11:8](#))

lord, Lord, master, sir

Definition:

In the Bible, the term “lord” generally refers to someone who has ownership or authority over other people. In the Bible, however, the term is used to address many different kinds of people, including God.

- This word is sometimes translated as “master” when addressing Jesus or when referring to someone who owns slaves.
- Some English versions translate this as “sir” in contexts where someone is politely addressing someone of higher status.

When “Lord” is capitalized, it is a title that refers to God. (Note, however, that when it is used as a form of addressing someone or it occurs at the beginning of a sentence it may be capitalized and have the meaning of “sir” or “master.”)

- In the Old Testament, this term is also used in expressions such as “Lord God Almighty” or “Lord Yahweh” or “Yahweh our Lord.”
- In the New Testament, the apostles used this term in expressions such as “Lord Jesus” and “Lord Jesus Christ,” which communicate that Jesus is God.
- The term “Lord” in the New Testament is also used alone as a direct reference to God, especially in quotations from the Old Testament. For example, the Old Testament text has “Blessed is he who comes in the name of Yahweh” and the New Testament text has “Blessed is he who comes in the name of the Lord.”
- In the ULT and UST, the title “Lord” is only used to translate the actual Hebrew and Greek words that mean “Lord.” It is never used as a translation of God’s name (Yahweh), as is done in many translations.
- Some languages translate “Lord” as “Master” or “Ruler” or some other term that communicates ownership or supreme rule.
- In the appropriate contexts, many translations capitalize the first letter of this term to make it clear to the reader that this is a title referring to God.
- For places in the New Testament where there is a quote from the Old Testament, the term “Lord God” could be used to make it clear that this is a reference to God.

Translation Suggestions:

- This term can be translated with the equivalent of “master” when it refers to a person who owns slaves. It can also be used by a servant to address the person he works for.
- When it refers to Jesus, if the context shows that the speaker sees him as a religious teacher, it can be translated with a respectful address for a religious teacher, such as “master.”
- If the person addressing Jesus does not know him, “lord” could be translated with a respectful form of address such as “sir.” This translation would also be used for other contexts in which a polite form of address to a man is called for.
- When referring to God the Father or to Jesus, this term is considered a title, written as “Lord” (capitalized) in English.

(See also: [God](#), Jesus, ruler, [Yahweh](#))

Bible References:

- Genesis 39:02
- Joshua 03:9-11
- Psalms 086:15-17
- Jeremiah 27:04
- Lamentations 02:02
- Ezekiel 18:29
- Daniel 09:09

- Daniel 09:17-19
- Malachi 03:01
- Matthew 07:21-23
- Luke 01:30-33
- Luke 16:13
- Romans 06:23
- Ephesians 06:9
- Philippians 02:9-11
- Colossians 03:23
- Hebrews 12:14
- James 02:01
- 1 Peter 01:03
- Jude 01:05
- Revelation 15:04

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **25:05** But Jesus replied to Satan by quoting from the Scriptures. He said, "In God's word, he commands his people, 'Do not test the **Lord** your God.'"
- **25:07** Jesus replied, "Get away from me, Satan! In God's word he commands his people, 'Worship only the **Lord** your God and only serve him.'"
- **26:03** This is the year of the **Lord's** favor.
- **27:02** The law expert replied that God's law says, "Love the **Lord** your God with all your heart, soul, strength, and mind."
- **31:05** Then Peter said to Jesus, "**Master**, if it is you, command me to come to you on the water"
- **43:09** "But know for certain that God has caused Jesus to become both **Lord** and Messiah!"
- **47:03** By means of this demon she predicted the future for people, she made a lot of money for her **masters** as a fortuneteller.
- **47:11** Paul answered, "Believe in Jesus, the **Master**, and you and your family will be saved."

Word Data:

- Strong's: H113, H136, H1167, H1376, H4756, H7980, H8323, G203, G634, G962, G1203, G2962

(Go back to: [1 Chronicles 12:19](#); [21:3](#); [21:23](#))

lots, casting lots

Definition:

In the Bible, a "lot" is a marked object(s) used as a way of making a fair and/or random decision, usually for the purpose of selecting a specific person within a group. "Casting lots" refers to the process of using "lots" to make a fair and/or random decision.

- In modern times, some cultures "draw" or "pull out" lots using a bunch of straws. Someone holds the straws so that no one can see how long they are. Each person pulls out a straw and the one who picks the longest (or shortest) straw is the one who is chosen.
- In biblical times, the objects cast (the "lots") were probably small marked stones. It is unknown how the "lots" actually indicated a decision, but it probably involved dropping or throwing marked stones on the ground.
- The phrase "casting lots" can be translated as "tossing lots" or "throwing lots" or "rolling lots." The translation of "cast" should not sound like the lots were being thrown a long distance.
- If a decision is made "by lot," this could be translated as "by casting lots" or "by throwing lots," etc.

(See also: Elizabeth, [priest](#), Zechariah (OT), Zechariah (NT))

Bible References:

- Jonah 01:07
- Luke 01:8-10
- Luke 23:34
- Mark 15:22
- Matthew 27:35-37
- Psalms 022:18-19

Word Data:

- Strong's: H1486, H5307, G2819, G2975

(Go back to: [1 Chronicles 6:54](#); [24:7](#); [24:31](#); [25:8](#); [25:9](#); [26:13](#); [26:14](#))

majesty

Definition:

The term “majesty” refers to greatness and splendor, often in relation to the qualities of a king.

- In the Bible, “majesty” frequently refers to the greatness of God, who is the supreme King over the universe.
- “Your Majesty” is a way of addressing a king.

Translation Suggestions:

- This term could be translated as “kingly greatness” or “royal splendor.”
- “Your Majesty” could be translated as something like “your Highness” or “your Excellency” or using a natural way of addressing a ruler in the target language.

(See also: [king](#))

Bible References:

- 2 Peter 01:16-18
- Daniel 04:36
- Isaiah 02:10
- Jude 01:25
- Micah 05:04

Word Data:

- Strong's: H1347, H1348, H1420, H1923, H1926, H1935, H7238, G3168, G3172

(Go back to: [1 Chronicles 17:21](#))

Mede, Medes, Media

Facts:

Media was an ancient empire located east of Assyria and Babylonia, and north of Elam and Persia. The people who lived in the empire of Media were called "Medes."

- The Media empire covered parts of what are present-day Turkey, Iran, Syria, Iraq and Afghanistan.
- The Medes were closely associated with the Persians and the two empires joined forces to conquer the Babylonian empire.
- Babylonia was invaded by Darius the Mede during the time that the prophet Daniel was living there.

(Translation suggestions: [How to Translate Names](#))

(See also: [Assyria](#), [Babylon](#), Cyrus, Daniel, Darius, [Elam](#), Persia)

Bible References:

- 2 Kings 17:06
- Acts 02:09
- Daniel 05:28
- Esther 01:3-4
- Ezra 06:1-2

Word Data:

- Strong's: H4074, H4075, H4076, H4077, G3370

([Go back to: 1 Chronicles 1:5](#))

messenger

Facts:

The term “messenger” refers to someone who is given a message to tell others.

- In ancient times, a messenger would be sent from the battlefield to tell people back in the city what was happening.
- An angel is a special kind of messenger whom God sends to give people messages. Some translations translate “angel” as “messenger.”
- John the Baptist was called a messenger who came before Jesus to announce the Messiah’s coming and to prepare people to receive him.
- Jesus’ apostles were his messengers to go share with other people the good news about the kingdom of God.

(See also: angel, apostle, John (the Baptist))

Bible References:

- 1 Kings 19:1-3
- 1 Samuel 06:21
- 2 Kings 01:1-2
- Luke 07:27
- Matthew 11:10

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H1319, H4397, H4398, H5046, H5894, H6735, H6737, H7323, H7971, G32, G652

(Go back to: [1 Chronicles 14:1](#); [19:2](#); [19:16](#); [21:15](#); [21:16](#); [21:30](#))

might, mighty, mighty works

Definition:

The terms “mighty” and “might” refer to having great strength or power.

- Often the word “might” is another word for “strength.” When talking about God, it can mean “power.”
- The phrase “mighty men” often refers to men who are courageous and victorious in battle. David’s band of faithful men who helped protect and defend him were often called “mighty men.”
- God is also referred to as the “mighty one.”
- The phrase “mighty works” usually refers to the amazing things God does, especially miracles.
- This term is related to the term “almighty,” which is a common description for God, meaning that he has complete power.

Translation Suggestions:

- Depending on the context, the term “mighty” could be translated as “powerful” or “amazing” or “very strong.”
- The phrase “his might” could be translated as “his strength” or “his power.”
- In Acts 7, Moses is described as a man who was “mighty in word and deed.” This could be translated as “Moses spoke powerful words from God and did miraculous things” or “Moses spoke God’s word powerfully and did many amazing things.”
- Depending on the context, “mighty works” could be translated as “amazing things that God does” or “miracles” or “God doing things with power.”
- The term “might” could also be translated as “power” or “great strength.”
- Do not confuse this term with the English word that is used to express a possibility, as in “It might rain.”

(See also: Almighty, [miracle](#), [power](#), [strength](#))

Bible References:

- Acts 07:22
- Genesis 06:4
- Mark 09:38-39
- Matthew 11:23

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H46, H47, H117, H202, H386, H410, H430, H533, H650, H1219, H1368, H1369, H1396, H1397, H1419, H2220, H2389, H2428, H3201, H3524, H3581, H3966, H4101, H5794, H5797, H6099, H6105, H6108, H6184, H7227, H7580, H8623, H8624, G1411, G1415, G1498, G2478, G2479, G2900, G2904, G3167, G3173

(Go back to: [1 Chronicles 1:10](#); [5:24](#); [7:2](#); [7:5](#); [7:7](#); [7:9](#); [7:11](#); [7:40](#); [8:40](#); [9:13](#); [9:26](#); [11:10](#); [11:11](#); [11:12](#); [11:19](#); [11:24](#); [12:4](#); [12:8](#); [12:21](#); [12:25](#); [12:28](#); [12:30](#); [19:8](#); [26:6](#); [26:31](#); [27:6](#); [28:1](#))

miracle, wonder, sign

Definition:

A “miracle” is something amazing that is not possible unless God causes it to happen.

- Examples of miracles that Jesus did include calming a storm and healing a blind man.
- Miracles are sometimes called “wonders” because they cause people to be filled with wonder or amazement.
- The term “wonder” can also refer more generally to amazing displays of God’s power, such as when he created the heavens and the earth.
- Miracles can also be called “signs” because they are used as indicators or evidence that God is the all-powerful one who has complete authority over the universe.
- Some miracles were God’s acts of redemption, such as when he rescued the Israelites from being slaves in Egypt and when he protected Daniel from being hurt by lions.
- Other wonders were God’s acts of judgment, such as when he sent a worldwide flood in Noah’s time and when he brought terrible plagues on the land of Egypt during the time of Moses.
- Many of God’s miracles were the physical healings of sick people or bringing dead people back to life.
- God’s power was shown in Jesus when he healed people, calmed storms, walked on water, and raised people from the dead. These were all miracles.
- God also enabled the prophets and the apostles to perform miracles of healing and other things that were only possible through God’s power.

Translation Suggestions:

- Possible translations of “miracles” or “wonders” could include “impossible things that God does” or “powerful works of God” or “amazing acts of God.”
- The frequent expression “signs and wonders” could be translated as “proofs and miracles” or “miraculous works that prove God’s power” or “amazing miracles that show how great God is.”
- Note that this meaning of a miraculous sign is different from a sign that gives proof or evidence for something. The two can be related.

(See also: [power](#), [prophet](#), [apostle](#), [sign](#))

Bible References:

- 2 Thessalonians 02:8-10
- Acts 04:17
- Acts 04:22
- Daniel 04:1-3
- Deuteronomy 13:01
- Exodus 03:19-22
- John 02:11
- Matthew 13:58

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **16:08** Gideon asked God for two **signs** so he could be sure that God would use him to save Israel.
- **19:14** God did many **miracles** through Elisha.
- **37:10** Many of the Jews believed in Jesus because of this **miracle**.
- **43:06** “Men of Israel, Jesus was a man who did many mighty **signs** and **wonders** by the power of God, as you have seen and already know.”

- **49:02** Jesus did many **miracles** that prove he is God. He walked on water, calmed storms, healed many sick people, drove out demons, raised the dead to life, and turned five loaves of bread and two small fish into enough food for over 5,000 people.

Word Data:

- Strong's: H226, H852, H2368, H2858, H4150, H4159, H4864, H5251, H5824, H5953, H6381, H6382, H6383, H6395, H6725, H7560, H7583, H8047, H8074, H8539, H8540,, G880, G1213, G1229, G1411, G1569, G1718, G1770, G1839, G2285, G2296, G2297, G3167, G3902, G4591, G4592, G5059

(Go back to: [1 Chronicles 16:9](#); [16:12](#); [16:24](#))

Moab, Moabite

Facts:

The term "Moab" refers to a people group that lived to the east of the Salt Sea. The book of Genesis describes this people group as the descendants of a man named "Moab," who was the son of Lot's elder daughter.

- In the book of Ruth, Elimelek and his family went to live in Moab because of the famine around Bethlehem.
- Ruth is called a "Moabite woman" because she was born in the country of Moab and was from that people group.

(Translation suggestions: [How to Translate Names](#))

(See also: Bethlehem, [Judea](#), Lot, Ruth, Salt Sea)

Bible References:

- Genesis 19:37
- Genesis 36:34-36
- Ruth 01:1-2
- Ruth 01:22

Word Data:

- Strong's: H4124, H4125

(Go back to: [1 Chronicles 1:46](#); [8:8](#); [11:22](#); [11:46](#); [18:2](#))

Moses

Facts:

Moses was a prophet and leader of the Israelite people for over 40 years.

- When Moses was a baby, Moses' parents put him in a basket in the reeds of the Nile River to hide him from the Egyptian Pharaoh. Moses' sister Miriam watched over him there. Moses' life was spared when the pharaoh's daughter found him and took him to the palace to raise him as her son.
- God chose Moses to free the Israelites from slavery in Egypt and to lead them to the Promised Land.
- After the Israelites' escape from Egypt and while they were wandering in the desert, God gave Moses two stone tablets with the Ten Commandments written on them.
- Near the end of his life, Moses saw the Promised Land, but didn't get to live in it because he disobeyed God.

(Translation suggestions: [How to Translate Names](#))

(See also: Miriam, Promised Land, Ten Commandments)

Bible References:

- Acts 07:21
- Acts 07:30
- Exodus 02:10
- Exodus 09:01
- Matthew 17:04
- Romans 05:14

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **09:12** One day while **Moses** was taking care of his sheep, he saw a bush that was on fire.
- **12:05** **Moses** told the Israelites, "Stop being afraid! God will fight for you today and save you."
- **12:07** God told **Moses** to raise his hand over the sea and divide the waters.
- **12:12** When the Israelites saw that the Egyptians were dead, they trusted in God and believed that Moses was a prophet of God.
- **13:07** Then God wrote these Ten Commandments on two stone tablets and gave them to **Moses**.

\

Word Data:

- Strong's: H4872, H4873, G3475

(Go back to: [1 Chronicles 6:49](#); [15:15](#); [21:29](#); [22:13](#); [23:15](#); [26:24](#))

mourn, mourner, weeping

Facts:

The terms “mourn” and “mourning” refer to expressing deep grief, usually in response to the death of someone.

- In many cultures, mourning includes specific outward behaviors that show this sadness and grief.
- The Israelites and other people groups in ancient times expressed mourning through loud wailing and lamenting. They also wore rough clothing made of sackcloth and put ashes on themselves.
- Hired mourners, usually women, would loudly weep and wail from the time of death until well after the body was put in the tomb.
- The typical period of mourning was seven days, but could last as long as thirty days (as for Moses and Aaron) or seventy days (as for Jacob).
- The Bible also uses the term figuratively to talk about “mourning” because of sin. This refers to feeling deeply grieved because sin hurts God and people.

(See also: [sackcloth](#), [sin](#))

Bible References:

- 1 Samuel 15:34-35
- 2 Samuel 01:11
- Genesis 23:02
- Luke 07:31-32
- Matthew 11:17

Word Data:

- Strong's: H56, H57, H60, H205, H578, H584, H585, H1058, H1065, H1068, H1671, H1897, H1899, H4553, H4798, H5092, H5098, H5110, H5594, H6937, H6941, H8386, G2354, G2875, G3602, G3996, G3997

(Go back to: [1 Chronicles 7:22](#))

name

Definition:

The term "name" refers to the word by which a specific person or thing is called. In the Bible, however, the term "name" is used in several different ways to refer to several different concepts.

- In some contexts, "name" could refer to a person's reputation, as in "let us make a name for ourselves."
- The term "name" could also refer to the memory of something. For example, "cut off the names of the idols" means to destroy those idols so that they are no longer remembered or worshiped.
- Speaking "in the name of God" meant speaking with his power and authority, or as his representative.
- The "name" of someone could refer to the entire person, as in "there is no other name under heaven by which we must be saved." (See: [metonymy](#))

Translation Suggestions:

- An expression like "his good name" could be translated as "his good reputation."
- Doing something "in the name of" could be translated as "with the authority of" or "with the permission of" or "as the representative of" that person.
- The expression "make a name for ourselves" could be translated "cause many people to know about us" or "make people think we are very important."
- The expression "call his name" could be translated as "name him" or "give him the name."
- The expression "those who love your name" could be translated as "those who love you."
- The expression "cut off the names of idols" could be translated as "get rid of pagan idols so that they are not even remembered" or "cause people to stop worshiping false gods" or "completely destroy all idols so that people no longer even think about them."

(See also: [call](#))

Bible References:

- 1 John 02:12
- 2 Timothy 02:19
- Acts 04:07
- Acts 04:12
- Acts 09:27
- Genesis 12:02
- Genesis 35:10
- Matthew 18:05

Word Data:

- Strong's: H5344, H7121, H7761, H8034, H8036, G2564, G3686, G3687, G5122

(Go back to: [1 Chronicles 1:19](#); [4:9](#); [4:38](#); [4:41](#); [5:24](#); [6:17](#); [6:65](#); [7:16](#); [7:23](#); [8:38](#); [9:44](#); [11:20](#); [11:24](#); [12:30](#); [12:31](#); [13:6](#); [14:4](#); [14:11](#); [14:17](#); [16:2](#); [16:8](#); [16:10](#); [16:29](#); [16:41](#); [17:8](#); [17:21](#); [17:24](#); [21:19](#); [22:9](#); [23:13](#); [23:24](#))

nation

Definition:

A nation is a large group of people ruled by some form of government. The people of a nation often have the same ancestors and share a common ethnicity.

- A “nation” usually has a well-defined culture and territorial boundaries.
- In the Bible, a “nation” could be a country (like Egypt or Ethiopia), but often it is more general and refers to a people group, especially when used in the plural. It is important to check the context.
- Nations in the Bible included the Israelites, the Philistines, the Assyrians, the Babylonians, the Canaanites, the Romans, and the Greeks, among many others.
- Sometimes the word “nation” was used figuratively to refer to the ancestor of a certain people group, as when Rebekah was told by God that her unborn sons were “nations” that would fight against each other. This could be translated as “the founders of two nations” or the “ancestors of two people groups.”
- The word translated as “nation” was also sometimes used to refer to “Gentiles” or to people who do not worship Yahweh. The context usually makes the meaning clear.

Translation Suggestions:

- Depending on the context, the word “nation” could also be translated as “people group” or “people” or “country.”
- If a language has a term for “nation” that is distinct from these other terms, then that term can be used wherever it occurs in the Bible text, as long as it is natural and accurate in each context.
- The plural term “nations” can often be translated as “people groups.”
- In certain contexts, this term could also be translated as “Gentiles” or “nonJews.”

(See also: [Assyria](#), [Babylon](#), [Canaan](#), Gentile, Greek, [people group](#), [Philistines](#), Rome)

Bible References:

- 1 Chronicles 14:15-17
- 2 Chronicles 15:06
- 2 Kings 17:11-12
- Acts 02:05
- Acts 13:19
- Acts 17:26
- Acts 26:04
- Daniel 03:04
- Genesis 10:2-5
- Genesis 27:29
- Genesis 35:11
- Genesis 49:10
- Luke 07:05
- Mark 13:7-8
- Matthew 21:43
- Romans 04:16-17

Word Data:

- Strong's: H523, H524, H776, H1471, H3816, H4940, H5971, G246, G1074, G1085, G1484

(Go back to: [1 Chronicles 14:17](#); [16:20](#); [16:24](#); [16:31](#); [16:35](#); [17:21](#); [18:11](#))

Nebuchadnezzar

Facts:

Nebuchadnezzar was a king of the Babylonian Empire whose powerful army conquered many people groups and nations.

- Under Nebuchadnezzar's leadership, the Babylonian army attacked and conquered the kingdom of Judah, and took most of the people of Judah to Babylon as captives. The captives were forced to live there for a period of 70 years known as the "Babylonian Exile."
- One of the exiles, Daniel, interpreted some of King Nebuchadnezzar's dreams.
- Three other captured Israelites, Hananiah, Mishael, and Azariah, were thrown into a fiery furnace when they refused to bow down to a gigantic gold statue that Nebuchadnezzar had made.
- King Nebuchadnezzar was very arrogant and worshiped false gods. When he conquered Judah, he stole many gold and silver objects from the temple in Jerusalem.
- Because Nebuchadnezzar was proud and refused to turn away from worshiping false gods, Yahweh caused him to be destitute for seven years, living like an animal. After the seven years, God restored Nebuchadnezzar when he humbled himself and praised the one true God, Yahweh.

(Translation suggestions: [How to Translate Names](#))

(See also: arrogant, Azariah, [Babylon](#), Hananiah, Mishael)

Bible References:

- 1 Chronicles 06:15
- 2 Kings 25:1-3
- Daniel 01:02
- Daniel 04:04
- Ezekiel 26:08

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **20:06** About 100 years after the Assyrians destroyed the kingdom of Israel, God sent **Nebuchadnezzar**, king of the Babylonians, to attack the kingdom of Judah.
- **20:06** The king of Judah agreed to be **Nebuchadnezzar's** servant and pay him a lot of money every year.
- **20:08** To punish the king of Judah for rebelling, **Nebuchadnezzar's** soldiers killed the king's sons in front of him and then made him blind.
- **20:09** **Nebuchadnezzar** and his army took almost all of the people of the kingdom of Judah to Babylon, leaving only the poorest people behind to plant the fields.

Word Data:

- Strong's: H5019, H5020

(Go back to: [1 Chronicles 6:15](#))

new moon

Definition:

The term “new moon” refers to the moon when it looks like a small, crescent-shaped sliver of light. This is the beginning phase of the moon as it moves in its orbit around the planet Earth at sunset. It also refers to the first day a new moon should be visible after the moon has been dark for a few days.

- In ancient times, new moons marked the beginnings of certain time periods, such as months.
- The Israelites celebrated a new moon festival that was marked by the blowing of a ram’s horn.
- The Bible also refers to this time as the “beginning of the month.”

(See also: month, [earth](#), festival, horn, [sheep](#))

Bible References:

- 1 Chronicles 23:31
- 1 Samuel 20:05
- 2 Kings 04:23-24
- Ezekiel 45:16-17
- Isaiah 01:12-13

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H2320, G3376, G3561

(Go back to: [1 Chronicles 27:4](#); [27:14](#); [27:15](#))

oil

Definition:

Oil is a thick, clear liquid that can be taken from certain plants. In Bible times, oil usually came from olives.

- Olive oil was used for cooking, anointing, sacrifice, lamps, and medicine.
- In ancient times, olive oil was highly prized, and the possession of oil was considered a measurement of wealth.
- Make sure the translation of this term refers to the kind of oil that can be used in cooking, not motor oil. Some languages have different words for these different kinds of oil.

(See also: olive, [sacrifice](#))

Bible References:

- 2 Samuel 01:21
- Exodus 29:02
- Leviticus 05:11
- Leviticus 08:1-3
- Mark 06:12-13
- Matthew 25:7-9

Word Data:

- Strong's: H2091, H3323, H4887, H6671, H7246, H8081, G1637, G3464

(Go back to: [1 Chronicles 12:40](#))

ordinance, regulations, requirements, strict law, customs

Definition:

An ordinance is a public regulation or law that gives rules or instructions for people to follow. This term is related to the term “ordain.”

- Sometimes an ordinance is a custom that has become well established through years of practice.
- In the Bible, an ordinance was something that God commanded the Israelites to do. Sometimes he commanded them to do it forever.
- The term “ordinance” could be translated as “public decree” or “regulation” or “law,” depending on the context.

(See also: [command](#), [decree](#), [law](#), ordain, [statute](#))

Bible References:

- Deuteronomy 04:13-14
- Exodus 27:20-21
- Leviticus 08:31-33
- Malachi 03:6-7

Word Data:

- Strong's: H2706, H4687, H4931, H4941

(Go back to: [1 Chronicles 6:32](#); [15:13](#); [22:13](#); [23:31](#); [24:19](#))

oversee, overseer

Definition:

The term “overseer” refers to a person who is in charge of the work and welfare of other people.

- In the Old Testament, an overseer had the job of making sure the workers under him did their work well.
- In the New Testament, this term is used to describe leaders of the early Christian church. Their work was to take care of the spiritual needs of the church, making sure the believers received accurate biblical teaching.
- Paul refers to an overseer as being like a shepherd who takes care of the believers in a local church, who are his “flock.”
- The overseer, like a shepherd, keeps watch over the flock. He guards and protects the believers from false spiritual teaching and other evil influences.
- In the New Testament, the terms “overseers,” “elders,” and “shepherds/pastors” are different ways of referring to the same spiritual leaders.

Translation Suggestions

- Other ways to translate this term could be “supervisor” or “caretaker” or “manager.”
- When referring to a leader of a local group of God’s people, this term could be translated with a word or phrase that means “spiritual supervisor” or “someone who takes care of the spiritual needs of a group of believers” or “person who oversees the spiritual needs of the Church.”

(See also: church, [elder](#), pastor, shepherd)

Bible References:

- 1 Chronicles 26:31-32
- 1 Timothy 03:02
- Acts 20:28
- Genesis 41:33-34
- Philippians 01:01

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H5329, H6485, H6496, H7860, H8104, G1983, G1984, G1985

(Go back to: [1 Chronicles 15:21](#); [23:4](#))

peace, peaceful, peacemakers

Definition:

The term “peace” refers to a state of being or a feeling of having no conflict, anxiety, or fearfulness. A person who is “peaceful” feels calm and assured of being safe and secure.

- “Peace” can also refer to a time when people groups or countries are not at war with each other. These people are said to have “peaceful relations.”
- To “make peace” with a person or a group of people means to take actions to cause fighting to stop.
- A “peacemaker” is someone who does and says things to influence people to live at peace with each other.
- To be “at peace” with other people means being in a state of not fighting against those people.
- A good or right relationship between God and people happens when God saves people from their sin. This is called having “peace with God.”
- The greeting “grace and peace” was used by the apostles in their letters to their fellow believers as a blessing.
- The term “peace” can also refer to being in a good relationship with other people or with God.

Bible References:

- 1 Thessalonians 05:1-3
- Acts 07:26
- Colossians 01:18-20
- Colossians 03:15
- Galatians 05:23
- Luke 07:50
- Luke 12:51
- Mark 04:39
- Matthew 05:09
- Matthew 10:13

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **15:06** God had commanded the Israelites not to make a **peace** treaty with any of the people groups in Canaan.
- **15:12** Then God gave Israel **peace** along all its borders.
- **16:03** Then God provided a deliverer who rescued them from their enemies and brought **peace** to the land.
- **21:13** He (Messiah) would die to receive the punishment for other people’s sin. His punishment would bring **peace** between God and people.
- **48:14** David was the king of Israel, but Jesus is the king of the entire universe! He will come again and rule his kingdom with justice and **peace**, forever.
- **50:17** Jesus will rule his kingdom with **peace** and justice, and he will be with his people forever.

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H5117, H7961, H7962, H7965, H7999, H8001, H8002, H8003, H8252, G269, G1514, G1515, G1516, G1517, G1518, G2272

(Go back to: [1 Chronicles 12:18](#))

people, people group,

Definition:

The terms “people” and “people group” refer to some group of people that shares a common language and culture. The term “the people” often refers to a gathering of people in a certain place or at a specific event.

- In Bible times, the members of a people group usually had the same ancestors and lived together in a particular country or area of land.
- Depending on the context, the term “people” can refer to a “people group” or “family” or “relatives” or “army.”
- In plural form, the term “peoples” often refers to all people groups on the earth. Sometimes it refers more specifically to people who are not Israelites or who do not serve Yahweh. In some English Bible translations, the term “nations” is also used in this way.

Translation Suggestions:

- The term “people group” could be translated by a word or phrase that means “large family group” or “clan” or “ethnic group.”
- A phrase such as “my people” could be translated as “my relatives” or “my fellow Israelites” or “my family” or “my people group,” depending on the context.
- The expression “scatter you among the peoples” could also be translated as “cause you to go live with many different people groups” or “cause you to separate from each other and go live in many different regions of the world.”
- The term “the peoples” or “the people” could also be translated as “the people in the world” or “people groups,” depending on the context.
- The phrase “the people of” could be translated as “the people living in” or “the people descended from” or “the family of,” depending on whether it is followed by the name of a place or a person.
- “All the peoples of the earth” could be translated as “everyone living on earth” or “every person in the world” or “all people.”
- The phrase “a people” could also be translated as “a group of people” or “certain people” or “a community of people” or “a family of people.”

(See also: descendant, [nation](#), tribe, world)

Bible References:

- 1 Kings 08:51-53
- 1 Samuel 08:07
- Deuteronomy 28:09
- Genesis 49:16
- Ruth 01:16

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **14:02** God had promised Abraham, Isaac, and Jacob that he would give the Promised Land to their descendants, but now there were many **people groups** living there. what follows is
- **21:02** God promised Abraham that through him all **people groups** of the world would receive a blessing. This blessing would be that the Messiah would come sometime in the future and provide the way of salvation for people from all the **people groups** of the world.
- **42:08** “It was also written in the scriptures that my disciples will proclaim that everyone should repent in order to receive forgiveness for their sins. They will do this starting in Jerusalem, and then go to all **people groups** everywhere.”

- **42:10** “So go, make disciples of all **people groups** by baptizing them in the name of the Father, the Son, and the Holy Spirit and by teaching them to obey everything I have commanded you.”
- **48:11** Because of this New Covenant, anyone from any **people group** can become part of God’s people by believing in Jesus.
- **50:03** He (Jesus) said, “Go and make disciples of all **people groups!**” and, “The fields are ripe for harvest!”

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H249, H523, H524, H776, H1121, H1471, H3816, H5712, H5971, H5972, H6153, G1074, G1085, G1218, G1484, G2560, G2992, G3793

(Go back to: [1 Chronicles 5:25](#); [10:9](#); [11:2](#); [13:4](#); [14:2](#); [16:2](#); [16:8](#); [16:20](#); [16:24](#); [16:26](#); [16:28](#); [16:36](#); [16:43](#); [17:6](#); [17:7](#); [17:9](#); [17:10](#); [17:21](#); [17:22](#); [18:14](#); [19:7](#); [19:11](#); [19:13](#); [20:3](#); [21:2](#); [21:3](#); [21:5](#); [21:17](#); [21:22](#); [22:18](#); [23:25](#); [28:2](#); [28:21](#); [29:9](#); [29:14](#); [29:17](#); [29:18](#))

Philistines

Facts:

The Philistines were a people group who occupied a region known as Philistia along the coast of the Mediterranean Sea. Their name means “people of the sea.”

- There were five main Philistine cities: Ashdod, Ashkelon, Ekron, Gath, and Gaza.
- The city of Ashdod was in the northern part of Philistia, and the city of Gaza was in the southern part.
- The Philistines are probably best known for the many years they were at war against the Israelites.
- The judge Samson was a famous warrior against the Philistines, using supernatural strength from God.
- King David often led battles against the Philistines, including the time as a youth when he defeated the Philistine warrior, Goliath.

(Translation suggestions: [How to Translate Names](#))

(See also: Ashdod, Ashkelon, [David](#), Ekron, Gath, Gaza, Goliath, Salt Sea)

Bible References:

- 1 Chronicles 18:9-11
- 1 Samuel 13:04
- 2 Chronicles 09:25-26
- Genesis 10:11-14
- Psalm 056:1-2

Word Data:

- Strong's: H6429, H6430

(Go back to: [1 Chronicles 1:12](#); [10:1](#); [10:2](#); [10:7](#); [10:8](#); [10:9](#); [10:11](#); [11:13](#); [11:14](#); [11:15](#); [11:16](#); [11:18](#); [12:19](#); [14:8](#); [14:10](#); [14:13](#); [14:15](#); [14:16](#); [18:1](#); [20:4](#); [20:5](#))

power, powerful, powerfully

Definition:

The term “power” refers to the ability to do things or make things happen, often using great strength. “Powers” refers to people or spirits who have great ability to cause things to happen.

- The “power of God” refers to God’s ability to do everything, especially things that are not possible for people to do.
- God has complete power over everything that he has created.
- God gives his people power to do what he wants, so that when they heal people or do other miracles, they do this by the power of God.
- Because Jesus and the Holy Spirit are also God, they have this same power.

Translation Suggestions:

- Depending on the context, the term “power” could also be translated as “ability” or “strength” or “energy” or “ability to do miracles” or “control.”
- Possible ways to translate the term “powers” could include “powerful beings” or “controlling spirits” or “those who control others.”

(See also: Holy Spirit, Jesus, [miracle](#))

Bible References:

- 1 Thessalonians 01:05
- Colossians 01:11-12
- Genesis 31:29
- Jeremiah 18:21
- Jude 01:25
- Judges 02:18
- Luke 01:17
- Luke 04:14
- Matthew 26:64
- Philippians 03:21
- Psalm 080:02

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **22:05** The angel explained, “The Holy Spirit will come to you, and the **power** of God will overshadow you. So the baby will be holy, the Son of God.”
- **26:01** After overcoming Satan’s temptations, Jesus returned in the **power** of the Holy Spirit to the region of Galilee where he lived.
- **32:15** Immediately Jesus realized that **power** had gone out from him.
- **42:11** Forty days after Jesus rose from the dead, he told his disciples, “Stay in Jerusalem until my Father gives you **power** when the Holy Spirit comes on you.”
- **43:06** “Men of Israel, Jesus was a man who did many mighty signs and wonders by the **power** of God, as you have seen and already know.”
- **44:08** Peter answered them, “This man stands before you healed by the **power** of Jesus the Messiah.”

Word Data:

- Strong's: H410, H1369, H1370, H2220, H2393, H2428, H2429, H2632, H3027, H3028, H3581, H4475, H4910, H5794, H5797, H5808, H6184, H7786, H7980, H7981, H7983, H7989, H8280, H8592, H8633, G1411, G1415, G1754, G1756, G1849, G1850, G2159, G2478, G2479, G2904, G3168

(Go back to: [1 Chronicles 16:11](#); [16:28](#))

praise, praised, praiseworthy

Definition:

To praise someone is to express admiration and honor for that person.

- People praise God because of how great he is and because of all the amazing things he has done as the Creator and Savior of the world.
- Praise for God often includes being thankful for what he has done.
- Music and singing is often used as a way to praise God.
- Praising God is part of what it means to worship him.
- The term to “praise” could also be translated as to “speak well of” or to “highly honor with words” or to “say good things about.”
- The noun “praise” could be translated as “spoken honor” or “speech that honors” or “speaking good things about.”

(See also: [worship](#))

Bible References:

- 2 Corinthians 01:03
- Acts 02:47
- Acts 13:48
- Daniel 03:28
- Ephesians 01:03
- Genesis 49:8
- James 03:9-10
- John 05:41-42
- Luke 01:46
- Luke 01:64-66
- Luke 19:37-38
- Matthew 11:25-27
- Matthew 15:29-31

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **12:13** The Israelites sang many songs to celebrate their new freedom and to **praise** God because he saved them from the Egyptian army.
- **17:08** When David heard these words, he immediately thanked and **praised** God because he had promised David this great honor and many blessings.
- **22:07** Zechariah said, “**Praise** God, because he has remembered his people!”
- **43:13** They (disciples) enjoyed **praising** God together and they shared everything they had with each other.
- **47:08** They put Paul and Silas in the most secure part of the prison and even locked up their feet. Yet in the middle of the night, they were singing songs of **praise** to God.

Word Data:

- Strong's: H1319, H7121, G2980, G3853

(Go back to: [1 Chronicles 16:25](#); [16:36](#); [23:5](#); [25:3](#); [29:13](#))

pray, prayer

Definition:

The terms “pray” and “prayer” refer to talking with God. These terms are used to refer to people trying to talk to a false god.

- People can pray silently, talking to God with their thoughts, or they can pray aloud, speaking to God with their voice. Sometimes prayers are written down, such as when David wrote his prayers in the Book of Psalms.
- Prayer can include asking God for mercy, for help with a problem, and for wisdom in making decisions.
- Often people ask God to heal people who are sick or who need his help in other ways.
- People also thank and praise God when they are praying to him.
- Praying includes confessing our sins to God and asking him to forgive us.
- Talking to God is sometimes called “communing” with him as our spirit communicates with his spirit, sharing our emotions and enjoying his presence.
- This term could be translated as “talking to God” or “communicating with God.” The translation of this term should be able to include praying that is silent.

(See also: false god, forgive, [praise](#))

Bible References:

- 1 Thessalonians 03:09
- Acts 08:24
- Acts 14:26
- Colossians 04:04
- John 17:09
- Luke 11:1
- Matthew 05:43-45
- Matthew 14:22-24

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **06:05** Isaac **prayed** for Rebekah, and God allowed her to get pregnant with twins.
- **13:12** But Moses **prayed** for them, and God listened to his **prayer** and did not destroy them.
- **19:08** Then the prophets of Baal **prayed** to Baal, “Hear us, O Baal!”
- **21:07** Priests also **prayed** to God for the people.
- **38:11** Jesus told his disciples to **pray** that they would not enter into temptation.
- **43:13** The disciples continually listened to the teaching of the apostles, spent time together, ate together, and **prayed** with each other.
- **49:18** God tells you to **pray**, to study his word, to worship him with other Christians, and to tell others what he has done for you.

Word Data:

- Strong's: H559, H577, H1156, H2470, H3863, H3908, H4994, H6279, H6293, H6419, H6739, H7592, H7878, H7879, H7881, H8034, H8605, G154, G1162, G1189, G1783, G2065, G2171, G2172, G3870, G4335, G4336

(Go back to: [1 Chronicles 17:1](#))

preach, preaching, preacher, proclaim, proclamation

Definition:

To “preach” means to speak to a group of people, teaching them about God and urging them to obey him. To “proclaim” means to announce or declare something publicly and boldly.

- Often preaching is done by one person to a large group of people. It is usually spoken, not written.
- “Preaching” and “teaching” are similar, but are not exactly the same.
- “Preaching” mainly refers to publicly proclaiming spiritual or moral truth, and urging the audience to respond. “Teaching” is a term that emphasizes instruction, that is, giving people information or teaching them how to do something.
- The term “preach” is usually used with the word “gospel.”
- What a person has preached to others can also be referred to in general as his “teachings.”
- Often in the Bible, “proclaim” means to announce publicly something that God has commanded, or to tell others about God and how great he is.
- In the New Testament, the apostles proclaimed the good news about Jesus to many people in many different cities and regions.
- The term “proclaim” can also be used for decrees made by kings or for denouncing evil in a public way.
- Other ways to translate “proclaim” could include “announce” or “openly preach” or “publicly declare.”
- The term “proclamation” could also be translated as “announcement” or “public preaching.”

(See also: good news, Jesus, kingdom of God)

Bible References:

- 2 Timothy 04:1-2
- Acts 08:4-5
- Acts 10:42-43
- Acts 14:21-22
- Acts 20:25
- Luke 04:42
- Matthew 03:1-3
- Matthew 04:17
- Matthew 12:41
- Matthew 24:14
- Acts 09:20-22
- Acts 13:38-39
- Jonah 03:1-3
- Luke 04:18-19
- Mark 01:14-15
- Matthew 10:26

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **24:02** He (John) **preached** to them, saying, “Repent, for the Kingdom of God is near!”
- **30:01** Jesus sent his apostles to **preach** and to teach people in many different villages.
- **38:01** About three years after Jesus first began **preaching** and teaching publicly, Jesus told his disciples that he wanted to celebrate this Passover with them in Jerusalem, and that he would be killed there.
- **45:06** But in spite of this, they **preached** about Jesus everywhere they went.
- **45:07** He (Philip) went to Samaria where he preached about Jesus and many people were saved.
- **46:06** Right away, Saul began **preaching** to the Jews in Damascus, saying, “Jesus is the Son of God!”
- **46:10** Then they sent them off to **preach** the good news of Jesus in many other places.

- **47:14** Paul and other Christian leaders traveled to many cities, **preaching** and teaching people the good news about Jesus.
- **50:02** When Jesus was living on earth he said, “My disciples will **preach** the good news about the kingdom of God to people everywhere in the world, and then the end will come.”

Word Data:

- Strong's:
 - preach: H1319, H7121, H7150, G1229, G2097, G2605, G2782, G2783, G2784, G2980, G4283
 - proclaim: H1319, H1696, H1697, H2199, H3045, H3745, H4161, H5046, H5608, H6963, H7121, H7440, H8085, G518, G591, G1229, G1861, G2097, G2605, G2782, G2784, G2980, G3142, G4135

(Go back to: [1 Chronicles 14:15](#); [19:17](#))

priest, priesthood

Definition:

In the Bible, a priest was someone who was chosen to offer sacrifices to God on behalf of God's people. The "priesthood" was the name for the office or condition of being a priest.

- In the Old Testament, God chose Aaron and his descendants to be his priests for the people of Israel.
- The "priesthood" was a right and a responsibility that was passed down from father to son in the Levite clan.
- The Israelite priests had the responsibility of offering the people's sacrifices to God, along with other duties in the temple.
- Priests also offered regular prayers to God on behalf of his people and performed other religious rites.
- The priests pronounced formal blessings on people and taught them God's laws.
- In Jesus' time, there were different levels of priests, including the chief priests and the high priest.
- Jesus is our "great high priest" who intercedes for us in God's presence. He offered himself as the ultimate sacrifice for sin. This means that the sacrifices made by human priests are no longer needed.
- In the New Testament, every believer in Jesus is called a "priest" who can come directly to God in prayer to intercede for himself and other people.
- In ancient times, there were also pagan priests who presented offerings to false gods such as Baal.

Translation Suggestions:

- Depending on the context, the term "priest" could be translated as "sacrifice person" or "God's intermediary" or "sacrificial mediator" or "person God appoints to represent him."
- The translation of "priest" should be different from the translation of "mediator."
- Some translations may prefer to always say something like "Israelite priest" or "Jewish priest" or "Yahweh's priest" or "priest of Baal" to make it clear that this does not refer to a modern-day type of priest.
- The term used to translate "priest" should be different from the terms for "chief priest" and "high priest" and "Levite" and "prophet."

(See also: [Aaron](#), chief priests, high priest, mediator, [sacrifice](#))

Bible References:

- 2 Chronicles 06:41
- Genesis 14:17-18
- Genesis 47:22
- John 01:19-21
- Luke 10:31
- Mark 01:44
- Mark 02:25-26
- Matthew 08:4
- Matthew 12:04
- Micah 03:9-11
- Nehemiah 10:28-29
- Nehemiah 10:34-36
- Revelation 01:06

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **04:07** "Melchizedek, the **priest** of God Most High"
- **13:09** Anyone who disobeyed God's law could bring an animal to the altar in front of the Tent of Meeting as a sacrifice to God. A **priest** would kill the animal and burn it on the altar. The blood of the animal that was

sacrificed covered the person's sin and made that person clean in God's sight. God chose Moses' brother, Aaron, and Aaron's descendants to be his **priests**.

- **19:07** So the **priests** of Baal prepared a sacrifice but did not light the fire.
- **21:07** An Israelite **priest** was someone who made sacrifices to God on behalf of the people as a substitute for the punishment of their sins. **Priests** also prayed to God for the people.

Word Data:

- Strong's: H3547, H3548, H3549, H3550, G748, G749, G2405, G2406, G2407, G2409, G2420

(Go back to: [1 Chronicles 9:2](#); [9:10](#); [9:30](#); [Notes](#); [13:2](#); [Notes](#); [15:11](#); [15:14](#); [15:24](#); [Notes](#); [16:6](#); [16:39](#); [18:16](#); [Notes](#); [23:2](#); [Notes](#); [24:6](#); [24:31](#); [27:5](#); [28:13](#); [28:21](#); [29:22](#))

prince, princess, governors, provincial governors, officials, noblemen, nobility

Definition:

A "prince" is the son of a king. A "princess" is a daughter of a king.

- The term "prince" is often used figuratively to refer to a leader, ruler, or other powerful person.
- Because of Abraham's wealth and importance, he was referred to as a "prince" by the Hittites he was living among.
- In the book of Daniel, the term "prince" is used in the expressions "prince of Persia" and "prince of Greece," which in those contexts probably refer to powerful evil spirits who had authority over those regions.
- The archangel Michael is also referred to as a "prince" in the book of Daniel.
- Sometimes in the Bible Satan is referred to as "the prince of this world."
- Jesus is called the "Prince of Peace" and the "Prince of Life."
- In Acts 2:36, Jesus is referred to as "Lord and Christ" and in Acts 5:31 he is referred to as "Prince and Savior," showing the parallel meaning of "Lord" and "Prince."

Translation Suggestions:

- Ways to translate "prince" could include, "king's son" or "ruler" or "leader" or "chieftain" or "captain."
- When referring to angels, this could also be translated as, "spirit ruler" or "leading angel."
- When referring to Satan or other evil spirits, this term could also be translated as, "evil spirit ruler" or "powerful spirit leader" or "ruling spirit," depending on the context.

(See also: angel, authority, Christ, demon, [lord](#), [power](#), ruler, Satan, Savior, [spirit](#))

Bible References:

- Acts 05:29-32
- Genesis 12:15
- Genesis 49:26
- Luke 01:52

Word Data:

- Strong's: H1, H117, H324, H2831, H3548, H4502, H5057, H5081, H5139, H5257, H5387, H5633, H5993, H6579, H7261, H7333, H7786, H8269, H8282, H8323, G747, G758, G1413, G3175

(Go back to: [1 Chronicles 7:40](#); [12:21](#); [12:28](#); [12:34](#); [13:1](#); [15:22](#); [15:25](#); [19:3](#); [19:16](#); [19:18](#); [21:2](#); [22:17](#); [23:2](#); [24:5](#); [24:6](#); [25:1](#); [26:26](#); [27:1](#); [27:3](#); [27:5](#); [27:22](#); [27:31](#); [27:34](#); [28:1](#); [28:21](#); [29:6](#))

promise, promised

Definition:

When used as a verb, the term "promise" refers to the action of a person saying that he will do something in such way that he obligates himself to fulfill what he has said. When used as a noun, the term "promise" refers to the thing that a person obligates himself to do.

- The Bible records many promises that God has made for his people.
- Promises are an important part of formal agreements such as covenants.

Translation Suggestions:


- The term "promise" could be translated as "commitment" or "assurance" or "guarantee."
- To "promise to do something" could be translated as "assure someone that you will do something" or "commit to doing something."

(See also: [covenant](#), oath, vow)

Bible References:

- Galatians 03:15-16
- Genesis 25:31-34
- Hebrews 11:09
- James 01:12
- Numbers 30:02

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **03:15** God said, "I **promise** I will never again curse the ground because of the evil things people do, or destroy the world by causing a flood, even though people are sinful from the time they are children." 
- **03:16** God then made the first rainbow as a sign of his **promise**. Every time the rainbow appeared in the sky, God would remember what he **promised** and so would his people.
- **04:08** God spoke to Abram and **promised** again that he would have a son and as many descendants as the stars in the sky. Abram believed God's **promise**.
- **05:04** "Your wife, Sarai, will have a son—he will be the son of **promise**."
- **08:15** The covenant **promises** that God gave to Abraham were passed on to Isaac, then to Jacob, and then to Jacob's twelve sons and their families.
- **17:14** Though David had been unfaithful to God, God was still faithful to his **promises**.
- **50:01** Jesus **promised** he would return at the end of the world. Though he has not yet come back, he will keep his **promise**.

Word Data:

- Strong's: H559, H562, H1696, H8569, G1843, G1860, G1861, G1862, G3670, G4279

(Go back to: [1 Chronicles 17 General Notes](#))

prophet, prophecy, prophesy, seer, prophetess

Definition:

A “prophet” is a man who speaks God’s messages to people. A woman who does this is called a “prophetess.”

- Often prophets warned people to turn away from their sins and obey God.
- A “prophecy” is the message that the prophet speaks. To “prophesy” means to speak God’s messages.
- Often the message of a prophecy was about something that would happen in the future.
- Many prophecies in the Old Testament have already been fulfilled.
- In the Bible the collection of books written by prophets are sometimes referred to as “the prophets.”
- For example the phrase, “the law and the prophets” is a way of referring to all the Hebrew scriptures, which are also known as the “Old Testament.”
- An older term for a prophet was “seer” or “someone who sees.”
- Sometimes the term “seer” refers to a false prophet or to someone who practices divination.

Translation Suggestions:

- The term “prophet” could be translated as “God’s spokesman” or “man who speaks for God” or “man who speaks God’s messages.”
- A “seer” could be translated as, “person who sees visions” or “man who sees the future from God.”
- The term “prophetess” could be translated as, “spokeswoman for God” or “woman who speaks for God” or “woman who speaks God’s messages.”
- Ways to translate “prophecy” could include, “message from God” or “prophet message.”
- The term “prophesy” could be translated as “speak words from God” or “tell God’s message.”
- The figurative expression, “law and the prophets” could also be translated as, “the books of the law and of the prophets” or “everything written about God and his people, including God’s laws and what his prophets preached.” (See: [synecdoche](#))
- When referring to a prophet (or seer) of a false god, it may be necessary to translate this as “false prophet (seer)” or “prophet (seer) of a false god” or “prophet of Baal,” for example.

(See also: Baal, divination, false god, false prophet, [fulfill](#), [law](#), vision)

Bible References:

- 1 Thessalonians 02:14-16
- Acts 03:25
- John 01:43-45
- Malachi 04:4-6
- Matthew 01:23
- Matthew 02:18
- Matthew 05:17
- Psalm 051:01

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **12:12** When the Israelites saw that the Egyptians were dead, they trusted in God and believed that Moses was a **prophet** of God.
- **17:13** God was very angry about what David had done, so he sent the **prophet** Nathan to tell David how evil his sin was.
- **19:01** Throughout the history of the Israelites, God sent them **prophets**. The **prophets** heard messages from God and then told the people God’s messages.
- **19:06** All the people of the entire kingdom of Israel, including the 450 **prophets** of Baal, came to Mount Carmel.

- **19:17** Most of the time, the people did not obey God. They often mistreated the **prophets** and sometimes even killed them.
- **21:09** The **prophet** Isaiah **prophesied** that the Messiah would be born from a virgin.
- **43:05** "This fulfills the **prophecy** made by the **prophet** Joel in which God said, 'In the last days, I will pour out my Spirit.'"
- **43:07** "This fulfills the **prophecy** which says, 'You will not let your Holy One rot in the grave.'"
- **48:12** Moses was a great **prophet** who proclaimed the word of God. But Jesus is the greatest **prophet** of all. He is the Word of God.

Word Data:

- Strong's: H2372, H2374, H4853, H5012, H5013, H5016, H5017, H5029, H5030, H5031, H5197, G2495, G4394, G4395, G4396, G4397, G4398, G5578

(Go back to: [1 Chronicles 17:1](#); [25:1](#); [29:29](#))

prosper, prosperity, prosperous

Definition:

The term “prosper” generally refers to living well and can refer to prospering physically or spiritually. When people or a country are “prosperous,” it means they are wealthy and have all that they need to be successful. They are experiencing “prosperity.”

- The term “prosperous” often refers to success in owning money and property or in producing everything needed for people to live well.
- In the Bible, the term “prosperous” also includes good health and being blessed with children.
- A “prosperous” city or country is one that has many people, good production of food, and businesses that bring in plenty of money.
- The Bible teaches that a person will prosper spiritually when he obeys God’s teachings. He will also experience the blessings of joy and peace. God does not always give people a lot of material wealth, but he will always prosper them spiritually as they follow his ways.
- Depending on the context, the term “prosper” could also be translated as “succeed spiritually” or “be blessed by God” or “experience good things” or “live well.”
- The term “prosperous” could also be translated as “successful” or “wealthy” or “spiritually fruitful.”
- “Prosperity” could also be translated as “well-being” or “wealth” or “success” or “abundant blessings.”

(See also: [bless](#), [fruit](#), [spirit](#))

Bible References:

- 1 Chronicles 29:22-23
- Deuteronomy 23:06
- Job 36:11
- Leviticus 25:26-28
- Psalms 001:3

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H1129, H1767, H1878, H1879, H2428, H2896, H2898, H3027, H3190, H3444, H3498, H3787, H4195, H5381, H6500, H6509, H6555, H6743, H6744, H7230, H7487, H7919, H7951, H7961, H7963, H7965

(Go back to: [1 Chronicles 5:18](#); [5:24](#); [7:2](#); [7:5](#); [7:7](#); [7:9](#); [7:11](#); [7:40](#); [8:40](#); [9:13](#); [10:12](#); [11:22](#); [12:21](#); [12:25](#); [12:28](#); [12:30](#); [22:11](#); [22:13](#); [26:6](#); [26:7](#); [26:8](#); [26:9](#); [26:30](#); [26:31](#); [26:32](#); [28:1](#); [29:23](#))

prostrate, worship

Definition:

To “prostrate” oneself means to lie flat on the ground, usually in submission to a person of authority such as a king or some other powerful person. This same term can also mean to “worship,” referring to the actions of honoring, praising, and obeying God.

- This term often means literally “bow down” or “prostrate oneself” to humbly honor someone.
- We worship God when we serve and honor him, by praising him and obeying him.
- When the Israelites worshiped God, it often included sacrificing an animal on an altar.
- This term can be used both of people who worship Yahweh as the One True God and others who worship false gods.

Translation Suggestions:

- The term “worship” could be translated as “bow down to” or “honor and serve” or “honor and obey.”
- In some contexts, it could also be translated as “humbly praise” or “give honor and praise.”

(See also: [sacrifice](#), [praise](#), honor)

Bible References:

- Colossians 02:18-19
- Deuteronomy 29:18
- Exodus 03:11-12
- Luke 04:07
- Matthew 02:02
- Matthew 02:08

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **13:04** Then God gave them the covenant and said, “I am Yahweh, your God, who saved you from slavery in Egypt. Do not **worship** other gods.”
- **14:02** The Canaanites did not **worship** or obey God. They **worshiped** false gods and did many evil things.
- **17:06** David wanted to build a temple where all the Israelites could **worship** God and offer him sacrifices.
- **18:12** All of the kings and most of the people of the kingdom of Israel **worshiped** idols.
- **25:07** Jesus replied, “Get away from me, Satan! In God’s word he commands his people, ‘**Worship** only the Lord your God and only serve him.’”
- **26:02** On the Sabbath, he (Jesus) went to the place of **worship**.
- **47:01** There they met a woman named Lydia who was a merchant. She loved and **worshiped** God.
- **49:18** God tells you to pray, to study his word, to **worship** him with other Christians, and to tell others what he has done for you.

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H5457, H5647, H6087, H7812, G1391, G1479, G2151, G2318, G2323, G2356, G3000, G3511, G4352, G4353, G4573, G4574, G4576

(Go back to: [1 Chronicles 16:29](#); [21:21](#); [29:20](#))

raise, raised, risen, arise, arose, got up, stir up, stirred up

Definition:

raise, raise up

In general, the word “raise” means to “lift up” or “make higher.”

- The phrase “raise up” sometimes means to cause something to come into being or to appear. It can also mean to appoint someone to do something.
- Sometimes “raise up” means to “restore” or “rebuild.”
- “Raise” has a specialized meaning in the phrase “raise from the dead.” It means to cause a dead person to become alive again.
- Sometimes “raise up” means to “exalt” someone or something.

rise, arise

To “rise” or “arise” means to “go up” or “get up.” The terms “risen,” “rose,” and “arose” express past action.

- When a person gets up to go somewhere, this is sometimes expressed as “he arose and went” or “he rose up and went.”
- If something “arises” it means it “happens” or “begins to happen.”
- Jesus predicted that he would “rise from the dead.” Three days after Jesus died, the angel said, “He has risen!”

Translation Suggestions:

- The term “raise” or “raise up” could be translated as “lift up” or “make higher.”
- To “raise up” could also be translated as to “cause to appear” or to “appoint” or to “bring into existence.”
- To “raise up the strength of your enemies” could be translated as, “cause your enemies to be very strong.”
- The phrase “raise someone from the dead” could be translated as “cause someone to return from death to life” or “cause someone to come back to life.”
- Depending on the context, “raise up” could also be translated as “provide” or to “appoint” or to “cause to have” or “build up” or “rebuild” or “repair.”
- The phrase “arose and went” could be translated as “got up and went” or “went.”
- Depending on the context, the term “arose” could also be translated as “began” or “started up” or “got up” or “stood up.”

(See also: resurrection, [appoint](#), exalt)

Bible References:

- 2 Chronicles 06:41
- 2 Samuel 07:12
- Acts 10:40
- Colossians 03:01
- Deuteronomy 13:1-3
- Jeremiah 06:01
- Judges 02:18
- Luke 07:22
- Matthew 20:19

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **21:14** The prophets foretold that the Messiah would die and that God would also **raise** him from the dead.

- **41:05** "Jesus is not here. He has **risen** from the dead, just like he said he would!"
- **43:07** "Although Jesus died, God **raised** him from the dead. This fulfills the prophecy which says, 'You will not let your Holy One rot in the grave.' We are witnesses to the fact that God **raised** Jesus to life again."
- **44:05** " You killed the author of life, but God **raised** him from the dead. "
- **44:08** Peter answered them, "This man stands before you healed by the power of Jesus the Messiah. You crucified Jesus, but God **raised** him to life again!"
- **48:04** This meant that Satan would kill the Messiah, but God would **raise** him to life again, and then the Messiah will crush the power of Satan forever.
- **49:02** He (Jesus) walked on water, calmed storms, healed many sick people, drove out demons, **raised** the dead to life, and turned five loaves of bread and two small fish into enough food for over 5,000 people.
- **49:12** You must believe that Jesus is the Son of God, that he died on the cross instead of you, and that God **raised** him to life again.

Word Data:

- Strong's: H2210, H2224, H5549, H5782, H5927, H5975, H6965, H6966, H6974, H7613, G305, G386, G393, G450, G1096, G1326, G1453, G1525, G1817, G1825, G1892, G1999, G4891

(Go back to: [1 Chronicles 11:11](#); [11:20](#))

redeem, redeemer, redemption

Definition:

The term “redeem” refers to buying back something or someone that has been previously owned or held captive. A “redeemer” is someone who redeems something or someone.

- God gave laws to the Israelites about how to redeem people or things. For example, someone could redeem a person who was in slavery by paying the price so that the slave could go free. The word “ransom” also refers to this practice.
- If someone’s land had been sold, a relative of that person could “redeem” or “buy back” that land so that it would stay in the family.
- These practices show how God redeems people who are in slavery to sin. When he died on the cross, Jesus paid the full price for people’s sins and redeemed all those who trust in him for salvation. People who have been redeemed by God are set free from sin and its punishment.

Translation Suggestions:

- Depending on the context, the term “redeem” could also be translated as “buy back” or “pay to free (someone)” or “ransom.”
- The term “redemption” could be translated as “ransom” or “freedom payment” or “buying back.”
- The words “ransom” and “redeem” have basically the same meaning, so some languages may have only one term to translate both these words. The word “ransom,” however, can also mean the payment necessary to “redeem” something or someone. The term “redeem” never refers to the actual payment itself.

(See also: free, ransom)

Bible References:

- Colossians 01:13-14
- Ephesians 01:7-8
- Ephesians 05:16
- Galatians 03:13-14
- Galatians 04:05
- Luke 02:38
- Ruth 02:20

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H1350, H1353, H6299, H6302, H6304, H6306, H6561, H7069, G59, G629, G1805, G3084, G3085

(Go back to: [1 Chronicles 17:21](#); [21:24](#))

reign, rule

Definition:

The term to “reign” means to rule over the people of a particular country or kingdom. The reign of a king is the time period during which he is ruling.

- The term “reign” is also used to refer to God reigning as king over the entire world.
- God allowed human kings to reign over Israel after the people rejected him as their king.
- When Jesus Christ returns, he will openly reign as king over the whole world, and Christians will reign with Him.
- This term could also be translated as “absolute rule” or “rule as king.”

(See also: [kingdom](#))

Bible References:

- 2 Timothy 02:11-13
- Genesis 36:34-36
- Luke 01:30-33
- Luke 19:26-27
- Matthew 02:22-23

Word Data:

- Strong's: H3427, H4427, H4437, H4438, H4467, H4468, H4475, H4791, H4910, H6113, H7287, H7786, G757, G936, G2231, G4821

(Go back to: [1 Chronicles 1:44](#); [1:45](#); [1:46](#); [1:47](#); [1:48](#); [1:49](#); [1:50](#); [3:4](#); [11:10](#); [12:31](#); [12:38](#); [17:14](#); [18:14](#); [19:1](#); [23:1](#); [28:4](#); [29:22](#); [29:28](#))

remnant

Definition:

The term “remnant” literally refers to people or things that are “remaining” or “left over” from a larger amount or group.

- Often a “remnant” refers to people who survive a life-threatening situation or who remain faithful to God while undergoing persecution.
- Isaiah referred to a group of Jews as being a remnant who would survive attacks from outsiders and live to return to the Promised Land in Canaan.
- Paul talks about there being a “remnant” of people who were chosen by God to receive his grace.
- The term “remnant” implies that there were other people who did not remain faithful or who did not survive or who were not chosen.

Translation Suggestions:

- A phrase such as “the remnant of this people” could be translated as “the rest of these people” or “the people who remain faithful” or “the people who are left.”
- The “whole remnant of people” could be translated by “all the rest of the people” or “the remaining people.”

Bible References:

- Acts 15:17
- Amos 09:12
- Ezekiel 06:8-10
- Genesis 45:07
- Isaiah 11:11
- Micah 04:6-8

Word Data:

- Strong's: H3498, H3499, H5629, H6413, H7604, H7605, H7611, H8281, H8300, G2640, G3005, G3062

(Go back to: [1 Chronicles 4:43](#); [12:38](#))

rest, rested, restless

Definition:

The term “rest” generally means to stop working in order to relax or regain strength. However, the term can refer to various kinds of rest besides only rest from working. For example, a person might rest from fighting, rest from speaking, or rest from moving, etc.

- An object can be said to be “resting” somewhere, which means it is “standing” or “sitting” there.
- A boat that “comes to rest” somewhere has “stopped” or “landed” there.
- When a person or animals rest, they are sitting or lying down in order to refresh themselves.
- God commanded the Israelites to rest on the seventh day of the week. This day of not working was called the “Sabbath” day.
- To rest an object on something means to “place” or “put” it there.

Translation Suggestions:

- Depending on the context, to “rest (oneself)” could also be translated as to “stop working” or to “refresh himself” or to “stop carrying burdens.”
- To “rest” an object on something could be translated as to “place” or “put” or “set” that object on something.
- When Jesus said, “I will give you rest,” this could also be translated as “I will cause you to stop carrying your burden” or “I will help you be at peace” or “I will empower you to relax and trust in me.”
- God said, “they will not enter my rest,” and this statement could be translated as “they will not experience my blessings of rest” or “they will not experience the joy and peace that comes from trusting in me.”
- The term “the rest” could be translated as “those that remain” or “all the other people” or “everything that is left.”

(See also: [remnant](#), [Sabbath](#))

Bible References:

- 2 Chronicles 06:41
- Genesis 02:03
- Jeremiah 06:16-19
- Matthew 11:29
- Revelation 14:11

Word Data:

- Strong's: H14, H1824, H1826, H2308, H3498, H3499, H4494, H4496, H4771, H5117, H5118, H5183, H5564, H6314, H7258, H7280, H7599, H7604, H7605, H7606, H7611, H7673, H7677, H7901, H7931, H7954, H8058, H8172, H8252, H8300, G372, G373, G425, G1515, G1879, G1954, G1981, G2270, G2663, G2664, G2681, G2838, G3062, G4520

(Go back to: [1 Chronicles 22:9](#); [22:18](#); [23:25](#); [28:2](#))

restore, restoration

Definition:

The terms “restore” and “restoration” refer to causing something to return to its original place or condition.

- When a diseased body part is restored, this means it has been “healed.”
- A broken relationship that is restored has been “reconciled.” God restores sinful people and brings them back to himself.
- If people have been restored to their home country, they have been “brought back” or “returned” to that country.

Translation Suggestions:

- Depending on the context, ways to translate “restore” could include “renew” or “repay” or “return” or “heal” or “bring back.”
- Other expressions for this term could be “make new” or “make like new again.”
- When property is “restored,” it has been “repaired” or “replaced” or “given back” to its owner.
- Depending on the context, “restoration” could be translated as “renewal” or “healing” or “reconciliation.”

Bible References:

- 2 Kings 05:10
- Acts 03:21
- Acts 15:15-18
- Isaiah 49:5-6
- Jeremiah 15:19-21
- Lamentations 05:22
- Leviticus 06:5-7
- Luke 19:08
- Matthew 12:13
- Psalm 080:1-3

Word Data:

- Strong's: H7725, H7999, H8421, G600, G2675

(Go back to: [1 Chronicles 21:12](#))

return

Definition:

The term “return” means to go back or to give something back.

- To “return to” something means to start doing that activity again. To “return to” a place or person means to go back to that place or person again.
- When the Israelites returned to their worship of idols, they were starting to worship them again.
- When they returned to Yahweh, they repented and were worshiping Yahweh again.
- To return land or things that were taken or received from someone else means to give that property back to the person it belongs to.

(See also: turn)

Bible References:

Word Data:

- Strong's: H5437, H7725, H7729, H8421, H8666, G344, G360, G390, G1877, G1880, G1994, G5290

(Go back to: [1 Chronicles 19:5](#); [20:3](#); [21:20](#); [21:27](#))

Sabbath

Definition:

The term “Sabbath” refers to the seventh day of the week, which God commanded the Israelites to set apart as a day of rest and doing no work.

- After God finished creating the world in six days, he rested on the seventh day. In the same way, God commanded the Israelites to set aside the seventh day as a special day to rest and worship him.
- The command to “keep the Sabbath holy” is one of the ten commandments that God wrote on the stone tablets that he gave Moses for the Israelites.
- Following the Jewish system of counting days, the Sabbath begins on Friday at sundown and lasts until Saturday at sundown.
- Sometimes in the Bible the Sabbath is called “Sabbath day” rather than only the Sabbath.

Translation Suggestions:

- This could also be translated as “resting day” or “day for resting” or “day of not working” or “God’s day of rest.”
- Some translations capitalize this term to show that it is a special day, as in “Sabbath Day” or “Resting Day.”
- Consider how this term is translated in a local or national language.

(See also: [How to Translate Unknowns](#))

(See also: [rest](#))

Bible References:

- 2 Chronicles 31:2-3
- Acts 13:26-27
- Exodus 31:14
- Isaiah 56:6-7
- Lamentations 02:06
- Leviticus 19:03
- Luke 13:14
- Mark 02:27
- Matthew 12:02
- Nehemiah 10:32-33

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **13:05** “Always be sure to keep the **Sabbath day** holy. That is, do all your work in six days, for the seventh day is a day for you to rest and to honor me.”
- **26:02** Jesus went to the town of Nazareth where he had lived during his childhood. On the **Sabbath**, he went to the place of worship.
- **41:03** The day after Jesus was buried was a **Sabbath** day, and the Jews were not permitted to go to the tomb on that day.

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H4868, H7676, H7677, G4315, G4521

(Go back to: [1 Chronicles 9:32](#))

sackcloth

Definition:

Sackcloth was a coarse, scratchy type of cloth that was made from goat hair or camel hair.

- A person who wore clothing made from it would be uncomfortable. Sackcloth was worn to show mourning, grief, or humble repentance.
- The phrase “sackcloth and ashes” was a common term referring to a traditional expression of grief and repentance.

Translation Suggestions:

- This term could also be translated as “coarse cloth from animal hair” or “clothes made of goat hair” or “rough, scratchy clothing.”
- Another way to translate this term could be “rough, scratchy mourning clothes.”
- The phrase “sit in sackcloth and ashes” could be translated as “show mourning and humility by wearing scratchy cloth and sitting in ashes.”

(See also: [How to Translate Unknowns](#))

(See also: ash, [camel](#), goat, humble, [mourn](#), repent, sign)

Bible References:

- 2 Samuel 03:31
- Genesis 37:34
- Joel 01:8-10
- Jonah 03:05
- Luke 10:13
- Matthew 11:21

Word Data:

- Strong's: H8242, G4526

(Go back to: [1 Chronicles 21:16](#))

sacrifice, sacrifices, offering

Definition:

In the Bible, the terms “sacrifice” and “offering” refer to special gifts given to God as an act of worshiping him. People also offered sacrifices to false gods.

sacrifice

- Sacrifices to God often involved the killing of an animal.
- Only the sacrifice of Jesus, God's perfect, sinless Son, can completely cleanse people from sin animal sacrifices could never do that.

offering

- The word “offering” generally refers to anything that is offered or given. The term “sacrifice” refers to something that is given or done at great cost to the giver.
- Offerings to God were specific things that he commanded the Israelites to give in order to express devotion and obedience to him.
- The names of the different offerings, such as “burnt offering” and “peace offering,” indicated what kind of offering was being given.

Translation Suggestions

- The term “offering” could also be translated as “a gift to God” or “something given to God” or “something valuable that is presented to God.”
- Depending on the context, the term “sacrifice” could also be translated as “something valuable given in worship” or “a special animal killed and presented to God.”
- The action to “sacrifice” could be translated as to “give up something valuable” or to “kill an animal and give it to God.”
- Another way to translate “present yourself as a living sacrifice” could be “as you live your life, offer yourself to God as completely as an animal is offered on an altar.”

(See also: [altar](#), [burnt offering](#), [drink offering](#), false god, fellowship offering, [freewill offering](#) peace offering, [priest](#), sin offering, [worship](#))

Bible References:

- 2 Timothy 04:06
- Acts 07:42
- Acts 21:25
- Genesis 04:3-5
- James 02:21-24
- Mark 01:43-44
- Mark 14:12
- Matthew 05:23

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **03:14** After Noah got off the boat, he built an altar and **sacrificed** some of each kind of animal which could be used for a **sacrifice**. God was happy with the **sacrifice** and blessed Noah and his family.
- **05:06** “Take Isaac, your only son, and kill him as a **sacrifice** to me.” Again Abraham obeyed God and prepared to **sacrifice** his son.
- **05:09** God had provided the ram to be the **sacrifice** instead of Isaac.

- **13:09** Anyone who disobeyed God's law could bring an animal to the Tent of Meeting as a **sacrifice** to God. A priest would kill the animal and burn it on the altar. The blood of the animal that was **sacrificed** covered the person's sin and made that person clean in God's sight.
- **17:06** David wanted to build a temple where all the Israelites could worship God and offer him **sacrifices**.
- **48:06** Jesus is the Great High Priest. Unlike other priests, he offered himself as the only **sacrifice** that could take away the sin of all the people in the world.
- **48:08** But God provided Jesus, the Lamb of God, as a **sacrifice** to die in our place.
- **49:11** Because Jesus **sacrificed** himself, God can forgive any sin, even terrible sins.

Word Data:

- Strong's: H801, H817, H819, H1685, H1890, H1974, H2076, H2077, H2281, H2282, H2398, H2401, H2402, H2403, H2409, H3632, H4394, H4503, H4504, H5066, H5068, H5071, H5257, H5258, H5261, H5262, H5927, H5928, H5930, H6453, H6944, H6999, H7133, H7311, H8002, H8426, H8548, H8573, H8641, G266, G334, G1049, G1435, G1494, G2378, G2380, G3646, G4376, G5485

(Go back to: [1 Chronicles 21:23](#); [23:29](#); [29:21](#))

scribe

Definition:

Scribes were officials who were responsible for writing or copying important government or religious documents by hand. Another name for a Jewish scribe was “expert in Jewish law.”

- Scribes were responsible for copying and preserving the books of the Old Testament.
- They also copied, preserved, and interpreted religious opinions and commentary on the law of God.
- At times, scribes were important government officials.
- Important biblical scribes include Baruch and Ezra.
- In the New Testament, the term translated “scribes” was also translated as “teachers of the Law.”
- In the New Testament, scribes were usually part of the religious group called the “Pharisees,” and the two groups were frequently mentioned together.

(See also: [law](#), Pharisee)

Bible References:

- Acts 04:05
- Luke 07:29-30
- Luke 20:47
- Mark 01:22
- Mark 02:16
- Matthew 05:19-20
- Matthew 07:28
- Matthew 12:38
- Matthew 13:52

Word Data:

- Strong's: H5608, H5613, H7083, G1122

(Go back to: [1 Chronicles 2:55](#); [18:16](#); [24:6](#))

seed, semen

Definition:

A "seed" is the part of a plant that gets planted in the ground to reproduce more of the same kind of plant. However, in the Bible the term "seed" is used figuratively to mean several different things.

- The term "seed" is used figuratively and euphemistically to refer to the tiny cells inside a man that combine with cells of a woman to cause a baby to grow inside her. A collection of these cells is called "semen."
- Related to this, "seed" is also used to refer to a person's offspring or descendants.
- This word often has a plural meaning, referring to more than one seed grain or more than one descendant.
- In the parable of the farmer planting seeds, Jesus compared his seeds to the Word of God, which is planted in people's hearts in order to produce good spiritual fruit.
- The apostle Paul also uses the term "seed" to refer to the Word of God.

Translation Suggestions:

- For a literal seed, it is best to use the literal term for "seed" that is used in the target language for what a farmer plants in his field.
- The literal term should also be used in contexts where it refers figuratively to God's Word.
- For the figurative use that refers to people who are of the same family line, it may be more clear to use the word "descendant" or "descendants" instead of "seed." Some languages may have a word that means "children and grandchildren."
- For a man or woman's "seed," consider how the target expresses this in a way that will not offend or embarrass people. (See: [euphemism](#))

(See also: descendant, offspring)

Bible References:

- 1 Kings 18:32
- Genesis 01:11
- Jeremiah 02:21
- Matthew 13:08

Word Data:

- Strong's: H2232, H2233, H3610, H6507, G4615, G4687, G4690, G4701, G4703

(Go back to: [1 Chronicles 16:13](#); [17:11](#))

seek, search, look for

Definition:

The term "seek" means to look for something or someone. In the past tense, the verb is "sought." This term is sometimes used figuratively, meaning to "attempt" or "make an effort" to do something or to ask for something.

- To "seek" or "look for" an opportunity to do something can mean to "try to find a time" to do it.
- To "seek Yahweh" means to "spend time and energy getting to know Yahweh and learning to obey him."
- To "seek protection" means to "try to find a person or place that will protect you from danger."
- To "seek justice" means to "make an effort to see that people are treated justly or fairly."
- To "seek the truth" means to "make an effort to find out what the truth is."
- To "seek favor" means to "urgently ask for favor" or to "do things to cause someone to help you."

(See also: just, true)

Bible References:

- 1 Chronicles 10:14
- Acts 17:26-27
- Hebrews 11:06
- Luke 11:09
- Psalms 027:08

Word Data:

- Strong's: H579, H1156, H1239, H1243, H1245, H1556, H1875, H2470, H2603, H2658, H2664, H3289, H7125, H7592, H7836, H8446, G327, G1567, G1934, G2052, G2212

(Go back to: [1 Chronicles 4:39](#); [10:13](#); [10:14](#); [13:3](#); [14:8](#); [15:13](#); [16:10](#); [16:11](#); [21:3](#); [21:30](#); [22:19](#); [26:31](#); [28:9](#))

servant, serve, slave, worker, young man, young women

Definition:

The term "serve" generally means to do work, and the concept can be applied in a wide variety of contexts. The term refers to a person who works for (or obeys) another person, either by choice or by force. In the Bible, any of the following people might be called a "servant:" a slave, a young female worker, a young male worker, someone who obeys God, and others. In biblical times, there was less of a difference between a "servant" and a "slave" than there is today. Both servants and slaves were an important part of a household, and many servants were treated almost like members of the family. Sometimes a servant would choose to become a lifetime servant to his master.

- A slave was a kind of servant who was the property of the person he worked for. The person who bought a slave was called his "owner" or "master." Some masters treated their slaves very cruelly, while other masters treated their slaves very well, as a servant who was a valued member of the household.
- In ancient times, some people willingly became slaves to a person they owed money to in order to pay off their debt to that person.
- In the context of a person serving guests, this term means "care for" or "serve food to" or "provide food for." When Jesus told the disciples to "serve" the fish to the people, this could be translated as, "distribute" or "hand out" or "give."
- In the Bible, the phrase "I am your servant" was used as a sign of respect and service to a person of higher rank, such as a king. It did not mean that the person speaking was an actual servant.
- The term "serve" can also be translated as "minister to" or "work for" or "take care of" or "obey," depending on the context.
- In the Old Testament, God's prophets and other people who worshiped God were often referred to as his "servants."
- To "serve God" can be translated as to "worship and obey God" or to "do the work that God has commanded."
- In the New Testament, people who obeyed God through faith in Christ were often called his "servants."
- To "serve tables" means to bring food to people who are sitting at tables, or more generally, to "distribute food."
- People who teach others about God are said to serve both God and the ones they are teaching.
- The apostle Paul wrote to the Corinthian Christians about how they used to "serve" the old covenant. This refers to obeying the laws of Moses. Now they "serve" the new covenant. That is, because of Jesus' sacrifice on the cross, believers in Jesus are enabled by the Holy Spirit to please God and live holy lives.
- Paul talks about their actions in terms of their "service" to either the old or new covenant. This could be translated as "serving" or "obeying" or "devotion to."

(See also: commit, enslave, household, [lord](#), obey, righteous, [covenant](#), law,)

Bible References:

- Acts 04:29-31
- Acts 10:7-8
- Colossians 01:7-8
- Colossians 03:22-25
- Genesis 21:10-11
- Luke 12:47-48
- Mark 09:33-35
- Matthew 10:24-25
- Matthew 13:27-28
- 2 Timothy 02:3-5
- Acts 06:2-4
- Genesis 25:23
- Luke 04:8

- Luke 12:37-38
- Luke 22:26-27
- Mark 08:7-10
- Matthew 04:10-11
- Matthew 06:24

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **06:01** When Abraham was very old and his son, Isaac, had grown to be a man, Abraham sent one of his **servants** back to the land where his relatives lived to find a wife for his son, Isaac.
- **08:04** The **slave** traders sold Joseph as a **slave** to a wealthy government official.
- **09:13** "I (God) will send you (Moses) to Pharaoh so that you can bring the Israelites out of their **slavery** in Egypt."
- **19:10** Then Elijah prayed, "O Yahweh, God of Abraham, Isaac, and Jacob, show us today that you are the God of Israel and that I am your **servant**."
- **29:03** "Since the **servant** could not pay the debt, the king said, 'Sell this man and his family as **slaves** to make payment on his debt.'"
- **35:06** "All my father's **servants** have plenty to eat, and yet here I am starving."
- **47:04** The **slave** girl kept yelling as they walked, "These men are servants of the Most High God."
- **50:04** Jesus also said, "A **servant** is not greater than his master."

Word Data:

- (Servant) Strong's: H5288, H5647, H5649, H5650, H5657, H7916, H8198, H8334, G1249, G1401, G1402, G2324, G3407, G3411, G3610, G3816, G4983, G5257
- (Serve) H327, H3547, H4929, H4931, H5647, H5656, H5673, H5975, H6213, H6399, H6402, H6440, H6633, H6635, H7272, H8104, H8120, H8199, H8278, H8334, G1247, G1248, G1398, G1402, G1438, G1983, G2064, G2212, G2323, G2999, G3000, G3009, G4337, G4342, G4754, G5087, G5256

(Go back to: [1 Chronicles 2:34; 2:35; 6:32; 6:49; 12:28; 16:4; 16:13; 17:4; 17:7; 17:17; 17:18; 17:19; 17:23; 17:24; 17:25; 17:26; 17:27; 18:2; 18:6; 18:7; 18:13; 19:2; 19:3; 19:4; 19:19; 20:8; 21:3; 21:8; 22:5; 23:24; 23:26; 23:28; 23:32; 24:19; 25:1; 25:6; 26:8; 27:26; 29:1; 29:7](#))

set apart

Definition:

The term “set apart” means separated from something to fulfill a certain purpose. Also, to “set apart” some person or thing means to make it “set apart.”

- The Israelites were set apart for service to God.
- The Holy Spirit commanded the Christians at Antioch to set apart Paul and Barnabas for the work God wanted them to do.
- A believer who is “set apart” for service to God is “dedicated to” fulfilling God’s will.
- One meaning of the term “holy” is to be set apart as belonging to God and being separated from the sinful ways of the world.
- To “sanctify” someone means to set apart that person for God’s service.

Translation Suggestions:

- Ways to translate to “set apart” could include to “specially select” or to “separate from among you” or to “take aside to do a special task.”
- To “be set apart” could be translated as “be separated (from)” or “be specially appointed (for).”

(See also: [holy](#), sanctify, [appoint](#))

Bible References:

- Ephesians 03:17-19
- Exodus 31:12-15
- Judges 17:12
- Numbers 03:11-13
- Philippians 01:1-2
- Romans 01:01

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H2764, H4390, H5674, H6918, H6942, H6944, G37, G38, G40, G873

(Go back to: [1 Chronicles 15:14](#); [23:13](#); [25:1](#))

shame, ashamed, disgrace, humiliate, reproach

Definition:

The term “shame” refers to the painful feeling of being disgraced or humiliated that a person feels when they do something that others consider dishonorable or improper.

- Something that is “shameful” is “improper” or “dishonorable.”
- The term “ashamed” describes how a person feels when he has done something improper or dishonorable.
- The term “humiliate” means to cause someone to feel shamed or disgraced, usually publicly. The act of shaming someone is called “humiliation.”
- To “reproach” someone means to criticize or disapprove of that person’s character or behavior.
- The phrase “put to shame” means to defeat people or expose their actions so that they feel ashamed of themselves. The prophet Isaiah said that those who make and worship idols will be put to shame.
- The term “disgraceful” can be used to describe a sinful act or the person who did it. When a person does something sinful, it can cause him to be in a state of disgrace or dishonor.
- Sometimes a person who is doing good things is treated in a way that causes him disgrace or shame. For example, when Jesus was killed on a cross, this was a disgraceful way to die. Jesus had done nothing wrong to deserve this disgrace.
- When God humbles someone, it means that he is causing a prideful person to experience failure to help him overcome his pride. This is different from humiliating someone, which is often done in order to hurt that person.
- Saying that a person is “above reproach” or “beyond reproach” or “without reproach” means that this person behaves in a God-honoring way and there is little or nothing that could be said in criticism of him.

Translation Suggestions

- Ways to translate “disgrace” could include “shame” or “dishonor.”
- Ways to translate “disgraceful” could include “shameful” or “dishonoring.”
- To “humiliate” could also be translated as to “shame” or to “cause to feel shame” or to “embarrass.”
- Depending on the context, ways to translate “humiliation” could include “shame” or “degrading” or “disgrace.”
- The word “reproach” could also be translated as “accusation” or “shame” or “disgrace.”
- To “reproach” could also be translated as to “rebuke” or to “accuse” or to “criticize,” depending on the context.

(See also: dishonor, accuse, rebuke, false god, humble, Isaiah, [worship](#))

Bible References:

- 1 Peter 03:15-17
- 2 Kings 02:17
- 2 Samuel 13:13
- Luke 20:11
- Mark 08:38
- Mark 12:4-5
- 1 Timothy 03:07
- Genesis 34:07
- Hebrews 11:26
- Lamentations 02:1-2
- Psalms 022:06
- Deuteronomy 21:14
- Ezra 09:05
- Proverbs 25:7-8

- Psalms 006:8-10
- Psalms 123:03
- 1 Timothy 05:7-8
- 1 Timothy 06:13-14
- Jeremiah 15:15-16
- Job 16:9-10
- Proverbs 18:03

Word Data:

- Strong's: H937, H954, H955, H1317, H1322, H1421, H1442, H1984, H2490, H2616, H2617, H2659, H2778, H2781, H2865, H3001, H3637, H3639, H3640, H3971, H5007, H5034, H5039, H6030, H6031, H6172, H6256, H7022, H7034, H7036, H7043, H7511, H7817, H8103, H8213, H8216, H8217, H8589, G149, G152, G153, G410, G422, G423, G808, G818, G819, G821, G1788, G1791, G1870, G2617, G3059, G3679, G3680, G3681, G3856, G5014, G5195, G5196, G5484

(Go back to: [1 Chronicles 19:5](#))

silver

Definition:

Silver is a shiny, gray precious metal used to make coins, jewelry, containers, and ornaments.

- The various containers that are made include silver cups and bowls, and other things used for cooking, eating, or serving.
- Silver and gold were used in the building of the tabernacle and the temple. The temple in Jerusalem had containers made of silver.
- In Bible times, a shekel was a unit of weight, and a purchase was often priced at a certain number of shekels of silver. By New Testament times there were silver coins of various weights that were measured in shekels.
- Joseph's brothers sold him as a slave for twenty shekels of silver.
- Judas was paid thirty silver coins for betraying Jesus.

(See also: tabernacle, [temple](#))

Bible References:

- 1 Chronicles 18:9-11
- 1 Samuel 02:36
- 2 Kings 25:13-15
- Acts 03:06
- Matthew 26:15

Word Data:

- Strong's: H3701, H3702, H7192, G693, G694, G695, G696, G1406

(Go back to: [1 Chronicles 18:10](#); [18:11](#); [19:6](#); [21:22](#); [21:24](#); [22:14](#); [28:14](#); [28:15](#); [28:16](#); [28:17](#); [29:2](#); [29:3](#); [29:4](#); [29:5](#); [29:7](#))

sin, sinful, sinner, sinning

Definition:

The term “sin” refers to actions, thoughts, and words that are against God’s will and laws. Sin can also refer to not doing something that God wants us to do.

- Sin includes anything we do that does not obey or please God, even things that other people don’t know about.
- Thoughts and actions that disobey God’s will are called “sinful.”
- Because Adam sinned, all human beings are born with a “sinful nature,” a nature that controls them and causes them to sin.
- A “sinner” is someone who sins, so every human being is a sinner.
- Sometimes the word “sinners” was used by religious people like the Pharisees to refer to people who didn’t keep the law as well as the Pharisees thought they should.
- The term “sinner” was also used for people who were considered to be worse sinners than other people. For example, this label was given to tax collectors and prostitutes.

Translation Suggestions:

- The term “sin” could be translated with a word or phrase that means “disobedience to God” or “going against God’s will” or “evil behavior and thoughts” or “wrongdoing.”
- To “sin” could also be translated as to “disobey God” or to “do wrong.”
- Depending on the context “sinful” could be translated as “full of wrongdoing” or “wicked” or “immoral” or “evil” or “rebellious against God.”
- Depending on the context the term “sinner” could be translated with a word or phrase that means, “person who sins” or “person who does wrong things” or “person who disobeys God” or “person who disobeys the law.”
- The term “sinners” could be translated by a word or phrase that means “very sinful people” or “people considered to be very sinful” or “immoral people.”
- Ways to translate “tax collectors and sinners” could include “people who collect money for the government, and other very sinful people” or “very sinful people, including (even) tax collectors.”
- Make sure the translation of this term can include sinful behavior and thoughts, even those that other people don’t see or know about.
- The term “sin” should be general, and different from the terms for “wickedness” and “evil.”

(See also: disobey, [evil](#), flesh, tax collector)

Bible References:

- 1 Chronicles 09:1-3
- 1 John 01:10
- 1 John 02:02
- 2 Samuel 07:12-14
- Acts 03:19
- Daniel 09:24
- Genesis 04:07
- Hebrews 12:02
- Isaiah 53:11
- Jeremiah 18:23
- Leviticus 04:14
- Luke 15:18
- Matthew 12:31
- Romans 06:23

- Romans 08:04

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **03:15** God said, "I promise I will never again curse the ground because of the evil things people do, or destroy the world by causing a flood, even though people are **sinful** from the time they are children."
- **13:12** God was very angry with them because of their **sin** and planned to destroy them.
- **20:01** The kingdoms of Israel and Judah both **sinned** against God. They broke the covenant that God made with them at Sinai.
- **21:13** The prophets also said that the Messiah would be perfect, having no **sin**. He would die to receive the punishment for other people's **sin**.
- **35:01** One day, Jesus was teaching many tax collectors and other **sinner**s who had gathered to hear him.
- **38:05** Then Jesus took a cup and said, "Drink this. It is my blood of the New Covenant that is poured out for the forgiveness of **sins**."
- **43:11** Peter answered them, "Every one of you should repent and be baptized in the name of Jesus Christ so that God will forgive your **sins**."
- **48:08** We all deserve to die for our **sins**!
- **49:17** Even though you are a Christian, you will still be tempted to **sin**. But God is faithful and says that if you confess your **sins**, he will forgive you. He will give you strength to fight against **sin**.

Word Data:

- Strong's: H817, H819, H2398, H2399, H2400, H2401, H2402, H2403, H2408, H2409, H5771, H6588, H7683, H7686, G264, G265, G266, G268, G361, G3781, G3900, G4258

(Go back to: [1 Chronicles 21 General Notes](#); [21:8](#); [21:17](#))

Solomon

Facts:

Solomon was one of King David's sons. His mother was Bathsheba.

- When Solomon became king, God told him to ask for anything he wanted. So Solomon asked for wisdom to rule the people justly and well. God was pleased with Solomon's request and gave him both wisdom and much wealth.
- Solomon is also well known for having a magnificent temple built in Jerusalem.
- Although Solomon ruled wisely in the first years of his reign, later on he foolishly married many foreign women and started worshiping their gods.
- Because of Solomon's unfaithfulness, after his death God divided the Israelites into two kingdoms, Israel and Judah. These kingdoms often fought against each other.

(Translation suggestions: [How to Translate Names](#))

(See also: Bathsheba, [David](#), [Israel](#), Judah, kingdom of Israel, [temple](#))

Bible References:

- Acts 07:47-50
- Luke 12:27
- Matthew 01:7-8
- Matthew 06:29
- Matthew 12:42

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **17:14** Later, David and Bathsheba had another son, and they named him **Solomon**.
- **18:01** After many years, David died, and his son **Solomon** began to rule. God spoke to **Solomon** and asked him what he wanted most. When **Solomon** asked for wisdom, God was pleased and made him the wisest man in the world. **Solomon** learned many things and was a very wise judge. God also made him very wealthy.
- **18:02** In Jerusalem, **Solomon** built the Temple for which his father David had planned and gathered materials.
- **18:03** But **Solomon** loved women from other countries....When **Solomon** was old, he also worshiped their gods.
- **18:04** God was angry with **Solomon** and, as a punishment for **Solomon's** unfaithfulness, he promised to divide the nation of Israel into two kingdoms after **Solomon's** death.

Word Data:

- Strong's: H8010, G4672

(Go back to: [1 Chronicles 3:10](#); [6:10](#); [6:32](#); [18:8](#); [22:5](#); [22:9](#); [23:1](#); [28:6](#); [28:9](#); [29:1](#); [29:23](#); [29:24](#); [29:25](#); [29:28](#))

son

Definition:

The male offspring of a man and a woman is called their “son” for his entire life. He is also called a son of that man and a son of that woman. An “adopted son” is a male who has been legally placed into the position of being a son.

- In the Bible, the phrase “son of” can be used to identify a person's father, mother, or an ancestor from some previous generation. This phrase is used in genealogies and many other places.
- Using “son of” to give the name of the father frequently helps distinguish people who have the same name. For example, “Azariah son of Zadok” and “Azariah son of Nathan” in 1 Kings 4, and “Azariah son of Amaziah” in 2 Kings 15 are three different men.

Translation Suggestions:

- In most occurrences of this term, it is best to translate “son” by the literal term in the language that is used to refer to a son.
- When translating the term “Son of God,” the project language’s common term for “son” should be used.
- Sometimes “sons” can be translated as “children,” when both males and females are being referred to. For example, “sons of God” could be translated as “children of God” since this expression also includes girls and women.

(See also: Azariah, descendant, [ancestor](#), [firstborn](#), Son of God, sons of God)

Bible References:

- 1 Chronicles 18:15
- 1 Kings 13:02
- 1 Thessalonians 05:05
- Galatians 04:07
- Hosea 11:01
- Isaiah 09:06
- Matthew 03:17
- Matthew 05:09
- Matthew 08:12
- Nehemiah 10:28

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **04:08** God spoke to Abram and promised again that he would have a **son** and as many descendants as the stars in the sky.
- **04:09** God said, “I will give you a **son** from your own body.”
- **05:05** About a year later, when Abraham was 100 years old and Sarah was 90, Sarah gave birth to Abraham’s **son**.
- **05:08** When they reached the place of sacrifice, Abraham tied up his **son** Isaac and laid him on an altar. He was about to kill his **son** when God said, “Stop! Do not hurt the boy! Now I know that you fear me because you did not keep your only **son** from me.”
- **09:07** When she saw the baby, she took him as her own **son**.
- **11:06** God killed every one of the Egyptians’ firstborn **sons**.
- **18:01** After many years, David died, and his **son** Solomon began to rule.
- **26:04** “Is this the **son** of Joseph?” they said.

Word Data:

• Strong's: H1060, H1121, H1123, H1248, H3173, H3206, H3211, H4497, H5209, H5220, G3816, G5043, G5207

(Go back to: 1 Chronicles 1:5; 1:6; 1:7; 1:8; 1:9; 1:17; 1:19; 1:23; 1:28; 1:31; 1:32; 1:33; 1:34; 1:35; 1:36; 1:37; 1:38; 1:39; 1:40; 1:41; 1:42; 1:43; 1:44; 1:46; 1:49; 2:1; 2:3; 2:4; 2:5; 2:6; 2:7; 2:8; 2:9; 2:10; 2:16; 2:18; 2:21; 2:23; 2:25; 2:27; 2:28; 2:30; 2:31; 2:32; 2:33; 2:34; 2:42; 2:43; 2:45; 2:47; 2:50; 2:52; 2:54; 3:1; 3:2; 3:9; 3:10; 3:11; 3:12; 3:13; 3:14; 3:15; 3:16; 3:17; 3:19; 3:21; 3:22; 3:23; 3:24; 4:1; 4:2; 4:4; 4:6; 4:7; 4:8; 4:13; 4:15; 4:16; 4:17; 4:18; 4:19; 4:20; 4:21; 4:24; 4:25; 4:26; 4:27; 4:34; 4:35; 4:37; 4:42; 5:1; 5:3; 5:4; 5:5; 5:6; 5:8; 5:11; 5:14; 5:15; 5:18; 5:23; 6:1; 6:2; 6:3; 6:16; 6:17; 6:18; 6:19; 6:20; 6:21; 6:22; 6:23; 6:24; 6:25; 6:26; 6:27; 6:28; 6:29; 6:30; 6:33; 6:34; 6:35; 6:36; 6:37; 6:38; 6:39; 6:40; 6:41; 6:42; 6:43; 6:44; 6:45; 6:46; 6:47; 6:49; 6:50; 6:51; 6:52; 6:53; 6:54; 6:56; 6:57; 6:61; 6:62; 6:63; 6:64; 6:65; 6:66; 6:70; 6:71; 6:77; 7:1; 7:2; 7:3; 7:4; 7:7; 7:8; 7:10; 7:11; 7:12; 7:13; 7:14; 7:16; 7:17; 7:19; 7:20; 7:21; 7:23; 7:25; 7:26; 7:27; 7:29; 7:30; 7:31; 7:33; 7:34; 7:35; 7:36; 7:38; 7:39; 7:40; 8:3; 8:6; 8:10; 8:12; 8:16; 8:18; 8:21; 8:25; 8:27; 8:30; 8:34; 8:35; 8:37; 8:38; 8:39; 8:40; 9:3; 9:4; 9:5; 9:6; 9:7; 9:8; 9:11; 9:12; 9:14; 9:15; 9:16; 9:18; 9:19; 9:20; 9:21; 9:23; 9:30; 9:32; 9:36; 9:40; 9:41; 9:43; 9:44; 10:2; 10:6; 10:7; 10:8; 10:12; 10:14; 11:6; 11:11; 11:12; 11:22; 11:24; 11:26; 11:28; 11:30; 11:31; 11:34; 11:35; 11:37; 11:38; 11:39; 11:41; 11:42; 11:43; 11:44; 11:45; 11:46; 12:1; 12:3; 12:7; 12:14; 12:16; 12:18; 12:24; 12:25; 12:26; 12:29; 12:30; 12:32; 14:3; 15:4; 15:5; 15:6; 15:7; 15:8; 15:9; 15:10; 15:15; 15:17; 16:13; 16:38; 16:42; 17:9; 17:11; 17:13; 18:10; 18:11; 18:12; 18:15; 18:16; 18:17; 19:1; 19:2; 19:3; 19:6; 19:7; 19:9; 19:11; 19:12; 19:15; 19:19; 20:1; 20:3; 20:5; 20:7; 21:20; 22:5; 22:6; 22:7; 22:9; 22:10; 22:11; 22:17; 23:1; 23:3; 23:6; 23:8; 23:9; 23:10; 23:11; 23:12; 23:13; 23:14; 23:15; 23:16; 23:17; 23:18; 23:19; 23:20; 23:21; 23:22; 23:23; 23:24; 23:27; 23:28; 23:32; 24:1; 24:2; 24:3; 24:4; 24:5; 24:6; 24:20; 24:21; 24:22; 24:23; 24:24; 24:25; 24:26; 24:27; 24:28; 24:29; 24:30; 24:31; 25:1; 25:2; 25:3; 25:4; 25:5; 25:9; 25:10; 25:11; 25:12; 25:13; 25:14; 25:15; 25:16; 25:17; 25:18; 25:19; 25:20; 25:21; 25:22; 25:23; 25:24; 25:25; 25:26; 25:27; 25:28; 25:29; 25:30; 25:31; 26:1; 26:2; 26:4; 26:6; 26:7; 26:8; 26:9; 26:10; 26:11; 26:14; 26:15; 26:19; 26:21; 26:22; 26:24; 26:25; 26:28; 26:29; 26:30; 26:32; 27:1; 27:2; 27:3; 27:5; 27:6; 27:7; 27:9; 27:10; 27:14; 27:16; 27:17; 27:18; 27:19; 27:20; 27:21; 27:22; 27:24; 27:25; 27:26; 27:29; 27:32; 27:34; 28:1; 28:5; 28:6; 28:8; 28:9; 28:11; 28:20; 29:1; 29:19; 29:22; 29:24; 29:26; 29:28)

spirit, spiritual

Definition:

The term "spirit" refers to the non-physical part of people which cannot be seen. When a person dies, his spirit leaves his body. "Spirit" can also refer to an attitude or emotional state.

- The term "spirit" can refer to a being that does not have a physical body, especially an evil spirit.
- A person's spirit is the part of him that can know God and believe in him.
- In general, the term "spiritual" describes anything in the non-physical world.
- In the Bible, it especially refers to anything that relates to God, specifically to the Holy Spirit.
- For example, "spiritual food" refers to God's teachings, which give nourishment to a person's spirit, and "spiritual wisdom" refers to the knowledge and righteous behavior that come from the power of the Holy Spirit.
- God is a spirit and he created other spirit beings, who do not have physical bodies.
- Angels are spirit beings, including those who rebelled against God and became evil spirits.
- The term "spirit of" can also mean "having the characteristics of," such as in "spirit of wisdom" or "in the spirit of Elijah."
- Examples of "spirit" as an attitude or emotion would include "spirit of fear" and "spirit of jealousy."

Translation Suggestions:

- Depending on the context, some ways to translate "spirit" might include "non-physical being" or "inside part" or "inner being."
- In some contexts, the term "spirit" could be translated as "evil spirit" or "evil spirit being."
- Sometimes the term "spirit" is used to express the feelings of a person, as in "my spirit was grieved in my inmost being." This could also be translated as "I felt grieved in my spirit" or "I felt deeply grieved."
- The phrase "spirit of" could be translated as "character of" or "influence of" or "attitude of" or "thinking (that is) characterized by."
- Depending on the context, "spiritual" could be translated as "non-physical" or "from the Holy Spirit" or "God's" or "part of the non-physical world."
- The phrase "spiritual maturity" could be translated as "godly behavior that shows obedience to the Holy Spirit."
- The term "spiritual gift" could be translated as "special ability that the Holy Spirit gives"

(See also: angel, demon, Holy Spirit, soul)

Bible References:

- 1 Corinthians 05:05
- 1 John 04:03
- 1 Thessalonians 05:23
- Acts 05:09
- Colossians 01:09
- Ephesians 04:23
- Genesis 07:21-22
- Isaiah 04:04
- Mark 01:23-26
- Matthew 26:41
- Philippians 01:27

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **13:03** Three days later, after the people had prepared themselves **spiritually**, God came down on top of Mount Sinai with thunder, lightning, smoke, and a loud trumpet blast.
- **40:07** Then Jesus cried out, "It is finished! Father, I give my **spirit** into your hands." Then he bowed his head and gave up his **spirit**.
- **45:05** As Stephen was dying, he cried out, "Jesus, receive my **spirit**."
- **48:07** All the people groups are blessed through him, because everyone who believes in Jesus is saved from sin, and becomes a **spiritual** descendant of Abraham.

Word Data:

- Strong's: H178, H1172, H5397, H7307, H7308, G4151, G4152, G4153, G5326, G5427

(Go back to: [1 Chronicles 5:26](#); [9:24](#); [12:18](#); [28:12](#))

statute

Definition:

A statute is a specific written law that provides guidance for people to live by.

- The term “statute” is similar in meaning to “ordinance” and “command” and “law” and “decree.” All these terms involve instructions and requirements that God gives to his people or rulers give to their people.
- King David said that he delighted himself in Yahweh’s statutes.
- The term “statute” could also be translated as “specific command” or “special decree.”

(See also: [command](#), [decree](#), [law](#), [ordinance](#), [Yahweh](#))

Bible References:

- 1 Kings 11:11-13
- Deuteronomy 06:20-23
- Ezekiel 33:15
- Numbers 19:02

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H2706, H2708, H7010, G1345

(Go back to: [1 Chronicles 16:12](#); [22:13](#); [28:7](#))

storehouse

Definition:

A “storehouse” is a large building that is used for keeping food or other things, often for a long time.

- In the Bible a “storehouse” was usually used to store extra grain and other food to be used later when there was a famine.
- This term was also used figuratively to refer to all the good things that God wants to give to his people.
- The storehouses of the temple contained valuable things that had been dedicated to Yahweh, such as gold and silver. Some of these things used to repair and maintain the temple were also kept there.
- Other ways to translate “storehouse” could include “a building for storing grain” or “place for keeping food” or “room for keeping valuable things safe.”

(See also: [consecrate](#), dedicate, [famine](#), [gold](#), grain, [silver](#), [temple](#))

Bible References:

- 2 Chronicles 16:2-3
- Luke 03:17
- Matthew 03:12
- Psalms 033:07

Word Data:

- Strong's: H214, H618, H624, H4035, H4200, H4543, G596

(Go back to: [1 Chronicles 26:20](#); [26:22](#); [26:26](#); [27:25](#); [27:27](#); [27:28](#); [28:12](#); [29:8](#))

strength, strengthen, strong

Facts:

The term “strength” refers to physical, emotional, or spiritual power. To “strengthen” someone or something means to make that person or object stronger.

- “Strength” can also refer to the power to withstand some kind of opposing force.
- A person has “strength of will” if he is able to avoid sinning when tempted.
- One writer of the Psalms called Yahweh his “strength” because God helped him to be strong.
- If a physical structure like a wall or building is being “strengthened,” people are rebuilding the structure, reinforcing it with more stones or brick so that it can withstand an attack.

Translation Suggestions

- In general, the term “strengthen” can be translated as “cause to be strong” or “make more powerful.”
- In a spiritual sense, the phrase “strengthen your brothers” could also be translated as “encourage your brothers” or “help your brothers to persevere.”
- The following examples show the meaning of these terms, and therefore how they can be translated, when they are included in longer expressions.
 - “puts strength on me like a belt” means “causes me to be completely strong, like a belt that completely surrounds my waist.”
 - “in quietness and trust will be your strength” means “acting calmly and trusting in God will make you spiritually strong.”
 - “will renew their strength” means “will become stronger again.”
 - “by my strength and by my wisdom I acted” means “I have done all this because I am so strong and wise.”
 - “strengthen the wall” means “reinforce the wall” or “rebuild the wall.”
 - “I will strengthen you” means “I will cause you to be strong”
 - “in Yahweh alone are salvation and strength” means “Yahweh is the only one who saves us and strengthens us.”
 - “the rock of your strength” means “the faithful one who makes you strong”
 - “with the saving strength of his right hand” means “he strongly rescues you from trouble like someone who holds you safely with his strong hand.”
 - “of little strength” means “not very strong” or “weak.”
 - “with all my strength” means “using my best efforts” or “strongly and completely.”

(See also: [faithful](#), persevere, right hand, save)

Bible References:

- 2 Kings 18:19-21
- 2 Peter 02:11
- Luke 10:27
- Psalm 021:01

Word Data:

- Strong's: H193, H202, H353, H360, H386, H410, H553, H556, H1369, H1396, H2220, H2388, H2391, H2392, H2393, H2428, H3027, H3028, H3559, H3581, H3811, H3955, H4581, H5326, H5331, H5582, H5797, H5807, H5810, H5934, H5975, H6106, H6109, H6697, H6965, H7292, H7307, H8003, H8443, H8632, H8633, G461, G950, G1411, G1412, G1743, G1765, G1840, G1991, G2479, G2480, G2901, G2904, G3619, G3756, G4599, G4732, G4733, G4741

(Go back to: [1 Chronicles 19:12](#); [19:13](#); [21:4](#); [22:13](#); [26:8](#); [28:7](#); [28:10](#); [28:20](#); [29:2](#); [29:12](#); [29:14](#))

stronghold, fortifications, fortress, citadel

Definition:

The terms "stronghold" and "fortress" both refer to places that are well protected against an attack by enemy soldiers. A "citadel" is a fortress inside a city. The term "fortified" describes a city or other place that has been made safe from attack.

- Often, strongholds and fortresses were manmade structures with defensive walls. They could also have been places with natural protective barriers such as rocky cliffs or high mountains.
- People fortified strongholds by building thick walls or other structures that made it difficult for an enemy to break through.
- "Stronghold" or "fortress" could be translated as "securely strong place" or "strongly protected place."
- The term "fortified city" could be translated as "securely protected city" or "strongly built city."
- This term was also used figuratively to refer to God as a stronghold or fortress for those who trust in him. (See: [Metaphor](#))
- Another figurative meaning for the term "stronghold" referred to something that someone wrongly trusted in for security, such as a false god or other thing that was worshiped instead of Yahweh. This could be translated as "false strongholds."
- This term should be translated differently from "refuge," which emphasizes safety more than the concept of being fortified.

(See also: false god, false god, refuge, [Yahweh](#))

Bible References:

- 2 Corinthians 10:04
- 2 Kings 08:10-12
- 2 Samuel 05:8-10
- Acts 21:35
- Habakkuk 01:10-11

Word Data:

- Strong's: H490, H553, H759, H1001, H1002, H1003, H1219, H1225, H2388, H4013, H4026, H4581, H4526, H4679, H4685, H4686, H4692, H4694, H4869, H5794, H5797, H5800, H6438, H6877, H7682, G3794, G3925

(Go back to: [1 Chronicles 29:1](#); [29:19](#))

sword, swordsmen

Definition:

A sword is a flat-bladed metal weapon used to cut or stab. It has a handle and a long, pointed blade with a very sharp cutting edge.

- In ancient times the length of a sword's blade was about 60 to 91 centimeters.
- Some swords have two sharp edges and are called "double-edged" or "two-edged" swords.
- Jesus' disciples had swords for self defense. With his sword, Peter cut off the ear of the high priest's servant.
- Both John the Baptist and the apostle James were beheaded with swords.

Translation Suggestions

- A sword is used as a metaphor for God's word. God's teachings in the Bible exposed people's innermost thoughts and convicted them of their sin. In a similar way, a sword cuts deeply, causing pain. (See: [Metaphor](#))
- One way to translate this figurative use would be, "God's word is like a sword, which cuts deeply and exposes sin."
- Another figurative use of this term occurred in the book of Psalms, where the tongue or speech of a person was compared to a sword, which can injure people. This could be translated as "the tongue is like a sword that can badly injure someone."
- If swords are not known in your culture, this word could be translated with the name of another long-bladed weapon that is used to cut or stab.
- A sword could also be described as a "sharp weapon" or "long knife." Some translations could include a picture of a sword.

(See also: [How to Translate Unknowns](#))

(See also: James (brother of Jesus), John (the Baptist), tongue, word of God)

Bible References:

- Acts 12:02
- Genesis 27:40
- Genesis 34:25
- Luke 02:33-35
- Luke 21:24
- Matthew 10:34
- Matthew 26:55
- Revelation 01:16

Word Data:

- Strong's: H19, H1300, H2719, H4380, H6609, H7524, H7973, G3162, G4501

(Go back to: [1 Chronicles 10:4](#); [21:5](#); [21:12](#); [21:27](#); [21:30](#))

teach, teaching, untaught

Definition:

To “teach” someone is to tell him something he doesn’t already know. It can also mean to “provide information” in general, with no reference to the person who is learning. Usually the information is given in a formal or systematic way. A person’s “teaching” is or his “teachings” are what he has taught.

- A “teacher” is someone who teaches. The past action of “teach” is “taught.”
- When Jesus was teaching, he was explaining things about God and his kingdom.
- Jesus’ disciples called him “Teacher” as a respectful form of address for someone who taught people about God.
- The information that is being taught can be shown or spoken.
- The term “doctrine” refers to a set of teachings from God about himself as well as God’s instructions about how to live. This could also be translated as “teachings from God” or “what God teaches us.”
- The phrase “what you have been taught” could also be translated as, “what these people have taught you” or “what God has taught you,” depending on the context.
- Other ways to translate “teach” could include “tell” or “explain” or “instruct.”
- Often this term can be translated as “teaching people about God.”

(See also: instruct, teacher, word of God)

Bible References:

- 1 Timothy 01:03
- Acts 02:40-42
- John 07:14
- Luke 04:31
- Matthew 04:23
- Psalms 032:08

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H502, H2094, H2449, H3045, H3046, H3256, H3384, H3925, H3948, H7919, H8150, G1317, G1321, G1322, G2085, G2605, G2727, G3100, G2312, G2567, G3811, G4994

(Go back to: [1 Chronicles 25:7](#))

temple

Facts:

The temple was a building surrounded by walled courtyards where the Israelites came to pray and to offer sacrifices to God. It was located on Mount Moriah in the city of Jerusalem.

- Often the term “temple” referred to the whole temple complex, including the courtyards that surrounded the main building. Sometimes it referred only to the building.
- The temple building had two rooms, the Holy Place and the Most Holy Place.
- God referred to the temple as his dwelling place.
- King Solomon built the Temple during his reign. It was supposed to be the permanent place of worship in Jerusalem.
- In the New Testament, the term “temple of the Holy Spirit” is used to refer to believers in Jesus as a group, because the Holy Spirit lives in them.

Translation Suggestions:

- Usually when the text says that people were “in the temple,” it is referring to the courtyards outside the building. This could be translated as “in the temple courtyards” or “in the temple complex.”
- Where it refers specifically to the building itself, some translations translate “temple” as “temple building,” to make it the reference clear.
- Ways to translate “temple” could include, “God’s holy house” or “sacred worship place.”
- Often in the Bible, the temple is referred to as “the house of Yahweh” or “the house of God.”

(See also: [sacrifice](#), [Solomon](#), [Babylon](#), [Holy Spirit](#), [tabernacle](#), [courtyard](#), [Zion](#), [house](#))

Bible References:

- Acts 03:02
- Acts 03:08
- Ezekiel 45:18-20
- Luke 19:46
- Nehemiah 10:28
- Psalm 079:1-3

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **17:06** David wanted to build a **temple** where all the Israelites could worship God and offer him sacrifices.
- **18:02** In Jerusalem, Solomon built the **Temple** for which his father David had planned and gathered materials. Instead of at the Tent of Meeting, people now worshiped God and offered sacrifices to him at the **Temple**. God came and was present in the **Temple**, and he lived there with his people.
- **20:07** They (Babylonians) captured the city of Jerusalem, destroyed the **Temple**, and took away all the treasures.
- **20:13** When the people arrived in Jerusalem, they rebuilt the **Temple** and the wall around the city of the city and the **Temple**.
- **25:04** Then Satan took Jesus to the highest point on the **Temple** and said, “If you are the Son of God, throw yourself down, for it is written, ‘God will command his angels to carry you so your foot does not hit a stone.’”
- **40:07** When he died, there was an earthquake and the large curtain that separated the people from the presence of God in the **Temple** was torn in two, from the top to the bottom.

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H1004, H1964, H1965, G1493, G2411, G3485

(Go back to: [1 Chronicles 6:10](#); [7:23](#); [13:14](#); [Notes](#); [17:1](#); [17:5](#); [17:14](#); [Notes](#); [Notes](#); [Notes](#); [Notes](#); [Notes](#); [Notes](#); [26:12](#); [Notes](#); [Notes](#); [Notes](#); [29:3](#))

testimony, testify, witness, eyewitness

Definition:

When a person gives “testimony” he makes a statement about something he knows, claiming that the statement is true. To “testify” is to give “testimony.”

- Often a person “testifies” about something he has experienced directly.
- A witness who gives “false testimony” does not tell the truth about what happened.
- Sometimes the term “testimony” refers to a prophecy that a prophet has stated.
- In the New Testament, this term was often used to refer to how Jesus’ followers testified about the events of Jesus’ life, death, and resurrection.

The term “witness” refers to a person who has personally experienced something that happened. Usually a witness is also someone who testifies about what they know is true. The term “eyewitness” emphasizes that the person was actually there and saw what happened.

- To “witness” something means to see it happen.
- At a trial, a witness “gives witness” or “bears witness.” This has the same meaning as “testify.”
- Witnesses are expected to tell the truth about what they have seen or heard.
- A witness who does not tell the truth about what happened is called a “false witness.” He is said to “give false witness” or to “bear false witness.”
- The expression “be a witness between” means that something or someone will be evidence that a contract has been made. The witness will make sure each person does what he has promised to do.

Translation Suggestions:

- The term “testify” or “give testimony” could also be translated as, “tell the facts” or “tell what was seen or heard” or “tell from personal experience” or “give evidence” or “tell what happened.”
- Ways to translate “testimony” could include, “report of what happened” or “statement of what is true” or “evidence” or “what has been said” or “prophecy.”
- The phrase, “as a testimony to them” could be translated as, to “show them what is true” or to “prove to them what is true.”
- The phrase, “as a testimony against them” could be translated as, “which will show them their sin” or “exposing their hypocrisy” or “which will prove that they are wrong.”
- To “give false testimony” could be translated as “say false things about” or “state things that are not true.”
- The term “witness” or “eyewitness” could be translated with a word or phrase that means “person seeing it” or “the one who saw it happen” or “those who saw and heard (those things).”
- Something that is “a witness” could be translated as “guarantee” or “sign of our promise” or “something that testifies that this is true.”
- The phrase “you will be my witnesses” could also be translated as “you will tell other people about me” or “you will teach people the truth that I taught you” or “you will tell people what you have seen me do and heard me teach.”
- To “witness to” could be translated as to “tell what was seen” or to “testify” or to “state what happened.”
- To “witness” something could be translated as to “see something” or to “experience something happen.”

(See also: ark of the covenant, guilt, [judge](#), [prophet](#), [testimony](#), true)

Bible References:

- Deuteronomy 31:28
- Micah 06:03
- Matthew 26:60
- Mark 01:44
- John 01:07

- John 03:33
- Acts 04:32-33
- Acts 07:44
- Acts 13:31
- Romans 01:09
- 1 Thessalonians 02:10-12
- 1 Timothy 05:19-20
- 2 Timothy 01:08
- 2 Peter 01:16-18
- 1 John 05:6-8
- 3 John 01:12
- Revelation 12:11

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **39:02** Inside the house, the Jewish leaders put Jesus on trial. They brought many **false witnesses** who lied about him.
- **39:04** The high priest tore his clothes in anger and shouted, "We do not need any more **witnesses**. You have heard him say that he is the Son of God. What is your judgment?"
- **42:08** "It was also written in the scriptures that my disciples will proclaim that everyone should repent in order to receive forgiveness for their sins. They will do this starting in Jerusalem, and then go to all people groups everywhere. You are **witnesses** of these things."
- **43:07** "We are **witnesses** to the fact that God raised Jesus to life again."

Word Data:

- Strong's: H5707, H5713, H5715, H5749, H6030, H8584, G267, G1263, G1957, G2649, G3140, G3141, G3142, G3143, G3144, G4303, G4828, G4901, G5575, G5576, G5577, G6020

(Go back to: [1 Chronicles 21:28](#))

thresh

Definition:

The terms “thresh” and “threshing” refer to the first part of the process of separating grain from the rest of the plant.

- Threshing a crop loosens the grain from the stalk. Afterwards the grain is “winnowed” to completely separate the seed from all unwanted materials, leaving only the part the grain that can be eaten.
- In Bible times, a “threshing floor” was a large flat rock or an area of packed-down dirt, giving a hard, level surface to crush the grain stalks and remove the grain.
- A “threshing cart” or “threshing wheel” was sometimes used to crush the grain and help separate it from the straw and chaff.
- A “threshing sledge” or “threshing board” was also used for separating grain. It was made of wooden boards that had sharp metal spikes on the end.

(See also: chaff, grain, winnow)

Bible References:

- 2 Chronicles 03:1-3
- 2 Kings 13:07
- 2 Samuel 24:16
- Daniel 02:35
- Luke 03:17
- Matthew 03:12
- Ruth 03:1-2

Word Data:

- Strong's: H212, H4173, H1637, H1758, H1786, H1869, H2251, G248

(Go back to: [1 Chronicles 13:9](#); [21:15](#); [21:21](#); [21:22](#))

threshold, doorway

Definition:

The term “threshold” refers to the bottom part of a doorway or the part of a building that is just inside the door.

- Sometimes a threshold is a strip of wood or stone that must be stepped over in order to enter a room or building.
- Both a gate and the opening to a tent can also have a threshold.
- This term should be translated with a term in the project language that refers to the place at the very entrance to a home that a person steps across.
- If there is no term for this, “threshold” could also be translated as “doorway” or “opening” or “entranceway,” depending on the context.

(See also: [gate](#), tent)

Bible References:

- 1 Chronicles 09:17-19
- Ezekiel 09:03
- Isaiah 06:04
- Proverbs 17:19

Word Data:

- Strong's: H4670, H5592

(Go back to: [1 Chronicles 9:19](#))

throne, enthroned

Definition:

A throne is a specially-designed chair where a ruler sits when he decides important matters and listens to requests from his people.

- A throne is also a symbol of the authority and power that a ruler has.
- The word “throne” can also be used to refer to the ruler, his reign, or his power.
- In the Bible, God was often portrayed as a king who sits on his throne. Jesus was described as sitting on a throne at the right hand of God the Father.
- Jesus said that heaven is God’s throne. One way to translate this could be, “where God reigns as king.”

(See also: authority, [power](#), [king](#), [reign](#))

Bible References:

- Colossians 01:15-17
- Genesis 41:40
- Luke 01:32
- Luke 22:30
- Matthew 05:34
- Matthew 19:28
- Revelation 01:4-6

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H3427, H3676, H3678, H3764, H7675, G968, G2362

(Go back to: [1 Chronicles 17:12](#); [22:10](#); [28:5](#); [29:23](#))

to minister, ministry

Definition:

In the Bible, the term “ministry” refers to serving others by teaching them about God and caring for their spiritual needs.

- In the Old Testament, the priests would “minister” to God in the temple by offering sacrifices to him.
- Their “ministry” also included taking care of the temple and offering prayers to God on behalf of the people.
- The job of “ministering” to people can include serving them spiritually by teaching them about God.
- It can also refer to serving people in physical ways, such as caring for the sick and providing food for the poor.

Translation Suggestions:

- In the context of ministering to people, to “minister” could also be translated as to “serve” or to “care for” or to “meet the needs of.”
- When referring to ministering in the temple, the term “minister” could be translated as “serve God in the temple” or “offer sacrifices to God for the people.”
- In the context of ministering to God, this could be translated as to “serve” or to “work for God.”
- The phrase “ministered to” could also be translated as “took care of” or “provided for” or “helped.”

(See also: [serve](#), [sacrifice](#))

Bible References:

- 2 Samuel 20:23-26
- Acts 06:04
- Acts 21:17-19

Word Data:

- Strong's: H6399, H8120, H8334, H8335, G1247, G1248, G1249, G2023, G2038, G2418, G3008, G3009, G3010, G3011, G3930, G5256, G5257, G5524

(Go back to: [1 Chronicles 6:33](#); [6:39](#); [27:1](#); [28:1](#))

transgress, transgression

Definition:

The term “transgress” means to cross a line or to violate a boundary. The term is often used figuratively, meaning to break a command, rule, or moral code.

- This term is very similar to the word “trespass,” but is generally used more often to describe violations against God than against other people.
- To “transgress” can also be described as to “cross a line,” that is, to go beyond a limit or boundary that has been set for the good of the person and others.

Translation Suggestions:

- To “transgress” could be translated as to “sin” or to “disobey” or to “rebel.”
- If a verse or passage uses two terms that mean “sin” or “transgress” or “trespass,” it is important, if possible, to use different ways to translate these terms. When the Bible uses two or more terms with similar meanings in the same context, usually its purpose is to emphasize what is being said or to show its importance.

(See: [parallelism](#))

(See also: disobey, [sin](#), [trespass](#), [iniquity](#))

Bible References:

- 1 Thessalonians 04:06
- Daniel 09:24-25
- Galatians 03:19-20
- Galatians 06:1-2
- Numbers 14:17-19
- Psalm 032:01

Word Data:

- Strong's: H898, H4603, H4604, H6586, H6588, G458, G459, G3845, G3847, G3848, G3928

(Go back to: [1 Chronicles 12:15](#); [21:8](#); [29:30](#))

tremble, stagger

Definition:

The term "tremble" means to quiver or to shake slightly and repeatedly, usually from fear or distress. The term can also be used figuratively, meaning "to be very afraid."

- Sometimes when the ground shakes it is said to "tremble." It can do this during an earthquake or in response to a very loud noise.
- The Bible says that in the presence of the Lord the earth will tremble. This could mean that the people of the earth will shake out of fear of God or that the earth itself will shake.
- This term could be translated as "be afraid" or "fear God" or "shake," depending on the context.

(See also: [earth](#), [fear](#), [Lord](#))

Bible References:

- 2 Corinthians 07:15
- 2 Samuel 22:44-46
- Acts 16:29-31
- Jeremiah 05:22
- Luke 08:47

Word Data:

- Strong's: H1674, H2111, H2112, H2151, H2342, H2648, H2729, H2730, H2731, H5128, H5568, H6342, H6426, H6427, H7264, H7268, H7269, H7322, H7460, H7461, H7481, H7493, H7578, H8078, H8653, G1790, G5141, G5156, G5425

(Go back to: [1 Chronicles 17:9](#))

trespass

Definition:

The term “trespass” means to cross a line or to violate a boundary. This term is often used figuratively, meaning to break a law or to violate the rights of another person.

- This term is very similar to the word “transgression,” but is generally used more often to describe violations against other people than against God.
- A trespass can be a violation of a moral law or a civil law.
- A trespass can also be a sin committed against another person.
- This term is related to the terms “sin” and “transgress,” especially as it relates to disobeying God. All sins are trespasses against God.

Translation Suggestions:

- Depending on the context, to “trespass against” could be translated as to “sin against” or to “break the rule.”
- Some languages may have an expression like “cross the line” that could be used to translate “trespass.”
- Consider how this term fits with the meaning of the surrounding Bible text and compare it to other terms that have a similar meaning, such as “transgress” and “sin.”

(See also: disobey, [iniquity](#), [sin](#), [transgress](#))

Bible References:

- 1 Samuel 25:28
- 2 Chronicles 26:16-18
- Colossians 02:13
- Ephesians 02:01
- Ezekiel 15:7-8
- Romans 05:17
- Romans 05:20-21

Word Data:

- Strong's: H816, H817, H819, H2398, H4603, H4604, H6586, H6588, G264, G3900

(Go back to: [1 Chronicles 9:1](#); [10:13](#))

trumpet, trumpeters

Definition:

The term “trumpet” refers to an instrument for producing music or for calling people to gather together for an announcement or meeting.

- A trumpet was commonly made from either metal, seashell, or an animal horn.
- Trumpets were most commonly blown to call people to come together for battle, and for Israel's public assemblies.
- The book of Revelation describes a scene in the end times in which angels blow their trumpets to signal the outpouring of the wrath of God on the earth.

(See also: angel, [assembly](#), [earth](#), horn, [Israel](#), wrath)

Bible References:

- 1 Chronicles 13:7-8
- 2 Kings 09:13
- Exodus 19:12-13
- Hebrews 12:19
- Matthew 06:02
- Matthew 24:31

Word Data:

- Strong's: H2689, H2690, H3104, H7782, H8619, H8643, G4536, G4537, G4538

(Go back to: [1 Chronicles 15:24](#); [15:28](#); [16:6](#))

trust, trusted, trustworthy, trustworthiness

Definition:

To “trust” something or someone is to believe that the thing or person is true or dependable. That belief is also called “trust.” A “trustworthy” person is one you can trust to do and say what is right and true, and therefore one who has the quality of “trustworthiness.”

- Trust is closely related to faith. If we trust someone, we have faith in that person to do what they promised to do.
- Having trust in someone also means depending on that person.
- To “trust in” Jesus means to believe that he is God, to believe that he died on the cross to pay for our sins, and to rely on him to save us.
- A “trustworthy saying” refers to something that is said that can be counted on to be true.

Translation Suggestions:

- Ways to translate “trust” could include “believe” or “have faith” or “have confidence” or “depend on.”
- The phrase “put your trust in” is very similar in meaning to “trust in.”
- The term “trustworthy” could be translated as “dependable” or “reliable” or “can always be trusted.”

(See also: believe, confidence, faith, [faithful](#), true)

Bible References:

- 1 Chronicles 09:22-24
- 1 Timothy 04:09
- Hosea 10:12-13
- Isaiah 31:1-2
- Nehemiah 13:13
- Psalm 031:05
- Titus 03:8

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **12:12** When the Israelites saw that the Egyptians were dead, they **trusted** in God and believed that Moses was a prophet of God.
- **14:15** Joshua was a good leader because he **trusted** and obeyed God.
- **17:02** David was a humble and righteous man who **trusted** and obeyed God.
- **34:06** Then Jesus told a story about people who **trusted** in their own good deeds and despised other people.

Word Data:

- Strong's: H539, H982, H1556, H2620, H2622, H3176, H4009, H4268, H7365, G1679, G3872, G3982, G4006, G4100, G4276

(Go back to: [1 Chronicles 21 General Notes](#))

Tyre, Tyrians

Facts:

Tyre was an ancient Canaanite city located on the coast of the Mediterranean Sea in a region that is now part of the modern-day country of Lebanon. Its people were called "Tyrians."

- Part of the city was located on an island in the sea, about one kilometer from the mainland.
- Because of its location and its valuable natural resources, such as cedar trees, Tyre had a prosperous trading industry and was very wealthy.
- King Hiram of Tyre sent wood from cedar trees and skilled laborers to help build a palace for King David.
- Years later, Hiram also sent King Solomon wood and skilled laborers to help build the temple. Solomon paid him with large amounts of wheat and olive oil.
- Tyre was often associated with the nearby ancient city of Sidon. These were the most important cities of the region of Canaan called Phoenicia.

(Translation suggestions: [How to Translate Names](#))

(See also: [Canaan](#), [cedar](#), [Israel](#), the sea, Phoenicia, Sidon)

Bible References:

- Acts 12:20
- Mark 03:7-8
- Matthew 11:22
- Matthew 15:22

Word Data:

- Strong's: H6865, H6876, G5183, G5184

(Go back to: [1 Chronicles 14:1](#))

understand, understanding, thinking

Definition:

The term “understand” means to hear or receive information and know what it means.

- The term “understanding” can refer to “knowledge” or “wisdom” or realizing how to do something.
- To understand someone can also mean to know how that person is feeling.
- While walking on the road to Emmaus, Jesus caused the disciples to understand the meaning of the scriptures about the Messiah.
- Depending on the context, the term “understand” could be translated by “know” or “believe” or “comprehend” or “know what (something) means.”
- Often the term “understanding” can be translated by “knowledge” or “wisdom” or “insight.”

(See also: believe, [know](#), wise)

Bible References:

- Job 34:16-17
- Luke 02:47
- Luke 08:10
- Matthew 13:12
- Matthew 13:14
- Proverbs 03:05

Word Data:

- Strong's: H995, H998, H999, H1847, H2940, H3045, H3820, H3824, H4486, H7200, H7919, H7922, H7924, H8085, H8394, G50, G145, G191, G801, G1097, G1108, G1271, G1921, G1922, G1987, G1990, G2657, G3539, G3563, G4907, G4908, G4920, G5424, G5428, G5429

(Go back to: [1 Chronicles 15:22](#); [22:12](#); [25:8](#); [27:32](#); [28:9](#))

walk, walked

Definition:

The term “walk” is often used in a figurative sense to mean “live.”

- “Enoch walked with God” means that Enoch lived in a close relationship with God.
- To “walk by the Spirit” means to be guided by the Holy Spirit so that we do things that please and honor God.
- To “walk in” God’s commands or God’s ways means to “live in obedience to” his commands, that is, to “obey his commands” or “do his will.”
- When God says he will “walk among” his people, it means that he is living among them or closely interacting with them.
- To “walk contrary to” means to live or behave in a way that is against something or someone.
- To “walk after” means to seek or pursue someone or something. It can also mean to act in the same way as someone else.

Translation Suggestions:

- It is best to translate “walk” literally, as long as the correct meaning will be understood.
- Otherwise, figurative uses of “walk” could also be translated by “live” or “act” or “behave.”
- The phrase “walk by the Spirit” could be translated by, “live in obedience to the Holy Spirit” or “behave in a way that is pleasing to the Holy Spirit” or “do things that are pleasing to God as the Holy Spirit guides you.”
- To “walk in God’s commands” could be translated by “live by God’s commands” or “obey God’s commands.”
- The phrase “walked with God” could be translated as, “lived in close relationship with God by obeying and honoring him.”

(See also: Holy Spirit, honor)

Bible References:

- 1 John 01:07
- 1 Kings 02:04
- Colossians 02:07
- Galatians 05:25
- Genesis 17:01
- Isaiah 02:05
- Jeremiah 13:10
- Micah 04:02

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H1869, H1980, H1981, H3212, H4108, G1704, G4043, G4198, G4748

(Go back to: [1 Chronicles 17:4](#); [21:2](#); [21:10](#))

watch, watchman, watchful, guard, take heed, beware, watch out

Definition:

The term “watch” means to look at something very closely and carefully. It also has several figurative meanings. A “watchman” was someone whose job was to guard a city by looking carefully all around him for any danger or threat to the people in the city.

- The command to “watch your life and doctrine closely” means to be careful to live wisely and to not believe false teachings.
- To “watch out” is a warning to be careful to avoid a danger or harmful influence.
- To “watch” or “keep watch” means to always be alert and on guard against sin and evil. It can also mean to “be ready.”
- To “keep watch over” or “keep close watch” can mean to guard, protect or take care of someone or something.
- Other ways of translating “watch” could include “pay close attention to” or “be diligent” or “be very careful” or “be on guard.”
- Other words for “watchman” are “sentry” or “guard.”

Bible References:

- 1 Thessalonians 05:06
- Hebrews 13:17
- Jeremiah 31:4-6
- Mark 08:15
- Mark 13:33-34
- Matthew 25:10-13

Word Data:

- Strong's: H821, H2370, H4929, H4931, H5027, H5341, H6486, H6822, H6836, H6974, H7462, H7789, H7919, H8104, H8108, H8245, G69, G991, G1127, G1492, G2334, G2892, G3525, G3708, G3906, G4337, G4648, G5083, G5438

(Go back to: [1 Chronicles 9:19](#); [10:13](#); [12:29](#); [22:13](#); [26:16](#); [28:8](#); [29:18](#))

wheat

Definition:

Wheat is a type of grain that people grow for food. When the Bible mentions “grain” or “seeds,” it is often talking about wheat grain or seeds.

- The wheat seeds or grains grow at the top of the wheat plant.
- After harvesting the wheat, the grain is separated from the stalk of the plant by threshing it. The stalk of the wheat plant is also called “straw” and is often placed on the ground for animals to sleep on.
- After threshing, the chaff surrounding the grain seed is separated from the grain by winnowing and is thrown away.
- People grind the wheat grain into flour, and use this for making bread.

(See also: [barley](#), chaff, grain, [seed](#), [thresh](#), winnow)

Bible References:

- Acts 27:36-38
- Exodus 34:21-22
- John 12:24
- Luke 03:17
- Matthew 03:12
- Matthew 13:26

Word Data:

- Strong's: H1250, H2406, G4621

(Go back to: [1 Chronicles 21:20](#))

wine, wineskin, new wine

Definition:

In the Bible, the term “wine” refers to a kind of fermented drink made from the juice of a fruit called grapes. Wine was stored in “wineskins,” which were containers made out of animal skin.

- The term “new wine” referred to grape juice that had just been taken from the grape and was not fermented yet. Sometimes the term “wine” also referred to unfermented grape juice.
- To make wine, grapes are crushed in a winepress so that the juice comes out. The juice eventually ferments and alcohol forms in it.
- In Bible times, wine was the normal drink with meals. It did not have as much alcohol as present-day wine has.
- Before wine was served for a meal, it was often mixed with water.
- A wineskin that was old and brittle would get cracks in it, which allowed the wine to leak out. New wineskins were soft and flexible, which meant they did not tear easily and could store the wine safely.
- If wine is unknown in your culture, it could be translated as “fermented grape juice” or “fermented drink made from a fruit called grapes” or “fermented fruit juice.” (See: [How to Translate Unknowns](#))
- Ways to translate “wineskin” could include “bag for wine” or “animal skin wine bag” or “animal skin container for wine.”

(See also: grape, vine, vineyard, winepress)

Bible References:

- 1 Timothy 05:23
- Genesis 09:21
- Genesis 49:12
- John 02:3-5
- John 02:10
- Matthew 09:17
- Matthew 11:18

smashed

Word Data:

- Strong's: H2561, H2562, H3196, H4469, H4997, H5435, H6025, H6071, H8492, G1098, G3631, G3820, G3943

(Go back to: [1 Chronicles 12:40](#); [27:27](#))

wise men, advisor

Definition:

The term "wise men" simply means people who are wise. In the Bible, however, the term "wise men" often refers to men with unusual knowledge and abilities who served in a king's royal court as advisors to the king or other high officials.

Old Testament

- Sometimes the term "wise men" is explained in the text as "prudent men" or "men with understanding." This refers to men who act wisely and righteously because they obey God.
- The "wise men" who served pharaohs or other kings were often scholars who studied the stars, especially looking for special meanings for the patterns that the stars made in their positions in the sky. Sometimes "wise men" also practiced divination of performed acts of magic, probably by the power of evil spirits.
- Often wise men were expected to explain the meanings of dreams. For example, King Nebuchadnezzar demanded that his wise men describe his dreams and tell him what they meant, but none of them was able to do this, except Daniel who had received this knowledge from God.

New Testament

- The group of men who came from eastern regions to worship Jesus were called "magi," which is often translated as "wise men," since this probably refers to scholars who served a ruler of an eastern country.

Translation Suggestions:

- Depending on the context, the term "wise men" could be translated using the term "wise" or with a phrase such as "gifted men" or "educated men" or some other term that refers to men who have an important job working for a ruler.
- When the term "wise men" simply means people who are wise, the word "wise" should be translated in the same or similar way to how it is translated elsewhere in the Bible.

(See also: [Babylon](#), Daniel, divination, magic, [Nebuchadnezzar](#), ruler, wise)

Bible References:

- 1 Chronicles 27:32-34
- Daniel 02:1-2
- Daniel 02:10-11

Word Data:

- Strong's: H2445, H2450, H3778, H3779, G4680

(Go back to: [1 Chronicles 22:15](#))

work, works, deeds

Definition:

The term “work” refers generally either to the action of expending effort in order to accomplish something, or to the result of that action. The term “works” refers generally to actions as a whole (that is, things that have been done or that need to be done).

- In the Bible, these terms are commonly used both in reference to God and humans.
- When used in reference to God, the term “work” in the Bible often refers to God's action of creating the universe or saving his people (either from enemies, from sin, or both).
- God's works refer to all the things he does or has done, including creating the world, saving sinners, providing for the needs of all creation and keeping the entire universe in place.
- The works or deeds that a person does can be either good or evil.

Translation Suggestions:

- Other ways to translate “works” could be “deeds” or “actions” or “things that are done.”
- God's “works” or “deeds” or the “work of his hands” could also be translated as “miracles” or “mighty acts” or “things that God does.”
- The expression “the work of God” could be translated as “the things that God is doing” or “the miracles God does” or “everything that God has accomplished.”
- The term “work” can just be the singular of “works” as in “every good work” or “every good deed.”
- When work is done for God or others, it can be translated as “service” or “ministry.”

(See also: fruit, Holy Spirit, [miracle](#))

Bible References:

- 1 John 03:12
- Acts 02:8-11
- Daniel 04:37
- Exodus 34:10-11
- Galatians 02:15-16
- James 02:17
- Matthew 16:27-28
- Micah 02:07
- Romans 03:28
- Titus 03:4-5

Word Data:

- Strong's: H4566, H4567, H4611, H4659, H5949, G2041

(Go back to: [1 Chronicles 11 General Notes](#); [11:22](#))

Yahweh

Facts:

The term “Yahweh” is God’s personal name in the Old Testament. The specific origin of this name is unknown, but it is probably derived from the Hebrew verb meaning, “to be.”

- Following tradition, many Bible versions use the term “LORD” or “the LORD” to represent “Yahweh.” This tradition resulted from the fact that historically, the Jewish people became afraid of mispronouncing Yahweh’s name and started saying “Lord” every time the term “Yahweh” appeared in the text. Modern Bibles write “LORD” with all capital letters to show respect for God’s personal name and to distinguish it from “Lord” which is a different Hebrew word.
- The ULT and UST texts always translate this term as, “Yahweh,” in agreement with the Hebrew text of the Old Testament.
- The term “Yahweh” never occurs in the original text of the New Testament; only the Greek term for “Lord” is used, even when quoting the Old Testament.
- In the Old Testament, when God spoke about himself, he would often use his name instead of a pronoun.

Translation Suggestions:

- “Yahweh” could be translated by a word or phrase that means “I am” or “living one” or “the one who is” or “he who is alive.”
- This term could also be written in a way that is similar to how “Yahweh” is spelled.
- Some church denominations prefer not to use the term “Yahweh” and instead use the traditional rendering, “LORD.” An important consideration is that this may be confusing when read aloud because it will sound the same as the title “Lord.” Some languages may have an affix or other grammatical marker that could be added to distinguish “LORD” as a name (Yahweh) from “Lord” as a title.
- It is best if possible to keep the name Yahweh where it literally occurs in the text, but some translations may decide to use only a pronoun in some places, to make the text more natural and clear.
- Introduce the quote with something like, “This is what Yahweh says.”

(Translation suggestions: [How to Translate Names](#))

(See also: [God](#), [lord](#), [Lord](#), [Moses](#), [reveal](#))

Bible References:

- 1 Kings 21:20
- 1 Samuel 16:07
- Daniel 09:03
- Ezekiel 17:24
- Genesis 02:04
- Genesis 04:3-5
- Genesis 28:13
- Hosea 11:12
- Isaiah 10:04
- Isaiah 38:08
- Job 12:10
- Joshua 01:09
- Lamentations 01:05
- Leviticus 25:35
- Malachi 03:04
- Micah 02:05
- Micah 06:05
- Numbers 08:11

- Psalm 124:03
- Ruth 01:21
- Zechariah 14:5

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **09:14** God said, "I AM WHO I AM. Tell them, 'I AM has sent me to you.' Also tell them, 'I am **Yahweh**, the God of your ancestors Abraham, Isaac, and Jacob. This is my name forever.'"
- **13:04** Then God gave them the covenant and said, "I am **Yahweh**, your God, who saved you from slavery in Egypt. Do not worship other gods."
- **13:05** "Do not make idols or worship them, for I, **Yahweh**, am a jealous God."
- **16:01** The Israelites began to worship the Canaanite gods instead of **Yahweh**, the true God.
- **19:10** Then Elijah prayed, "O **Yahweh**, God of Abraham, Isaac, and Jacob, show us today that you are the God of Israel and that I am your servant."

Word Data:

- Strong's: H3050, H3068, H3069

(Go back to: 1 Chronicles 2:3; 6:15; 6:31; 6:32; 9:19; 9:20; 9:23; 10:13; 10:14; 11:2; 11:3; 11:9; 11:10; 11:14; 11:18; 12:23; 13:2; 13:6; 13:10; 13:11; 13:14; 14:2; 14:10; 14:17; 15:2; 15:3; 15:12; 15:13; 15:14; 15:15; 15:25; 15:26; 15:28; 15:29; 16:2; 16:4; 16:7; 16:8; 16:10; 16:11; 16:14; 16:23; 16:25; 16:26; 16:28; 16:29; 16:31; 16:33; 16:34; 16:36; 16:37; 16:39; 16:40; 16:41; 17:1; 17:4; 17:7; 17:10; 17:16; 17:17; 17:19; 17:20; 17:22; 17:23; 17:24; 17:26; 17:27; 18:6; 18:11; 18:13; 19:13; 21:3; 21:9; 21:10; 21:11; 21:12; 21:13; 21:14; 21:15; 21:16; 21:17; 21:18; 21:19; 21:22; 21:24; 21:26; 21:27; 21:28; 21:29; 21:30; 22:1; 22:5; 22:6; 22:7; 22:8; 22:11; 22:12; 22:13; 22:14; 22:16; 22:18; 22:19; 23:4; 23:5; 23:13; 23:24; 23:25; 23:28; 23:30; 23:31; 23:32; 24:19; 25:3; 25:6; 25:7; 26:12; 26:22; 26:27; 26:30; 27:23; 28:2; 28:4; 28:5; 28:8; 28:9; 28:10; 28:12; 28:13; 28:18; 28:19; 28:20; 29:1; 29:5; 29:8; 29:9; 29:10; 29:11; 29:16; 29:18; 29:20; 29:21; 29:22; 29:23; 29:25)

Zerubbabel

Facts:

Zerubbabel was the name of two Israelite men in the Old Testament.

- One of these was a descendant of Jehoiakim and Zedekiah.
- A different Zerubbabel, son of Shealtiel, was the head of the tribe of Judah during the time of Ezra and Nehemiah, when Cyrus king of Persia released the Israelites from their captivity in Babylon.
- Zerubbabel and the high priest Joshua were among those who helped rebuild the temple and altar of God.

(Translation suggestions: [How to Translate Names](#))

(See also: [Babylon](#), [captive](#), Cyrus, Ezra, high priest, Jehoiakim, Joshua, [Judah](#), Nehemiah, Persia, Zedekiah)

Bible References:

- 1 Chronicles 03:19-21
- Ezra 02:1-2
- Ezra 03:8-9
- Luke 03:27-29
- Matthew 01:12

Word Data:

- Strong's: H2216, H2217, G2216

([Go back to: 1 Chronicles 3:19](#))

Zion, Mount Zion

Definition:

Originally, the term “Zion” or “Mount Zion” referred to a stronghold or fortress that King David captured from the Jebusites. Both these terms became other ways of referring to Jerusalem.

- Mount Zion and Mount Moriah were two of the hills that the city of Jerusalem was located on. Later, “Zion” and “Mount Zion” became used as general terms to refer to both of these mountains and to the city of Jerusalem. Sometimes they also referred to the temple that was located in Jerusalem. (See: [metonymy](#))
- David named Zion, or Jerusalem, the “City of David.” This is different from David’s hometown, Bethlehem, which was also called the City of David.
- The term “Zion” is used in other figurative ways, to refer to Israel or to God’s spiritual kingdom or to the new, heavenly Jerusalem that God will create.

(See also: [Abraham](#), [David](#), [Jerusalem](#), Bethlehem, [Jebusites](#))

Bible References:

- 1 Chronicles 11:05
- Amos 01:02
- Jeremiah 51:35
- Psalm 076:1-3
- Romans 11:26

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H6726

(Go back to: [1 Chronicles 11:5](#))

Contributors

unfoldingWord® Translation Notes Contributors

Door43 World Missions Community

Aaron Fenlason

Abner Bauman

Adam Van Goor

Alan Bird

Alan Borkenhagen

Alfred Van Dellen

Alice Wright

Allen Bair

Allyson Presswood Nance

Amanda Adams

Andrew Belcher

Andrew Johnson

Andrew Rice

Angelo Palo

Anita Moreau

April Linton

Aurora Lee

Barbara Summers

Barbara White

Becky Hancock

Beryl Carpenter

Bethany Fenlason

Betty Forbes

Bianca Elliott

Bill Cleveland

Bill Pruett

Bob Britting

Bram van den Heuvel

Brian Metzger

Bruce Bridges

Bruce Collier

Bruce Smith

Caleb Worgess

Carlyle Kilmore

Carol Pace

Carol Heim

Caroline Crawford

Caroline Fleming

Caroline S Wong

Carol Lee

Carol Moyer

Carolyn Lafferty

Catherine C Newton

Charese Jackson

Charlotte Gibson

Charlotte Hobbs

Cheryl A Chojnacki
Cheryl Stieben
Cheryl Warren
Christian Berry
Christine Harrison
Clairmene Pascal
Connie Bryan
Connie Goss
Craig Balden
Craig Lins
Craig Scott
Cynthia J Puckett
Dale Hahs
Dale Masser
Daniel Lauk
Daniel Summers
Darlene M Hopkins
Darlene Silas
David Boerschlein
David F Withee
David Glover
David J Forbes
David Mullen
David N Hanley
David Sandlin
David Shortess
David Smith
David Whisler
Debbie Nispel
Debbie Piper
Deborah Bartow
Deborah Bush
Deborah Miniard
Dennis Jackson
Dianne Forrest
Donna Borkenhagen
Donna Mullis
Douglas Hayes
Drew Curley
Ed Davis
Edgar Navera
Edward Kosky
Edward Quigley
Elaine VanRegenmorter
Elizabeth Nataly Silvestre Herbas
Ellen Lee
Emeline Thermidor
Emily Lee
Esther Roman
Esther Trew
Esther Zirk
Ethel Lynn Baker
Evangeline Puen
Evelyn Wildgust
Fletcher Coleman

Freda Dibble
Gail Spell
Gary Greer
Gary Shogren
Gay Ellen Stulp
Gene Gossman
George Arlyn Briggs
Gerald L. Naughton
Glen Tallent
Grace Balwit
Grace Bird
Greg Stoffregen
Gretchen Stencil
Hallie Miller
Harry Harriss
Heather Hicks
Helen Morse
Hendrik deVries
Henry Bult
Henry Whitney
Hilary O'Sullivan
Ibrahim Audu
Ines Gipson
Irene J Dodson
Jackie Jones
Jacqueline Bartley
James Giddens
James Pedersen
James Pohlig
James Roe
Janet O'Herron
Janice Connor
Jaqueline Rotruck
Jeanette Friesen
Jeff Graf
Jeff Kennedy
Jeff Martin
Jennifer Cunneen
Jenny Thomas
Jerry Lund
Jessica Lauk
Jim Frederick
Jim Lee
Jimmy Warren
Jim Rotruck
Jim Swartzentruber
Jody Garcia
Joe Chater
Joel Bryan
Joey Howell
John Anderson
John Geddis
John D Rogers
John Hutchins
John Luton

John Pace
John P Tornifolio
Jolene Valeu
Jon Haahr
Joseph Fithian
Joseph Greene
Joseph Wharton
Joshua Berkowitz
Joshua Calhoun
Joshua Rister
Josh Wondra
Joy Anderson
Joyce Jacobs
Joyce Pedersen
JT Crowder
Judi Brodeen
Judith Cline
Judith C Yon
Julia N Bult
Patty Li
Julie Susanto
Kahar Barat
Kannah Sellers
Kara Anderson
Karen Davie
Karen Dreesen
Karen Fabean
Karen Riecks
Karen Smith
Karen Turner
Kathleen Glover
Kathryn Hendrix
Kathy Mentink
Katrina Geurink
Kay Myers
Kelly Strong
Ken Haugh
Kim Puterbaugh
Kristin Butts Page
Kristin Rinne
Kwesi Opoku-debrah
Langston Spell
Larry Sallee
Lawrence Lipe
Lee Sipe
Leonard Smith
Lester Harper
Lia Hadley
Linda Buckman
Linda Dale Barton
Linda Havemeier
Linda Homer
Linda Lee Sebastien
Linn Peterson
Liz Dakota

Lloyd Box
Luis Keelin
Madeline Kilmore
Maggie D Paul
Marc Nelson
Mardi Welo
Margo Hoffman
Marilyn Cook
Marjean Swann
Marjorie Francis
Mark Albertini
Mark Chapman
Mark Thomas
Marselene Norton
Mary Jane Davis
Mary Jean Stout
Mary Landon
Mary Scarborough
Megan Kidwell
Melissa Roe
Merton Dibble
Meseret Abraham-Zemedede
Michael Bush
Michael Connor
Michael Francis
Michael Geurink
Mike Tisdell
Mickey White
Miel Horrilleno
Monique Greer
Morgan Mellette
Morris Anderson
Nancy C. Naughton
Nancy Neu
Nancy VanCott
Neal Snook
Nicholas Scovil
Nick Dettman
Nils Friberg
Noah Crabtree
Pamela B Johnston
Pamela Nungesser
Pamela Roberts
Pam Gullifer
Pat Ankney
Pat Giddens
Patricia Brougher
Patricia Carson
Patricia Cleveland
Patricia Foster
Patricia Middlebrooks
Paul Mellema
Paula Carlson
Paula Oestreich
Paul Holloway

Paul Nungesser
Peggy Anderson
Peggyrose Swartzentruber
Peter Polloni
Phillip Harms
Phyllis Mortensen
Priscilla Enggren
Rachel Agheyisi
Rachel Ropp
Raif Turner
Ray Puen
Reina Y Mora
Rene Bahrenfuss
Renee Triplett
Rhonda Bartels
Richard Beatty
Richard Moreau
Richard Rutter
Richard Stevens
Rick Keaton
Robby Little
Robert W Johnson
Rochelle Hook
Rodney White
Rolaine Franz
Ronald D Hook
Rosario Baria
Roxann Carey
Roxanne Pittard
Ruben Michael Garay
Russell Isham
Russ Perry
Ruth Calo
Ruth E Withee
Ruth Montgomery
Ryan Blizek
Sam Todd
Samuel Njuguna
Sandy Anderson
Sandy Blanes
Sara Giesmann
Sara Van Cott (Barnes)
Sharon Johnson
Sharon Peterson
Sharon Shortess
Shelly Harms
Sherie Nelson
Sherman Sebastien
Sherry Mosher
Stacey Swanson
Steve Gibbs
Steve Mercier
Susan Langohr
Susan Quigley
Susan Snook

Suzanne Richards
Sylvia Thomas
Sze Suze Lau
Tabitha Price
Tammy L Enns
Tammy White
Teresa Everett-Leone
Teresa Linn
Terri Collins
Theresa Baker
Thomas Jopling
Thomas Nickell
Thomas Warren
Tim Coleman
Tim Ingram
Tim Linn
Tim Lovestrand
Tim Mentink
Tom Penry
Tom William Warren
Toni Shuma
Tracie Pogue
Tricia Coffman
Vicki Ivester
Victoria G DeKraker
Victor M Prieto
Vivian Kamph
Vivian Richardson
Ward Pyles
Warren Blaisdell
Wayne Homer
Wendy Coleman
Wendy Colon
Wilbur Zirk
Wil Gipson
William Carson
William Cline
William Dickerson
William Smitherman
William Wilder
Yvonne Tallent

unfoldingWord® Literal Text Contributors

Alrick G. Headley, M.Div., Th.M.
Adam W. Nagelvoort, M.Div. Academic Ministries, Columbia International University
Dave Statezni, BA Orig langs., M.Div. Fuller Theological Seminary
Bram van den Heuvel, M.A.
C. Harry Harriss, M.Div.
David Trombold, M. Div.
Elizabeth Oakes, BA in Religious Studies, Linguistics
George "Drew" Curley, M.Div., PhD, Professor of Biblical Languages
Hendrik "Henry" de Vries
Henry Whitney, BA Linguistics
Jesse Griffin, BA Biblical Studies, MA Biblical Languages

James N. Pohlig, M.Div., MA in Linguistics, D. Litt. in Biblical Languages
Larry T Brooks, M.Div., Assemblies of God Theological Seminary
Larry Sallee, Th.M Dallas Theological Seminary, D.Min. Columbia Biblical Seminary
Paul M Fahnestock, M.Div. Reformed Theological Seminary, D. Min. Pittsburgh Theological Seminary
Perry Oakes, PhD in Old Testament, MA in Linguistics
Peter Smircich, BA Philosophy
Susan Quigley, MA in Linguistics
Thomas Warren, M.Div., Trinity Evangelical Divinity School, D.Min, Reformed Theological Seminary
Timothy Neu, Ph.D. Biblical Studies
Ward Pyles, M.Div., Western Baptist Theological Seminary
David Trombold
Dean Ropp
Gene Mullen
James Vigen
Leonard Smith
Nicholas Alsop
Michael Francis
Door43 World Missions Community

unfoldingWord® Simplified Text Contributors

Alrick G. Headley, M.Div., Th.M.
Adam W. Nagelvoort, M.Div. Academic Ministries, Columbia International University
Dave Statezni, BA Orig langs., M.Div. Fuller Theological Seminary
Bram van den Heuvel, M.A.
C. Harry Harriss, M.Div.
David Trombold, M. Div.
Elizabeth Oakes, BA in Religious Studies, Linguistics
George "Drew" Curley, M.Div., PhD, Professor of Biblical Languages
Hendrik "Henry" de Vries
Henry Whitney, BA Linguistics
Jesse Griffin, BA Biblical Studies, MA Biblical Languages
James N. Pohlig, M.Div., MA in Linguistics, D. Litt. in Biblical Languages
Larry T Brooks, M.Div., Assemblies of God Theological Seminary
Larry Sallee, Th.M Dallas Theological Seminary, D.Min. Columbia Biblical Seminary
Paul M Fahnestock, M.Div. Reformed Theological Seminary, D. Min. Pittsburgh Theological Seminary
Perry Oakes, PhD in Old Testament, MA in Linguistics
Peter Smircich, BA Philosophy
Susan Quigley, MA in Linguistics
Thomas Warren, M.Div., Trinity Evangelical Divinity School, D.Min, Reformed Theological Seminary
Timothy Neu, Ph.D. Biblical Studies
Ward Pyles, M.Div., Western Baptist Theological Seminary
David Trombold
Dean Ropp
Gene Mullen
James Vigen
Leonard Smith
Nicholas Alsop
Michael Francis
Door43 World Missions Community

unfoldingWord® Translation Academy Contributors

Jesse Griffin, BA in Biblical Studies, MA in Biblical Languages

Perry Oakes, PhD in Old Testament, MA in Linguistics
Susan Quigley, MA in Linguistics
Henry Whitney, BA in Linguistics
James N. Pohlig, M.Div., MA in Linguistics, D. Litt. in Biblical Languages
Ben Jore, BA Biblical Studies, M.Div.
Joel D. Ruark, PhD in Old Testament, MA in Theology
Todd L. Price, PhD in New Testament/Linguistics
Bev Staley
Carol Brinneman
Jody Garcia
Kara Anderson
Kim Puterbaugh
Lizz Carlton
Door43 World Missions Community

unfoldingWord® Translation Words Contributors

Andrew Belcher
David Book
Jesse Griffin, BA Biblical Studies, MA Biblical Languages
Henry Whitney, Bible translator, Papua New Guinea, 1982–2000
Larry Sallee, Th.M Dallas Theological Seminary, D.Min. Columbia Biblical Seminary
Lizz Carlton
Jan Zanutto
Matthew Latham
Perry Oakes, PhD in Old Testament, MA in Linguistics
Richard Joki
Door43 World Missions Community